

Ee

eager *adj* **THESAURUS** **enthusiastic**

ear *n*

one of the two parts on the side of your head that you use for hearing

ADJECTIVES

sb's left/right ear *She is deaf in her right ear.*

big/small ears *African elephants' ears are bigger than those of Indian elephants.*

long/short ears *Why do some dogs have long ears?*

floppy ears (=soft and hanging down loosely) *She brought out a rabbit with big floppy ears.*

pointy/pointed ears *The cat has short pointy ears.*

sb's inner/middle ear (=the parts inside your ear, which you use to hear sounds) *I've got an infection in my middle ear.*

VERBS

say/whisper sth into sb's ear *He whispered something into his wife's ear.*

cover your ears (=put your hands over your ears) *She covered her ears and said, "I'm not listening."*

have your ears pierced (=have a hole put into the skin, so that you can wear an earring) *I had my ears pierced when I was quite young.*

an animal pricks up its ears (=it makes them upright when listening carefully) *The horse pricked up its ears and set off in the direction of its master's voice.*

sb's ears stick out *If my hair is too short, you can see that my ears stick out.*

sb's ears pop (=the pressure in them changes suddenly, for example when you go up or down quickly in a plane) *My ears finally popped when the plane landed.*

ear + NOUNS

an ear infection *He's taking medicine for an ear infection.*

Earphones, earrings (=jewellery that you wear on your ears), **earache, earlobe** (= the soft part at the bottom of your ear), and **eardrum** (= the part inside your ear that vibrates with sounds) are written as one word.

PREPOSITIONS

in your ear *It feels like there's something in my ear.*

behind your ears *She tucked her hair behind her ears.*

early *adj, adv*

1 arriving or happening before the usual or expected time

VERBS

arrive early/be early *Some of the guests arrived early.*

leave early *I had to leave early, so I missed the end of the party.*

be/get/come home early *Your father said he'd be home early.*

get up/wake up/be up early *Set the alarm for six - I have to be up early tomorrow.*

go to bed early *I think I'll go to bed early tonight.*

NOUNS

an early lunch/dinner *Let's have an early lunch before we go.*

an early night (=when you go to bed earlier than usual) *I need an early night because I'm tired.*

an early start (=when you have to get up earlier than usual in the morning) *I should go to bed. I've got an early start in the morning.*

early retirement *She took early retirement at the age of 52.*

sb's early death (=when someone is not very old) *The early death of her father at the age of 45 had a profound effect on her.*

PREPOSITIONS

early for sth *I arrived early for my appointment.*

PHRASES

five minutes/three hours etc early *The bus left five minutes early, and I missed it.*

ANTONYMS **early** → **late (1)**

2 in the first part of a period of time, event, or process

NOUNS

early morning/afternoon/evening *The lake looked beautiful in the early morning light.*

early spring/summer/autumn *The plants produce flowers in the early spring.*

early August/January etc *Italy is lovely in early June, before it gets too hot.*

the early days/weeks/months/years of sth *In the early years of our marriage, we lived with my wife's parents.*

the early 1870s/1920s etc (=1870-73, 1920-23 etc) *He lived in London in the early 1980s.*

the early 17th/20th etc century *She was born in the early 19th century.*

the early part of sth *I was doing quite well in the early part of the race.*

an early stage *His illness is at an early stage.*

sb's early childhood/life *We've known each other since early childhood.*

sb's earliest memory *One of my earliest memories is of sitting on the beach with my dad.*

sb's early work *The artist's early work focused on nature.*

an early sign *Chest pains can be an early sign of heart disease.*

PREPOSITIONS

early in sth *We set off early in the morning.*

in early May/June etc *They decided that the wedding would be on a Saturday in early July.*

in early 1998/2004 etc *We moved to Tokyo in early 2004.*

be in your early twenties/forties etc (=aged 20-23, 40-43 etc) *Both men are in their early twenties.*

PHRASES

at/from an early age *He played the piano from a very early age.*

as early as *The money could be paid as early as next week.*

early yesterday/today *Mike called me earlier today.*

these are (still) early days (=used when it is too soon to say what will happen) *We have made a lot of progress, but these are still early days.*

ANTONYMS

early → **late (2)**

earn ^v

1 to receive a particular amount of money for the work that you do

NOUNS

earn money *I'd like to earn more money than I do now.*

earn a ... wage/salary *You are more likely to earn a decent wage if you have a degree.*

earn a living (also **earn your living**) (=earn the money you need to live) *She earns a living by giving music lessons.*

earn £30,000 a year/\$200 a week/£5 an hour etc *Newly qualified teachers earn a minimum of £24,000 a year.*

earn good money *informal* (=earn a lot of money) *She was earning good money at the bank.*

earn a fortune *informal* (=earn an extremely large amount of money) *Footballers at the top clubs earn a fortune these days.*

THESAURUS: earn

receive, obtain, acquire, gain, win, earn, inherit, get hold of sth → **get (1)**

2 to get something as a result of your efforts - used especially when saying that someone deserves to get something

Grammar

In this meaning, **earn** is often used with **himself/herself**: *He had earned himself a reputation as a great artist.*

NOUNS

earn (sb) a reputation *The company has earned a reputation for excellent customer service.*

earn (sb) a nickname/title *Ray Charles's song-writing skills earned him the nickname of 'the Genius'.*

earn (sb's) respect/praise/admiration *He quickly earned the respect of his colleagues.*

earn (sb) the right to sth *I feel I've worked hard and have earned the right to a good pension.*

earn (sb) a place in sth *His performance earned him a place in the national team.*

PHRASES

well-earned *He is taking a well-earned rest from work.*

hard-earned *People spend a lot of their hard-earned money on holidays.*

earnings ⁿ

the money that you receive for the work that you do

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + earnings

average earnings *Average earnings for teachers are around \$70,000.*

hourly/weekly/monthly earnings *Some football players have weekly earnings of over £50,000.*

high earnings *Professional people pay more tax, because of their higher earnings.*

low earnings *The new government policy is designed to help people on low earnings.*

annual earnings *His annual earnings are over £1 million.*

future earnings *With serious injuries, the court may award substantial damages for loss of future earnings.*

gross earnings (=before tax has been paid) *You can usually borrow up to three times the value of your gross earnings per year.*

net earnings (=after tax has been paid) *The company's net earnings have fallen over the last two years.*

export earnings (=money a company earns by exporting goods or services) *Export earnings from oil bring valuable overseas currency into the country.*

PHRASES

loss of earnings *The insurance policy covers you for loss of earnings due to illness.*

THESAURUS: earnings

pay, wages, income, earnings, the money → **salary**

earring ⁿ

a piece of jewellery that you wear on your ear

PHRASES

a pair of earrings *She was wearing a pair of beautiful diamond earrings.*

VERBS

wear earrings *We are not allowed to wear earrings at school.*

put on/take off your earrings *I forgot to put on my new earrings.*

earth ⁿ

1 the planet that we live on

In this meaning **earth** is often used in the phrase **the Earth**, which is often spelled with a capital 'E'.

PHRASES

the Earth's surface *Over 70% of the Earth's surface is covered by ocean.*

the Earth's atmosphere *The Earth's atmosphere blocks off all radiation from space other than light and radio waves.*

the Earth's climate *The level of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere has an influence on the Earth's climate.*

the Earth's gravity *The continual pull of the Earth's gravity on the Moon has affected the way that it has evolved.*

the Earth's orbit (=a regular movement around it) *The rocket left the Earth's orbit and set off to Mars.*

the Earth's crust *Volcanoes and earthquakes occur where there is movement in the Earth's crust.*

the Earth's core (=the central part) *The Earth's inner core is almost entirely composed of iron.*

VERBS

the Earth orbits sth (=it moves around it) *The Earth orbits the Sun once a year, and the Moon orbits the Earth approximately every 27 days.*

sth orbits the Earth *A space satellite was orbiting the Earth.*

the Earth revolves/rotates *Because of the direction in which the Earth revolves, the Sun always rises in the east and sets in the west.*

fall to earth *The rocket fell back to earth.*

NOUNS + earth

planet Earth *I'm reading a book about the origin of life on planet Earth.*

PREPOSITIONS

on earth *Mount Everest is the highest mountain on earth.*

2 the substance that plants grow in

ADJECTIVES

wet/damp/moist earth *His feet were slipping on the damp earth.*

dry earth *She picked up a handful of the dry earth.*

bare earth (=not covered by trees or grass) *There were no flowers or grass in the yard, just bare earth.*

soft earth *The wheels got stuck in the soft earth.*

the earth is hard *It hadn't rained for weeks and the earth was hard.*

freshly dug earth *We planted seeds in the freshly dug earth.*

PHRASES

a mound of earth (=a pile of earth that looks like a small hill) *A mound of earth lay beside the grave.*

a clod/clump/lump of earth (=a piece of earth) *The horse's hooves kicked up great clods of earth.*

earthquake ⁿ

a sudden shaking of the Earth's surface that often causes a lot of damage

ADJECTIVES

a big/large/major earthquake *The city was hit by a big earthquake.*

a powerful/strong earthquake *A powerful earthquake shook the northwest of the country.*

a great/massive/huge earthquake *San Francisco was destroyed by the great earthquake of 1906.*

a small/minor earthquake *Minor earthquakes are relatively common.*

a devastating earthquake (=causing a lot of damage) *The whole town was flattened by a devastating earthquake.*

VERBS

an earthquake happens (also **an earthquake occurs** formal): *Scientists cannot predict when an earthquake will occur.*

an earthquake hits/strikes a place (=happens in a particular place) *A huge earthquake hit Japan in March 2011.*

an earthquake destroys/damages sth *The earthquake completely destroyed most of the town.*

an earthquake shakes sth *A powerful earthquake shook buildings across a large region of western Indonesia.*

earthquake + NOUNS

an earthquake zone *The city is in an earthquake zone.*

PHRASES

an earthquake measures 5/6.4 etc on the Richter scale *The earthquake, which measured 7.6 on the Richter scale, left more than 20,000 people homeless.*

the magnitude of an earthquake (=how powerful it is) *The magnitude of the earthquake was 5.8.*

the epicentre of an earthquake (=the exact place on the Earth's surface above where an

earthquake begins) *The town was close to the epicentre of the earthquake.*

ease¹ *n*

if you do something with ease, you do it easily

PHRASES

with ease *He passed the test with ease.*

for ease of sth (=in order to make something easy) *The boxes can be fitted together for ease of storage.*

ADJECTIVES

with great/considerable ease (=very easily) *The car handles these mountain roads with great ease.*

with surprising ease *We were impressed by the surprising ease with which she completed the tasks.*

with relative/comparative ease (=seeming easy, especially considering how difficult something is) *Most modern laptops can store large amounts of data with relative ease.*

with apparent ease (=seeming easy, although this may not be the case) *I was amazed by the apparent ease with which the thieves got through the security system.*

with consummate ease *formal* (=in a way that shows great skill and so makes something difficult look very easy) *She defeated her opponent with consummate ease.*

with practised ease (=with great skill that comes from doing something many times) *He hits the ball with practised ease.*

ease² *v* **THESAURUS** reduce

east *adj, adv, n*

the direction from which the sun rises, or the part of a place that is in this direction

east + NOUNS

the east side/end *We live on the east side of the city.*

the east coast *There are some lovely beaches on the east coast.*

the east bank *The village of Skelton lies on the east bank of the River Ouse.*

an east wind (=a wind from the east) *The weather will be cold, with a bitter east wind.*

ADVERBS

further east *I had never been further east than Brooklyn.*

due east (=directly east) *The village lies about five miles due east of York.*

VERBS

go/travel/head east *They travelled east until they reached the border with Hungary.*

face east *The garden faces east.*

PREPOSITIONS

in the east *The sun rises in the east.*

to/towards the east *Berlin is 50 miles from here, to the east.*

from the east *The road enters the city from the east.*

the east of a place *The east of Australia has all the major cities.*

The East

When people talk about **the East**, they mean countries in Asia such as India and China. **The East** sounds exotic – a place with traditions and customs that are very different from **the West**.

The **Far East** includes Japan, Korea, and China. The **Middle East** includes Egypt, Israel, Saudi Arabia, and Iran.

easy *adj*

not difficult to do, and not needing much effort or not causing any problems

NOUNS

an easy job/task (=often used in negative sentences) *Persuading John to come with us is not going to be an easy task.*

an easy question *All you have to do is answer a few easy questions and you could win a prize.*

an easy test/exam *The test was really easy and I got 100%.*

an easy solution/answer *It's a problem which has no easy solution.*

the easy way *The easiest way to reach the island is by boat.*

the easy option (=the easiest thing you can do) *It is human nature to take the easy option.*

an easy time/day *It is not an easy time to be looking for a job.*

an easy target (=one that is easy to attack) *The bird flies very slowly, which makes it an easy target for hunters.*

easy access *The town has easy access to London.*

an easy decision *Moving to a different country was not an easy decision for either of us.*

an easy life *I just wanted an easy life with no worries.*

an easy victory/win *The team had an easy victory on Saturday.*

ADVERBS

quite/fairly/pretty easy *It is fairly easy to create your own website.*

relatively/comparatively easy *The drug is relatively easy to produce.*

surprisingly/remarkably easy *He had a surprisingly easy victory over Federer.*

VERBS

find sth easy *I find it easy to talk to her.*

make sth easy *The software makes it easier to download music.*

look/sound easy *She makes dancing look so easy.*

become/get easier *The exercise is difficult but it does get easier with practice.*

PREPOSITIONS

easy for sb *It's easy for you – you're good at maths.*

PHRASES

it is easy to see/understand *It is easy to see why he is so popular.*

sth is easy to use/make/find *Good software should be easy to use.*

as easy as pie/as easy as ABC *informal (=very easy) It's as easy as pie to order from the website.*

nice and easy *I love spaghetti! It's so nice and easy to cook.*

THESAURUS: easy

simple

answer | question | explanation | instructions | thing | solution | way | method | system | terms | rules | idea | test

easy to understand or do, because there are no complicated words, processes, or actions involved:

I just want a simple answer – yes or no. | Patients need a simple explanation of how the disease is likely to affect them. | Vaccination is such a simple thing, and it can save many lives. | The simplest solution would be to cancel the event. | They developed a simple system for sending messages over long distances. | The guide explains in simple terms how to use the dictionary. | This book gives you plenty of simple ideas for healthy meals.

Simple or easy?

If something is **simple**, it is not complicated: *The book is written in simple language, which anyone can understand.* If something is **easy**, it is not difficult to do: *The program is very easy to use.*

straightforward

matter | task | approach | process | explanation | answer | question | case

easy to understand or do, and unlikely to cause you any problems:

Applying for a licence is a relatively straightforward matter. | The most straightforward approach is to ask the customer exactly what they want. | I asked a straightforward question, and I'd appreciate a straightforward answer. | When she explained how to fill in the form, it all sounded perfectly straightforward (=completely straightforward).

user-friendly

guide | computer | software | website | interface | product | car | camera | phone | feature

easy to use:

The book is a user-friendly guide to setting up

your own business. | The company's website is now much more user-friendly. | Their products are designed to be user-friendly.

undemanding

job | role

easy because it does not take a lot of effort: *The job was undemanding, but it didn't pay very well. | It was an undemanding role for someone of his experience.*

mindless

job | task

so easy that you can do it without thinking – used especially when it makes you feel bored:

I got a mindless job in a factory.

painless

without any difficulties or problems – used especially when you expected something to be much worse:

Finding the car hire place at the airport was relatively painless. | There is no quick fix or painless solution to this problem.

cushy informal

job

a cushy job is easy to do and needs very little effort – often used when you are envious of the person who has it:

It's a pretty cushy job – all she has to do is drive a nice car around. | He earns £5,000 a week for two days' work – most people would consider that a very cushy number (=a very easy job).

Other ways of saying that something is easy

There are many other ways of saying that something is **easy**. You can say that something is **plain sailing**, if there are no problems: *If you get the measurements right, the rest is plain sailing.* If something is not complicated to do, you can say that it is **not rocket science**: *Building a wind turbine is not exactly rocket science.* If something is surprisingly easy to do, you can say that it is **child's play**: *Woods makes the game look like child's play.* In informal English, if something is very easy, you can say that it is a **piece of cake**: *"How was the interview?" "It was a piece of cake."*

ANTONYMS easy → difficult

eat

v
to put food in your mouth and chew and swallow it

NOUNS

eat food *Is your baby eating the right food?*

eat meat (=include it in your diet) *She doesn't eat meat, so I made her a tomato omelette.*

eat a healthy/balanced/vegetarian etc diet

It's important to eat a balanced diet.

eat breakfast/lunch/dinner/supper *What time do you usually eat lunch?*

ADVERBS

eat well (=have enough food, or have good food) *The people work hard, but they eat well.*

eat healthily/sensibly *If you eat healthily and exercise regularly, you'll look and feel a lot better.*

eat properly BrE, **eat right** AmE (=eat food that will keep you healthy) *He hadn't been eating properly and looked very thin. | I exercise and eat right and get plenty of sleep.*

eat hungrily/ravenously (=eat a lot quickly, because you are very hungry) *The children ate hungrily, devouring everything on their plate.*

eat heartily (=eat a lot of food) *We ate heartily every evening.*

eat sparingly (=eat very little) *Carter joined us for lunch, but ate sparingly.*

PHRASES

something to eat *I'm sure you can get something to eat on the train.*

a bite to eat (=a small meal or snack) *We should have time for a bite to eat before we set out.*

nothing to eat *I've had nothing to eat all day.*

have enough/plenty to eat *Have you had enough to eat?*

go out to eat (=eat at a restaurant) *Would you like to go out to eat?*

eat like a horse (=eat a lot) *She eats like a horse but never puts on any weight.*

eat like a bird (=eat very little) *Ever since she was a child, Jan had always eaten like a bird.*

Eat or have?

You use **eat** when talking about having food in your mouth and biting or chewing it: *He was **eating** a banana.* You can use **eat** when talking about someone's diet: *She doesn't **eat** meat.* You can also use **eat** about the time when you eat: *We usually **eat** at about 1 o'clock.*

You use **have** when talking about eating a particular food for a meal: *We usually **have** porridge for breakfast. | I think I'll **have** a cheese sandwich.*

When talking about meals, it is more common to say **have breakfast/lunch/dinner**: *You must **have** lunch with us some time.*

eater *n*

used when talking about how much someone eats, or what kinds of things someone eats

ADJECTIVES

a big eater (=someone who usually eats large meals) *I'm not a very big eater.*

a good eater (=someone who eats plenty of food and is not difficult to please) *All her children were good eaters.*

a healthy eater (=someone who eats healthy food) *Do you think healthy eaters live longer?*

a picky/fussy eater (=someone who will only eat particular things, and is difficult to please) *My son's a very picky eater, and only eats bread and peanut butter.*

a messy eater (=someone who drops food and makes a mess when they eat) *He's a very messy eater – he leaves crumbs all over the floor.*

a noisy eater (=someone who makes unpleasant noises with their mouth as they eat) *I can't stand noisy eaters!*

a compulsive eater (=someone who cannot stop themselves eating too much) *Most compulsive eaters suffer from a range of psychological problems.*

NOUNS + eater

a meat eater (=a person or animal that eats meat) *I'm not a big meat eater, but I do like chicken.*

a plant/fruit eater (=an animal that only eats plants, fruit etc) *Most insects are plant eaters.*

eccentric *adj*

behaving in a way that is unusual and different from most people

ADVERBS

a little eccentric (also **a bit eccentric** especially BrE): *Aunt Nessy is a little eccentric and she keeps all her money under her bed.*

rather/somewhat eccentric *He has his own rather eccentric taste in furniture.*

highly eccentric *The writer has a highly eccentric view of the world.*

increasingly eccentric *His behaviour became increasingly eccentric and his family were worried about him.*

eccentric + NOUNS

eccentric behaviour/habits *He has a number of eccentric habits, including keeping cockroaches as pets.*

eccentric personality *Some Hollywood actors are known for their eccentric personalities.*

eccentric appearance *She was wearing an enormous straw hat, which added to her eccentric appearance.*

VERBS

consider sb/sth (to be) eccentric (=think that someone or something is eccentric) *In those days it was considered rather eccentric for a woman to be a farmer.*

regard sb/sth as eccentric (=think that someone or something is eccentric) *He always wore the same jacket and his colleagues regarded him as somewhat eccentric.*

2 the thin sharp part of a blade or other tool that cuts

ADJECTIVES

a sharp edge *You need a blade with a really sharp edge.*

a jagged edge (=with a series of uneven sharp points) *The stone had a dangerous jagged edge like broken glass.*

a rough edge *He cut his hand on the rough edge of the wall.*

a serrated edge (=with a row of sharp points for cutting) *The bread knife has a serrated edge.*

edition [Ac] *n*

the form that a book, newspaper, magazine etc is produced in

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + edition

a new edition *They published a new edition of his poems.*

a revised edition (=one that has more information than a previous edition, or contains corrections) *The revised edition includes a chapter on modern art.*

the first/second/third etc edition (=the first, second etc set of copies to be published) *The first edition of the novel was published in 2010.*

a later edition *The mistake was corrected in a later edition of the book.*

a special edition *They produced a special edition of the magazine, to celebrate its 50th anniversary.*

a limited edition (=only a limited number of copies are produced) *The band has released a new limited edition CD.*

an online edition (=published on the internet) *The article was only available in the online edition of the newspaper.*

the hardback/paperback edition *The paperback edition costs £7.99.*

an abridged edition (=shorter because some original sections have been removed) *An abridged edition of the book was produced for children.*

VERBS

publish an edition *The first edition of the book was published in 1982.*

produce/release/bring out an edition *A special edition of the paper was produced.*

an edition comes out/appears (=is published or produced) *An English edition of the poems appeared in the same year.*

PREPOSITIONS

an edition of sth *The article appeared in the US edition of the paper.*

education *n*

the process of teaching and learning

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + education

a good education *It is important to get a good education.*

a poor education (=not very good) *She had a poor education, and left school without qualifications.*

an all-round education (=including a balance of lots of different subjects) *The school offers a good all-round education.*

full-time education (=spending every weekday in a school or college) *Children must stay in full-time education until the age of 16.*

state education BrE, **public education** AmE (=provided by the government) *The state of California guarantees free public education to all children.*

private education (=that people have to pay for) *I don't agree with the principle of private education.*

formal education (=from teachers at school or college, rather than learning by yourself) *She had no formal education and was brought up by her grandmother.*

higher education (=at universities) *When he starts university in October, he will be the first member of his family to go into higher education.*

further education BrE (=at colleges after leaving school) *The government aims to provide further education for everyone.*

secondary education (=for students between 11 and 18 years old) *She hopes to start a teaching career in secondary education.*

primary education BrE, **elementary education** AmE (=for children aged between 5 and 11) *The government has announced plans to improve the quality of primary school education.*

nursery/pre-school education (=for children aged under 5) *The funding will provide nursery education for all four-year-olds.*

adult education (=for adults) *They run adult education classes at the local community college.*

vocational education (=relating to skills needed for a particular job) *We offer vocational education and job training.*

a university/college education *Did you have a university education?*

VERBS

have an education *Most teachers have had a university education.*

get/receive an education *Some children grow up without receiving any education.*

give/provide an education *The school aims to provide a good general education.*

stay in education *He decided to get a job rather than stay in education.*

continue your education *I hope to continue my education after high school.*

complete/finish your education *He went back to the US to finish his education.*

deny sb an education *Young people are being denied a good education.*

enter education formal: *The number of students entering higher education has risen.*

education + NOUNS

the education system *Japan's education system is very different from that of Britain.*

education policy *The teaching unions are calling for the government to review its education policy.*

education reform *They talked about the government's programme of education reform.*

the local education authority *BrE: The school is funded by the local education authority.*

PREPOSITIONS

the education of sb *The education of women was inadequate.*

eerie *adj* **THESAURUS** **frightening**

effect *n*

a change that is caused by something

ADJECTIVES

a big/major effect *The increase in oil prices will have a big effect on the economy.*

an important/significant/substantial effect *Climate change will have a significant effect on agriculture.*

a powerful/profound/strong effect *My father's death had a profound effect on me.*

a dramatic effect (=very big and sudden) *The treatment had a dramatic effect.*

a good/positive effect (also **a beneficial effect** *formal*): *The holiday had a good effect on him and he felt much more relaxed.*

a bad/negative effect *Stress has a very negative effect on people's health.*

a detrimental/adverse effect *formal* (=a bad effect) *Any tax increase will have an adverse effect on economic growth.*

a harmful/damaging effect (=causing harm or damage to something or someone) *We all know about the harmful effects of drinking too much alcohol.*

an immediate effect *The painkillers had an immediate effect.*

a visible/noticeable/marked effect (=that you can clearly see) *The punishment didn't seem to have any visible effect on his behaviour.*

the long-term/short-term effect (=for a long or short time) *The disease can have serious long-term effects.*

the full effect *People are starting to feel the full effect of the world economic crisis.*

a knock-on effect (=an effect on one thing which then affects other things) *The strike could have a knock-on effect at other airports.*

a cumulative effect (=the effect of many things happening one after the other) *The cumulative effect of the government's policies will be to push up inflation.*

the desired effect (=the effect you want) *His team talk had the desired effect because the team went on to win the game.*

VERBS

have an effect *The war had a big effect on people's lives.*

produce an effect *If you mix the two colours together, it produces an interesting effect.*

feel an effect (=notice it) *Small companies will feel the effect of the recession first.*

suffer (from) the effects of sth *The people in this area are still suffering from the effects of the famine.*

lessen/reduce/minimize an effect (=make an effect smaller or less severe) *The government must take action to reduce the effects of pollution.*

an effect lasts (=continues) *The effect of the drug lasts about six hours.*

an effect wears off (=gradually stops) *The effect of the anaesthetic was beginning to wear off.*

cushion the effect of sth (=make it less bad) *A tax cut helped cushion the effect of rising fuel prices.*

deal with the effects of sth *These people are already dealing with the effects of climate change.*

PREPOSITIONS

an effect on sth *What is the effect of a rise in temperature on the plant?*

PHRASES

have the effect of doing sth *The news had the effect of making everyone feel better.*

have little or no effect *The treatment had little or no effect and he went back to his doctor.*

cause and effect (=when one thing directly causes another) *History is more than a simple case of cause and effect.*

a domino effect (=when one event or action causes several other things to happen, one after the other) *If a major bank fails, we could see a domino effect leading to a global banking crisis.*

the greenhouse effect (=the gradual warming of the air surrounding the Earth as a result of heat being trapped by pollution) *Car exhaust fumes add to the greenhouse effect.*

effective *adj*

successful, and working in the way that was intended

ADVERBS

extremely/highly/superbly effective *The company launched a highly effective advertising campaign.*

remarkably/surprisingly/amazingly effective *The cleaning fluid he was using had been remarkably effective.*

reasonably/moderately effective *The advertisements were only moderately effective.*

increasingly/more and more effective *American industries faced increasingly effective competition from other countries.*

devastatingly effective (=extremely effective)

egg *n*

1 a round object that contains a baby bird, snake, insect etc

VERBS

lay an egg *Blackbirds lay their eggs in March.*

fertilize an egg (=provide the male cell that will help create a baby bird, snake etc) *After the female fish has laid the eggs, the male comes along and fertilizes them.*

incubate an egg (=keep it warm so that it will hatch) *The female bird incubates the eggs.*

an egg hatches (=it opens and the baby bird, snake etc comes out) *The eggs hatch after 26 days.*

2 an egg, especially one from a chicken, that is used for food

ADJECTIVES

free-range eggs (=from chickens that are not kept in cages and are able to move freely outside) *The restaurant uses only free-range eggs.*

organic eggs (=from chickens that are not kept in cages and that are fed foods without chemicals) *Organic eggs are usually more expensive, but you know the chickens are well looked after.*

a boiled egg *We sometimes have boiled eggs for breakfast.*

a fried egg *I'm having fried eggs and hash brown potatoes.*

a poached egg (=cooked in a little water) *She made us poached eggs on toast.*

scrambled egg (=cooked with the yellow and white parts mixed together) *He had a quick meal of scrambled eggs and coffee.*

a raw egg (=not cooked) *Some raw eggs contain a bacteria called salmonella.*

a bad/rotten egg *The crowd threw rotten eggs at the stage.*

Easter eggs

These are usually made of hollow chocolate, with small pieces of chocolate or candy inside.

egg + NOUNS

an egg yolk (=the yellow part of an egg) *The little boy dipped his toast into the egg yolk.*

an egg white (=the part that is not the yolk) *Add the egg whites to the icing sugar and beat them together.*

VERBS

boil/fry/cook an egg *Boil the eggs for four minutes.*

break/crack an egg *Rodney broke two eggs into the frying pan.*

beat/whisk an egg *Beat the eggs in a bowl, then add the milk and flour.*

PHRASES

eggs over easy *AmE* (=eggs that have been fried on both sides) *He orders eggs over easy, bacon, and sliced tomatoes.*

bacon and eggs/ham and eggs *We had a quick meal of bacon and eggs.*

You usually say **bacon and eggs**, or **ham and eggs**, rather than 'eggs and bacon' or 'eggs and ham'.

ego *n*

the opinion that you have about yourself

ADJECTIVES

a big/large/huge/enormous/massive ego (=when you think you are very intelligent or important) *Richard has the biggest ego of anyone I've ever met.*

a fragile ego (=when you lose confidence easily) *She works with actors and is used to dealing with fragile egos.*

the male ego *I didn't want to hurt his feelings, as I know how fragile the male ego is.*

VERBS

have a big/large etc ego *Unfortunately, Carson has a big ego but no talent.*

boost/build up/bolster sb's ego (=make someone feel more confident about their abilities) *The promotion really boosted her ego.*

ego + NOUNS

an ego trip *disapproving informal* (=a situation in which someone feels pleased because they think they are important and other people admire them) *The film is a huge ego trip for the director.*

an ego boost (=something that makes you feel much more confident about yourself) *Getting the prize was a real ego boost.*

PHRASES

be good for sb's ego *Someone said she looked ten years younger, which was very good for her ego.*

it's an ego thing *informal* (=it is caused by someone worrying about their ego) *Men want to be best at everything - I guess it's an ego thing.*

elaborate *adj* **THESAURUS** **complicated**

elder *adj* older

elder + NOUNS

an elder brother/sister *He has two elder brothers.*

an elder daughter/son/child *Her elder son Liam became a lawyer.*

an elder sibling *formal* (=elder brother or sister) *His elder siblings looked after him.*

an elder statesman (=an old and respected politician) *Deng is one of China's leading elder statesmen.*

You can also use **elder** as a noun: *Sarah is the elder of the two.*

Elder or older?

Elder and **older** mean the same. **Elder** is more formal and is usually used about family members. The same is true of **eldest** and **oldest**.

elderly *adj*

old – often used about an old person who is weak or has bad health because of their age

elderly + NOUNS

an elderly man/woman/lady/gentleman

I stood up and offered my seat to an elderly gentleman on the bus.

an elderly person *There are more elderly people attending the church than there are young people.*

an elderly mother/father/parent *She has to take care of her elderly parents.*

an elderly relative *Elderly relatives are often put in retirement homes.*

an elderly couple *An elderly couple sat drinking tea at one of the tables.*

ADVERBS

very elderly *His aunt is very elderly and she needs full-time care.*

You can also use **elderly** as a noun: *She works in a home for **the elderly**.*

Elderly or old?

Elderly sounds more formal than **old**. It makes the person sound weak and needing help. Some people consider that **elderly** is not politically correct.

THESAURUS: elderly

elderly, aging, aged, ancient, antique, historic, vintage, age-old → **old** (1)

elect *v*

to choose someone for an official position by voting

NOUNS

elect sb (as) leader/president/mayor etc *Chavez was elected president in 1998.*

elect a government *Voters will elect a new government on November 26.*

elect a representative/elect sb as a representative *Lucio was elected as a state representative in 2006.*

Grammar

The passive form **elected** is often used before nouns, like an adjective: *Rebels tried to overthrow the **elected** government.* |

***Elected** officials are not allowed to accept money from the public.*

ADVERBS

democratically elected *This is the country's first democratically elected government.*

freely elected (=elected in a fair election) *He is the Congo's first freely elected president in more than 40 years.*

newly elected *What would be your advice to the newly elected president?*

duly elected (=as people expected) *Edwards was duly elected as treasurer at the next annual meeting.*

elect sb unanimously (=all of the people in a group vote for someone) *The new chairman was elected unanimously by the members of the board.*

PREPOSITIONS

be elected to Parliament/Congress etc *He was the first Muslim to be elected to Congress.*

elect sb as leader/president/chairman etc *The people elected her as their leader.*

THESAURUS: elect

cast your vote, go to the polls, elect, re-elect, ballot, veto → **vote**¹

election *n*

an occasion when people vote to choose someone for an official position

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + election

a general/national election (=in which the whole country votes to elect a government) *The party's victory in the general election gave them a huge majority.*

a local/regional election *The Green Party increased its share of the vote in the French regional elections.*

a presidential election (=for electing a new president) *He is the Democrat Party's candidate for the next presidential election.*

a leadership election (=for electing a new leader for a political party) *The result of the leadership election will be announced today.*

a mayoral election (=for electing a new mayor) *The mayoral elections are due to take place next month.*

fair/democratic elections *We are confident we can win, if the elections are fair.*

free elections (=with everyone allowed to vote for who they want) *These will be the country's first free multi-party elections.*

a congressional/parliamentary election (=for electing people to Congress or Parliament) *The Republican Party had considerable success in the congressional elections.*

a federal election (=for electing a federal government) *The federal elections are scheduled for May 2nd.*

VERBS

vote in an election *People under 18 years of age cannot vote in elections.*

elegant clothes/dress/suit/shoes *Italian people are often admired for their elegant clothes.*
elegant surroundings *We dined in the elegant surroundings of the royal palace.*

You can also use **elegant** about a solution that you admire because it is very simple and effective: *The French mathematician Pascal came up with an **elegant solution** to the problem.*

element [Ac] n

one part or feature of a whole system, plan, piece of work etc

ADJECTIVES

an important element *This one fact is the most important element of his theory.*

a key/major element (=very important and necessary) *Trust is a key element in any relationship.*

a vital/essential/crucial/critical element (=extremely important and necessary) *Her determination is a vital element of her success.*

the main element *The reform programme has three main elements.*

a basic/fundamental element *Milk and butter are the basic elements of these sauces.*

VERBS

contain/include/incorporate an element *For a joke to be funny, it must contain an element of truth.*

consist of elements *Any successful method will consist of these three elements.*

introduce an element *By offering a prize for the best design, you introduce an element of competition.*

PREPOSITIONS

an element of sth *Music is an important element of these TV shows.*

an element in sth *Marketing is an essential element in the success of any business.*

elementary adj

1 very simple or basic

NOUNS

an elementary mistake/error *The team made a number of elementary mistakes.*

the elementary principles/rules/laws of sth *The article shows an ignorance of even the most elementary principles of physics.*

elementary level *The coursebook is designed for students at elementary level, who want to improve their language skills.*

an elementary course *She did an elementary course in mathematics at school.*

elementary science/maths/biology etc *I took elementary science for two terms.*

THESAURUS: elementary

plain, crude → **simple**

2 relating to the first six years of a child's education

NOUNS

an elementary school *She went to the local elementary school.*

an elementary teacher *After college, I decided I wanted to become an elementary teacher.*

elementary education *The children spend six years in elementary education and three years in junior high school.*

In British English, people usually say **primary**: a **primary school** | **primary education**

elevator n AmE

a machine that takes people and goods from one level to another in a building

VERBS

take the elevator *My office is on the fourth floor, so I usually take the elevator.*

ride the elevator (=take the elevator) *Glen walked through the lobby, and rode the elevator to the eleventh floor.*

use the elevator *Do not use the elevators in the event of a fire.*

get into/out of/off the elevator *I did not want to get into an elevator crowded with people.*

step into/out of/off the elevator *As he stepped into the elevator, the doors closed behind him.*

the elevator goes up/down *The elevator only goes up to the 23rd floor, and then you have walk up to the top floor.*

Elevator is used in American English. British people say **lift**.

eliminate [Ac] v

to completely get rid of something that is not needed or wanted

ADVERBS

eliminate sth completely/totally/entirely *Their aim is to completely eliminate the disease.*

be largely/virtually eliminated (=almost completely eliminated) *The use of these chemicals has now been virtually eliminated.*

effectively eliminate sth *The company has effectively eliminated all the competition and they now dominate the market.*

VERBS

try to eliminate sth (also **seek to eliminate sth** formal): *They are trying to eliminate the risk of people catching the disease.*

help to eliminate sth *Better lighting would help to eliminate the problem.*

be designed to eliminate sth *The bank's security measures are designed to eliminate fraud.*

NOUNS

- eliminate the need for sth** *The new system will eliminate the need for people to buy tickets from a ticket office.*
- eliminate the risk** *It is impossible to eliminate the risk of an accident completely.*
- eliminate the problem** *The engineers think that they have eliminated the problem.*
- eliminate the possibility of sth** *If you save the file on an external hard drive, this will eliminate the possibility of losing data.*
- eliminate poverty** *The government wants to eliminate child poverty.*
- eliminate waste** *We are always looking for new ways to eliminate waste and make the company more efficient.*

THESAURUS: eliminate

murder, assassinate, execute, eliminate, slay, massacre, slaughter, exterminate, wipe out, commit suicide, take your own life → **kill**

eloquent *adj*
able to express your ideas and opinions well when you are speaking in public, especially in a way that influences people

NOUNS

- an eloquent speaker** *The president is an eloquent speaker and he is good at persuading people to accept his arguments.*
- an eloquent speech** *She gave an eloquent speech about the need for reform.*
- an eloquent appeal/plea** *The head of the Red Cross made an eloquent appeal for aid to help the survivors.*

PHRASES

wax eloquent about sth *formal* (=talk a lot about something, in a very enthusiastic way)
The critics waxed eloquent about the show, and praised the actors for their performances.

THESAURUS: eloquent

- articulate**
able to talk or write about your ideas or feelings easily and effectively:
Girls are often more articulate and better at expressing their ideas than boys. | Jones emerged as the most articulate spokesman for the group.
- flowery language | prose**
flowery language uses words or phrases that are rare or difficult to understand, instead of simple clear language:

His books are full of flowery language and they can be rather hard to read. | It's best not to use flowery prose in a formal report.

You can also say that someone **has a way with words**, when you think that they are good at speaking or writing: *He has a wonderful way with words, and describes everyday events in a unique and interesting way.*

email, e-mail *n*
a system that allows you to send and receive messages by computer, or a message sent using this system

VERBS

- send (sb) an email** *I'll send you an email with all the details.*
- get/receive an email** *Didn't you get my email?*
- read an email** *It took most of the morning to read my emails.*
- write an email** *Jack spent the evening writing emails and surfing the internet.*
- reply to/answer an email** *She did not bother replying to his email.*
- check your email(s)** *The first thing I do every morning is check my email.*
- delete an email** *I accidentally deleted your email.*
- forward an email** (=send an email you have received to someone else) *Can you please forward this email to Chris?*

ADJECTIVES

a long email (also **a lengthy email** *formal*): *He sent me a long email explaining how I could improve my performance.*

email + NOUNS

- an email address** *What's your email address?*
- an email message** *I can send email messages on my phone.*
- an email attachment** (=a computer file sent in an email) *Don't open an email attachment unless you know who sent it.*
- an email account** *Kevin showed her how to open an email account.*
- email confirmation** (=an email that tells you something is definitely booked, ordered etc) *The airline sent email confirmation of our flights.*

PREPOSITIONS

by email *It's best to contact him by email.*

embargo *n*
an official order to stop trade with another country

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + embargo

a trade embargo *The EU threatened to impose a trade embargo.*

an acute embarrassment (=extremely severe) *The newspaper stories were an acute embarrassment to the president.*

a potential embarrassment (=something that could be an embarrassment) *The party is anxious to avoid a potential embarrassment just before the elections.*

VERBS

be/become an embarrassment *Your behaviour is becoming an embarrassment to the school.*

consider sb/sth an embarrassment (=think they are embarrassing) *His colleagues considered him an embarrassment and they decided to get rid of him.*

prove an embarrassment *formal* (=be an embarrassment) *The publication of the documents proved a severe embarrassment to the company.*

PREPOSITIONS

an embarrassment to/for sb *The scandals came as an embarrassment to the government.*

E embassy *n*

a group of officials who represent their government in a foreign country, or the building they work in

ADJECTIVES

the Chinese/French/British etc Embassy *I went to the American Embassy to get a visa.*

a foreign embassy *There are many foreign embassies in central London.*

embassy + NOUNS

an embassy official *Embassy officials have urged tourists not to travel to the region.*

embassy staff *The government ordered the Iranian ambassador and two other embassy staff to leave the country.*

an embassy spokesperson *An embassy spokesperson insisted that the story was not true.*

the embassy compound (=the embassy buildings and land) *People were trying to climb over the wall to get into the embassy compound.*

VERBS

open/close an embassy *Italy decided to close its embassy and withdraw its ambassador.*

take/seek refuge in an embassy (=go there and ask to be protected) *The man was forced to seek refuge in the US embassy.*

emergency *n*

an unexpected and dangerous situation that must be dealt with immediately

ADJECTIVES

a serious emergency *The police usually respond quickly to serious emergencies.*

an extreme emergency *These weapons should be used only in an extreme emergency.*

a major emergency *In a major emergency, the national guard may be called in.*

a sudden/unexpected/unforeseen emergency *I left early in case of traffic jams or any unforeseen emergency.*

a national emergency *With food supplies running dangerously low, the government declared a national emergency.*

a medical emergency *The patient's condition represented a serious medical emergency.*

VERBS

deal with an emergency *Several fire crews were called to deal with the emergency.*

cope with an emergency *Do you think that you could cope with an emergency?*

handle an emergency *There is always a doctor on call to handle emergencies.*

respond to an emergency (=go to the place where it happens and deal with it) *How long does it take an ambulance crew to respond to an emergency?*

declare an emergency (=say officially that there is an emergency situation and the government is taking action to deal with it) *The storm caused a lot of damage and the president declared a national emergency.*

emergency + NOUNS

the emergency services (=the police, fire service, and ambulance service) *There have been pay cuts for members of the emergency services.*

an emergency vehicle (=an ambulance or fire engine) *Emergency vehicles rushed to the scene.*

an emergency situation *The pilot and crew must stay calm in an emergency situation.*

an emergency landing *The plane made an emergency landing on the Hudson River.*

emergency treatment *The driver is receiving emergency treatment at Park Royal Hospital.*

an emergency operation *He had an emergency operation to save his sight.*

emergency aid/relief/help *The charity made a television appeal for emergency aid to the region.*

an emergency meeting/session *The government held an emergency meeting earlier today.*

emergency powers *The army was given emergency powers to help tackle the rising violence.*

emergency measures (=official actions in order to deal with an emergency situation) *The president announced emergency measures to deal with the financial crisis.*

PREPOSITIONS

in an emergency *She is able to stay very calm in an emergency.*

for emergencies *They keep extra supplies of food and fuel in the basement for emergencies.*

PHRASES

in case of emergency/in the event of an emergency (=if there is an emergency) *The*

fire-exit doors should only be opened in case of emergency.

eminent *adj* **THESAURUS** famous

emissions *n*

gases in the air that come from cars, factories etc

Grammar

Usually plural in this meaning, except in some noun phrases such as **emission levels**.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + emissions

carbon/carbon dioxide/greenhouse gas etc emissions *The treaty calls for a 30% reduction in carbon emissions.*

harmful emissions (=likely to cause harm to people or the environment) *The law is designed to limit harmful emissions.*

toxic emissions (=poisonous) *By the end of the decade, we could reduce toxic emissions by half.*

vehicle emissions (=from cars, lorries etc) *California has introduced tough new standards for vehicle emissions.*

industrial emissions (=from factories) *The trees are being killed by acid rain and other industrial emissions.*

VERBS

cut/reduce emissions *These countries signed an agreement to cut emissions of gases which contribute to global warming.*

control/limit emissions *Efforts to control carbon dioxide emissions have not been very effective.*

monitor emissions (=officially check how much pollution is being produced) *The department monitors emissions from factories around the country.*

emissions + NOUNS

emission levels (=the amount of emissions) *We want to see much lower emission levels throughout the industry.*

emissions targets (=a level that emissions should be reduced to) *Too many companies are failing to meet their emissions targets.*

emission(s) standards (=official rules or agreements about how much pollution can be produced) *There are strict emission standards for new vehicles.*

emission reduction/cuts *The government will continue to work towards emission reduction.*

emission controls *With stricter emission controls, we could see major improvements in air quality.*

emissions trading (=a system in which companies pay money if they produce more pollution than an official level) *We would like to see more industries joining the emissions trading scheme.*

PREPOSITIONS

emissions of sth *Since the new engine was*

introduced, there has been a sharp fall in emissions of carbon monoxide.

emissions from sth *Experts are concerned about emissions from the power station.*

emotion *n*

a strong human feeling such as love, hate, or anger

ADJECTIVES

a strong/intense emotion *The death penalty is a topic which arouses strong emotions.*

a powerful emotion *Grief is a very powerful emotion.*

a deep emotion (=strongly felt, but not always expressed) *He had never revealed these deep emotions to anyone.*

great emotion *She sings with great emotion.*

real/true/genuine emotion *There was real emotion in his voice.*

raw emotion (=shown clearly without any attempt to hide it) *The film is full of raw emotion.*

human emotions *We express human emotions through music and poetry.*

a painful emotion *Painful emotions, stored away in the patient's memory, can suddenly come flooding back.*

mixed/conflicting emotions (=a mixture of very different feelings) *She had mixed emotions about starting a new school.*

pent-up/suppressed emotions (=that someone feels but does not express) *Crying can release pent-up emotions.*

a positive emotion (=love, happiness, hope etc) *Try to focus on your positive emotions.*

a negative emotion (=anger, fear, hate etc) *It's not easy learning how to deal with negative emotions.*

VERBS

show/display emotion *He didn't show any emotion when I told him I was pregnant.*

express an emotion (=show or talk about it) *He had always found it difficult to express his emotions.*

feel/experience an emotion *Meeting his new wife, she felt a mixture of emotions.*

have emotions *Young people have strong emotions that they don't always know how to express.*

hide your emotions (also **conceal/suppress your emotions** formal); *Laura could not hide her emotions on seeing him again.*

control your emotions *She was behaving like a teenager who couldn't control her emotions.*

arouse/provoke emotions (=cause people to feel them) *Abortion is a subject that arouses strong emotions.*

stir up people's emotions (=deliberately try to make people full of anger and hate) *He accused politicians of trying to stir up people's emotions.*

PREPOSITIONS

with emotion *His voice was shaking with emotion.*

PHRASES

full of emotion (=showing or feeling strong emotions, especially sadness) *When she spoke, her voice was full of emotion.*

overcome with emotion (=feeling it so strongly that you cannot behave normally) *As soon as I heard that song, I was overcome with emotion.*

choked with emotion (=feeling so much that you cannot speak normally) *Mr Ford's voice was choked with emotion as he addressed the mourners.*

devoid of emotion *formal* (=not showing or feeling any emotion) *I find his books completely devoid of emotion.*

a lack of emotion *I was shocked by her apparent lack of emotion.*

a display/expression of emotion *Open displays of emotion made him uncomfortable.*

a sign of emotion *He showed no sign of emotion as the guilty verdict was read out.*

a wave/flood/surge/rush of emotion (=a sudden very strong emotion) *A great surge of emotion swept through her when she learnt that he was safe.*

emotions are running high (=people in a particular situation have very strong feelings, especially feelings that could lead to violence) *The police were aware that emotions in the city were running very high.*

emotional *adj*

1 feeling or causing strong feelings of sadness or happiness

ADVERBS

very/highly emotional *It was a highly emotional moment when they renewed their wedding vows.*

quite/pretty emotional *He became quite emotional at the end of his speech.*

VERBS

feel emotional *I felt very emotional when I returned to the house where I was born.*

get/become emotional *Everyone got quite emotional when he left.*

NOUNS

an emotional experience *The funeral was a very emotional experience for his family.*

an emotional reunion (=a meeting in which you cry because you have not seen someone for a long time) *She had an emotional reunion with her father, who she had not seen for over ten years.*

an emotional farewell *Fans gathered outside the church to bid an emotional farewell to the singer who died last week.*

an emotional moment *It was a very emotional moment and they both wept tears of joy.*

an emotional scene *There were emotional scenes in the court as the killer was led away to prison.*

an emotional speech/appeal/plea *The parents of the missing girl made an emotional appeal for her return.*

an emotional roller coaster (=a situation which causes you to feel very happy, then very sad) *Her relationship with the singer was an emotional roller coaster.*

THESAURUS: emotional

emotive

issue | subject | word | language

making people have strong feelings, so that they want to argue with each other:

Fox hunting is a very emotive issue in Britain. | Animal experiments are a highly emotive subject. | 'Propaganda' is a highly emotive word. | His speech was full of emotive language.

moving

story | account | film | experience | tribute

making you have strong feelings, especially of sadness, sympathy, or pity:

The book is a moving story about a young boy's search for his mother. | I found the film deeply moving. | Jeremy paid a moving tribute to his wife.

touching

story | gesture | faith

affecting your emotions and making you feel sympathy, especially because someone shows how much they care about another person or animal. **Touching** is less strong than **moving**:

She wrote a touching story about a little girl and her dog. | My son phoned me to wish me good luck, which was a touching gesture. | I found his faith in his parents rather touching. | There was something rather touching about the letter.

poignant

reminder | memory | moment | image

making you feel strong feelings of sadness or pity, especially because you remember something in the past:

The ruins are a poignant reminder of the city's glorious past. | The visit clearly brought back poignant memories. | There are some poignant moments in the film.

sentimental

film | song | comedy | story

dealing with emotions such as love and sadness in a way that seems silly:

I found the film too sentimental. | The play is a sentimental comedy. | Her stories have been criticized for being too sentimental.

highly charged

atmosphere | meeting | debate | topic | issue

full of strong emotions, so that people often argue with each other:

The trial took place in a highly charged atmosphere. | After a highly charged meeting, the council eventually voted by 459 votes to 403 to accept the deal.

2 relating to your feelings, and the way in which they affect your life

NOUNS

emotional problems The patient has a long history of emotional problems.

sb's emotional state Her parents were worried about her emotional state.

emotional support His friends gave him a lot of emotional support during the breakup of his marriage.

emotional needs It is important to pay attention to the emotional needs of the child.

emotional well-being/welfare (=the state of feeling happy and not worried about your life) Physical and emotional well-being are closely linked.

emotional strain/distress/trauma (=very unpleasant feelings after a bad experience) She has been under a great deal of emotional strain lately.

an emotional scar (=a permanent bad effect on someone, caused by a bad experience) His childhood had left deep emotional scars.

emotional turmoil (=strong and confused feelings) When you're going through emotional turmoil, you can't concentrate on anything.

the emotional impact They were worried about the emotional impact of their divorce on the children.

emotional involvement/attachment (=a feeling of liking or loving someone or something) A nurse has to avoid emotional involvement with patients.

emotional baggage (=feelings about the past which affect your life now) He was carrying a lot of emotional baggage from a previous relationship.

emotive *adj* **THESAURUS** **emotional (1)**

emphasis [Ac] *n*
special attention or importance

VERBS

put emphasis on sth The airline is accused of putting more emphasis on profit than on safety.

place/lay emphasis on sth *formal* (=put emphasis on something) The school places a lot of emphasis on sports.

give emphasis to sth We need to give greater emphasis to cancer prevention.

shift the emphasis (=change it to something else) With drug addiction, we are shifting the emphasis from punishment to treatment.

the emphasis shifts/moves (=changes) The emphasis is now shifting away from oil towards renewable sources of energy.

add emphasis (=make an opinion or fact seem more important) Some punctuation marks are used to add emphasis.

ADJECTIVES

great emphasis The company places great emphasis on customer care.

strong/heavy emphasis There is a strong emphasis on research in the university.

considerable emphasis Most religions put considerable emphasis on the importance of marriage.

the main emphasis The main emphasis must be on quality, not quantity.

particular/special emphasis The new legislation places particular emphasis on energy conservation.

increasing/growing emphasis Recently, there has been an increasing emphasis on creating more jobs.

undue emphasis (=too much emphasis) In our society, we place undue emphasis on wealth and possessions.

PREPOSITIONS

emphasis on sth In many Asian cultures, there is a lot of emphasis on politeness.

PHRASES

a change of emphasis (also **a shift in emphasis**) There has been a change of emphasis in the government's foreign policy.

emphasize [Ac] (also **emphasise** BrE) *v*
to say something in a strong way

NOUNS

emphasize the importance/significance/value of sth The report emphasizes the importance of improving safety standards.

emphasize the need for sth I would emphasize the need for further research before we can reach a definite conclusion.

emphasize sb's/sth's role His work emphasized the role of psychological factors in physical illness.

emphasize a point/fact She emphasized her point by giving several shocking examples.

ADVERBS

strongly emphasize The report strongly emphasizes the need for better communication between teachers and parents.

repeatedly/constantly emphasize They repeatedly emphasized the government's failure to deal with unemployment.

PHRASES

be keen to emphasize/be at pains to emphasize (=make a lot of effort to emphasize something) He was keen to emphasize that the situation was getting better.

it is worth emphasizing that It is worth emphasizing that this man is innocent until proved guilty.

empire ⁿ

1 a group of countries that are all controlled by one ruler or government

ADJECTIVES

a large/vast/huge empire *The Emperor Claudius ruled a vast empire stretching from Persia to Britain.*

a great empire (=large and powerful) *The city was the centre of a great empire.*

the Roman/British/Ottoman etc Empire *The Barbarians finally overthrew the Roman Empire.*

a colonial empire (=a group of countries ruled by another country that is far away) *France had a huge colonial empire.*

VERBS

found/establish an empire (=start an empire) *The Persian Empire was founded by Cyrus the Great.*

expand an empire (=increase its size) *Spain wanted to expand its empire north.*

destroy an empire *Crusades and civil wars gradually destroyed the Byzantine Empire.*

an empire grows/expands *The empire grew to include many new territories.*

an empire falls/collapses (=loses power suddenly) *In AD 476, the western part of the empire collapsed.*

an empire crumbles (=loses power gradually) *The vast empire was beginning to crumble.*

PHRASES

the decline of an empire (=the gradual decrease in its power) *The next two hundred years saw the gradual decline of the Roman Empire.*

the fall/collapse of an empire (=its sudden end) *After the Battle of Waterloo, the collapse of Napoleon's empire was inevitable.*

2 a group of organizations controlled by one person

ADJECTIVES

a large/vast/huge empire *He created a vast financial empire worth billions of dollars.*

a business/financial/media etc empire *His business empire is now worth over \$20 billion.*

VERBS

build (up) an empire *She built her clothing empire from one small shop to an international chain.*

an empire collapses *When the business empire collapsed, thousands of employees lost their jobs.*

PHRASES

the collapse of an empire *He left the country after the collapse of his construction empire.*

employ ^v **THESAURUS** use¹

employee ⁿ

someone who is paid to work for someone else

ADJECTIVES

a full-time/part-time employee *We now have 110 full-time employees.*

a permanent/temporary employee *Some of the temporary employees were later hired as permanent staff.*

a senior/junior employee *The company offers large bonuses to senior employees.*

a male/female employee *Many female employees earn less than men doing similar jobs.*

a former employee *The company is being sued by three former employees.*

a disgruntled employee (=who is annoyed by the way their company has treated them) *A disgruntled employee revealed secret information to a national newspaper.*

VERBS

have ... employees *The Birmingham-based company has over 200 employees.*

recruit employees (=offer them jobs) *We are recruiting employees for our IT division.*

lay off employees (also **make employees redundant** BrE) (=stop employing them because there is no work for them to do) *Unions fear that many part-time employees will be laid off.*

dismiss/fire an employee (also **sack an employee** BrE) (=stop employing them, usually because they have done something wrong) *Seven employees were dismissed for misconduct.*

an employee joins a company/firm etc *Employees who join the firm after April will be on the new contracts.*

an employee leaves *A number of employees have left the company in recent months.*

PREPOSITIONS

an employee of sth *Employees of the bank were given the bad news this morning.*

employer ⁿ

a person, company, or organization that employs people

ADJECTIVES

a big/large/major employer *The company is one of the state's biggest employers.*

a local employer *A number of local employers are involved in the scheme.*

sb's former/previous/last employer *His former employer described him as an excellent worker.*

a future/prospective/potential employer (=someone who might employ you) *It is important to be able to prove to prospective employers that you have the relevant experience for the job.*

sb's present/current employer *Try to persuade your current employer to give you more training.*

sb's new employer *She hoped that she wouldn't be a disappointment to her new employer.*

a good employer *The company has a reputation as a good employer.*

an unscrupulous employer (=an unfair or dishonest employer) *Unscrupulous employers forced children to work for up to 16 hours a day.*

VERBS

an employer hires sb (=gives someone a job) *The government wants to encourage employers to hire more workers.*

an employer fires/sacks/dismisses sb (=stops employing someone, usually because they have done something wrong) *His employer fired him for taking too much time off.*

work for an employer *My father has worked for the same employer since he was 19.*

employment *n*

the condition of having a paid job

ADJECTIVES

full-time/part-time employment *Mike is in full-time employment, but his wife is not working.*

permanent/temporary employment *The staff are mainly university graduates entering permanent employment for the first time.*

long-term/regular employment (=working for the same company for a long time) *She finally found regular employment at a hospital in York.*

continuous employment *You can join the pension scheme after two years of continuous employment with the company.*

alternative employment *After leaving his job in a tax office, he found alternative employment in a restaurant.*

gainful employment *formal* (=which provides money for you to live) *He has had no gainful employment for the last five years.*

VERBS

look for/seek employment *My son had to leave the farm and seek employment elsewhere.*

give/offer sb employment *He was offered employment in the company's main office.*

provide employment *The new power station will provide employment for around 400 people.*

create/generate employment *The government is trying to stimulate the economy and create employment.*

find/get/obtain employment *The men hope to find employment in the construction industry.*

terminate sb's employment *formal* (=end it) *After he arrived at work drunk several times, the decision was taken to terminate his employment.*

employment + NOUNS

the employment figures/statistics *The latest employment figures will be embarrassing for the government.*

employment opportunities *There are very few employment opportunities in the area.*

employment prospects (=someone's chances of getting a job) *Better qualifications will improve your employment prospects.*

employment rights (=the rights that someone has in their job) *Part-time workers now have the same employment rights as full-time staff.*

an employment contract *There is a clause in your employment contract covering holiday entitlement.*

employment practices (=a company's treatment of its workers) *The company was accused of unfair employment practices.*

employment legislation/law *The government is supporting changes to European employment law.*

an employment agency (=an organization that finds jobs for people) *After losing his job, he signed on with several employment agencies.*

PREPOSITIONS

in employment (=in the position of having a paid job) *He has been in employment for the last three years.*

PHRASES

sb's place of employment *formal:* *They had a long journey to their place of employment.*

loss of employment *The insurance policy pays your rent in the event of loss of employment.*

the terms of employment (=the rules or conditions relating to someone's job) *It's in the terms of their employment that they can't go on strike.*

empty *adj*

if something is empty, there is nothing or no one in it

NOUNS

an empty bottle/can/box/packet *Can you put the empty bottles in the recycling bin?*

an empty cup/glass/plate *A girl cleared away the empty cups.*

an empty cupboard/fridge/shelf *The food had all gone and the cupboard was empty.*

an empty tank *The fuel tank is almost empty.*

an empty room/hall/corridor *His voice echoed through the empty room.*

an empty house/hotel/restaurant/building *The hotel was completely empty when they arrived.*

an empty seat/chair/bed *People began filling up the empty seats.*

an empty street *The rain fell on the empty streets.*

an empty train/bus *The trains are empty at the weekends.*

an empty space *There was an empty space where his chair had been.*

an empty landscape (=with no trees, houses, hills etc) *She stared out of the window at the bleak empty landscape.*

ADVERBS

completely empty *The shelves were completely empty.*

almost/nearly/virtually/practically empty
The restaurant was dark and almost empty, except for four men at a table.

half-empty *A half-empty bottle of red wine stood on the table.*

VERBS

a building stands/stays/lies empty (=no one lives there) *The house stood empty for over a year.*

leave sth empty *Holiday homes are sometimes left empty for months.*

PREPOSITIONS

empty of people/traffic *The streets were still empty of traffic.*

THESAURUS: empty

with nothing in it or on it

bare
room | cupboard | landscape | tree | branch
used about a room or cupboard that has very little in it:
The room was bare, except for a small table. | She was hungry, but the cupboard was bare. | I looked out at the bare trees in the snow (=with no leaves).

blank
sheet | page | screen | space | disk | tape
used about a computer screen or a piece of paper that has no writing or pictures on it, or a disk or tape with nothing recorded on it:
Fontaine handed her a pen and two sheets of blank paper. | The screen suddenly went blank (=became blank). | I've left a blank space for your signature.

hollow
tree | tube | cylinder | piece of wood
used about something that has an empty space inside:
The insects make their nests in hollow trees.

not being used

free
seat | table | room | parking space
available and not being used:
There is a seat free by the window. | "Is the meeting room free?" "I'm sorry, it's being used, right now." | There are never any parking spaces free at this time of day.

Free is less commonly used before a noun.

vacant
room | seat | chair | table | building | house | apartment | land | lot
available and not being used. **Vacant** is more formal than **free** and is used especially about places you pay to use or buy:

I asked the hotel if they had any vacant rooms. | He was lucky enough to find a vacant seat. | They bought a vacant lot for \$40,000 (=a small area of land).

On toilets in public places, there is often a sign which says **vacant** (=empty) and **engaged** (=someone is using it).

with no people there

deserted
street | road | beach | city | town | village | station | platform | place
a deserted place is quiet because there is no one there, or because the people who used to be there have left:
It was three o'clock in the morning and the streets were deserted. | We went for a walk along the deserted beach.

uninhabited
island | area | region
used about a place that has no people living in it, especially permanently:
Cousin Island is a beautiful uninhabited island which is home to many rare birds. | The rocket fell in an uninhabited region of the Negev desert.

unoccupied
house | apartment | flat | building | property | room
used about a house or room that no one is living in or using at the moment:
Burglaries frequently happen when people are on holiday and their house is unoccupied. | There was no noise and the building appeared to be unoccupied.

Unoccupied is less commonly used before a noun.

ANTONYMS empty → full (1)

encounter Ac n formal
an occasion when you meet someone or experience something, especially for the first time

ADJECTIVES

sb's first/next/last encounter *This was my first encounter with Shakespeare.*

a chance/unexpected encounter *A chance encounter in a restaurant led to a profitable business partnership.*

a casual encounter *He tried to suggest it was a casual encounter, but Claire guessed he had been waiting for her.*

a brief encounter *That brief encounter changed my life forever.*

sb's previous/last encounter *He had not yet fully recovered from their last encounter.*

a recent encounter *He remembered the anxiety she had shown during their recent encounter in the church.*

a personal/face-to-face encounter *In my personal encounters with Italians, I have found them very friendly.*

a direct encounter *It was not until many years later that I had my first direct encounter with the organization.*

a close encounter *He looked very shaken after his close encounter with a shark.*

a violent encounter *The film begins with a violent encounter between people in a Paris street.*

an unpleasant encounter *One evening I had an unpleasant encounter on the bus.*

a strange encounter *He had a strange encounter with a man who was dressed as a woman.*

a dangerous encounter *After some dangerous encounters with pirates, they finally find the treasure.*

VERBS

have an encounter *On their travels, they have one strange encounter after another.*

survive an encounter *He was lucky to survive his encounter with the snake.*

remember/recall an encounter *I remember my first encounter with him.*

an encounter takes place/occurs *On May 6th 1999 an unlikely encounter took place in Downing Street.*

NOUNS + encounter

an alien encounter (=an encounter with creatures from space) *He claimed he had had an alien encounter.*

PREPOSITIONS

an encounter with sb/sth *I told her about my encounter with the priest.*

an encounter between people *There was a violent encounter between police and protesters.*

encourage

v
to give someone more confidence or desire to do something, or to make something easier or more desirable to do

ADVERBS

actively/positively encourage sth/sb *The teachers actively encourage independent decision-making.*

strongly/greatly encourage sb *Language students are strongly encouraged to study abroad for one semester.*

deliberately encourage sb *He had deliberately encouraged the other boy to throw stones.*

PREPOSITIONS

encourage sb in sth *We want to encourage young people in whatever they choose to do.*

PHRASES

designed to encourage sth/sb (also **aimed at encouraging sth/sb**) *There are various incentives designed to encourage participation in the program.*

try to encourage sb/sth *The government is trying to encourage more schools to manage their own budgets.*

encouragement

n
something that helps someone feel that they can do something

ADJECTIVES

great/considerable encouragement *It was a great encouragement to hear these words.*

a little encouragement *I'm sure he can become a good player – he just needs a little encouragement from us.*

strong encouragement *A new organization is to be established, with strong encouragement from the government.*

active encouragement *The scheme was set up with the active encouragement of the local authority.*

gentle encouragement *I find that gentle encouragement often works better than criticism.*

every encouragement *Every encouragement should be given to those trying to bring peace to the region.*

VERBS

give sb encouragement *My friends gave me a lot of encouragement.*

offer encouragement *My parents offered encouragement and support.*

provide encouragement *The scheme is intended to provide encouragement for young writers.*

shout encouragement *The fans shouted encouragement to the team.*

get/receive encouragement *We have received tremendous encouragement from the Australian people.*

take/draw encouragement from sth (=you feel encouraged because of something) *The coach will have taken encouragement from the way his team performed.*

need encouragement *Young boys often need help and encouragement.*

PREPOSITIONS

encouragement from sb *Stephen received a lot of encouragement from his parents.*

with sb's encouragement *With her husband's encouragement, she became a teacher.*

PHRASES

words of encouragement *The rest of the team shouted out words of encouragement.*

encouraging

adj
giving you hope and confidence

ADVERBS

very/most/highly encouraging *The first results look very encouraging.*

extremely/tremendously/immensely

encouraging *I'm pleased with his progress – it all sounds extremely encouraging.*

quite encouraging *The news so far is quite encouraging.*

hardly encouraging/far from encouraging (=not at all encouraging) *The latest sales figures were far from encouraging.*

NOUNS

encouraging news *There is some encouraging news about the economy.*

an encouraging sign *His breathing was now normal, which was an encouraging sign.*

encouraging results *Scientists are reporting encouraging results from early tests of a vaccine.*

an encouraging response (=many people have replied) *The police have had an encouraging response to their appeals for information.*

encouraging noises (=say some encouraging things) *After making some encouraging noises, they eventually rejected his request.*

an encouraging start *The team had an encouraging start to the season when they won their first two games.*

an encouraging development *Despite these encouraging developments, the situation is still not satisfactory.*

PREPOSITIONS

encouraging for sb *It is encouraging for students to get nice comments about their work.*

ANTONYMS **encouraging** → **discouraging**

end¹ _n

1 the last part of a period of time, event, activity, or story

PHRASES

the end of the day/week/month etc *Karen will return to the US at the end of the month.*

the end of March/July/December etc *My visa runs out at the end of May.*

from beginning to end *Michael Jones led the race from beginning to end.*

ADJECTIVES

the very end *Save the best joke for the very end of the speech.*

a fitting end (=a very suitable one) *Winning the championship a fifth time was a fitting end to his career.*

PREPOSITIONS

the end of sth *The end of the match was very exciting.*

at the end *At the end of the book they get married.*

until the end *You have to wait until the end of the movie to find out what happens.*

by the end *It was a good performance but by the end some people were getting bored.*

towards/near the end *Her character only appears towards the end of the film.*

ANTONYMS **end** → **beginning (1)**

2 a situation in which something is finished or no longer exists

VERBS

come to an end (=finish) *The team's series of victories came to an end when they lost 3-2.*

draw to an end (also **near an end**) (=be close to the end) *My holiday was drawing to an end.*

get to the end of sth (also **reach the end of sth**) *The 40-year-old power station has now reached the end of its life.*

put an end to sth (=make something stop) *A shoulder injury put an end to his baseball career.*

bring an end to sth (also **bring sth to an end**) (=make something stop) *They began talks aimed at bringing an end to the war.*

call for/demand an end to sth (=publicly ask for something to stop) *The union is calling for an end to discrimination.*

mark/mean/spell the end of sth (=show that something is ending) *These disappointing sales figures could spell the end of the company.*

ADJECTIVES

a sudden/abrupt end (=sudden and unexpected) *After the news leaked out, his political career came to a sudden end.*

an early end *Hopes of an early end to the conflict are fading.*

a tragic end (=when something ends in a very sad and upsetting way, usually with the death of someone) *His promising acting career came to a tragic end.*

a premature/untimely end (=when something ends too soon) *The event came to an untimely end when a fire broke out inside the stadium.*

PREPOSITIONS

an end to sth *We are hoping for an early end to the dispute.*

PHRASES

sth is at an end (=it has ended) *Now that the war is at an end, the country can begin the task of rebuilding itself.*

the end is in sight (=you know that something will end soon) *After a nine-month wait for her operation, the end is finally in sight.*

to/until the bitter end (=until it is not possible to do something any longer, even though you are in a very difficult situation) *They will remain loyal to their leader to the bitter end.*

3 the part of a place or object that is furthest from its beginning or centre

ADJECTIVES

the opposite/other end (of sth) *The two men were sitting at opposite ends of the bar.*

the far end (of sth) (=furthest from you) *He walked to the far end of the room and sat down.*

the very/extreme end of sth *Our room was at the very end of the corridor.*

the deep/shallow end (=used about the parts of a swimming pool where the water is deepest or least deep) *The kids were splashing about in the shallow end.*

PREPOSITIONS

the end of sth *The hairdresser snipped off the ends of her hair.*

at the end of sth *The school is just at the end of the street.*

on the end of sth *On the end of the chain was a bell.*

PHRASES

lay/place sth end to end (=in a line, with the ends touching) *The roof tiles are laid end to end.*

from end to end (=from one end to the other) *The animal measures over four metres from end to end.*

4 an aim or purpose

ADJECTIVES

political/military financial etc ends *The government used the situation for political ends.*

a common end (=which you all want to achieve) *We felt we were all working together towards a common end.*

a desired end *People want democracy but how can they bring about this desired end in that country?*

a noble/worthy end (=one that you admire) *Finding a cure for cancer seems a very worthy end.*

VERBS

achieve your own ends *disapproving* (=get what you want) *Some people would do almost anything to achieve their own ends.*

PHRASES

to that/this end (=with that/this aim or purpose) *Our first priority is safety, and the airline is working to that end.*

the end justifies the means *disapproving* (=you believe that doing something bad is acceptable, if it achieves a good result) *The terrorists believe that the end justifies the means, and it doesn't matter how many people are killed.*

a means to an end (=something that you do because it is a way of getting something else) *To Joe, work was a means to an end, nothing more.*

a period/year/day/week etc ends *For the three-month period ending December 31st, the company made £24.8 million.*

a story/movie/film/play ends *The story ends with the couple getting married.*

war/fighting ends *The Vietnam War ended in 1975.*

conversation/talks/negotiations end *The talks ended in failure.*

a marriage/relationship ends *Her marriage ended seven years ago, when her husband suddenly left home.*

sb's life ends (=used especially when someone's life suddenly stops being happy or interesting) *Just because you have children, it doesn't mean that your life ends.*

ADVERBS

end well/badly *I knew it would end badly.*

end happily *Cinema audiences like films that end happily.*

PREPOSITIONS

end with sth *The day ended with a trip to a local restaurant.*

end in sth *The game ended in a draw.*

PHRASES

end in failure/defeat/disaster/success *Every attempt has ended in failure.*

end in divorce *One in three marriages ends in divorce.*

end in tears *informal* (=end with people being unhappy) *I hope that it won't all end in tears.*

end on a high/positive/happier note (=end with something good happening) *The story ends on a happier note, with Sally recovering from her illness.*

THESAURUS: end

finish

meeting | concert | show | exhibition | race
to end - use especially when saying what time an organized event ends:

The meeting will finish at 7 p.m. and refreshments will be provided. | The exhibition finishes on March 7th.

You can also use **end** in all these sentences. **End** is more common than **finish** in this meaning.

come to an end

time | period | year | career | war | ordeal | holiday | contract | relationship

to finally end - used about something that has continued for a long time:

Her time in Africa was coming to an end. | The war finally came to an end six years later. | We'd love to stay here longer, but all good things must come to an end.

end² v

1 if something ends, it reaches its final point

NOUNS

a meeting/game/trial ends *The meeting ended in the late afternoon, without any agreement.*

a class/course/term ends *When the class ended, the teacher said she wanted to talk to me.*

a show/exhibition/concert/festival ends *The audience clapped when the show ended.*

draw to a close/an end

year | **century** | **day** | **afternoon** | **season** | **career** | **campaign** | **war** | **game** | **conversation**
if a period of time or an activity draws to a close, it gradually ends. **Draw to a close/end** is rather formal and is mainly used in written descriptions:

The weather turned colder as the year drew to a close. | The 20th century was drawing to an end. | Lowe's international playing career was drawing to a close.

run out

time | **money** | **luck** | **supply** | **visa** | **contract** | **agreement** | **lease** | **ticket** | **guarantee**
if time, money etc runs out, there is no more available. If an official document runs out, the period of time when you can use it has ended:

You'd better hurry – time is running out. | His luck ran out and he lost the next game by one point. | Her boyfriend must go home because his visa has run out. | The five-year guarantee runs out this October.

expire

visa | **contract** | **agreement** | **lease** | **card** | **ticket** | **passport** | **guarantee** | **warranty**
if something expires, the period of time when you can use it has ended. **Expire** is more formal than **run out**:

She had to leave when her visa expired. | My season ticket is about to expire and I need to get a new one. | If your passport expires this year, now is a good time to renew it.

You can say that something **is over** (=it has definitely ended): *The war was over. | His political career is over. | I will be glad when all this is over.*

You can also say that something is **at an end** (=it has ended, or nearly ended): *Laura realised that her marriage was at an end. | He thought his life was at an end.*

You say that **time is up** when the time that you are allowed has officially ended: *Stop writing and put down your pens. Your time is up.*

ANTONYMS end → start¹ (2)

2 to make something stop permanently

NOUNS

end a war/conflict *In 1975 a treaty was signed, which ended the war in Vietnam.*

end the violence/fighting/killing *The only way to end the violence is for everyone to be involved in the peace process.*

end a strike/dispute *The workers voted to end their strike.*

end a situation/problem/crisis *We need to find a way of ending the current economic crisis.*

end sb's career *The scandal effectively ended his political career.*

end the use/sale of sth *Governments have promised to end the use of these weapons.*

ending ⁿ

the way that a story or film finishes, or the way something that you are describing finishes

ADJECTIVES

a happy ending *I like stories with happy endings.*

a sad/unhappy/tragic ending *The story has a sad ending, and the girl never sees her family again.*

a dramatic ending *The movie has a dramatic ending in which both the main characters are killed.*

a surprise ending *I think a good detective story should have a surprise ending.*

a good ending *A joke makes a good ending to a speech.*

the perfect ending *The walk home under the stars was the perfect ending to the evening.*

a fairy-tale ending (=a good and happy ending that seems unlikely) *The story has a fairy-tale ending, and the two enemies become close friends.*

a disappointing ending *It was a disappointing ending for Castrale, who managed only third place.*

a different/alternative ending *The author invites readers to choose between three different endings.*

VERBS

have a happy/sad ending *The story has a happy ending: the dog survived and now has a new owner.*

give away the ending (=tell someone what the ending of a story will be) *The title of the story gives away the ending.*

PREPOSITIONS

an ending to sth *It was a disastrous ending to his career.*

the ending of a film/story/book/poem *He changed the ending of the book.*

endless ^{adj}

used when saying that there seem to be a very large number of something, or something seems to continue for a very long time, especially when this makes you surprised, annoyed, or bored

NOUNS

an endless series/succession *We had to sit through an endless series of talks.*

an endless stream *An endless stream of trucks went to and from the harbour.*

an endless supply *Our host seemed to have an endless supply of amusing stories.*

an endless round of meetings/parties *Life was an endless round of picnics and parties.*

an endless variety *The fish display an almost endless variety of colors and patterns.*

endless problems/difficulties/trouble *They had endless trouble with the water supply.*

endless questions *She patiently answered her son's endless questions.*

endless meetings *They had endless meetings with the producer.*

endless cups of tea/coffee *He drank endless cups of tea as he worked.*

the possibilities are endless *I could start a business of some kind. The possibilities are endless.*

the list is endless *There are so many courses to choose from – the list is endless.*

ADVERBS

almost/virtually/practically endless *The possible colour combinations are almost endless.*

seemingly/apparently endless *He had a seemingly endless list of demands.*

VERBS

seem endless *The journey home seemed endless.*

ends *n* **THESAURUS** **purpose**

enduring *adj* **THESAURUS** **long (2), permanent**

enemy *n*

someone who hates you and wants to harm you

ADJECTIVES

a great enemy *Henry prepared to fight his great enemy, the king of France.*

main/biggest/greatest enemy *He sees terrorism as his country's main enemy.*

an arch enemy/arch-enemy (=main enemy, used for emphasis) *The comic book character Lex Luthor is Superman's arch enemy.*

bitter enemies (=enemies who hate each other very much) *When these former friends quarrelled over money, they became bitter enemies.*

a political enemy *The prime minister keeps these political enemies at a safe distance.*

sworn enemies (=enemies who will always hate each other) *The men have been sworn enemies for many years.*

a common enemy (=shared by more than one person or group) *They were all united against the common enemy of fascism.*

a formidable enemy (=a very powerful enemy) *The North Vietnamese army proved to be a formidable enemy.*

deadly enemies (=enemies who try to harm each other as much as possible) *France and Germany, once deadly enemies, are now partners in the European Union.*

an old/traditional enemy (=that has been an enemy for a long time) *In 1548, Scotland moved towards an alliance with her traditional enemy, England.*

VERBS

have enemies *Everybody loved her – she didn't have any enemies.*

make enemies (=become unfriendly with people) *During her long political career, she made many enemies.*

defend/protect yourself from your enemies *Our country has a right to protect itself from its enemies.*

defeat an enemy *His opponent will be a hard enemy to defeat.*

face/confront an enemy *We must confront the real enemy, which is poverty and disease.*

engage/meet the enemy (=start fighting them) *For these young soldiers, this will be the first time they engage the enemy.*

enemy + NOUNS

enemy forces *The town is occupied by enemy forces.*

enemy soldiers/aircraft *He shot down over forty enemy aircraft.*

an enemy position (=a place controlled by an enemy army) *General Hunt ordered an air strike on the enemy positions.*

PHRASES

behind enemy lines (=behind the edge of an area that is controlled by an enemy army) *Men from the First Airborne Division were dropped behind enemy lines.*

energetic *Ac adj*

having or needing a lot of energy or determination

VERBS

feel energetic *If you're feeling energetic, we could go out for a run.*

NOUNS

an energetic person/man/woman/child *The hotel is run by a friendly and energetic woman.*

energetic activity *Guests can relax by the pool or take part in more energetic activities.*

energetic efforts *Kim made energetic efforts to improve that situation.*

an energetic campaign *Despite an energetic campaign, the Republicans lost the election.*

an energetic performance *All the dancers gave energetic performances.*

ADVERBS

very/highly energetic *She is at home all day with three highly energetic children.*

PHRASES

young and energetic *The players are young and energetic.*

THESAURUS: energetic

dynamic

leader | performer | person | performance

very energetic – used especially about

someone who does a lot of new or exciting things:

Margaret Thatcher was a very dynamic leader. | Robbie Williams is a powerful and dynamic performer.

hyperactive

child | son | daughter

a hyperactive child has too much energy and cannot keep still or quiet for very long:

Our youngest son was hyperactive, and it had a damaging effect on the whole family.

tireless

campaigner | worker | advocate | supporter | efforts | work | campaigning | dedication

working with a lot of energy in a determined way in order to achieve something:

She was a tireless campaigner for women's rights. | The president praised the tireless efforts of the rescue team.

Other ways of saying that someone is energetic

You can also say that someone is **full of energy** or **bursting with energy**: *At the beginning of the year, the students are full of energy and enthusiasm.*

energy Ac n

1 power used to provide heat, operate machines etc

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + energy

solar energy (=from the sun) *The water is heated using solar energy.*

nuclear/atomic energy *The problem with nuclear energy is dealing with the waste.*

wind/wave energy *The windmill uses wind energy to crush grain and pump water.*

renewable energy (=energy such as solar or wind energy that can be replaced naturally) *Switching to sources of renewable energy will reduce carbon emissions.*

alternative energy (=from sources other than oil, coal, or nuclear energy) *It is the first form of public transport to be powered by alternative energy.*

clean/green energy (=causing no pollution) *The aim is to provide 80% of electricity from clean energy sources.*

VERBS

generate/produce energy *It is possible to generate energy from waste.*

supply/provide energy *The wind farm will provide enough energy for 100,000 homes.*

use energy *Washing machines use a lot of energy.*

save/conserve energy (=not waste it) *An efficient boiler will conserve energy and save you money.*

store energy *Batteries store the energy from the solar panels.*

harness energy (=get energy from somewhere and use it) *The system is designed to harness the energy of the waves.*

energy + NOUNS

energy use (also **energy consumption** formal): *We all need to reduce our energy consumption.*

energy production *Energy production has fallen.*

energy conservation (=preventing it from being wasted) *There will be taxes to encourage energy conservation.*

energy efficiency *This guide provides advice on ways of improving energy efficiency.*

energy needs/requirements *Sixty percent of the country's energy needs are met by imported oil.*

energy supplies/resources *The world's energy resources are being used up at an alarming rate.*

an energy source *Nuclear power is one of the few energy sources that does not pollute the atmosphere.*

an energy shortage *California experienced energy shortages that in turn led to power outages.*

an energy crisis *Europe could soon face an energy crisis.*

an energy bill *We are looking at ways of cutting our energy bill.*

energy prices *Energy prices keep going up.*

an energy company/the energy industry *Energy companies are making massive profits.*

PREPOSITIONS

energy from sth *The water is heated using energy from the sun.*

PHRASES

a source/form of energy *Coal is more expensive than other sources of energy.*

the demand for energy *The demand for energy in developing countries will continue to grow.*

2 the physical and mental strength that makes you able to do things

PHRASES

be full of energy/be bursting with energy (=have a lot of energy) *The children were all bursting with energy.*

a lack of energy *Common symptoms include a loss of appetite and a lack of energy.*

a burst of energy (=a short sudden increase in energy) *He tried to summon up one final burst of energy, but his legs wouldn't respond.*

VERBS

have a lot of/little/no etc energy *He always has plenty of energy!*

lack energy (=have no energy) *She lacked the energy to continue.*

put energy into sth *I really put a lot of energy into what I do.*

channel your energy into sth (=use your energy doing something, rather than other things) *She should channel more of her energy into her studies.*

devote your energy to sth (=use most of your energy doing something) *Models devote all their energy to looking perfect.*

conserve energy (=use as little as possible) *The lions spend much of the day sleeping, conserving energy for the hunt.*

waste energy *Don't waste energy making excuses.*

run out of energy (=have none left) *The players seemed to be running out of energy.*

drain/sap your energy (=make you tired) *The long walk in hot weather sapped our energy.*

summon up/find the energy to do sth (=manage to do something even though you feel tired) *I couldn't even summon up the energy to make a cup of tea.*

sth takes energy (also **sth requires energy** formal): *Climbing with a full backpack takes a lot of energy.*

ADJECTIVES

boundless energy (=that seems to have no limit) *Her boundless energy and lively personality make her a great kids TV presenter.*

youthful energy (=energy that young people naturally have) *She is very talented and full of youthful energy.*

creative energy (=that makes you want to write, draw, paint etc) *We have seen an explosion of creative energy from the band this year.*

nervous energy (=energy that comes from being nervous or excited) *She seems to thrive on nervous energy.*

excess/surplus energy *Kids need an opportunity to use up their excess energy.*

pent-up energy (=used especially when someone feels frustrated because they have a lot of unused energy) *He needed an outlet for all his pent-up energy.*

energy + NOUNS

energy levels (=the amount of energy someone has) *Regular exercise increases your energy levels.*

enforce Ac v

to make people obey a rule or law

NOUNS

enforce a law *He wants the police to enforce the law and arrest the men.*

enforce a rule/regulation *The rules are strictly enforced.*

enforce an agreement *The president called for UN action to enforce the agreement.*

enforce discipline *A school must enforce discipline in the classroom.*

enforce a ban *A ban on arms sales can only be enforced with international cooperation.*

ADVERBS

be strictly/rigorously/rigidly enforced *The new parking restrictions will be strictly enforced.*

be properly/fully enforced *Rules are only effective if they are properly enforced.*

be effectively enforced *Many members think that the regulations cannot be effectively enforced.*

be legally enforced *Most of the social rules and customs we follow are not legally enforced.*

engagement n

1 an agreement between two people to marry, or the period of time they are engaged

VERBS

announce your engagement (=tell people about it) *The couple are expected to announce their engagement today.*

break off an engagement (=suddenly end it) *Were you surprised when she broke off the engagement?*

engagement + NOUNS

an engagement ring *Jerry bought her a beautiful sapphire engagement ring.*

PREPOSITIONS

sb's engagement to sb *He announced his engagement to the actress last week.*

2 formal an official arrangement to do something, especially one that is related to your work

ADJECTIVES

an official engagement *This is the prime minister's first official engagement since the elections.*

a public engagement *She appeared with her husband at many public engagements.*

an important engagement *He had an important engagement with his solicitor.*

a pressing engagement (=something important that must be done now) *He left in a hurry, claiming to have a pressing engagement elsewhere.*

a previous/prior engagement (=one that is already arranged) *I'm sorry I can't be there, but I have a previous engagement.*

a speaking engagement (=one in which you give a speech) *I've been turning down speaking engagements to concentrate on writing my memoirs.*

VERBS

have an engagement *I don't have any engagements tomorrow.*

keep an engagement (=do the thing that you have arranged to do) *The prime minister will be unable to keep this engagement.*

carry out an engagement *Last year, the princess carried out over 300 official engagements.*

cancel an engagement *He instructed his secretary to cancel all his engagements.*

PREPOSITIONS

an engagement with sb *He had an engagement with the French president.*

engine ⁿ

the part of a vehicle that produces power to make it move

VERBS

start an engine (also **switch on/turn on an engine**) *I fastened my seat belt and turned on the engine.*

switch off/turn off an engine *Maggie pulled over and switched off the engine.*

rev (up) an engine BrE, **gun an engine** AmE (=make an engine run very fast, usually when the vehicle is not moving) *He waits at the red light, impatiently revving the engine.*

leave/keep the engine running (=not turn it off) *He parked outside the bank and kept the engine running.*

an engine runs on sth (=it uses a kind of fuel) *The engine runs on ordinary petrol.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + engine

a big/powerful engine *The newer model has a more powerful engine.*

a small engine *The engine is small, so it's quite cheap to run.*

a petrol/diesel engine *The van has a 2.5 litre diesel engine.*

a jet engine *We could hear the plane's powerful jet engines.*

a car/motorbike etc engine *Modern car engines are highly efficient and use much less gas.*

engine + NOUNS

engine trouble *When the boat developed engine trouble, the crew had to abandon ship.*

engine failure *Their aircraft suffered engine failure and crashed into the sea.*

the engine capacity (=the size of the engine) *The car has a small engine capacity but it produces a lot of power.*

engineer ⁿ

someone whose job is to design, build, or repair things such as machines, bridges, or roads

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + engineer

a civil engineer (=an engineer who designs and builds roads, bridges etc) *The bridge was designed by the famous civil engineer, Thomas Telford.*

a mechanical engineer *He was a mechanical engineer, and he knew everything there was to know about car engines.*

an electrical/electronic engineer *He works as an electronic engineer for a phone company.*

an aircraft engineer *The plane had been checked by aircraft engineers.*

a mining engineer *Mining engineers were constructing a new mine shaft.*

a qualified/trained engineer *The oven should be installed by a qualified engineer.*

a chartered engineer BrE (=a qualified engineer) *She is training to become a chartered engineer.*

VERBS

work as an engineer *He works as an engineer at a nuclear power plant.*

an engineer designs/develops sth *A British engineer has designed a car made of wood especially for use in Africa.*

English ⁿ

the language used in Britain, the US, Australia, and some other countries

ADJECTIVES

good/excellent English *You speak very good English.*

perfect English *His English was perfect, with no trace of an accent.*

fluent English (=very good English, without any mistakes or hesitations) *She studied in the United States, and she speaks fluent English.*

poor English (=very bad) *He had only recently arrived in Britain, and his English was poor.*

British/American/Australian etc English *The spelling 'color' is used in American English.*

non-standard English (=English which some native speakers say, but which is not considered to be correct) *'There ain't no bread' is non-standard English.*

correct/standard English *The correct English phrase is 'There isn't any bread.'*

pidgin English (=English consisting of a few simple English words mixed with another language) *They were able to communicate by means of pidgin English.*

Instead of saying that someone's English is 'bad', you usually say that it is **not very good**, **poor**, or **terrible** if it is very bad.

⚠ Don't say 'His English is broken.' Say **His English isn't very good**. You only use **broken** in this meaning in the phrase **in broken English**.

VERBS

speak English *Does anyone here speak English?*

understand English *Most people can understand English because they study it at school.*

use English *The children all use English at home.*

learn English *I came here because I wanted to learn English.*

practise your English BrE, **practice your English** AmE: *She was glad of a chance to practise her English.*

improve your English *Hiroshi hopes to improve his English.*

translate sth into English Some of her books have been translated into English.

be published in English His books are being published in English for the first time.

English + NOUNS

an English word/phrase The English word 'landscape' comes from the Dutch word 'lanschap'.

English grammar A good knowledge of the rules of English grammar is essential.

an English course/class/lesson I'm thinking of taking English classes this summer.

an English teacher His English teacher says his English is getting better.

PREPOSITIONS

in English The sign was written in English.

PHRASES

be fluent in English (=be able to speak English well, without mistakes or hesitation) He spent a year in England and became fluent in English.

have a good command/knowledge of English (=be able to speak English well) The book is aimed at those who already have a good command of English.

not speak a word of English (=does not speak any English at all) He doesn't speak a word of English.

in plain English (=in simple clear English) Could you explain, in plain English, what that means?

in broken English (=speaking English with a lot of mistakes) A waitress came and took their order in broken English.

learners of English Pronunciation is a problem for many learners of English.

The Queen's English

People sometimes talk about **the Queen's English**, meaning 'standard British English'. This phrase now sounds rather old-fashioned.

enigmatic *adj* **THESAURUS** **mysterious**

enjoy *v*

1 to get pleasure from something

ADVERBS

enjoy sth very much/very much enjoy sth It's a very funny book and I enjoyed it very much.

enjoy sth a lot I've enjoyed my trip a lot.

really/thoroughly enjoy sth She really enjoys cooking.

enjoy sth immensely/enormously/tremendously/hugely The audience enjoyed the show immensely.

greatly enjoy sth The children's teacher said they had greatly enjoyed the visit.

particularly/especially enjoy sth I particularly enjoyed the article about space travel.

quite/rather enjoy sth He quite enjoys being alone.

actually enjoy sth (=used when you think it is surprising) I actually enjoy being out in the rain.

NOUNS

enjoy your job/work He clearly enjoys his job.

enjoy a holiday/trip Did you enjoy your holiday?

enjoy a day/evening We enjoyed our day in London.

enjoy a meal The waiter brought their food and said "Enjoy your meal".

enjoy life I'm enjoying life more than ever before.

enjoy an experience I enjoyed the experience of being part of a team.

enjoy sb's company (=enjoy being with someone) He was an interesting man and she enjoyed his company.

enjoy the view They sat outside, enjoying the view across the lake.

enjoy your freedom Enjoy your freedom while you can.

PHRASES

enjoy yourself (=do things that make you happy) People come here to relax and enjoy themselves.

enjoy every minute I enjoyed every minute of the trip.

Grammar

Enjoy is usually used transitively and usually has an object after it. Don't say 'I enjoyed very much.' Say **I enjoyed it very much**. People sometimes say **Enjoy!** on its own, meaning "I hope you enjoy it!", especially when they are serving you a meal.

THESAURUS: enjoy

have fun *informal*

to enjoy doing something relaxing or not serious:

See you soon. **Have fun!** | We all **had a lot of fun** when we were in Paris.

Have fun is usually used on its own. You can also use it with a participle: They **had fun** shopping together.

get pleasure from/take pleasure in

to enjoy something:

She **gets a lot of pleasure from** her job. | They **took great pleasure in** each other's company.

These phrases are sometimes used when talking about people who enjoy causing suffering or problems: Some people **get pleasure from** hurting other people. | I shall **take great pleasure in** telling him that I'm resigning.

revel in sth

to enjoy every moment or part of something very much:

The rest of the family were **revelling in** the glorious hot weather. | He was **positively revelling** in his new-found freedom (=enjoying it very much).

relish

prospect | **chance/opportunity** | **challenge** | **thought/idea**

to enjoy the thought that something is going to happen:

He is **relishing** the prospect of playing against some of the best players in the world. | I **relished** the chance to learn all about the local culture. | It'll be tough, but I'm **relishing** the challenge. | I don't **relish** the thought of leaving all my friends.

savour BrE, **savor** AmE

moment | **memory** | **victory** | **prospect**

to enjoy something as it happens and spend time thinking about how enjoyable it is:

He **paused to savour** the moment of being on top of the world's highest mountain. | He had little time to **savour** his victory. | Fans are **savouring** the prospect of a great match.

bask in

glory | **publicity** | **attention**

to enjoy the approval or attention that you are getting from other people:

He **smiled for the cameras, basking in** the glory of a job well done. | Robertson **basks in** the attention such stories bring.

wallow in

misery | **self-pity** | **the past**

to enjoy being sad and feeling sorry for yourself, especially in order to make people notice you and pay attention to you:

His songs are depressing and he seems to **enjoy wallowing in** misery. | Since his girlfriend left him, he's been **wallowing in** self-pity. | Some people like to **wallow in** the past (=they enjoy saying how much better things were in the past than they are now).

2 to have something good

NOUNS

enjoy an advantage These children do not enjoy the same advantages that we have.

enjoy a benefit Other countries want to share the benefits that Western countries now enjoy.

enjoy good health My aunt Eileen is enjoying good health at the age of 84.

enjoy support The police service still enjoys the support of the public.

enjoy success The team enjoyed some success.

enjoy popularity The magazine enjoyed enormous popularity in the early 20th century.

enjoy a good reputation The hotel enjoys a good reputation.

enjoy a good/close relationship The two men enjoyed a good relationship.

enjoy freedom Students enjoy considerable freedom.

enjoyable adj giving you pleasure

ADVERBS

very/really/highly/most enjoyable We all had a very enjoyable time. | This has been a most enjoyable evening.

extremely/hugely/immensely enjoyable The film is a hugely enjoyable romantic comedy.

quite/rather enjoyable Learning new skills can be quite enjoyable.

NOUNS

an enjoyable experience I wanted the holiday to be an enjoyable experience for us.

an enjoyable activity Cooking should be an enjoyable activity.

an enjoyable day/evening/afternoon We had an enjoyable day at the beach yesterday.

an enjoyable time They all had a really enjoyable time.

an enjoyable holiday It is the perfect place for a relaxing and enjoyable holiday.

an enjoyable game It was certainly an enjoyable game to watch.

an enjoyable way of doing sth Sailing is an extremely enjoyable way of learning teamwork skills.

VERBS

find sth enjoyable I found the task quite enjoyable.

make sth enjoyable How can teachers make learning enjoyable?

THESAURUS: enjoyable

agreeable formal

experience | **evening** | **place**

pleasant and enjoyable:

I wished that my visit had been a more agreeable experience. | They had an agreeable evening at the theatre. | Cambridge is an agreeable place to live.

rewarding

experience | **job** | **occupation**

enjoyable because it gives you a lot of satisfaction:

Finding your new home can be a rewarding experience. | The teacher likes the children and says she finds her job rewarding.

entertaining

film | **book** | **story** | **account** | **programme** |

evening

enjoyable because it is interesting, exciting, or funny:

It is a **highly entertaining film**. | The book is an entertaining account of his travels in China. | We

watched an entertaining programme about penguins. | Thank you for a most entertaining evening.

fun informal

time | **day**

enjoyable:

We all had a fun time. | I had a fun day with the kids. | **It was fun while it lasted**, but I'm back at college tomorrow (=used when saying that you enjoyed something, but now it has finished).

enjoyment *n* a feeling of pleasure

ADJECTIVES

great/huge/tremendous enjoyment Three boys had been watching my struggles with great enjoyment.

maximum enjoyment The trip is planned to give maximum enjoyment.

obvious enjoyment (also **evident enjoyment** formal): He was eating a vast breakfast with evident enjoyment.

VERBS

get enjoyment out of/from sth (also **derive enjoyment from sth** formal): I get a lot of enjoyment out of painting.

find enjoyment in sth I was finding enjoyment in discovering London on foot.

bring/give enjoyment to sb His music has brought enjoyment to millions.

add to/increase sb's enjoyment (also **enhance sb's enjoyment** formal): Knowing about the poet's life can add to our enjoyment of the poem.

spoil/interfere with sb's enjoyment The behaviour of a few fans spoiled the enjoyment of the other people watching the game.

take away/detract from sb's enjoyment (=make someone enjoy something less) He had a bad headache and this rather detracted from his enjoyment of the film.

PHRASES

for your own (personal) enjoyment She cooks for friends, and for her own enjoyment.

a source of enjoyment Music can be more than just a source of enjoyment.

a sense/feeling of enjoyment He still plays the game with a sense of enjoyment.

enormous *adj* **THESAURUS** huge

enough *determiner, pronoun* as many or as much as is needed or wanted

NOUNS

enough time/money We had just enough time to catch the train.

enough food/water There should be enough food for everyone.

enough space/room He left enough room on the sofa for Anna to sit down.

enough evidence/information There is enough evidence to suggest that this drug is potentially harmful.

enough experience/practice She doesn't have enough experience for the job.

enough sense/courage Luckily, Marija had enough sense not to panic.

PREPOSITIONS

enough for sb/sth There weren't enough chairs for everyone.

PHRASES

more than enough They've had more than enough time to make all the preparations.

nowhere near/not nearly enough (=much less than is needed) The money I had was nowhere near enough to buy a car.

barely enough (=only with great difficulty) There was barely enough room for them to pass each other.

just enough The lamp gave just enough light to see what we were doing.

quite enough (=definitely enough) You've spent quite enough money already.

enough to go round (=enough for everyone) They took pain-relieving drugs to the refugees but there weren't enough to go round.

Someone has had enough

This phrase has two meanings. It can mean you don't want any more: "Do you want any more pizza?" "No thanks, I've **had enough**." It can also mean that you are annoyed with someone or something, and you don't want the situation to continue any longer: "I've **had enough** of this job. I need a change."

THESAURUS: enough

sufficient formal

evidence | **time** | **funds** | **resources** | **information** | **data** | **detail** | **reason** | **interest** | **number** | **amount**

enough for a particular purpose:

The police did not have sufficient evidence to charge her. | Allow sufficient time to get there. | If there is sufficient interest, we might organize another workshop next year. | Three kilos should be **sufficient** for our needs.

adequate formal

supply | **provision** | **resources** | **funding** | **support** | **protection** | **explanation** | **information** | **training** | **time** | **preparation**

enough in quantity or good enough in quality for a particular purpose:

We try to make sure the refugees have adequate supplies of food. | Your insurance policy should give you adequate protection. | All staff must be given adequate training in health and safety. | The heating system was **barely adequate** (=only just adequate). | This printer is **perfectly adequate** for most purposes (=completely adequate).

ample

opportunity | time | evidence | proof | reason | warning | space | room | parking | scope
more than enough for what is needed:

*Local residents will be given ample opportunity to express their views. | If we leave at 3 o'clock, that should allow ample time to get to the airport. | The dining room has ample space for a large table. | There's ample parking at the hotel. | People used to think that 1 GB of memory was **ample for** the average personal computer.*

plenty

an amount that is enough or more than enough:

*Allow yourself **plenty of** time to get to the airport. | Your daughter won't need much cash at camp (\$20-25 will be plenty).*

enterprise *n* formal

1 companies and businesses in general

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + enterprise

private enterprise (=companies that are not owned by the government) *The government feels it cannot interfere in private enterprise.*

state/state-owned/public enterprise

(=companies owned by the government) *New Zealand Rail is a state-owned enterprise.*

local enterprise (=businesses in a particular area) *The council is helping to support local enterprise.*

enterprise + NOUNS

an enterprise zone (=an area created by the government to attract businesses) *Many firms relocate to enterprise zones because of tax advantages.*

2 a company or business

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + enterprise

a large/large-scale enterprise *The company has grown into a large-scale enterprise.*

a small/small-scale enterprise *The tax will affect owners of small-scale enterprises consisting of up to ten people.*

a successful enterprise *She is the owner of an extremely successful enterprise.*

a commercial/business enterprise *If you are setting up your own business enterprise, your bank can help.*

3 an activity that someone is involved in

ADJECTIVES

a dangerous/hazardous enterprise *He was probably involved in a dangerous enterprise of some kind.*

a criminal enterprise *In these countries, the government is secretly involved in large-scale criminal enterprises.*

an exciting enterprise *She knew the trip would be an exciting enterprise.*

VERBS

undertake an enterprise (=do it) *Why did you agree to undertake such a hazardous enterprise?*

embark on an enterprise (=start doing it) *A few months after first discussing it, they were embarking on this most exciting of enterprises.*

entertaining *adj* enjoyable**ADVERBS**

highly/very entertaining *The novel is highly entertaining and I would recommend it to anyone.*

hugely/enormously/wonderfully entertaining (=extremely entertaining) *This hugely entertaining play was a big hit on Broadway.*

mildly entertaining (=not very entertaining) *The film is mildly entertaining in parts.*

VERBS

find sb/sth entertaining *The children certainly found him entertaining.*

THESAURUS: entertaining

agreeable, rewarding, entertaining, fun → **enjoyable**

entertainment *n*

things such as films, television, performances etc that are intended to amuse or interest people

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + entertainment

live entertainment (=performed while people watch, not recorded and watched later) *There are three bars on the ship, all with live entertainment.*

family entertainment (=suitable for children and adults) *The holiday village has plenty of family entertainment on offer.*

mass/popular entertainment (=popular with large numbers of people) *Reality TV has been a very successful form of mass entertainment.*

light entertainment (=shows that are funny and easy to understand rather than serious) *He believes that children can appreciate more than just light entertainment.*

home entertainment (=provided by machines such as televisions, DVD players, and music systems) *A TV that connects to the internet will become a standard part of home entertainment.*

a day's/afternoon's/evening's entertainment *The evening's entertainment concluded with a firework display.*

VERBS

provide entertainment *Dancers and musicians were on hand to provide entertainment.*

put on/lay on entertainment (=organize and provide it) *The organizers laid on some entertainment for the children.*

entertainment + NOUNS

the entertainment business/industry *The union represents people who work in the entertainment industry.*

entertainment value (=how enjoyable something is to watch) *The films have great entertainment value for kids.*

an entertainment venue (=a place such as a concert hall where there are performances) *Most entertainment venues have a licence to sell alcohol.*

an entertainment complex (=a group of buildings providing a range of entertainment) *The hotel is next to a large entertainment complex.*

PREPOSITIONS

for sb's entertainment *formal: After dinner, there will a musical performance for your entertainment.*

PHRASES

a form of entertainment (=a type of entertainment) *Video games are a popular modern form of entertainment.*

a place of entertainment *formal: Clubs and other places of entertainment must close by 3 a.m.*

a source of entertainment *The only source of entertainment was a piano.*

enthralling *adj* **THESAURUS** **interesting**

enthusiasm *n*

strong feelings of interest in something, and a desire to be involved in it

ADJECTIVES

great/much/considerable enthusiasm *There was considerable enthusiasm for the idea of a picnic.*

enormous/tremendous enthusiasm *He always plays with tremendous enthusiasm.*

genuine/real enthusiasm *She talked about the project with genuine enthusiasm.*

boundless/unbounded/unbridled enthusiasm *formal (=very great) I'd like to thank the organizers for their boundless enthusiasm.*

infectious enthusiasm (=spreading from one person to another) *Her enthusiasm was infectious.*

little enthusiasm (=not much enthusiasm) *In the nearby villages, there's little enthusiasm for the new airport.*

initial enthusiasm (=happening at first, but not lasting) *After a few months, their initial enthusiasm had started to wane.*

renewed enthusiasm (=starting again, with increased energy or interest) *After lunch, she went about the task with renewed enthusiasm.*

youthful enthusiasm (=that is typical of young people) *The team has just the right mix of youthful enthusiasm and experience.*

VERBS

have enthusiasm *He never had much enthusiasm for work.*

show enthusiasm *The younger children showed little enthusiasm for the game.*

lose (your) enthusiasm *The diet started well, but I lost enthusiasm after a while.*

lack enthusiasm *The audience seemed to lack enthusiasm.*

dampen sb's enthusiasm *formal (=stop them feeling enthusiastic) The bad weather had dampened our enthusiasm.*

fire sb's enthusiasm (=make someone feel very enthusiastic) *The teacher really fired their enthusiasm for history.*

arouse/generate enthusiasm *formal (=make people feel enthusiastic) The new system failed to arouse enthusiasm amongst the staff.*

retain enthusiasm (=still have it) *We want children to retain this enthusiasm for sport in their adult lives.*

share sb's enthusiasm *I don't share my husband's enthusiasm for camping.*

enthusiasm wears off/wanes/fades (=becomes less strong) *After years of doing the same job, your enthusiasm tends to wane.*

PREPOSITIONS

with/without enthusiasm *The proposal has been greeted with enthusiasm by both parties.*

enthusiasm for/about sth *He has great enthusiasm for all types of sport.*

enthusiasm among people *There was not much enthusiasm for the plans among local people.*

PHRASES

full of enthusiasm (=very enthusiastic) *He entered politics full of enthusiasm, but that gradually disappeared.*

brimming/bursting/bubbling with enthusiasm (=very excited and enthusiastic) *Her voice was brimming with enthusiasm when she told us her plans.*

fired (up) with enthusiasm (=very enthusiastic and keen to do something) *She came back from the course fired up with enthusiasm.*

a wave/burst/surge of enthusiasm (=a sudden feeling of enthusiasm) *The new year began with a fresh wave of enthusiasm.*

a lack of enthusiasm *My lack of enthusiasm for his suggestion upset him.*

enthusiast *n* **THESAURUS** **fan**

enthusiastic *adj*

feeling or showing a lot of interest and excitement about something

ADVERBS

very/highly/extremely enthusiastic *The children are very enthusiastic about the holiday.*

wildly enthusiastic (=extremely enthusiastic) *The audience burst into wildly enthusiastic applause.*
overly enthusiastic (=too enthusiastic) *An overly enthusiastic child had rung my doorbell five times.*

VERBS

be/feel enthusiastic *They felt enthusiastic about moving to another country.*
get/become enthusiastic *He got very enthusiastic while he was telling the story.*
seem/appear enthusiastic *I wanted to go, but Helen seemed less enthusiastic.*
sound/look enthusiastic *"I'm sure we can do it," she said, trying to sound enthusiastic.*

NOUNS

enthusiastic support *His policies won him the enthusiastic support of middle-income voters.*
an enthusiastic supporter *He is an enthusiastic supporter of the war.*
an enthusiastic response *The proposal has received an enthusiastic response from students.*
an enthusiastic reception/welcome *The audience gave him an enthusiastic reception.*
an enthusiastic crowd/audience *An enthusiastic crowd cheered the team onto the pitch.*
enthusiastic applause *His speech was greeted by enthusiastic applause.*
an enthusiastic amateur (=someone who tries hard but is often not very skilful) *There are a few professionals in the race, but most are enthusiastic amateurs.*
an enthusiastic review *The play received enthusiastic reviews.*

PREPOSITIONS

enthusiastic about sth *All the staff are enthusiastic about the project.*

THESAURUS: enthusiastic

eager
anticipation | expectation | audience | fans | customers | hands | face | smile
wanting to do something or know about something very soon:
We waited in eager anticipation. | Eager fans waited for hours to hear him play. | The child's eager hands tore the wrapping paper off the gift. | The classroom was full of eager young faces. | He was eager to hear every detail of her day.
keen
eager to work or learn:
She hasn't much experience but she's very

keen. | John was a keen student who worked very hard.

In British English, **keen** can also be used before a noun when someone is very enthusiastic about a particular activity and does it a lot: *Pat is a very keen gardener. | I'm a keen golfer and play twice a week.*

avid
reader | collector | fan | supporter | golfer | skier | interest
used when you want to emphasize that someone does something a lot or is very interested in something:
She was an avid reader all her life. | I've become an avid collector of his work. | As a schoolboy he had an avid interest in birds.

Avid is only used before a noun.

Avid or keen?
In British English **avid** or **keen** can be used before a noun to describe someone who does something a lot or is very interested in it. **Avid** is more formal than **keen**: *He is a keen/avid skier.*
In American English, **keen** is not usually used in this sense and **avid** is the usual word to use: *He is an avid skier.*

zealous
doing something in a very enthusiastic way, especially supporting something or making sure that people obey rules:
She was a zealous supporter of the revolution. | The company has been extremely zealous in defending its interests. | Officials have been very zealous in the application of the new regulations.
fervent *written*
supporter | admirer | proponent | believer | belief | support | prayer | wish
believing or feeling something very strongly and sincerely:
Galinsoga was one of Franco's most fervent supporters. | He was a fervent admirer of Margaret Thatcher. | It was her fervent belief that she could achieve anything.

Fervent is usually used before a noun.

In informal English, if you are very eager to do something, you can use the phrase **can't wait to do sth**: *I can't wait to see him again.*
If you are pleased and excited because you know something is going to happen soon, you can say that you **are looking forward to something**: *I'm looking forward to visiting Japan next month.*

entrance *n*

a door, gate etc that you go through to enter a place

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + entrance

the main entrance *She found a parking space close to the hospital's main entrance.*

a front/back/rear/side entrance *Steps lead up to the front entrance.*

a narrow entrance *I could see part of the yard through the narrow entrance.*

a wide entrance *There was a wide entrance at the front of the building.*

a grand/impressive/imposing entrance *She was photographed in front of the museum's imposing entrance.*

the hotel/hospital/museum etc entrance *Our taxi pulled up outside the hotel entrance.*

the tunnel/cave entrance *The tunnel entrance is halfway up the mountain.*

the harbour entrance *BrE, the harbor entrance* *AmE: We watched as the ferry approached the harbour entrance.*

VERBS

use an entrance *It's quicker to use the side entrance.*

come/go/pass etc through an entrance *People passed in single file through the narrow entrance.*

block the entrance *A large stone blocked the entrance to the tomb.*

entrance + NOUNS

the entrance hall (=a room at the entrance to a building) *He walked through the front door into the entrance hall.*

the entrance gate/door *Soldiers were guarding the entrance gate.*

entry *n*

1 the act of going into a place

VERBS

gain entry (=succeed in going into a place) *Burglars use various methods to gain entry to houses.*

force an entry (=get into a building by breaking a door, window etc) *The church was locked, but he managed to force an entry.*

make your entry (=enter in a way that makes other people notice you) *She waited until everyone was sitting down before she made her entry.*

ADJECTIVES

illegal entry (=when someone enters a building illegally) *The two men were later arrested and charged with illegal entry.*

unauthorized entry (=when someone enters a place without permission) *There was a big sign on the door saying 'No Unauthorized Entry'.*

forced entry (=when someone gets into a building illegally by breaking a door, window

etc) *There were no signs of a forced entry, but several paintings were missing.*

entry + NOUNS

an entry point (also **a point of entry**) (=a place where people can enter a country) *This mountain pass is the main entry point into the country for refugees.*

PREPOSITIONS

entry into a place *This is where the thieves made their entry into the building.*

2 the right to go into a place

VERBS

allow (sb) entry (also **grant (sb) entry** *formal*) (=let someone enter a place) *Citizens of most EU countries are allowed automatic entry into Britain.*

refuse/deny (sb) entry (=stop someone entering) *He was refused entry to the club because he was wearing trainers.*

apply for entry *The number of people applying for entry into the country is increasing every year.*

restrict/limit entry *We have to restrict entry to the first 300 people who apply.*

ADJECTIVES

free entry *Guests have free entry to the hotel spa and gym.*

entry + NOUNS

an entry visa (=a visa which allows you to enter a country) *Visitors to the United States must first obtain an entry visa.*

an entry fee *Do visitors to the castle pay an entry fee?*

an entry ticket *The price of the holiday includes a two-day entry ticket to the Disneyland Theme Park.*

PREPOSITIONS

entry to/into a place *Entry to the palace gardens is included in the price of admission.*

PHRASES

no entry (=written on signs to show that you are not allowed to go somewhere) *The door had 'No Entry' written in large letters.*

right of entry *Mexican citizens do not have automatic right of entry into the United States.*

3 when someone becomes a member of a university, an organization etc or starts to take part in a system, a particular kind of work etc

VERBS

gain entry (=be allowed to do something or join something) *You need good exam results to gain entry to the best universities.*

restrict entry (=stop someone from doing something or joining something) *Tariffs on trade have the effect of restricting entry into the market.*

NOUNS + entry

university/college/school entry Japan has one of the highest rates of college entry in the world.

entry + NOUNS

entry requirements Applicants must satisfy the normal entry requirements for the school.

entry qualifications What are the entry qualifications for the course?

an entry form New members have to fill in a ten-page entry form.

PREPOSITIONS

entry into/to sth This is the minimum height for entry into the police force.

4 a piece of information written in a book, on a list, on a website etc

VERBS

write/make an entry She was asked to write an entry on karate for a new sports dictionary.

post an entry (=on a website) An unhappy customer posted an angry entry on the company's website.

read an entry If you read any entry on the American Revolution, it will mention George Washington.

NOUNS + entry

an encyclopedia/dictionary entry The encyclopedia entry for him is over two pages long.

a diary entry This was the last diary entry she made before she died.

a blog entry (=on a website) In a recent blog entry, she criticized government policy on education.

PREPOSITIONS

an entry in sth There's no entry in her diary for that date.

an entry for sth Look at the entry for 'Russia' in the encyclopedia.

envelope *n*

a thin paper cover in which you send a letter

ADJECTIVES

a stamped-addressed envelope (=with a stamp and an address already on it) A copy of the rules can be obtained by sending a stamped-addressed envelope to the above address.

a self-addressed envelope (=with your own name and address on) Enclose a self-addressed envelope with your application form.

a sealed envelope (=firmly closed) The contract was delivered by special messenger in a sealed envelope.

VERBS

open an envelope I opened the envelope and pulled out the document.

seal an envelope (=close it) She sealed the envelope and stuck on a stamp.

an envelope contains sth Does the envelope contain any money?

PREPOSITIONS

in/into an envelope I put the card in a small envelope.

PHRASES

on the back of an envelope (=used to describe a calculation or plan that is written down quickly on any available small piece of paper) She scribbled a few ideas on the back of an envelope.

envious *adj*

wanting something that someone else has

VERBS

be/feel envious He felt envious of his friends who had children.

get envious I get envious when other people talk about their holidays in exotic places.

look/sound envious "How nice!" she said, trying not to sound envious.

make sb envious He showed us his new sports car, which made us all very envious.

NOUNS

envious looks/glances She was aware of the envious looks of other women as she began to dance with him.

envious friends/colleagues Envious colleagues wondered how he had got such a big office.

envious eyes The other players have been watching him win every game with envious eyes.

PREPOSITIONS

envious of sb/sth She was very envious of her brother.

environment [Ac] *n*

1 the air, water, and land on Earth

VERBS

protect the environment You can help protect the environment by recycling your waste.

conserve the environment (=protect it and prevent it from changing or being damaged) People need to live in harmony with nature and conserve the environment.

harm/damage the environment The government insists that the dam will not harm the environment.

destroy the environment We need to find ways of producing energy without destroying the environment.

affect the environment Tourism affects the environment in several ways.

pollute the environment Nuclear waste will pollute the environment for centuries.

clean up the environment It's about time that we started cleaning up the environment.

⚠ Don't say 'hurt the environment'. Say **harm the environment** or **damage the environment**.

PHRASES

be good/bad for the environment *Plastic bags are bad for the environment.*

be harmful/damaging to the environment *Some of these chemicals are very damaging to the environment.*

protection of the environment *In developing countries, protection of the environment is not a primary concern.*

conservation of the environment *There are many organizations dedicated to conservation of the environment.*

damage/harm to the environment *A lot of chemicals used in industry cause harm to the environment.*

the destruction of the environment *How can we prevent the destruction of the natural environment?*

pollution of the environment *The waste material must be stored safely to avoid pollution of the environment.*

the effect/impact on the environment *The building's design will minimize its impact on the environment.*

ADJECTIVES

the natural environment *Current methods of farming are damaging the natural environment.*

the marine environment (=the sea and the creatures that live there) *Fish farming poses a threat to the marine environment.*

2 the people and things that are around you in your life

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + environment

the physical environment (=the place where you live or work, including buildings, furniture etc) *Improvements to the physical environment range from removing graffiti to planting trees.*

the immediate environment (=the building in which you live or work, and the area very close to it) *Most accidents happen to young children within the immediate environment of their home.*

a safe environment *The playground provides a safe environment for children.*

a stable environment (=without any big changes) *They argued that being married helps provide a stable environment for bringing up children.*

a friendly/pleasant environment *The restaurant offers a stylish and friendly environment with first-class service.*

a clean/dirty environment *No-one wants to live in a dirty environment.*

a competitive environment (=where everyone is trying to be the best) *Our business has to operate in an increasingly competitive environment.*

an unfamiliar environment (=one that you do not know very well) *I find it difficult to sleep in an unfamiliar environment.*

a working/learning environment *Most people prefer a quiet working environment.*

the home/family environment (also **the domestic environment**) *A lot of children suffer because of problems in their home environment.*

the economic/political/business environment *The economic environment has changed, and many countries are sliding into recession.*

VERBS

create an environment *We want to create an environment where children can learn happily.*

provide an environment *The government should provide an economic environment which encourages enterprise.*

improve an environment (also **enhance an environment** formal): *They do not take pride in their area, and do nothing to improve their environment.*

PREPOSITIONS

in an environment *Children should not be growing up in this environment.*

an environment for sth *The spa provides a pleasant environment for relaxation.*

an environment of sth *Important decisions must be discussed in an environment of understanding.*

3 the natural features of a place, for example its weather, land, and plants

ADJECTIVES

a harsh/hostile environment (also **an inhospitable environment**) (=with many difficulties and dangers) *How can anything survive in such a hostile environment?*

a fragile environment (=easily damaged) *Many people are worried about the impact of tourism on the region's fragile environment.*

a coastal/desert/mountain etc environment *The storm caused significant damage to the coastal environment.*

VERBS

adapt to an environment (=change in order to become suitable for it) *Darwin studied how organisms adapt to their environment.*

PREPOSITIONS

in an environment *Foxes and rabbits are often found in a forest environment.*

environmental Ac adj

concerning or affecting the air, land, or water on Earth

NOUNS

environmental issues *Environmental issues, such as air pollution, directly affect people's lives.*

environmental damage *She wrote a famous book about the environmental damage caused by the use of chemicals in agriculture.*

environmental pollution *Power stations cause a lot of environmental pollution.*

environmental protection *Is environmental protection more important than economic growth?*

an environmental group *Environmental groups have launched a campaign to protect the Antarctic.*

the environmental movement (=all the groups concerned about the environment) *There are differences of opinion about nuclear power within the environmental movement.*

environmental problems *Acid rain is one of the major environmental problems associated with burning coal.*

the environmental impact/effect *Pollution from cars is having a serious environmental impact.*

environmental concerns (=worries about the environment) *Residents have raised some valid environmental concerns about the nuclear plant.*

environmental awareness *Schools are crucial in helping to raise environmental awareness.*

environmentally friendly *adj*
not harmful to the environment

NOUNS

environmentally friendly products *The company claims that all its products are environmentally friendly.*

an environmentally friendly car/vehicle/form of transport *Battery-powered cars are supposed to be environmentally friendly, but where does the electricity come from?*

environmentally friendly methods/practices/technology *Farmers are using more environmentally friendly farming methods, and there are more birds and butterflies in the fields.*

an environmentally friendly alternative *Parents of babies should consider using an environmentally friendly alternative to disposable nappies.*

environmentally friendly paper/packaging/washing powder etc *All their books are printed on environmentally friendly paper.*

THESAURUS: environmentally friendly

eco-friendly

products | **house** | **home** | **car** | **light bulb** | **technology** | **lifestyle**

eco-friendly means the same as **environmentally friendly**. People often use **eco-friendly** because it is shorter and easier to say:

We always use eco-friendly cleaning products. | The book offers advice on how to make your home more eco-friendly.

green

energy | **technology** | **products** | **building** | **party** | **movement** | **campaigner** | **politician** | **Member of Parliament** | **issues** | **image** | **credentials**

not harmful to the environment. You also use **green** about the people and issues that are concerned with protecting the environment:

The electricity will come from green energy sources such as wind farms. | The US leads the world in green technology. | Green campaigners are opposed to the building of a new airport. | The company is anxious to maintain its green credentials (=its reputation for not harming the environment).

clean

energy | **fuel** | **technology** | **alternative**
clean energy and fuels do not release any harmful substances into the atmosphere:

Hydrogen could be a fantastic source of clean energy. | Gas is a cheaper and cleaner alternative to oil.

renewable

energy | **power** | **fuel** | **source** | **resource** | **technology**

renewable energy comes from sources that can be easily replaced naturally, so that there is always more available:

The building is heated using renewable energy from the sun. | Trees can be a renewable resource if forests are managed properly.

sustainable

development | **growth** | **agriculture** | **farming** | **tourism** | **source** | **resource** | **lifestyle**

using the earth's resources, without causing damage to the environment – used especially about farming, ways of living, and development:

The government wants to encourage sustainable development of the areas around our cities. | Sustainable farming is much more cost-effective in the long term. | All our timber products come from sustainable sources.

carbon-neutral

city | **home** | **company** | **strategy**

balancing the amount of carbon gases that you put into the earth's atmosphere with other activities that will effectively reduce the amount of carbon gases, for example by planting trees:

This is the world's first carbon-neutral city. | All new homes will have to be carbon-neutral.

low-carbon

economy | **technology** | **electricity**

producing only a small amount of carbon:

The paper examines ways of developing a low-carbon economy. | The use of wind farms and other low-carbon technology could reduce energy bills.

low-energy

light bulb | **house** | **building** | **housing**

using very little energy:

Low-energy houses are designed to keep the heat from escaping.

envy *n*
the feeling of wanting something that someone else has

VERBS

be filled with envy *All the other boys were filled with envy when they saw his new computer.*

be consumed with envy *formal (=very envious) She was consumed with envy when she heard the news.*

feel envy *I sometimes feel envy when I see how much money he earns.*

arouse envy *formal (=make someone feel envy) His achievements aroused envy among his classmates.*

PREPOSITIONS

with envy *Other countries look with envy at our excellent education system.*

PHRASES

green with envy *informal (=very envious) My friends are green with envy.*

a twinge/tinge/touch/stab of envy *(=a sudden short feeling of envy) As he talked about his happy childhood, I felt a twinge of envy.*

an object of envy *Enzo Ferrari's cars have become objects of envy.*

episode *n*
one of a series of television or radio programmes, in which the same story is continued each week

ADJECTIVES

the next episode *The next episode of the series will be shown on Tuesday.*

the last/previous episode *I missed the last episode.*

the final episode *You don't find out who the killer is until the final episode.*

last week's episode/next week's episode *Did you see last week's episode?*

an exciting/thrilling episode *Don't miss next week's thrilling episode.*

a classic episode *The DVD contains classic episodes of the show.*

VERBS

watch/see an episode *She always watches every episode of the programme.*

show/broadcast an episode *The first episode was shown last Monday.*

an episode is repeated *Today's episode will be repeated on Wednesday.*

equal *adj*

1 the same in size, number, amount, value etc as something else

NOUNS

an equal number/amount *Both candidates received an equal number of votes.*

an equal chance *Everyone has an equal chance of winning the lottery.*

ADVERBS

about/almost equal *The two objects are about equal in height and weight.*

roughly/approximately equal *(also more or less equal) (=about equal) The number of buyers and sellers must be roughly equal before trading begins.*

exactly equal *The food is shared out in exactly equal portions.*

PHRASES

be equal to sth *The rent was equal to half his monthly income.*

of equal size/length/value etc *Draw two lines of equal length.*

equal in size/length/value etc *The population of each town is roughly equal in size.*

2 having or involving the same rights, opportunities etc as everyone else, whatever your race, religion, or sex

NOUNS

equal rights *In many countries, women do not have equal rights with men.*

equal opportunities *The government must make sure that all children have equal opportunities in education.*

equal pay *The workers' demands include equal pay for equal work.*

equal access *(=the same right to do or receive something) The law states that disabled people must have equal access to employment.*

equal treatment *Everyone should get equal treatment under the law.*

equal status *Meetings are held at a round table, emphasising the equal status of everyone present.*

an equal partner *She never felt she was an equal partner in their marriage.*

VERBS

be considered equal *Different classes of people were not considered equal in public life.*

be born equal *It is a myth that all men are born equal.*

be created equal *They believe that everyone is created equal by God.*

ADVERBS

genuinely/truly/really equal *For women to be genuinely equal, they must receive equal pay.*

PHRASES

on equal terms/on an equal footing *(=in conditions that are the same for everyone) If one player has better equipment, they are not competing on equal terms.*

equality *n*

a situation in which people have the same rights, advantages etc

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + equality

complete/full/absolute equality *Women have not yet achieved full equality with men.*

racial/race equality *The minister is a well-known campaigner for racial equality.*

sexual/gender equality *How can we have sexual equality if women cannot choose whether to have children?*

social/political/economic equality *African Americans fought for social and economic equality with whites.*

genuine/real equality *There is still no genuine equality for people with disabilities.*

VERBS

achieve equality *He praised previous generations who struggled to achieve racial equality.*

demand equality *Disabled people are demanding equality under the law.*

fight for equality *Women fought for equality throughout the twentieth century.*

promote equality (=help it to happen) *The organization's aim is to promote equality for people of all religions.*

PREPOSITIONS

equality for sb *We want equality for all groups in society.*

equality between/among people *Can there ever be true equality between men and women?*

equality with sb *They are asking for equality with people of other faiths.*

PHRASES

the struggle/fight for equality *The film is about the people who led the struggle for equality in the United States.*

the campaign for equality *She is one of the leaders of the campaign for equality for gay women.*

equality of opportunity *The government must ensure equality of opportunity for all children.*

equation **Ac** n

a statement in mathematics that shows that two amounts or totals are equal

ADJECTIVES

a mathematical equation *Look at the set of mathematical equations printed below.*

VERBS

solve an equation *For homework, solve the equations on page 56.*

work out an equation *I spent over an hour trying to work out the equation.*

equipment **Ac** n

the tools, machines etc that you need to do a particular job or activity

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + equipment

special equipment *You don't need any special equipment, just a pair of running shoes.*

the right/proper equipment *We need the right equipment to do the job properly.*

modern/up-to-date equipment *The factory has some of the most up-to-date equipment available.*

essential/necessary/vital equipment *A compass is essential equipment when hiking.*

heavy equipment *The truck has to be able to carry tanks and other heavy equipment.*

standard equipment (=that comes with a car or other product, and does not cost extra) *Standard equipment on this model includes airbags, climate control, and cruise control.*

camping/skiing/climbing etc equipment *Can you help me load the camping equipment into the car?*

sports/gym equipment *The shop sells a wide range of sports equipment.*

electrical/electronic/computer equipment *The thieves stole thousands of pounds of computer equipment.*

medical equipment *The ambulance carries life-saving medical equipment.*

office equipment *The company supplies office equipment such as photocopiers and printers.*

military equipment *The sale of military equipment to the country is banned.*

safety/protective equipment *Employers must provide safety equipment and make sure it is used.*

VERBS

use equipment *I will now demonstrate how to use the equipment safely.*

provide/supply equipment *Our firm won the contract to supply drilling equipment to the mine.*

install equipment (=put it in a place so that it is ready to use) *We are installing new computer equipment in place of the old machines.*

need/require equipment *For scuba diving, you'll need specialized equipment.*

test equipment *All the equipment has been tested by our engineers.*

PREPOSITIONS

equipment for sth *Equipment for golf can be very expensive.*

PHRASES

a piece of equipment (also **an item of equipment** formal): *When you buy an expensive piece of equipment, you need to insure it.*

equitable **adj** **THESAURUS** fair

equivalent **Ac** n

something that has the same value, purpose, meaning etc as something else

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + equivalent

a direct/exact equivalent *The word has no direct equivalent in English.*

the nearest/closest equivalent *In those days, the grocer's shop was the closest equivalent to a supermarket.*

the modern/modern-day equivalent (of sth) *Boxers are the modern-day equivalent of Roman gladiators.*

an English/American/French etc equivalent

Savings and loan associations are the American equivalent of building societies in Britain.

the musical/literary etc equivalent of sth *It is*

a loud and overpowering song, the musical equivalent of cheap perfume.

VERBS

have an equivalent *This institution has no equivalent in any other European country.*

PREPOSITIONS

the equivalent of sth *He had drunk the equivalent of half a bottle of whisky.*

an equivalent to sth *The disease is the human equivalent to the cattle disease known as BSE.*

era *n* a period of time in history

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + era

the modern/present era *Kennedy was probably the greatest president of the modern era.*

a new era *They hope the talks will be the start of a new era in relations between the two countries.*

a bygone era (=a time in the past, usually when something was good) *The hotel belongs to a bygone era and has a beautiful marble staircase.*

a golden era (=a time when something is at its most successful) *The album features songs from the golden era of rock 'n' roll.*

the Obama/Thatcher etc era (=when a particular political leader was in power) *The end of the Bush era was defined by the war in Iraq.*

VERBS

enter an era/move into an era *We have entered an era of instant global communication.*

usher in an era *formal* (=to be the start of a new era) *His death ushered in an era of political instability.*

herald/mark/signal an era *formal* (=show that it is beginning) *Her election heralded an era of social change.*

recreate/recapture an era (=allow people to experience it again) *This marvellous ship recreates the era of luxury ocean travel.*

evoke/recall an era (=make people remember it) *The black and white pictures of the hotel recall a bygone era.*

an era begins/ends *The era of cheap oil has ended.*

PREPOSITIONS

in an era *We live in an era of rapid technological change.*

an era of sth *People in the region are hoping for a new era of peace.*

PHRASES

the end/passing of an era *The closure of the last coal mine marked the end of an era in Wales.*

the dawn/beginning of a new era *The fall of the Berlin Wall heralded the dawn of a new era in Europe.*

erect *v* **THESAURUS** **build**¹

erosion [Ac] *n*

1 the process by which rock or soil is gradually destroyed by wind, rain, or the sea

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + erosion

serious/severe erosion *Some areas of the coast have suffered severe erosion.*

significant erosion (=quite severe) *This system of cultivation leads to significant erosion of the subsoil.*

soil erosion *Soil erosion is worse in areas where trees have been cut down.*

marine/coastal erosion (=on land that is close to the sea) *Some of these homes are at risk from coastal erosion.*

water/wind erosion (=caused by water or wind) *Trees help to reduce the effect of wind erosion.*

VERBS

cause erosion *Acid rain has caused serious erosion in the area.*

lead to erosion *Poor farming practices have led to erosion of the soil.*

contribute to erosion (=be one of the causes of it) *High levels of rainfall can contribute to erosion.*

suffer (from) erosion *Many areas of farmland have suffered severe erosion.*

reduce erosion *They introduced new measures designed to stop flooding and reduce erosion.*

prevent erosion *Planting this grass along coastlines helps to prevent erosion.*

erosion happens/occurs *The worst erosion occurs where soil is exposed to drought.*

erosion + NOUNS

erosion damage *Volunteers are building stone walls to prevent further erosion damage.*

PREPOSITIONS

erosion of sth *If sea levels continue to rise, there will be more erosion of coastlines.*

PHRASES

the rate of erosion (also **the erosion rate**) *The maps show that the average rate of coastal erosion is about four metres per year.*

2 the process by which something is gradually reduced or destroyed

ADJECTIVES

gradual/steady erosion *There has been a steady erosion of the courts' powers over the last ten years.*

serious/significant erosion *The demonstrators were protesting about the serious erosion of individual freedoms.*

VERBS

see/witness an erosion of sth *We have seen a gradual erosion of these rights over the last 40 years.*

lead to/result in an erosion of sth *The government's policies have led to a serious erosion of freedom of speech.*

PREPOSITIONS

erosion of sth *We are seeing a gradual erosion of our civil liberties.*

erosion in sth *There has been considerable erosion in support for the government.*

error [Ac] n a mistake

ADJECTIVES

a common error *Writing 'recieve' instead of 'receive' is a common error.*

a serious/grave error *The hospital admitted they had made a serious error.*

a small/minor error *The letter contained some minor spelling errors.*

a glaring error (=very bad and very noticeable) *There is a glaring error on page 15.*

a spelling/grammatical/typing error *The article was full of spelling errors.*

a factual error (=which includes a fact that is wrong) *The article contains many factual errors.*

a fatal error (=extremely serious, so that you are certain to fail) *It was a fatal error, which ended his political career.*

an unfortunate error *An unfortunate error resulted in confidential information being released to the press.*

a clerical/administrative error (=relating to office work) *The application forms were sent to the wrong addresses due to a clerical error.*

a tactical error (=a mistake in someone's planning which could cause them to fail) *The decision to wait before attacking was a tactical error.*

NOUNS + error

computer error *It is unlikely that the accident was caused by computer error.*

human/driver/pilot error (=errors made by people, drivers etc) *Automatic checks reduce the danger of human error.*

VERBS

make an error *The bank made an error, and added \$10,000 to her account instead of \$100.*

commit an error formal (=make an error, especially one that has very serious effects) *He knew he had committed a serious error of judgment.*

contain an error/have an error in it *If the data contains errors, the results will be wrong.*

find/spot/notice an error *His teacher spotted several errors in his work.*

correct an error (also **rectify an error** formal): *We will rectify the error as soon as possible.*

realize your error *By the time she realized her error, it was too late.*

avoid errors *How can we avoid similar errors in the future?*

compound an error formal (=make it worse) *He refused to listen to our advice, which compounded the error.*

PREPOSITIONS

an error in sth *There must be an error in our calculations.*

PHRASES

an error of judgment *The decision to lie on the application form was an error of judgment.*

a margin of error (=an amount by which something may be different from the correct amount, without causing problems) *We have to allow for a small margin of error in the calculations.*

be in error (=have made a mistake) *The doctor admitted he was in error.*

do sth in error (=do something by mistake) *The wrong man was arrested in error.*

escalator n

a set of moving stairs that take people to different levels in a building

VERBS

take the escalator *They took the escalator to the second floor.*

use the escalator *It is quicker to use the escalator.*

ride (up/down) the escalator AmE: *They rode the escalator down to the first level of the mall.*

get on/off the escalator (also **step on/off the escalator**) *She fell over when she was stepping off the escalator.*

an escalator takes/brings/carries sb to sth *The escalator takes you to the menswear department.*

ADJECTIVES

the up escalator/the down escalator *We couldn't find the down escalator, so we took the stairs.*

a moving escalator *You should always be careful when getting on or off a moving escalator.*

PHRASES

at the top of an escalator *Turn right at the top of the escalator.*

at the bottom/foot of an escalator *She was standing at the foot of the escalator.*

the escalator is out of order (=it is not working) *The escalator was out of order, so we had to use the stairs instead.*

escape¹ *v*

1 to leave a place when someone is trying to catch you or stop you, or when there is a dangerous or unpleasant situation

VERBS

try/attempt to escape *Some prisoners tried to escape, but they were quickly recaptured and taken back to the prison.*

manage to escape (=succeed in escaping) *I managed to escape when the guards weren't looking.*

PREPOSITIONS

escape from somewhere *Three men have escaped from prison.*

escape to somewhere *They escaped to South America.*

escape by doing sth *I escaped by jumping out of a window.*

PHRASES

escape with your life/escape alive (=escape and not be killed) *When the tunnel collapsed, the men were lucky to escape with their lives.*

escape sb's clutches *especially literary* (=not be caught by someone) *She managed to escape the clutches of the secret police.*

2 to avoid having something bad happen to you

NOUNS

escape injury (=not be hurt) *Both drivers were lucky to escape serious injury.*

escape punishment (=not be punished) *The people responsible for this crime will not escape punishment.*

escape justice (=not be caught and punished) *These terrorists must not be allowed to escape justice.*

escape capture (=not be captured) *We are not sure how the men continue to escape capture in an area flooded with police officers.*

escape detection (=not be noticed) *Some insects manage to escape detection by merging with the background.*

escape sb's attention (=not be noticed, contacted, or talked to by someone) *His criminal activities had so far escaped the attention of the police.*

escape the ravages of sth (=not be spoiled by the effects of something) *Her face, still beautiful, had escaped the ravages of old age.*

ADVERBS

narrowly/barely escape (=only just avoid having something bad happen to you) *The firefighters narrowly escaped being killed by the explosion.*

miraculously escape (=be very lucky to escape) *The bomb fell just a few yards away but our house miraculously escaped damage.*

escape unharmed/unhurt (also **escape unscathed** *formal*) (=not be harmed or hurt in

an accident or attack) *Two bodyguards were killed, but the president escaped unharmed.*

escape scot-free (=not be punished) *Victims are angry when they see criminals escape scot-free.*

escape² *n*

1 the act of getting away from a place, or away from a dangerous or bad situation

VERBS

make your escape *I had to make my escape before the guards returned.*

plan an escape *We planned our escape carefully and waited for just the right moment.*

prevent an escape (also **foil an escape** *formal*) (=stop an escape) *He grabbed her by the wrist, preventing any chance of escape.*

block sb's escape *I rushed towards the door but two large men blocked my escape.*

ADJECTIVES

a daring escape *Two prisoners made a daring escape in a helicopter.*

a quick escape *I saw him walking towards me so I decided to make a quick escape.*

escape + NOUNS

an escape attempt/bid *She made several unsuccessful escape attempts before finally getting away.*

an escape plan *You should have an escape plan in the event of a fire.*

an escape route *All their escape routes had been blocked.*

PREPOSITIONS

an escape from sth *There have been no escapes from the prison in its history.*

an escape to sth *They made their escape to freedom.*

PHRASES

a means of escape (=a way of escaping) *She searched in vain for a means of escape.*

a chance/hope/possibility of escape *The river represented our only hope of escape.*

2 a situation in which you avoid something bad happening to you

ADJECTIVES

a lucky escape *The report tells of the family's lucky escape when a tree crashed onto their car.*

a miraculous escape (=when you are extremely lucky to escape or avoid harm) *Ellie had a miraculous escape after a firework exploded in her hand.*

a narrow escape (=when you only just avoid danger or difficulties) *The team had a narrow escape from disaster last season.*

a remarkable escape *The city was heavily bombed but the cathedral had a remarkable escape.*

essay *n*
a short piece of writing about a subject

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + essay

an English/history/politics etc essay *Have you done your economics essay yet?*

a 10,000-word/20-page etc essay *Students have to write a 3,000-word essay on a subject of their choice.*

a critical essay (=that judges how good a book, writer etc is) *The book contains critical essays by Kael, Graham Greene and others.*

an academic essay *Mature students often need practice writing academic essays.*

a literary essay *In a literary essay, you should explore the meaning and construction of the text.*

VERBS

write/do an essay *I'm writing an essay about Alexander Fleming.*

give in/hand in an essay (also **submit an essay** formal): *Make sure that you hand in your essay on time.*

mark an essay BrE, **grade an essay** AmE: *I still have a pile of essays to mark this evening.*

read an essay *Did you read her essay on 'The Waste Land'?*

an essay discusses/examines/explores sth *This essay discusses the causes of the Spanish Civil War.*

sb argues sth in an essay *In his essay, he argues that true equality is impossible.*

an essay is entitled sth *She wrote an essay entitled 'The Theory of Democracy'.*

essay + NOUNS

an essay question *We practised essay questions from previous exam papers.*

an essay title *You will find a list of essay titles on the noticeboard.*

an essay topic *Students will be given six essay topics, from which they must choose two.*

PREPOSITIONS

an essay on/about sth *We had to write an essay on the causes of the Russian Revolution.*

in an essay *She mentions this research in her essay.*

PHRASES

a collection of essays *She published a collection of essays on philosophy.*

essential *adj* very important and basic

ADVERBS

absolutely/really essential *Regular checks at the dentist are absolutely essential if you want healthy teeth.*

NOUNS

an essential part/feature *Practical study forms an essential part of the course.*

an essential ingredient/element/component (=a part that is essential for something to

succeed) *Most people believe that love is an essential ingredient in a marriage.*

the essential difference *The essential difference between people and machines is that people sometimes make mistakes.*

the essential point *I think they have missed the essential point.*

an essential requirement *Knowledge of the financial markets was an essential requirement of her job.*

an essential tool *A camera is an essential tool for all kinds of work.*

an essential item *Mothers are given money so they can buy clothes and other essential items for their babies.*

essential information *You can get essential travel information from the website.*

essential reading (=something you must read) *The journal is essential reading for doctors.*

essential services (=organizations such as the police or the fire or health service) *The law prohibits workers in essential services from striking.*

VERBS

be seen/regarded as essential *These measures are seen as essential for national security.*

be considered essential *Air conditioning is considered essential in some parts of the world.*

PREPOSITIONS

essential for sb/sth *Change is essential for the survival of the company.*

PHRASES

play/perform an essential role in sth *Antibiotics play an essential role in controlling infection.*

by no means essential (=certainly not essential) *The equipment is useful but by no means essential.*

THESAURUS: essential

fundamental, core, essential, central, underlying → **basic** (1)

big, significant, major, notable, key, essential, vital, crucial/critical, paramount, historic, landmark, momentous → **important** (1)

establish [Ac] *v* **THESAURUS** start¹ (3)

established [Ac] *adj*
already in use or existing for a long period of time

Grammar

Established is usually used before a noun with this meaning.

ADVERBS

well established (=existing for a long time and respected or trusted by people) *As an author, McCarthy is well established.*

long established *The right to remain silent is a long-established principle of British justice.*

You write **well-established** and **long-established** with a hyphen when you use them before a noun.

NOUNS

an established business *He wanted to buy an established business, rather than start his own.*

an established institution *The new prime minister criticized many established government institutions.*

an established brand/product *The company plans to make major changes to its established products.*

an established reputation *This firm has an established reputation for quality.*

an established tradition *The custom of sending Christmas cards was an established tradition by 1900.*

established practice (=a particular way of doing something that is accepted as the best way) *Not allowing patients to eat before surgery is established practice.*

an established part/feature of sth *The tomato has become an established part of the British diet.*

an established writer/artist/composer etc (=one that is already successful) *The exhibition includes work by art students as well as by more established artists.*

the established order (=the people and organizations that have power) *The revolutionaries posed a serious threat to the established order.*

establishment [Ac] n

the group of people in a society or profession who have a lot of power and influence, and are often opposed to any kind of change

Grammar

In this meaning, you always say **the establishment**. You usually use it when you disapprove of the people who control what happens in a society.

PHRASES

a member of the establishment *Most male members of the establishment resisted equal rights for women.*

a pillar of the establishment (=an important and respected member) *Though a rebel in his youth, he became a pillar of the establishment.*

estimate [Ac] n

a calculation of the probable cost, size, or amount of something

ADJECTIVES

a rough/approximate estimate (=not exact) *Can you give me a rough estimate of how long this is going to take?*

an accurate/reliable estimate (=fairly exact) *It's hard to put an accurate estimate on the number of people who have been affected by the disaster.*

a conservative estimate (=deliberately low) *By conservative estimates, 2.5 million people die each year from smoking cigarettes.*

an official estimate (=accepted by people in authority) *According to official army estimates, more than 500 rebels had been killed.*

current/recent estimates (=ones that are accepted now) *According to current estimates, the country can expect 200,000 visitors in the next three years.*

the latest estimates (=most recent) *The latest estimates are that sea levels could rise by about 20 cm by 2050.*

earlier/previous estimates *These amounts are much higher than those given in previous estimates.*

the original estimate (=the one given at the beginning of a process) *The final cost of the project was nearly three times the original estimate.*

a revised estimate (=changed from the previous one) *If the time starts to exceed this estimate, we will let you know and give you a revised estimate.*

VERBS

make an estimate *If you don't know the exact figure, make a rough estimate.*

give (sb) an estimate (also provide (sb with) an estimate formal) (=tell them approximately how much something will cost) *The builder's going to give us an estimate for the work.*

put an estimate on sth (=say the amount that you think something is) *It is impossible to put an estimate on the value of the jewellery.*

exceed an estimate (=be more than it) *The final price cannot exceed the estimate.*

base an estimate on sth (=use something as information to give an estimate) *The government based its estimate on data from the 2008 census.*

an estimate puts sth at sth *Independent estimates put the number of refugees at 50,000.*

estimates range/vary from sth to sth *Estimates of the number of homeless people in the city range from 6,000 to 10,000.*

PREPOSITIONS

an estimate of sth *We need an estimate of the number of people who will come.*

an estimate for sth *How much was their estimate for the work?*

according to an estimate *According to some estimates, an acre of rainforest is cleared every minute.*

eternal *adj* **THESAURUS** **permanent**

ethics [Ac] *n*
moral rules or principles of behaviour

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + ethics

professional ethics *He said professional ethics did not allow him to give me the information.*

business ethics *Business ethics may vary from one country to another.*

medical ethics *Not giving a patient full information about their treatment is against medical ethics.*

journalistic/media ethics *It is a violation of journalistic ethics to let your own opinions influence a news report.*

PHRASES

a code of ethics (=a set of ethics, usually an official one) *Members are required to abide by the code of ethics.*

a system of ethics *This philosopher offered a new system of ethics.*

a breach/violation of ethics (=doing something that is not morally acceptable) *He was accused of a breach of journalistic ethics.*

ethnic [Ac] *adj*
relating to a particular race or group of people with the same culture and traditions

NOUNS

an ethnic group *People from India form the city's largest ethnic group.*

an ethnic minority (=a small ethnic group living within a much larger group) *There should be no discrimination against those from ethnic minorities.*

ethnic origin/background *The students are from a variety of ethnic backgrounds.*

an ethnic identity (=the feeling of belonging to an ethnic group) *These small tribal communities share a common ethnic identity.*

ethnic diversity (=the fact of including people from many different ethnic groups) *Chicago prides itself on its ethnic diversity.*

an ethnic mix (=a mixture of people from different ethnic groups) *The school has a wonderful ethnic mix.*

the ethnic composition/make-up of sth (=how many members of different ethnic groups something contains) *The ethnic composition of the population has changed.*

ethnic violence/conflict (=fighting between different ethnic groups) *There have been outbreaks of ethnic violence.*

ethnic tension *It is feared that the growing ethnic tension could lead to civil war.*

ethnic divisions (=disagreements between members of different ethnic groups) *There are deep ethnic divisions in the country.*

ethnic cleansing (=the action of forcing people to leave an area or country because of their ethnic group) *The first time we heard about ethnic cleansing was in Yugoslavia.*

an ethnic Russian/Albanian etc (=someone whose family is Russian etc, but who is living in another country) *There are about 1.4 million ethnic Hungarians in Romania.*

PHRASES

along ethnic lines (=according to the ethnic groups that people belong to) *They are planning to divide the country along ethnic lines.*

evade *v* **THESAURUS** **avoid (2)**

evaluate *v*
to judge how good, useful, or successful something is

ADVERBS

carefully evaluate sth *The research data is carefully evaluated.*

critically evaluate sth *There is a constant need to critically evaluate and improve the systems we use for our work.*

properly evaluate sth *There was a failure to properly evaluate the evidence available at the time.*

fully/thoroughly evaluate sth *The project's effect on criminal behaviour has not yet been thoroughly evaluated.*

continually/constantly evaluate sth *The relationship between doctors and other health workers needs to be continually evaluated.*

PHRASES

be difficult/hard to evaluate *It is difficult to evaluate the effectiveness of the drug based on a small number of patients.*

evaluation *n*

the process of making a judgment about what something is like or how good it is

VERBS

make/carry out/do an evaluation (also **conduct an evaluation** *formal*): *The doctors are carrying out an evaluation of the patient's condition.*

undergo an evaluation *formal*: *Every new product has to undergo a safety evaluation before it is allowed to be sold.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + evaluation

a full/comprehensive evaluation *A decision will be taken after a full evaluation of all the possible options.*

a critical evaluation *The students were asked to write a critical evaluation of the poem.*

a proper evaluation *Nobody has yet provided a proper evaluation of the risks involved.*

PREPOSITIONS

for evaluation *Some samples were sent to the laboratory for evaluation.*

under evaluation (=being examined and judged) *The new drug is currently under evaluation to make sure that it is safe.*

PHRASES

sb's evaluation of the situation *His evaluation of the situation is much the same as mine.*

even *adj* **THESAURUS** flat¹

evening *n*

the early part of the night between the end of the day and the time you go to bed

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + evening

good evening (=used when meeting someone in the evening) *Good evening, officer.*

this/that evening *I'll phone you this evening.*

tomorrow/yesterday evening *Would you like to come over tomorrow evening?*

Monday/Friday etc evening *By Sunday evening, all the snow had gone.*

early/late evening *By the time we arrived, it was late evening.*

all evening/the whole evening *They watched television all evening.*

a fine/warm/cool etc evening *It was a fine evening, so we decide to eat outside.*

a spring/summer etc evening *On a summer evening, the streets are full of people.*

a lovely/wonderful/pleasant evening *I thanked them for a lovely evening.*

a romantic evening *Tonight the couple are having a romantic evening to celebrate their anniversary.*

evening + NOUNS

an evening meal *I was just preparing the evening meal when the phone rang.*

the evening paper/news *There was a report about the fire on the evening news.*

evening dress (=formal clothes that people wear to social events in the evening) *The men all wore evening dress.*

VERBS

spend an evening *He spent many evenings alone in his room.*

have a nice/wonderful etc evening *Have a nice evening. See you tomorrow.*

PREPOSITIONS

in the evening *We met up again later in the evening.*

for the evening *Her parents had gone out for the evening.*

on Monday/Friday etc evening *They were due to leave on Sunday evening.*

⚠ Don't say 'On the evening we went to a party.' Say **In the evening we went to a party.**

event *n*

something that happens, especially something important, interesting, or unusual

ADJECTIVES

an important event *It's natural to be nervous before such an important event.*

a big/major/significant event (=important) *Getting married is a major event in anyone's life.*

a political/historical event *The French Revolution was the result of a complex series of historical events.*

a historic/momentous event (=very important and having a big effect) *The signing of the peace treaty was a historic event.*

a dramatic event (=very exciting) *The dramatic events were broadcast live all over the world.*

a terrible/tragic event *The court heard evidence of the tragic events that led to his death.*

current events (=happening now) *The website has news of current events in the US.*

recent events/the latest events *Recent events in the country have caused great concern.*

the day's/week's etc events *We sat down to discuss the day's events.*

a traumatic event (=very upsetting) *He was forced to relive the traumatic events of his kidnap.*

a rare/unusual event *A sighting of a white deer is a rare event.*

an unlikely event *Should this unlikely event take place, they want to be prepared.*

a common/everyday event *The death of a child was a common event in those days.*

VERBS

an event happens/takes place (also **an event occurs** *formal*): *When traumatic events happen, we need our families around us.*

events unfold (=happen, usually in an exciting or unexpected way) *I watched the dramatic events unfold from my window.*

events lead (up) to sth (=cause it) *His assassination was one of the events that led to the First World War.*

celebrate/commemorate/mark an event *Fans observed a minute's silence to commemorate the tragic event.*

witness an event (=see it happen) *Luckily, a film crew was there to witness the event.*

PHRASES

a series/sequence of events (=related events that happen one after the other) *The book describes the sequence of events leading up to the war.*

a chain of events (=a series of events where each one causes the next) *He set in motion a chain of events that he couldn't control.*

the course of events (=the way in which a series of events happens) *Nothing you could have done would have changed the course of events.*

exaggerate *v*

to say that something is greater, worse etc than it really is

NOUNS

exaggerate the importance/significance of sth *I think people sometimes exaggerate the importance of his work.*

exaggerate the impact/effect of sth *It is important not to exaggerate the impact of this legislation.*

exaggerate the danger/threat/risk *Newspapers were accused of exaggerating the danger of the virus.*

exaggerate the size of sth *I'm sure the government is exaggerating the size of the problem.*

exaggerate the extent of sth *The extent of the damage has been exaggerated.*

ADVERBS

greatly exaggerated *He claimed that the risks had been greatly exaggerated.*

wildly exaggerated (=by a very large amount, in a way that is not at all realistic) *Wildly exaggerated reports about the singer's private life began appearing in the press.*

highly exaggerated *Their claims were highly exaggerated.*

grossly exaggerated (=by a very large amount, in a way that is wrong) *The damage the animals did to crops was grossly exaggerated.*

slightly exaggerate sth *I may have slightly exaggerated my ability as a cook.*

deliberately exaggerate sth *Did government officials deliberately exaggerate the threat to national security?*

PHRASES

it is difficult/hard/impossible to exaggerate sth (=used to emphasise that something is very big, important etc) *It is difficult to exaggerate the strength of people's feelings on this matter.*

it is easy to exaggerate sth *It is easy to exaggerate the threat of terrorism.*

exaggeration *n*

a statement or way of saying something that makes something seem better, larger etc than it really is

ADJECTIVES

a great/huge exaggeration *Some people say the painting is worth over \$1 million – this is a great exaggeration.*

a gross exaggeration *formal* (=very great and untrue) *His comments were a gross exaggeration.*

a wild exaggeration *The claim that 100,000 people attended the concert was a wild exaggeration.*

a slight exaggeration (*also a bit of an exaggeration informal*): *It's a slight exaggeration, but it's not far from the truth.*

PHRASES

without exaggeration *I can say without exaggeration that he is one of the finest writers of his generation.*

a degree/an element of exaggeration (=some exaggeration) *There may be a degree of exaggeration in her story, but basically it is true.*

it is no exaggeration to say that... (=it is definitely true, even though it may seem surprising) *It is no exaggeration to say that this is the best film so far this year.*

sb is prone to exaggeration (=they often exaggerate) *My aunt was prone to exaggeration and I did not always trust what she said.*

exam *n*

a test of knowledge, usually taken in a school, college, or university

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + exam

a chemistry/French/music etc exam *She scored 80% in her history exam.*

a written exam *There is a written exam at the end of the course.*

an oral exam (=in which you answer questions by speaking) *I have my French oral exams next week.*

a final exam (=at the end of a course) *The students take their final exams in June.*

an entrance exam (=in order to enter a school or university) *Her son failed the entrance exam to a national university.*

high school exams *Greg got good grades in all of his high school exams.*

a mock exam *BrE* (=as practice for a real exam) *He did well in the mock exams.*

VERBS

take/do an exam (*also sit an exam BrE*): *We have to take exams at the end of each year.*

⚠ Don't say 'make an exam'.

pass an exam (=succeed in it) *You need 50% or more to pass the exam.*

fail an exam (*also flunk an exam AmE informal*): *If you fail the exam, you can retake it.*

do well/badly in an exam *BrE*, **do well/badly on an exam** *AmE*: *Maria always did well in her exams at school.*

study for an exam (*also revise for an exam BrE*): *She has to study for her exams.*

sail through an exam (=pass it easily) *Don't worry – I'm sure you'll sail through all your exams.*

scrape through an exam (=only just pass it) *He managed to scrape through the exam and stay on the course.*

cheat in an exam *BrE*, **cheat on an exam** *AmE*: *She was caught cheating in the exam.*

retake an exam (*also resit an exam BrE*) (=take it again because you did not do well the

first time) *If you don't do well, you'll have to resit the exam in January.*

set an exam BrE (=write the questions for it) *Set the students an exam and see how well they do.*

mark an exam BrE, **grade an exam** AmE (=see how well someone has done) *Which teacher will be marking the exam?*

exam + NOUNS

an exam paper *I've still got dozens of exam papers to mark.*

an exam question *Read the exam questions carefully before writing your answers.*

exam results *The school achieves consistently good exam results.*

exam marks BrE, **exam score** AmE: *Her exam marks have improved since last year.*

exam revision BrE: *I have to do my exam revision this weekend.*

exam technique (=good ways to succeed in exams) *Mr Frasier gave us some useful tips on exam technique.*

PREPOSITIONS

in an exam BrE, **on an exam** AmE: *In his chemistry exam, he got 68%.*

examination ⁿ

1 a test of knowledge, usually taken in a school or college

Examination is a formal word. In everyday English, people usually say **exam**.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + examination

a chemistry/French/music etc examination *Most of the students passed the science examination.*

a written examination *Assessment is by coursework and written examinations.*

an oral examination (=in which you answer questions by speaking) *For French, there is an oral and a written examination.*

a final examination (=at the end of a course) *My final examinations are in June.*

an entrance examination (=to enter a school or university) *He failed the college entrance examination twice.*

a mock examination (=a practice examination to prepare for the real one) *We have our mock examinations in March, and the real ones in June.*

VERBS

take an examination (also **sit an examination** BrE): *Do you have to take an examination in every subject?*

pass an examination *I really hope that Suzie passes the examination.*

fail an examination *Michael had never yet failed an examination.*

study for an examination (also **revise for an examination** BrE): *I have been studying all week for the examination.*

do well/badly in an examination BrE, **do well/badly on an examination** AmE: *He did well in his examinations, and went on to study at MIT.*

cheat in an examination BrE, **cheat on an examination** AmE: *Any student caught cheating in an examination will be suspended.*

set an examination BrE (=write the questions for it) *The people who set the examinations are usually former teachers.*

examination + NOUNS

examination results *The examination results will be announced in September.*

an examination paper *There will be a choice of questions on the examination paper.*

an examination question *Read the examination questions carefully before starting to write.*

examination marks BrE, **examination grade** AmE: *On average, girls achieved higher examination marks than boys.*

PREPOSITIONS

in an examination BrE, **on an examination** AmE: *In this examination, students may use a calculator.*

2 the process of looking at something carefully in order to see what it is like

ADJECTIVES

a careful examination *After a careful examination of the evidence, we find the defendant guilty.*

a detailed examination *Investigators have carried out a detailed examination of the scene.*

a close/thorough examination (=very careful and detailed) *A close examination of the figures raised some questions.*

a brief examination (=quick, and not very detailed) *In chapter one, there is a brief examination of the economic situation at the time.*

a cursory examination (=very quick and not careful or detailed) *Even a cursory examination of the documents would reveal some serious problems.*

a preliminary/initial examination (=done before something is examined more closely) *An initial examination of the car showed no mechanical fault.*

further examination (=a more detailed or careful examination) *The results of the experiment merit further examination.*

VERBS

carry out an examination (also **conduct an examination** formal) (=examine something) *The police are carrying out an examination of the crime scene.*

an examination shows sth (also **an examination reveals sth** formal): *Closer examination reveals the difference between the two insects.*

PREPOSITIONS

an examination of sth *An examination of the figures shows that sales have been falling.*

under examination *The way the matter was handled is under examination by investigators.*

PHRASES

on closer examination *On closer examination, I could see a slight crack in the vase.*

3 a set of medical tests

ADJECTIVES

a medical examination *We need to do a further medical examination.*

a physical examination *All patients are given a complete physical examination.*

a routine examination (=one that is done regularly) *I made an appointment at the dentist's for a routine examination.*

a clinical examination (=by a doctor) *The clinical examination did not reveal anything abnormal.*

a post-mortem examination (=of a dead body to discover why the person died) *The post-mortem examination showed that he died from heart failure.*

VERBS

have an examination (also **undergo an examination** formal): *He was examined by Dr Bower yesterday and will have another examination today.*

conduct/perform an examination *The doctor will perform an examination in order to assess the problem.*

an examination shows sth (also **an examination reveals sth** formal): *A second examination showed a small growth in his stomach.*

examine ^v

to look at something carefully and thoroughly because you want to find out more about it

ADVERBS

examine sth carefully/closely *The doctor examined his ears carefully, and told him there was no damage.*

examine sth thoroughly/fully *These important archaeological remains will be thoroughly examined by experts.*

examine sth briefly *In this section we briefly examine the evidence so far.*

PREPOSITIONS

examine sth for sth (=look at it carefully trying to find something) *The police have examined the weapon for fingerprints.*

PHRASES

examine sth in detail *Hegel's philosophy will be examined in detail in Chapter 4.*

example ⁿ

1 something that explains or supports an idea or is typical of something

ADJECTIVES

a good/typical example *This painting is a good example of his early work.*

a fine/excellent example *Cairo has many fine examples of Arab architecture.*

an outstanding example (=extremely good) *The garden is one of the most outstanding examples of traditional Japanese garden design.*

a classic/perfect/prime example (=very typical) *This is a classic example of how not to run a business.*

an obvious example *The most obvious example of an information source is a dictionary.*

a blatant/glaring example (=very obvious and very bad) *His case is a blatant example of the unfairness of the current system.*

an extreme example *To give you an extreme example, one lady called the police 15 times in a single evening.*

a graphic example (=very clear and full of unpleasant details) *The film is full of graphic examples of what can go wrong if safety procedures are not followed.*

VERBS

give/provide an example *Can anyone give me an example of a transitive verb?*

take an example (=consider it or talk about it) *Let's take the example of a family with two school-age children.*

use an example *He used several examples to illustrate his point.*

cite an example (=mention one) *The report cites the example of Sweden, where there is a complete ban on advertising on children's television.*

find an example *We found examples of people being overcharged by as much as 50%.*

an example shows/illustrates sth *These examples show how the disease can be passed on to humans.*

2 a person or behaviour that people copy

ADJECTIVES

a good/positive example *The older children should set a positive example for the rest of the school.*

a bad example *Stop it – you're setting a bad example to your little brother.*

a shining example (=a very good example) *Professor Squires was a shining example of what a good teacher should be.*

an inspiring example (=who makes people want to do something great or good) *She remains an inspiring example of love and self-sacrifice.*

VERBS

set an example (=show by your own behaviour how other people should behave) *Parents should set an example for their children.*

follow sb's example (=copy their behaviour) *I suggest you follow Rosie's example and start doing regular exercise.*

lead by example (=show people what they should do by doing it yourself) *The captain of the team should lead by example.*

hold sb up as an example (=use someone as a good example of something) *He was held up as an example to the younger athletes.*

PREPOSITIONS

an example to sb *Her courage is an example to us all.*

excellent *adj*

extremely good or of very high quality

NOUNS

excellent condition *The car is in excellent condition.*

excellent value *The hotel was excellent value.*

an excellent example *The palace is an excellent example of late 17th-century architecture.*

an excellent idea/suggestion/choice *I think the award is an excellent idea.*

an excellent job/piece of work *She does an excellent job of describing the problems that young people face.*

an excellent student/player/cook *Maria was an excellent student and passed all her exams easily.*

an excellent book/film/song *He wrote an excellent book about child psychology.*

excellent English/French/German etc *The hotel staff all speak excellent English.*

an excellent article/report/paper *The paper has an excellent article on the current political situation in Greece.*

ADVERBS

really excellent *His wife was a really excellent cook.*

absolutely excellent *I loved the speech – it was absolutely excellent.*

truly excellent *We increased our profit by 40% – a truly excellent performance!*

⚠ Don't say 'very excellent'.

THESAURUS: excellent

great *spoken*
extremely good. **Great** is more informal than **excellent**, and is very common in everyday spoken English:
The kids had a great time. | He did a great job as captain. | It sounds like a great idea.

wonderful

extremely good – used especially when you are very pleased or excited:

"She's having a baby." "That's wonderful news." | There are some wonderful moments in the film.

fantastic/terrific *spoken*

extremely good – used especially when you are very pleased or excited:

The music was fantastic – it's one of the best concerts I've ever been to. | He's a terrific tennis player.

awesome *informal*

very good – used especially when you are very pleased or excited. **Awesome** is a very informal word, which is used mainly by young people:

The band were awesome.

amazing/incredible

extremely good in a surprising and exciting way:

The hotel has an amazing view of Tokyo. | The trip was an incredible experience.

superb

extremely good – used especially when you are very impressed by something:

The acting was superb. | There is a superb range of cheeses.

first class

food | service | meal | hotel | restaurant | accommodation | facilities

of a high quality and much better than most others:

The service at the hotel is first class. | The school has first-class sports facilities.

You write **first-class** with a hyphen when you use it before a noun.

outstanding

example | achievement | success | performance | player | feature | natural beauty

extremely good – used especially when saying that someone has done something very well:

*The painting is an outstanding example of early Italian art. | Winning the championship three times was a **truly outstanding** achievement. | The Lake District is an area of outstanding natural beauty.*

exceptional

talent | ability | skill | value | player | artist | performance | quality

unusually good – used when saying that someone or something is much better than any others:

He is an artist of exceptional talent. | The café offers exceptional value for money.

If something is extremely good, you can say that it is **out of this world**: *The food is out of this world.*

exception ⁿ

something or someone that is not included in a general statement or does not follow a rule or pattern

ADJECTIVES

an important/significant exception *The treaty was signed by all the EU member countries with one significant exception: Britain.*

a major exception (=very important) *Most industries are struggling but the tourist industry is a major exception to this.*

a notable exception (=one that is very interesting, excellent, or unusual) *The houses along the river are all modern, with the notable exception of the old mill.*

an obvious exception *The earliest historical records are written in Indo-European languages, with the obvious exception of Chinese.*

a minor exception (=not important) *Everyone was in agreement, with a few minor exceptions.*

a single/sole exception (=one on its own) *All the men were killed, with the sole exception of Captain Jones.*

a rare exception *Books on philosophy can be quite dull, but this is a rare exception.*

VERBS

make an exception (=deal with someone or something in a different way from usual on a particular occasion) *We usually require a 10% deposit, but I'll make an exception in this case.*

PREPOSITIONS

an exception to sth *There are some exceptions to this rule.*

without exception *Without exception, all the children were well behaved and polite.*

with the exception of sth/sb *We all laughed, with the exception of Miss Smith.*

PHRASES

be no exception *The river floods every winter, and this year was no exception.*

be the exception to the rule/that proves the rule (=be different from most other people or things) *Most of the boys were shy, but Larry was the exception to the rule.*

be the exception, not the rule (=used to emphasize that something is unusual) *Staying married for life seems to be the exception, not the rule these days.*

with the possible exception of sb/sth *Scientists say that Mercury is the least understood planet, with the possible exception of Uranus.*

exceptional ^{adj}

1 unusually good

ADVERBS

quite exceptional (=very exceptional) *Her memory for facts is quite exceptional.*

truly exceptional (=really or extremely exceptional) *The film features a truly exceptional cast, including Oscar winner Denzel Washington.*

NOUNS

exceptional talent/ability/skill *He showed exceptional talent even as a youngster.*

exceptional quality *This is a wine of exceptional quality.*

exceptional bravery/courage *Fire crews showed exceptional bravery.*

an exceptional performance *He left the field to cheers from the fans, after another exceptional performance.*

exceptional value *The hotel offers exceptional value.*

an exceptional person/player/student etc *He was an exceptional manager, and all the staff liked him.*

THESAURUS: exceptional

great, wonderful, fantastic/terrific, awesome, amazing/incredible, superb, first class, outstanding, exceptional → **excellent**

2 unusual and likely not to happen often

NOUNS

an exceptional case *Students are only allowed to take time off from their studies in exceptional cases.*

an exceptional event *If an exceptional event occurs, such as the death of a family member, you can ask for the court case to be postponed.*

an exceptional situation *It was an exceptional situation so the usual rules didn't apply.*

the exceptional nature of sth (=the very unusual qualities or features that something has) *In view of the exceptional nature of his crime, he was sentenced to 20 years in prison.*

ADVERBS

most exceptional (=very exceptional) *A child will only be removed from the parental home in the most exceptional cases.*

highly exceptional (=extremely exceptional) *A loan of this size is highly exceptional.*

PHRASES

in exceptional circumstances (=when a situation is extremely unusual) *The US will only issue a visitor visa at short notice in exceptional circumstances.*

THESAURUS: exceptional

rare, exotic, exceptional, out of the ordinary, freak, unprecedented, unheard of, eccentric, unconventional, unorthodox → **unusual**

excessive *adj*

much more than is reasonable or necessary

ADVERBS

rather/somewhat excessive \$20 for two beers seems rather excessive.

grossly excessive (=extremely excessive) The punishment was grossly excessive and totally unfair.

NOUNS

excessive use of sth Farmers have been criticized for their excessive use of chemical fertilizers.

excessive force The men claim that the police officers used excessive force.

excessive amounts of sth I was staying up late, consuming excessive amounts of coffee.

excessive drinking/eating His liver problems had been caused by excessive drinking.

excessive speed Excessive speed is a major cause of road accidents.

exchange *n*

1 the act of giving someone something and receiving something from them

ADJECTIVES

a fair exchange Two of his computer games for two of mine seemed like a fair exchange.

PREPOSITIONS

an exchange of sth We hope to have an exchange of ideas on how to deal with the problem.

in exchange for sth The country agreed to give up its nuclear program in exchange for energy benefits and other aid.

2 an arrangement in which a student, teacher etc visits another school or university to work or study

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + exchange

a student exchange Our college arranged student exchanges with four colleges in France.

a language exchange (=done for the purposes of learning a foreign language) A German girl is coming to stay with us on a language exchange.

a Spanish/French/German etc exchange (=in order to learn a particular language) I'm going to Madrid on a Spanish exchange.

a cultural/scientific/academic exchange The mayors of Tokyo and New York signed an agreement to encourage cultural exchanges between the cities.

VERBS

go on an exchange (also **take part in an exchange**) Students have the opportunity to go on exchanges.

exchange + NOUNS

an exchange programme BrE, **an exchange program** AmE: The University of Stirling has undergraduate exchange programmes with several institutions.

an exchange visit He had gone to France on an exchange visit.

an exchange student We have a German exchange student in our class.

an exchange partner We are going to Rome in March, then our Italian exchange partners are coming over in June.

PREPOSITIONS

on an exchange I went to Japan on an exchange.

an exchange with sb/sth I'm here for one term, on an exchange with Dr Fisher.

an exchange between sb/sth Her visit is part of an exchange between students from the two universities.

3 a process in which you change money from one currency to another

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + exchange

foreign exchange (=money in a foreign currency, that a country gets by selling goods abroad) Oil is a vital source of foreign exchange earnings for the country.

exchange + NOUNS

the exchange rate What's the current exchange rate between the dollar and the euro?

the exchange markets (=a financial market where different currencies are bought and sold) The pound rose against the dollar on the world foreign currency exchange markets.

exchange controls (=limits on the amount of a currency people are allowed to exchange) The government is going to impose stricter exchange controls.

excite *v*

to cause a particular feeling or reaction

NOUNS

excite interest/attention She is a talented young actress who has excited a lot of interest.

excite curiosity Rumours of hidden treasure excited our curiosity.

excite sympathy She sought to excite the jury's sympathy at every opportunity.

excite anger The government's proposals have excited anger among teachers.

excite hatred/hostility He accused sections of the media of trying to excite racial hatred.

excite suspicion He tried not to do anything to excite the suspicion of the police.

excite a reaction Her comments did not excite any reaction from her listeners.

excite comments *The film excited a lot of favourable comments, both here and in America.*

excite rumours BrE, **excite rumors** AmE: *These photographs have excited rumours that their marriage is over.*

excite speculation (=encourage people to discuss something when they do not know the facts) *The cut in US interest rates excited speculation of a similar cut in the UK.*

excited adj

happy, interested, or hopeful because something good has happened or will happen

VERBS

get/become excited *They got really excited about the idea.*

feel/sound/look excited *She looked very excited when I told her the news.*

NOUNS

an excited voice/face *Loud excited voices could be heard outside the room.*

an excited crowd *The streets were full of excited crowds.*

excited anticipation (=excited feelings because you know something will happen soon) *We waited with excited anticipation for the band to come on stage.*

ADVERBS

wildly excited *They played in front of a wildly excited crowd.*

PREPOSITIONS

excited about sth *The governors were very excited about the scheme.*

excited by sth *Many people were excited by what he had to say.*

excited at sth *I was excited at the thought of seeing her again.*

excitement n

the feeling of being excited

ADJECTIVES

great/tremendous/enormous excitement *There is great excitement about the Pope's visit.*

growing/mounting excitement *The children waited with growing excitement.*

sheer excitement (=used when emphasizing that something is very exciting) *Nothing can beat driving a racing car for sheer excitement.*

intense excitement (=a very strong feeling of excitement) *The trial created intense excitement.*

real/genuine excitement *There is genuine excitement about what we can achieve together.*

nervous excitement *Before the race I was full of nervous excitement.*

VERBS + excitement

feel excitement *I remember the excitement I felt as I approached the house.*

cause/generate/create excitement *The arrival of a stranger caused some excitement in the village.*

hide/conceal your excitement *He tried to hide his excitement, but his voice was shaking.*

control/contain your excitement *She could hardly control her excitement when I told her the news.*

tremble with excitement *Her hands were trembling with excitement as she opened the letter.*

be bursting with excitement (=be feeling extremely excited) *I was bursting with excitement and I couldn't wait to tell them the news.*

excitement + VERBS

the excitement grows/mounts/builds (=it increases) *Her excitement grew as the day of the wedding came nearer.*

the excitement wears off (=it gradually becomes less) *The initial excitement of my new job was starting to wear off.*

the excitement dies down (=people stop feeling excited) *The excitement after last month's elections is beginning to die down.*

PREPOSITIONS

excitement at sth *You can imagine my excitement at the thought of visiting Antarctica.*

the excitement of (doing) sth *He loved the excitement of flying his own plane.*

with excitement *We waited with great excitement but nothing happened.*

PHRASES

a sense/feeling of excitement *He woke up that morning with a feeling of excitement.*

a state of excitement *It seemed that the whole country was in a state of excitement.*

an air of excitement (=a general feeling of excitement among a group of people) *There was a real air of excitement before the game.*

be full of excitement/filled with excitement *They were full of excitement at the thought of meeting a real movie star.*

be wild with excitement *Cathy was wild with excitement at the idea.*

a flicker of excitement (=a feeling of excitement that lasts a very short time) *He felt a flicker of excitement when he heard someone mention his name.*

exciting adj

making you feel excited

VERBS

find sth exciting *He found it very exciting to ride a horse at such speed.*

make sth exciting *We want to make politics more exciting to young people.*

ADVERBS

very/really exciting *It's a really exciting time for us.*

tremendously/incredibly exciting *This has been a tremendously exciting project.*

NOUNS

an exciting opportunity *The new post offers an exciting career opportunity.*

exciting news *I've got some very exciting news for you.*

an exciting story/film/game *The story was so exciting that I forgot about the time.*

an exciting event *Eva felt very tired after the exciting events of the weekend.*

an exciting possibility *Penny considered the exciting possibility that Jack might be at the party.*

an exciting time *It was the most exciting time of my life.*

an exciting development (=a change that makes a product, situation etc better) *This exciting development could mean the end of the long-running conflict.*

an exciting prospect (=a future event, or a person who is likely to be successful) *For the team, there's the exciting prospect of travelling all over the world.*

an exciting life *She leads a glamorous and exciting life in New York.*

an exciting discovery *This Roman coin was a very exciting discovery for archaeologists.*

PHRASES

new and exciting *At that time the internet was all new and exciting.*

an exciting new... *There are some exciting new developments in cancer research.*

something exciting *Philip could see that she had something exciting to tell him.*

exclude Ac v

to deliberately not include someone or something

ADVERBS

specifically/expressly exclude sb/sth (=exclude them in particular) *The insurance policy specifically excludes dangerous sports such as rock climbing.*

completely/totally exclude sb/sth *These people are completely excluded from our society.*

automatically exclude sb/sth *Prisoners are automatically excluded from voting.*

VERBS

decide/choose to exclude sb/sth *The researchers chose to exclude these figures from their calculations.*

seek/try/attempt to exclude sb/sth *The contract seeks to exclude liability for all such claims.*

feel excluded *Writers and artists often feel excluded from the world around them.*

PREPOSITIONS

exclude sb/sth from sth *Women were excluded from the top levels of decision-making and power.*

exclusive Ac adj

1 available or belonging only to particular people, and not shared

NOUNS

exclusive rights to sth *BSkyB had exclusive rights to all the live matches.*

exclusive access to sth *Regulations prohibit anyone having exclusive access to the data.*

the exclusive use of sth *We had exclusive use of the house while he was away.*

an exclusive report/interview/picture (=appearing in only one newspaper or magazine) *The newspaper featured exclusive pictures of the couple's new baby.*

exclusive coverage (=by only one newspaper or TV channel) *You can watch exclusive coverage of all the matches on BBC1.*

an exclusive deal/contract (=one that says that no other person or company can do the same job) *Our firm has an exclusive contract to handle the company's legal affairs.*

an exclusive club (=only open to particular people) *Unfortunately, I'm not a member of the exclusive club of millionaires.*

PREPOSITIONS

exclusive to sb *This offer is exclusive to club members.*

2 exclusive places, organizations, clothes etc are so expensive that not many people can afford to use or buy them

NOUNS

an exclusive suburb/area *They live in an exclusive suburb on the north side of the city.*

an exclusive neighbourhood BrE, **an exclusive neighborhood** AmE: *Some of these kids are from the most exclusive neighbourhoods.*

an exclusive hotel *With its marble columns and crystal chandeliers, the Crillon is one of the most exclusive hotels in Paris.*

an exclusive school *Marjorie went to an exclusive girls' school.*

an exclusive shop (also **an exclusive store** AmE): *I walked along Bond Street, past all the exclusive shops.*

excuse n

a reason that you give to explain something you do

ADJECTIVES

a good excuse *I hope you have a good excuse for keeping me waiting.*

a wonderful/great excuse (=a very good excuse to do something) *A wedding is a wonderful excuse to buy a new set of clothes.*

the perfect excuse *The phone call gave me the perfect excuse to leave.*

a reasonable/legitimate/valid excuse (=one that is true and that other people cannot

criticize) *He didn't have a legitimate excuse for being late.*

a lame/feeble/weak/flimsy excuse (=not good) *Joe muttered some feeble excuse about having a headache.*

a pathetic excuse (=very weak) *That's the most pathetic excuse I've ever heard.*

the usual excuse/the same old excuse *He made the usual excuses for not coming.*

a convenient excuse *The rioting provided the government with a convenient excuse not to hold an election.*

VERBS

give/offer an excuse *I'll have to give my boss some kind of excuse.*

make an excuse *I made an excuse and left.*

make up/think up/invent an excuse *I made up some excuse about my car breaking down.*

find an excuse *You must find an excuse to go back there.*

have an excuse *Companies have no excuse for breaking the law.*

use sth as an excuse *She never complained or used her illness as an excuse.*

look for an excuse *I began to look for excuses to avoid seeing him.*

believe/accept an excuse *She didn't believe his excuse for one minute.*

listen to sb's excuses *The teacher didn't want to listen to his excuses.*

run out of excuses (=have made a lot of excuses before, so that you cannot think of any more) *The government has run out of excuses for its failure to fix the economy.*

make excuses for sb/sth (=try to explain why someone has made a mistake or behaved badly) *His mother was always making excuses for her son's behaviour.*

sth gives sb/provides an excuse *Drinking provides an excuse for behaving badly.*

PREPOSITIONS

an excuse for (doing) sth *What was his excuse for not calling you?*

PHRASES

at the slightest excuse (=for any reason, however unimportant) *She comes to our house at the slightest excuse.*

execute v **THESAURUS** **kill**

execution n

the act of killing someone, especially as a legal punishment

ADJECTIVES

a public execution (=which ordinary people can watch) *The last public execution in England was held in 1868.*

a mock execution (=in which people pretend they are going to kill someone) *The guards gave him a mock execution.*

a political execution *During the 1930s political executions were common in Stalin's Russia.*

a mass execution (=in which many people are killed at the same time) *Evidence of a mass execution of young men has been found.*

summary execution (=in which someone is killed immediately, without a trial) *Churchill demanded the summary execution of Nazi leaders.*

VERBS

carry out an execution *The execution was carried out early the next morning.*

face execution *He faces execution for the murder of his brother.*

await execution *formal* (=be waiting to be executed) *More than 3,300 prisoners currently await execution in US prisons.*

order sb's execution *The judge ordered his execution.*

watch/witness an execution *A crowd had gathered to witness the execution.*

delay an execution *The court agreed to delay the execution while they looked at new evidence.*

stop/halt an execution *The US Supreme Court stopped his execution, just minutes before he was to be killed.*

escape execution *The man was lucky to escape execution.*

an execution takes place *The execution took place the following day.*

PHRASES

a stay of execution (=an order that an execution should be delayed) *Saddam's lawyers asked a US judge for a stay of execution.*

death by execution *They face death by execution.*

exercise n

physical activities or movements that you do in order to stay healthy and become stronger

ADJECTIVES

good exercise *Swimming is very good exercise for all your muscles.*

regular/daily exercise *Taking regular exercise is the best way to improve your overall health.*

physical exercise *Physical exercise keeps you fit and helps to reduce stress.*

hard/strenuous/vigorous exercise (=involving a lot of physical effort) *Pregnant women should avoid strenuous exercise.*

gentle/light/moderate exercise *Try to do some gentle exercise as part of your daily routine.*

aerobic exercise (=in which you breathe deeply and your heart beats faster) *Aerobic exercise, such as jogging or cycling, is a great way to stay in shape.*

NOUNS + exercise

keep-fit exercises *I couldn't get to the gym, so I did a few keep-fit exercises in my bedroom.*

a warm-up exercise (=in order to make your muscles ready for doing an activity) *The*

athletes were doing their warm-up exercises before the race.

stretching exercises (=in order to stretch your muscles and make you healthy) My grandfather was doing his stretching exercises.

leg/chest/arm exercises Repeat this series of leg exercises three times.

VERBS

do some exercise (also **take some exercise** BrE): I don't do enough exercise.

do an exercise She does exercises to strengthen her legs.

get some exercise I work in an office, so I don't get enough exercise.

exercise + NOUNS

an exercise programme BrE, **an exercise program** AmE: The athletes follow an intensive exercise programme.

an exercise routine/regime (also **an exercise regimen** AmE): His exercise routine includes weight training and running ten kilometres a day.

an exercise class I usually go to my exercise class on Wednesdays.

PHRASES

lack of exercise Children are becoming overweight through lack of exercise.

a type/form of exercise This type of exercise is great for your upper body.

exert

to use your power, influence etc in order to make something happen

NOUNS

exert pressure Environmental groups are exerting pressure on the government to tighten pollution laws.

exert influence Large companies exert considerable influence over the government.

exert control The state should not exert control over the media.

exert power He exerts a lot of power within the family.

exert authority Parents sometimes need to exert their authority by establishing firm rules.

exert discipline Exerting discipline with these problem students is essential.

exert effort We exerted every effort to get there on time.

exert your will (=make something happen in the way that you want) The people used the elections to exert their will.

THESAURUS: exert

utilize, employ, apply, draw on sth, exploit, resort to sth, exercise, exert → **use**¹

exhausted

adj extremely tired

ADVERBS

absolutely exhausted I was absolutely exhausted by the time we got home.

totally/completely/utterly exhausted Looking after a baby on my own left me feeling totally exhausted.

mentally exhausted When I got to the end of my exams, I was mentally exhausted.

physically exhausted After the climb, both men were physically exhausted.

emotionally exhausted She was emotionally exhausted, and the strain was affecting her job.

VERBS

feel exhausted He felt exhausted, as though he had just run a marathon.

look exhausted You look absolutely exhausted.

PREPOSITIONS

exhausted by/from sth I was exhausted by the journey.

exhausting

adj **THESAURUS** tiring

exhaustion

n extreme tiredness

VERBS

suffer from exhaustion The singer was suffering from exhaustion and she had to cancel the concert.

collapse with/from exhaustion They kept on dancing until they collapsed from exhaustion.

be overcome by exhaustion (=be so exhausted that you cannot continue) Overcome by exhaustion, she fell asleep at her desk.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + exhaustion

complete/total/utter exhaustion Henry returned home late from work in a state of complete exhaustion.

sheer exhaustion (=used to emphasize that someone is very tired) I eventually fell asleep from sheer exhaustion.

nervous exhaustion (=exhaustion caused by worrying a lot) The actor said he was suffering from nervous exhaustion.

mental/emotional exhaustion He was forced to give up teaching because of mental exhaustion.

physical exhaustion She can no longer deal with the physical exhaustion of doing two full-time jobs.

heat exhaustion (=caused by very hot weather) Several elderly people were treated for heat exhaustion.

PHRASES

close/near to exhaustion The men were close to exhaustion, having walked for over 36 hours.

weak with exhaustion The long climb had left him weak with exhaustion.

on the edge of exhaustion I could see that she was on the edge of exhaustion and she needed to rest.

be in a state of exhaustion *The long journey had left him in a state of exhaustion.*

exhibition [Ac] n

a show of paintings, photographs, or other objects that people can go to see

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + exhibition

an art/photography/sculpture exhibition *The museum houses temporary art exhibitions.*

a big/large/small exhibition *This is the largest exhibition of its kind that we have ever seen in London.*

an important/major exhibition *His work is the subject of a major new exhibition at the National Gallery.*

a permanent exhibition *The museum has a permanent exhibition of paintings by local artists.*

a temporary exhibition *The space is used for temporary exhibitions.*

a touring/travelling exhibition (=one that moves from place to place) *The touring exhibition is scheduled to be in Dallas from March until June.*

a retrospective exhibition (=one that shows work from the past) *It was a retrospective exhibition celebrating 150 years of photography.*

VERBS + exhibition

go to/visit an exhibition *We went to an exhibition at the National Gallery.*

see an exhibition *Did you see any exhibitions when you were in Paris?*

have an exhibition *The college is having an exhibition of the students' work in April.*

hold/mount/stage an exhibition *formal* (=have an exhibition) *The Hayward Gallery is mounting an impressive exhibition of new British artists.*

put on an exhibition (=arrange for an exhibition to take place) *Last summer the museum put on some wonderful exhibitions for children.*

organize/arrange an exhibition *The exhibition was organized by the Getty Foundation.*

exhibition + VERBS

an exhibition opens/closes (=it starts or ends) *The exhibition opens on May 2nd.*

an exhibition includes sth *The exhibition includes some little-known works by Picasso.*

exhibition + NOUNS

an exhibition centre *BrE, an exhibition center* *AmE* (=a large building for holding exhibitions) *The exhibition will be held in the National Exhibition Centre in Birmingham.*

an exhibition hall *There's a large exhibition hall on the ground floor.*

an exhibition catalogue *BrE, an exhibition catalog* *AmE* (=a list or book giving information about all the things in an exhibition) *The exhibition catalogue contained some interesting information about the artists.*

PREPOSITIONS

an exhibition of sth *We're going to see an exhibition of Victorian photography.*

in an exhibition *All the paintings in the exhibition are for sale.*

on exhibition (=being shown in an exhibition) *Ancient musical instruments are on exhibition at the Institute.*

American English

US speakers often say **exhibit** instead of **exhibition**.

exile n

a situation in which you are forced to leave your country and live in another country, especially for political reasons

VERBS

go into exile *Napoleon's wife went into exile in Austria.*

live in exile *The Guatemalan writer has lived in exile in Mexico for over 40 years.*

be sent into exile *The old leaders were removed from power and sent into exile.*

be forced/driven into exile *Many of his political opponents have been forced into exile.*

flee/escape into exile *Hundreds of people fled into exile or were jailed.*

die in exile *He never returned to his own country, but died in exile.*

return from exile *Martinez returned from exile in 1990 and was later elected president.*

ADJECTIVES

long exile *These refugees have finally returned home from a long exile in Senegal.*

permanent exile *The king threatened her with permanent exile.*

enforced exile (=when someone is forced to go into exile) *After 12 years of enforced exile abroad, Almeyda returned home to Salvador.*

self-imposed/voluntary exile (=when someone goes into exile willingly, without being forced) *He spoke to the media from his self-imposed exile in the United States.*

PREPOSITIONS

in exile *Sharif began a new life in exile.*

exile from a place *During his exile from Russia, he took up art as a hobby.*

exist v

to happen or be present in a particular situation or place

ADVERBS

really/actually exist *Do you think ghosts really exist?*

already exist *Legislation to protect us from terrorists already exists.*

currently exist *No treaty currently exists between the two countries.*

still exist (=existing in the past and continuing to exist) *A number of his early photographs still exist.*

VERBS

continue to exist *The same problems continue to exist.*

cease to exist (=stop existing) *The club will cease to exist if financial help is not found.*

be known to exist *Seven copies of the original book are still known to exist.*

existence *n*

1 the state of existing

ADJECTIVES

a brief/short existence *The band had rather a brief existence.*

human existence *Darwin's theory of natural selection changed our view of human existence forever.*

sth's continued existence *The city's continued existence is threatened by rising water levels.*

sth's very existence (=the fact that it exists at all) *The university's very existence is in doubt.*

VERBS

come into existence (=start to exist) *Pakistan came into existence as an independent country in 1947.*

bring sth into existence *formal* (=make something start to exist) *This is the treaty that brought our state into existence.*

go out of existence (=stop existing) *If a buyer isn't found, this famous old club could go out of existence.*

acknowledge/recognize/accept the existence of sth (=agree that something exists) *The company finally acknowledged the existence of a problem.*

prove/confirm/establish the existence of sth *The images confirm the existence of water on the planet's surface.*

deny the existence of sth *He immediately denied the existence of any deal.*

doubt the existence of sth *He began to doubt the existence of God.*

threaten/jeopardize the existence of sth (=make it likely that something will stop existing) *The strike could jeopardize the existence of his company.*

owe your existence to sth (=be able to exist because of something) *The birds owe their existence to the fact that they have no natural enemies on the island.*

PREPOSITIONS

the existence of sth *Between the ages of two and five, children usually become aware of the existence of rules.*

in existence *The organization has been in existence for 25 years.*

2 the type of life that someone has, especially when it is bad or unhappy

ADJECTIVES

everyday/daily/day-to-day existence (=someone's normal life that is the same most days) *He saw drugs as a way of escaping the tedium of his everyday existence.*

a lonely/solitary existence *Male bears live a mostly solitary existence, away from the female and cubs.*

a miserable existence *The refugees had to endure a miserable existence in the desert.*

a dull/routine existence *I was happy to leave my routine existence behind.*

a frugal existence (=without much money) *He led a hard and frugal existence.*

a hand-to-mouth existence (=with just enough food or money to live) *The survivors lived a hand-to-mouth existence until they were rescued.*

a precarious existence (=only just managing to live) *The islanders, who rely on the sea to provide food, have a precarious existence.*

a comfortable existence (=with plenty of food and money) *He left behind his comfortable existence to become a monk.*

a peaceful existence *The different tribes in the area enjoyed a relatively peaceful existence.*

VERBS

lead/live a ... existence *The family lived a pretty miserable existence.*

enjoy a peaceful/quiet etc existence *They enjoy a comfortable existence.*

eke out an existence (=manage to live with very little money) *She eked out a miserable existence in a dreary apartment.*

exit *n*

1 a door or space through which you can leave a public room, building etc

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + exit

a fire/emergency exit (=a special door, used if there is an emergency or a fire) *Fire exits should not be locked.*

the front/rear/side exit *When the lights dimmed, she slipped out by the rear exit.*

the nearest exit *Please leave the building in an orderly fashion, using the nearest exit.*

VERBS

head for/make for the exit (=go to the exit) *Disappointed fans began heading for the exits.*

use an exit *In the event of a fire, please use the emergency exit nearest to you.*

block an exit *Two men were blocking the exit.*

exit + NOUNS

an exit door *Exit doors shouldn't be blocked at any time.*

an exit route (=a way out of a building, plane etc, used in an emergency or a fire) *Staff*

must become familiar with the building's exit routes.

an exit sign (=one showing where an exit is) There was a red glowing exit sign over the door.

2 when you leave a room or building

ADJECTIVES

a quick/fast exit I made a quick exit before the speeches began.

a hurried/swift exit (=very quick) The family made a hurried exit, leaving many of their belongings behind.

a dignified exit (=when someone leaves in a way that makes people respect them) Marco did his best to make a dignified exit.

an undignified exit (=when someone leaves in a way that is embarrassing or makes them look silly) She made a rather undignified exit, tripping down the step.

VERBS

make an exit/make your exit (=leave) And then, kissing them both goodbye, he made his exit.

exotic *adj* **THESAURUS** **unusual**

expand [Ac] *v*

to become larger in size, or to make something become larger in size

ADVERBS

expand (sth) rapidly The population is expanding rapidly.

expand (sth) greatly Japan's domestic economy expanded greatly during this period.

expand (sth) significantly (=in an important way) The United Nations significantly expanded its peacekeeping force in the region.

expand (sth) dramatically (=in a great and sudden way) Wine production has expanded dramatically.

expansion [Ac] *n*

when something increases in size, range, amount etc

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + expansion

a rapid expansion During the 1990s, there was a rapid expansion in student numbers.

a steady expansion There has been a steady expansion of the self-employed sector of the economy.

a big expansion This week the company announced a big expansion of its European workforce.

a great/huge/massive expansion There are plans for a massive expansion of the oil and gas industries.

a major/significant expansion (=large and important) The company is planning a major expansion of its retail outlets.

economic/business/commercial expansion Economic expansion in India and China is set to continue.

further expansion Investors think the hotel chain is ready for further expansion.

expansion + NOUNS

expansion plans The city's ambitious expansion plans will require major investment.

PREPOSITIONS

expansion of sth The rapid expansion of cities can cause social and economic problems.

expansion in sth There was a huge expansion in the size of the school.

PHRASES

the rate of expansion The rate of expansion was slightly slower last year.

expect *v*

to think that something will happen because it seems likely or has been planned

ADVERBS

fully expect sth (=completely) We fully expected to win.

confidently expect sth (=with a feeling of confidence) He confidently expected to be elected again.

half expect sth (=partly, but not completely) He walked slowly towards the box, half expecting it to explode.

really/honestly expect sth I didn't really expect her to come.

realistically/reasonably expect sth You need to ask yourself what you want and what you can realistically expect.

rightly expect sth (=with good reason) The public rightly expects government officials to be honest.

hardly expect sth (=used to say that it is not reasonable to expect something) You can hardly expect a child of three to understand such a difficult concept.

be widely expected to do sth (=many people think something will happen) The Democrats are widely expected to win the election.

PHRASES

as expected As expected, the chairman resigned from his post.

sth is (only) to be expected (=used to say that you are not surprised by something unpleasant) A little nervousness is only to be expected when you are starting a new job.

it is reasonable/unreasonable to expect sth It's unreasonable to expect a tenant to pay for repairs to the outside of the house.

sth happens when you least expect it Bad luck tends to happen when you least expect it.

expectation *n*

what you think or hope will happen

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + expectation

high expectations (=expecting that someone or something will be very good) *Like most parents, we have high expectations for our children.*

great expectations (=very high) *Emigrants sailed to America with great expectations.*

low expectations (=expecting that someone or something will not be very good) *Their expectations of success were pretty low.*

growing/rising/increased expectations *China's growing economy will bring rising expectations of wealth.*

realistic/reasonable expectations *The disease is not curable, and patients must have realistic expectations.*

unreasonable/unrealistic expectations *I think you had unrealistic expectations of what could be done in the time.*

a general/widespread expectation (=shared by a lot of people) *The general expectation was for married couples to have children.*

VERBS

have expectations *People often have high expectations when they first arrive in the US.*

raise sb's expectations (=make people expect that something good will happen) *The government raised expectations, then failed to keep its promises.*

lower sb's expectations (=expect that something will not be as good) *If you can't afford your dream home, you may have to lower your expectations.*

come up to/live up to sb's expectations (=be as good as someone hoped) *The match was boring, and didn't live up to expectations at all.*

meet/satisfy/fulfil sb's expectations (=be as good as someone hoped) *The concert failed to meet the fans' expectations.*

exceed/surpass (sb's) expectations (=be even better than someone hoped) *The holiday exceeded all our expectations.*

create expectations (=make people expect that something will happen) *His remarks created expectations that the couple would soon announce their marriage.*

PREPOSITIONS

above/below expectations *Economic growth last month was above expectations.*

beyond all expectations (=greater or better than someone expected) *The plan succeeded beyond all expectations.*

against/contrary to expectations (=very different from what someone expected) *Contrary to our expectations, the share price actually increased.*

in/with the expectation that *The weapons had been developed in the expectation that they would be used.*

PHRASES

fall below/fall short of (sb's) expectations (=be worse than someone hoped) *Our profits last year fell below expectations.*

in line with expectations (=the same as you expected, or similar to what you expected) *Results were in line with expectations.*

expedition *n*

1 a long and carefully organized journey, especially to a dangerous or unfamiliar place

ADJECTIVES

a scientific expedition *He led the first major British scientific expedition to the Amazon.*

a military expedition *The generals decided to launch a military expedition to the region.*

an Arctic/Antarctic expedition *I accompanied him on one of his Arctic expeditions.*

VERBS

go on an expedition *Swainson went on an expedition to Patagonia.*

make an expedition (=go on an expedition) *The men made expeditions to Spain, Greece, and Asia Minor to find fossils.*

set off on an expedition (also **embark on an expedition** formal): *Trent set off on a botanical expedition with other students.*

mount/launch an expedition (=plan, organize, and begin an expedition) *Scientists are mounting an expedition to the island to study its wildlife.*

lead an expedition *Scott led an expedition to the South Pole.*

expedition + NOUNS

an expedition leader *Bonington was the expedition leader.*

PREPOSITIONS

an expedition to a place *He led an expedition to Borneo.*

on an expedition *What equipment should we take with us on the expedition?*

2 a short journey in order to do something

NOUNS + expedition

a shopping expedition (=when you go shopping) *I took Mary and the kids on a shopping expedition into Manchester.*

a fishing expedition *We're organizing a fishing expedition to the lake for next week.*

a hunting expedition *He was joined on his hunting expedition by two local guides.*

VERBS

go on an expedition *We decided to go on a shopping expedition to London.*

take someone on an expedition *He's taking the boys on a camping expedition next weekend.*

expenditure ⁿ

the total amount of money that a government, organization, or person spends during a particular period of time

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + expenditure

public/government/state expenditure

(=money a government spends on the services it provides for people) *The Conservatives want to maintain a firm control on public expenditure.*

national/local expenditure (=money spent by national or local government) *There have been cuts in local expenditure on education.*

military/defence expenditure (=money that a government spends on the armed forces) *Military expenditure has been growing each year.*

health/welfare/education expenditure *There has been a steady rise in welfare expenditure.*

household expenditure (=the money the people in a house spend on food, heating etc) *The figures show that household expenditure on fuel has risen.*

total/overall expenditure *The company's total expenditure rose by 19%.*

additional/extra expenditure *Businesses have been forced to pass on the additional expenditure to customers.*

capital expenditure (=money that a company spends on buildings, machinery etc) *Capital expenditure on IT equipment will come from a different budget.*

gross/net expenditure (=the total amount a company spends before/after tax or costs have been taken away) *Spending on research and development represents 13% of our gross expenditure.*

VERBS

increase expenditure *The company plans to increase capital expenditure by 20% this financial year.*

cut/reduce expenditure *The school has been told it must cut expenditure.*

control expenditure *The government intends to strictly control public expenditure.*

incur expenditure *formal* (=have to spend money) *They will incur additional expenditure on architects' fees.*

expenditure rises *As public expenditure has risen, so have taxes.*

expenditure falls *Government expenditure on scientific research has fallen in the last few years.*

PREPOSITIONS

expenditure on sth *Expenditure on education has increased.*

expenditure of £5 million/\$4 billion etc *The government proposed expenditure of £10 billion on modernizing the rail network.*

PHRASES

an increase/rise in expenditure *The*

government has announced a planned 4.4% increase in public expenditure.

a cut/reduction in expenditure *There has been a significant cut in expenditure on social and welfare services.*

an item of expenditure (=something a government or person spends money on) *Housing is the biggest single item of expenditure in most household budgets.*

the level of expenditure *The level of expenditure on military equipment was too high.*

THESAURUS: expenditure

expenditure, costs, expenses, outgoings, outlay, overheads → **spending**

expense ⁿ

1 the amount of money that you spend on something

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + expense

the extra/additional expense *Is it worth the extra expense to get a room with a sea view?*

an unnecessary expense *Paying extra for leather seats seemed like an unnecessary expense.*

living/household expenses (=money that you spend on basic things such as rent, food, and electricity) *She receives £80 a week, from which she must pay for all her living expenses.*

legal/medical expenses *We had to get a loan to pay for my husband's medical expenses.*

VERBS

meet the expenses *formal* (=pay the necessary money) *She did not have enough money to meet household expenses.*

incur an expense *formal* (=have to pay for something) *He did not want to incur the expense of upgrading his computer.*

cover an expense (=be enough to pay for something) *The payments he gets barely cover his expenses.*

PHRASES

at great/huge/considerable/vast expense (=used when saying that something costs a lot of money) *The tiles were imported at great expense from Italy.*

at your own expense (=used when saying that you pay for something yourself) *He had copies of the book printed at his own expense.*

at (the) public expense (=paid for by the public through taxes) *The bridge was built at public expense.*

go to the expense of doing sth (=do something that costs a lot of money) *He didn't want to go to the expense of buying a suit, so he hired one.*

spare no expense (in doing sth) (=spend a lot of money to buy the best things) *Her parents spared no expense in arranging the wedding.*

2 things that you pay for when you are doing your job, which you can ask your employer to pay you back for

Grammar

Always plural in this meaning.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + expense

travel/travelling expenses *The company will pay the travelling expenses involved in getting to and from the meeting.*

business expenses *She receives an allowance for business expenses.*

entertainment expenses (=expenses for meals, trips etc with people who you are doing business with) *When I take clients out for a meal, I can put it on entertainment expenses.*

relocation/moving expenses (=expenses when changing where you live or work) *We are prepared to pay the relocation expenses of successful candidates.*

reasonable/legitimate expenses *All reasonable interview expenses will be reimbursed.*

VERBS

pay sb's expenses *They agreed to pay my travel expenses.*

claim expenses *If you have to stay overnight, you will be able to claim expenses.*

claim/put sth on expenses (=claim money from your employer for it) *He claimed the meal on expenses.*

fiddle your expenses *BrE informal*
(=deliberately make a false claim for money)
Several MPs were accused of fiddling their expenses.

reimburse sb's expenses (=pay the money someone has spent for business purposes back to them) *Your expenses will be reimbursed within one month of receiving the claim.*

expenses *n* **THESAURUS** **spending**

expensive *adj* costing a lot of money

NOUNS

expensive clothes/furniture/equipment *She spent all her money on expensive clothes.*

an expensive car/camera/watch/phone *There was a big expensive car parked outside their house.*

an expensive gift/present *Her boyfriend was always buying her expensive presents.*

an expensive hotel/restaurant *We stayed at the most expensive hotel in town.*

an expensive place/area/part *Tokyo is one of the world's most expensive places to live.*

△ Don't say an 'expensive price'. Say a **high price**.

ADVERBS

rather expensive (also **quite expensive** *BrE*):
The food's quite expensive.

too expensive *Private medical insurance is too expensive for many people.*

ridiculously/outrageously/horrendously expensive (=extremely expensive, in a way that seems shocking) *Room service in the hotel was ridiculously expensive.*

astronomically/phenomenally expensive (=extremely expensive) *The drug is phenomenally expensive.*

prohibitively expensive (=too expensive, with the result that most people cannot afford to buy something) *HIV medicines are still prohibitively expensive for sufferers in Africa.*

VERBS

look/seem/sound expensive *At £75, the concert tickets seemed rather expensive.*

PHRASES

sth is expensive to make/produce/buy
Handmade furniture is expensive to produce.

sb has expensive tastes (=they want to have things that are very expensive) *His wife has very expensive tastes.*

sth was an expensive mistake (=it resulted in someone having to spend a lot of money)
Choosing the wrong builder turned out to be an expensive mistake.

THESAURUS: expensive

high

rent | fee | price | cost | tax

high rents, fees, taxes etc cost a lot of money:

Rents are very high in Manhattan. | Lawyers charge high fees. | Drivers are complaining about the high price of fuel. | Students have problems because of the high cost of accommodation.

High is the usual word to use before these nouns, not **expensive**.

You also use **high** when talking about someone's **wages/salary/pay/income**:
Bankers are paid high salaries.

pricey

informal
expensive – used when something costs more than you want to pay:

She looked at the menu. Everything was very pricey. | The clothes are beautiful but pricey.

overpriced

too expensive and not worth the price:

The restaurant was overpriced and the food wasn't very good. | The tickets are ridiculously overpriced. | The shop sells overpriced souvenirs.

costly

mistake | failure | business | exercise | process | lawsuit | legal battle | delay

if something is costly, it results in you having to pay a lot of money:

The decision turned out to be a costly mistake. | Caring for all these animals is a costly business. | They were hoping to avoid a costly legal battle.

astronomical

price | cost | amount | sum | rate | fee
extremely expensive:

The painting was sold for an astronomical price. | Housing costs are astronomical here. | His paintings sell for astronomical sums of money.

exorbitant

fee | price | rent | amount of money | rate
much too expensive:

Some accountants charge exorbitant fees. | It's a nice hotel, but the prices are exorbitant. | The call cost an exorbitant amount of money.

If something is too expensive for someone, you can say they **cannot afford** it: Young people **cannot afford** to live in the area.
If something looks expensive, you can say that it **must have cost a lot of money**: The house looked like it **must have cost a lot of money**.

ANTONYMS expensive → cheap

experience *n*

1 knowledge or skill that you gain from doing a job or activity, or the process of doing this

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + experience

considerable/extensive experience Margaret has considerable experience of hospital work.

long experience His long experience of management enabled him to give us some useful advice.

useful/valuable experience That summer he got some valuable experience working in a tax office.

relevant experience (=that directly relates to a job, subject, or problem) Applicants need a degree and two years of relevant experience.

past/previous experience He had no previous experience of running a farm.

practical/hands-on experience (=gained from doing something, not from books or study) The classes provide students with some practical experience of computers.

direct/first-hand experience (=gained by doing something yourself) She has no first-hand experience of dealing with sick children.

teaching/nursing etc experience Preference will be given to candidates with teaching experience.

work experience Students will spend three months doing work experience.

VERBS

have experience You must have experience of working with children.

get experience (also **gain experience** formal): He suggested that I should gain some experience in the travel industry.

lack experience (=not have enough experience) Some students lack experience writing essays.

broaden/widen your experience (=increase the amount of different experience you have) After six years with the bank, he went to work in New York to broaden his experience.

use your experience She was able to use her experience in public relations to promote the event.

PREPOSITIONS

experience of sth Bella had ten years' experience of team management.

experience in sth She lacked experience in the entertainment industry.

experience as a teacher/salesperson/manager etc Firaz has considerable experience as a journalist.

PHRASES

two years'/50 years' etc experience Carla has over 25 years' experience in the IT industry.

lack of experience My colleagues kept making comments about my lack of experience.

a wealth of experience (=a lot of useful experience) Between them, the team members have a wealth of experience.

2 knowledge that you gain about life and the world by being in different situations and meeting different people, or the process of gaining this

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + experience

personal experience She spoke from personal experience about the harmful effects of taking drugs.

first-hand experience (=gained from doing something yourself) Her father had been badly affected by his first-hand experience of living in a war zone.

bitter experience (=that makes you feel disappointed or upset) I knew from bitter experience how unreliable she could be.

VERBS

know/learn from experience Janet knew from experience that love doesn't always last.

speak from experience The miners spoke from experience about the dangers of their work.

lack experience These young men lack experience and social skills.

experience suggests/shows sth Experience suggests that many criminals commit crimes from an early age.

experience teaches sb sth Experience has taught me to read a document carefully before signing it.

use your experience (also **draw on (your) experience** *formal*): He has over 50 years of experience that he can draw on.

PREPOSITIONS

through/from/by experience Good judgment comes gradually through experience.
in sb's experience In my experience, children like getting muddy.

PHRASES

lack of experience He was embarrassed about his lack of experience with women.

3 something that happens to you or something you do, especially when this has an effect on what you feel or think

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + experience

a good/pleasant/enjoyable experience We want to make the experience as enjoyable as possible.
a bad/unpleasant experience I've had some bad experiences when I've been travelling on my own.
a positive/negative experience Many people reported having negative experiences when dealing with their local council.
an interesting experience I had an interesting experience yesterday.
a memorable/unforgettable experience (=one that you will remember for a long time) Meeting the Queen was a memorable experience.
a painful experience Her family supported her through the painful experience.
a frightening/terrifying experience The attack was truly a terrifying experience for her.
a traumatic/harrowing experience (=extremely shocking and upsetting) Having an operation can be a traumatic experience for a child.
an everyday/commonplace experience (=one that is typical of normal life) The sound of gunfire is an everyday experience in the city.
a new experience Life in London was a whole new experience for me.
childhood experiences Our childhood experiences make us what we are as adults.

VERBS

have an experience I had a similar experience last year.
talk about/share your experiences They meet monthly to share their experiences.
relive an experience (=remember or imagine it so that you have the same feelings again) He had been forced to relive the experience in court.

PREPOSITIONS

experience of (doing) sth This was my first experience of living on my own.
a bad/interesting etc experience for sb We want to make reading an enjoyable experience for children.

PHRASES

be quite an experience *BrE* (=used when something had a strong effect on you) Meeting him was quite an experience.

experienced *adj*
 having skills or knowledge because you have done something often or for a long time

NOUNS

an experienced player/skier/rider Mick is a very experienced player and will be an excellent addition to the team.
an experienced driver/pilot/sailor It's better to travel with an experienced driver.
an experienced teacher/manager/politician Experienced teachers know what kind of behavior to expect.
an experienced member Yvonne is one of the most experienced members of the crew.
an experienced user The books are written by experienced users.
experienced staff/workforce/team/crew Classes are led by experienced staff.

ADVERBS

very/highly experienced The company has a highly experienced workforce of engineers.
extremely/vastly experienced They have a number of vastly experienced players.

PREPOSITIONS

be experienced in/at (doing) sth They are experienced in running training courses.

THESAURUS: experienced

veteran
politician | leader | campaigner | player | actor | fighter | member | broadcaster
 used about someone who has been doing something for a very long time and is respected by other people:
 He is a veteran politician and a former ambassador to the United Nations. | Sister Christine is a veteran campaigner against corruption. | The film stars veteran Hollywood actor Dustin Hoffman.

seasoned
traveller | professional | performer | campaigner | observer
 used about someone who has done something regularly for a long time, and knows all the problems involved:
 It's best to take as little luggage as possible, as every seasoned traveller knows. | The two candidates are both seasoned campaigners.

hardened
criminal | terrorist | professional | politician | reporter
 used about someone who has committed a lot of serious crimes, or someone who has a

lot of experience and is not easily shocked or affected by something:

Seven men, some of them hardened criminals, have escaped from jail. | The ambulance workers are hardened professionals.

practised BrE, **practiced** AmE

eye | ease

good at doing something, because you have a lot of experience:

He looked at the painting with a practised eye (=he had a lot of experience and was good at noticing things). | Ben turned the boat around with practised ease. | They were **practised in the art of** negotiation (=good at negotiating, because you have a lot of experience).

In more informal English you can also say that someone is an **old hand** (=he or she has a lot of experience): *The rest of the team are all old hands.*

experiment ⁿ

a test that is done in order to discover something

ADJECTIVES

a scientific/medical/psychological experiment Astronauts performed scientific experiments during the flight.

a simple experiment In a simple experiment, he gave yellow and green grasshoppers a choice between yellow and green backgrounds.

a practical experiment (=one that relates to real situations or events, not scientific theories) The research team compiled a set of practical experiments in Modern Astronomy.

a controlled experiment (=one that is done using correct scientific methods) The theory has not yet been tested by a properly controlled experiment.

NOUNS + experiment

a laboratory experiment (=one that takes place in a laboratory) They did a series of laboratory experiments on human sleep patterns.

animal experiments (=experiments using animals) I think most animal experiments are cruel and unnecessary.

VERBS

do/carry out an experiment They carried out a series of experiments to test their theory.

⚠ Don't say 'make an experiment'.

perform/conduct an experiment formal (=do an experiment) The laboratory began conducting experiments on rats.

try an experiment He decided to try a simple experiment.

repeat an experiment The researchers obtained similar results when they repeated their experiment.

an experiment shows/proves/demonstrates sth His experiment showed that lightning was a kind of electricity.

an experiment suggests/indicates sth Experiments suggest that the disease is carried by flies.

an experiment to test/measure/find out sth We did an experiment to test the acidity of the soil.

PREPOSITIONS

an experiment on sb/sth I don't agree with experiments on animals.

an experiment with sb/sth In 1936 he had started his experiments with wheat-free diets.

PHRASES

the results of an experiment The results of the experiment supported her theory.

THESAURUS: experiment

work, study, experiment → **research**

expert ¹ ^{Ac} ⁿ

someone who has special knowledge of a subject, or a special skill

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + expert

a leading/top expert He is one of the country's leading experts on climate change.

a world/international expert She is a world expert on tropical diseases.

a great expert I'm not really a great expert on Japanese food.

a medical/legal/financial etc expert Medical experts agree that screening can prevent deaths from breast cancer.

a health/safety/computer etc expert Some air safety experts have expressed concern.

an acknowledged/recognized expert (=someone who people agree is an expert) The authors are acknowledged experts in this field.

an independent expert (=someone who is not connected with an organization or the government) The authorities called in an independent expert to advise them.

a so-called expert (=someone who says they are an expert, but who you do not respect very much) There are many so-called experts willing to tell you how to bring up your children.

VERBS

talk to/consult an expert If cracks appear in your house, you should consult an expert to find out what is causing the problem.

experts advise/recommend sth Most financial experts recommend that you don't borrow money on credit cards.

NOUNS

expert advice/help Get some expert advice before investing in a property.

expert knowledge *He has expert knowledge of the plants and animals in this area.*

expert opinion *Expert opinion on the matter is deeply divided.*

PREPOSITIONS

an expert on/in sth *He is an expert on beetles.*

PHRASES

a team/panel of experts *You can get advice from our panel of gardening experts.*

the advice of an expert *The government has ignored the advice of its own experts.*

expert² *adj* **THESAURUS** **skilful**

expertise **Ac** *n*

special skills or knowledge in a particular subject, that you learn by experience or training

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + expertise

considerable/extensive/great expertise (=a lot) *The Marine Pollution Control Unit has considerable expertise in dealing with oil spills.*

professional expertise (=skills requiring education and special training) *A health and safety inspector will be glad to give you the benefit of his professional expertise.*

special/specialist expertise (=a lot of knowledge about a particular subject) *Our haulage company has specialist expertise in transporting hi-tech products.*

medical/scientific/technical/legal expertise *How can an individual without medical expertise make such a decision?*

managerial/management expertise *Does he have the management expertise required to make the department more productive?*

business expertise (=skill at operating a business or company) *She was employed because of her business expertise.*

relevant expertise *All the applicants had the relevant expertise for the job.*

VERBS

have expertise *The rescue workers have a lot of expertise in dealing with this type of emergency.*

need/require expertise (=used about a job, task etc) *It's a specialist job that requires expertise.*

lack expertise *The country lacks the expertise, equipment, and funds to deal with the disaster.*

develop expertise (also **acquire/gain expertise** *formal*): *Many administrators develop great expertise within their specialized areas.*

share/pool expertise *By sharing knowledge and expertise we can make the town a better place to live.*

use sb's expertise (also **draw on sb's expertise** *formal*): *The course draws on the expertise of lecturers at the city's three universities.*

PREPOSITIONS

expertise in sth *The inspection will be carried out by someone with expertise in language teaching.*

PHRASES

sb's area/field of expertise (=the subject or activity that someone is skilled in) *She is a historian whose area of expertise is the Roman Empire.*

degree/level of expertise *Different financial advisers will have different levels of expertise.*

range of expertise *The committee hopes to draw on a wide range of expertise from different institutions.*

a lack of expertise *His lack of expertise in running such a large factory led to serious problems.*

expire *v* **THESAURUS** **end**² (1)

explain *v*

to tell someone about something in a way that is clear and easy to understand

ADVERBS

carefully explain sth *He carefully explained the situation to me.*

politely/patiently explain sth *She politely explained that she could not give out any information about a client.*

briefly explain sth *Could you just explain briefly why you are here?*

clearly explain sth *The meanings of technical terms are clearly explained in the glossary at the back.*

PREPOSITIONS

explain sth to sb *If you explain the problem to your teacher, she may be able to help.*

explain about sth *Would you explain about this equipment – what is it for?*

PHRASES

I can explain (=used when you want the chance to explain a situation that seems bad) *Tony, please calm down. I can explain.*

let me explain (=used when you are going to explain something that seems complicated, surprising, or bad) *It's really quite simple. Let me explain...*

be hard/difficult to explain *It's hard to explain why it upset me so much.*

explain sth in a few words (=briefly) *I'll start by explaining in a few words what my research is about.*

explanation *n*

the reason for something happening, or a reason that someone gives

ADJECTIVES

a good explanation *Can you think of a good explanation why this happens?*

a satisfactory/adequate explanation No satisfactory explanation has been found for this decline.

the most likely/probable explanation (=one that is probably true) The most likely explanation is that John missed the bus.

a possible explanation One possible explanation is that he may have forgotten that there was a meeting today.

a plausible/convincing/reasonable explanation (=one that seems likely to be true) Pilot error is the most plausible explanation for the crash.

an alternative/different explanation This led us to consider an alternative explanation.

an obvious explanation There is no obvious explanation for his strange behaviour.

a simple explanation He has a simple explanation for the book's success.

a logical/rational/scientific explanation There is no logical explanation for this feeling.

an innocent explanation (=an explanation in which someone is not involved in doing something bad) She insists there is a more innocent explanation.

further explanation No further explanation is necessary.

VERBS

give/offer/provide an explanation The police gave no explanation for their actions.

put forward/propose an explanation Another team of researchers proposed a different explanation.

find/think of/come up with an explanation Scientists have been unable to find an explanation for this phenomenon.

ask for/demand/want an explanation Furious parents are demanding an explanation from the school.

have an explanation I don't have any explanation for his behaviour.

owe (sb) an explanation (=should give someone an explanation) I think you owe me some kind of explanation.

accept an explanation (=believe that it is true or correct) The court accepted her explanation.

need/require an explanation We think the minister's decision requires an explanation.

the explanation lies in sth (=is related to something) The explanation lies in the structure of atoms.

PREPOSITIONS

an explanation for/of sth They were not satisfied with his explanation of events.

without explanation He used to disappear for long periods without explanation.

PHRASES

by way of explanation (=as an explanation)

"I had a train to catch," she said by way of explanation.

exploit v **THESAURUS** use¹

explorer n

someone who travels through an unknown area to find out about it

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + explorer

a European/Spanish/French etc explorer European explorers discovered the temple in the 19th century.

a great explorer Marco Polo was the great explorer who travelled across Asia.

the first explorers He was one of the first explorers to see an American buffalo.

an early explorer The early explorers were looking for new lands and trading opportunities.

an intrepid explorer (=an explorer who is willing to go to dangerous places) The two intrepid explorers became the first people to travel across the US.

an Arctic/Antarctic/Polar explorer Perry was following in the footsteps of other Arctic explorers.

a space explorer One day space explorers will set up a base on Mars.

explosion n

1 a loud sound and the energy produced by something such as a bomb bursting into small pieces

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + explosion

a huge/massive/tremendous explosion A huge explosion tore the roof off the building.

a powerful explosion A powerful explosion took place outside an army training center.

a loud explosion We heard several loud explosions followed by a long silence.

a muffled explosion (=one that is not heard very clearly) He reported hearing a muffled explosion from deep inside the mine.

a bomb explosion He was fatally injured in a bomb explosion.

a nuclear/atomic explosion This is the site of the first ever nuclear explosion.

VERBS

cause an explosion The police do not yet know what caused the explosion.

set off/trigger an explosion (=cause an explosion) Investigators believe a fuel leak may have triggered the explosion.

an explosion shakes sth A series of explosions shook the building.

an explosion destroys sth Seven people died when an explosion destroyed the bus.

carry out an explosion (=cause one deliberately) By 1942, the United States had carried out test explosions with nuclear bombs.

2 a sudden or quick increase in the number or amount of something

ADJECTIVES

a sudden explosion *There was a sudden explosion of interest in the sport.*

NOUNS + explosion

a population explosion *At the turn of the century, the city saw a population explosion.*

PHRASES

an explosion of interest in sth *There has been an explosion of interest in his work.*

an explosion of violence *The army had to cope with the explosion of violence that followed the elections.*

an explosion of anger *The verdict was greeted by an explosion of public anger.*

export Ac n

the business of selling and sending goods to other countries, or a product that is sold to another country

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + export

a country's major/main/principal export *Coffee is the country's main export.*

oil/agricultural/manufacturing exports *Oil exports from Iraq have resumed.*

British/US etc exports *British exports to Europe are at their lowest level since April.*

invisible exports (=exports of services such as banking or insurance, rather than of goods) *Most of the country's earnings come from invisible exports such as banking services.*

exports are up/down (=they have increased or decreased) *Exports to China are up by 25%.*

export + VERBS

exports increase/rise/grow *Electronics exports grew more slowly than in previous years.*

exports fall/decline/drop *Exports of gas and oil continued to fall.*

VERBS + export

boost exports (=make them increase) *The government wants to boost exports and create employment.*

ban exports *The government banned exports of wood from the rainforest.*

export + NOUNS

an export market *The US is our second largest export market.*

export earnings/revenue (=money made from exports) *Oil and gas provide 40% of Norway's export earnings.*

export sales/figures *Export sales are down on last year.*

an export licence BrE, **an export license** AmE (=an official document giving you permission to sell something to another country) *You will have to submit an application for an export licence.*

PREPOSITIONS

exports to the US/Japan/Germany etc *Exports to the US were up by 50%.*

for export *They produce goods for export.*

PHRASES

a growth/rise/increase in exports *The electronics sector has seen a 16% growth in exports.*

a fall/decline/drop in exports *There has been a decline in exports and an increase in oil prices.*

THESAURUS: export

goods, commodity, merchandise, wares, export, import → **product**

ANTONYMS

export → **import**

express¹ v

to tell or show people what you are feeling or thinking by using words, looks, or actions

ADVERBS

express sth openly (=express a feeling in a way that is obvious to other people) *They expressed their anger openly in the meeting.*

express sth publicly *Republicans have publicly expressed their concerns about his appointment.*

express sth clearly *He expresses his views very clearly.*

express sth freely *I'm proud of living in a country where ideas and beliefs can be freely expressed.*

NOUNS

express your views/opinions/ideas *Everyone who attends the meeting will be given the opportunity to express their opinions.*

express your feelings *He found it difficult to express his feelings.*

express an interest in sth *Many property developers have expressed an interest in buying the land.*

express concern (=say or show that you are worried) *Economic analysts have expressed concern about the possibility of a recession.*

express regret *He has expressed regret over the remarks he made.*

express doubts/reservations *Environmentalists began to express doubts about the benefits of biofuels.*

express surprise/shock *She expressed surprise that anyone thought he was guilty.*

express anger *Teachers have expressed anger at the government's education reforms.*

express your thanks/gratitude/appreciation (=say thank you to someone, in a speech) *On behalf of the team, I'd like to express our appreciation for all your efforts.*

express your support/opposition *The Israeli leader expressed his support for the US plan.*

PREPOSITIONS

express sth in/by/through sth *She expressed her disgust in a letter to a national newspaper.*

PHRASES

express yourself (=say or show what you think or feel) *Young people like to express themselves through the way they dress.*

a chance/opportunity to express sth *The debate will give MPs an opportunity to express their views.*

words cannot express sth (=it is impossible to describe something) *Words can't express how much I miss her.*

express² *adj* **THESAURUS** **fast**¹ (1)

expression *n*

1 a look on someone's face that shows what they are thinking or feeling

ADJECTIVES

sb's facial expression (=the expression on someone's face) *Victor's facial expression never changed throughout the interview.*

a thoughtful expression *She listened to his story with a thoughtful expression on her face.*

a blank/vacant expression (=one that shows no emotion or interest) *He said nothing in class – he just sat there with a blank expression.*

a serious/worried/anxious expression *"Is there any news?" she asked with an anxious expression.*

a surprised/shocked expression *He didn't need to speak – his shocked expression said it all.*

an angry/furious expression *Her father rushed into the room with an angry expression on his face.*

a puzzled/baffled/bewildered expression (=one that shows you are confused) *Dan looked at the sign with a puzzled expression.*

a stern expression (=very strict) *I saw from Auntie Kitty's stern expression that she was not amused.*

an innocent expression *"It was so late," she continued with an innocent expression, "I had to stay the night."*

a pained expression (=one that shows you are upset or hurt) *A pained expression crossed Rory's face when he saw them together.*

VERBS

have an expression (on your face) (also **wear an expression** *formal*): *He had a puzzled expression on his face.*

change your expression *The child did not cry or change her expression.*

watch sb's expression *"Why do you want to know?" Elizabeth asked, watching his expression closely.*

see sb's expression *You should have seen the expression on his face when I said I was leaving!*

sb's expression changes *Suddenly, her expression changed.*

an expression crosses sb's face (=it appears on their face) *Dean looked towards Meredith, and a surprised expression crossed his face.*

PREPOSITIONS

an expression of surprise/shock/anxiety etc *He looked at me with an expression of shock.*

the expression on sb's face *I could tell by the expression on her face that she was angry.*

PHRASES

a lack of expression *I was surprised at the lack of expression on his face.*

be devoid of expression *formal* (=have no expression on your face) *His face was totally devoid of expression, but I could sense his anger.*

THESAURUS: expression

expression, idiom, cliché, saying/proverb, slogan, motto → **phrase**

2 a word or group of words with a particular meaning

ADJECTIVES

a common expression *'Out to lunch' is a common expression which means 'crazy'.*

an old-fashioned/outdated expression *'In the family way' is an old-fashioned expression which means 'pregnant'.*

an idiomatic expression *Try to avoid using idiomatic expressions in essays.*

a figurative expression (=one in which words are not used with their literal meaning) *'Boiling with rage' is a figurative expression which means 'very angry'.*

a coarse/vulgar expression (=rude) *He came out with some vulgar expressions that I couldn't possibly repeat.*

VERBS

use an expression *Lawyers often use expressions that are hard for ordinary people to understand.*

coin an expression (=invent it) *He coined the expression 'war on terror'.*

an expression means sth *Do you know what the expression 'go ballistic' means?*

PHRASES

if you'll pardon/forgive the expression

(=used when you have said a word or phrase that might offend someone) *He didn't seem to give a damn, if you'll pardon the expression.*

exquisite *adj* **THESAURUS** **beautiful**

extent *n*

how large or serious something such as a problem, injury, or crime is

ADJECTIVES

the full extent *He refused to reveal the full extent of his debts.*

the actual/true extent *Rescue workers still do not know the true extent of the disaster.*

VERBS

know/realize the extent of sth We do not yet know the extent of the damage.

understand the extent of sth Other people didn't seem to understand the extent of his disability.

discover/find out the extent of sth We were shocked when we discovered the extent of the fraud.

assess/establish/determine the extent of sth We are still trying to assess the extent of the problem.

show/reveal the extent of sth These pictures show the extent of the devastation caused by the earthquake.

PHRASES

to some extent/to a large extent etc (=used when saying how much something is true or how much something is affected by another thing) What he says is true to some extent. | The materials we use will depend to a considerable extent on what is available.

extinct *adj*

if a type of animal or plant is extinct, it has stopped existing

ADVERBS

almost/virtually/practically extinct The grey whale was almost extinct because of hunting.

completely/totally extinct Wolves became totally extinct in Scotland.

VERBS

become extinct There are fears that the polar bear could become extinct because of climate change.

be thought to be extinct The orchid was so rare it was thought to be extinct.

extinction *n*

a situation in which a particular type of animal or plant stops existing

ADJECTIVES

total/complete extinction Polar bears may face total extinction if nothing is done to protect them.

mass extinction We do not know what caused the mysterious mass extinction of the dinosaurs.

VERBS

face extinction (=be likely to stop existing soon) The red squirrel faces extinction in England and Wales.

lead to/cause extinction Hunting has caused the extinction of several species.

save sth from extinction Conservationists are trying to save the whale from extinction.

be threatened with extinction (=likely to stop existing) Hundreds of species of birds are now threatened with extinction.

be hunted to extinction (=hunted so much that extinction is the result) The wolves were hunted to extinction in the 1920s.

PREPOSITIONS

extinction of sth Climate change could lead to the mass extinction of many species.

PHRASES

in danger of extinction The species is in danger of extinction in the UK.

be on the verge/brink of extinction (=at the point of almost not existing) The Siberian crane is on the verge of extinction.

extravagant *adj*

spending or costing a lot of money, especially more than is necessary or more than you can afford

ADVERBS

wildly extravagant \$300,000 for a car sounds wildly extravagant, but you do get a lot for your money.

a little extravagant I know it's a little extravagant, but I wanted to get him something special for his birthday.

rather extravagant It does seem rather extravagant to have three houses.

extravagant + NOUNS

an extravagant lifestyle He enjoyed an extravagant lifestyle of luxury holidays and fast cars.

an extravagant taste in sth (=you like buying expensive things) His wife had a rather extravagant taste in clothes.

extravagant spending Instead of extravagant spending on unnecessary weapons systems, we should use the money to help the poor.

an extravagant present/gift He often bought the children extravagant presents.

PREPOSITIONS

extravagant with sth She is very extravagant with her money, and is always buying new clothes.

Extravagant is also used about **claims** and **promises** which are not true because someone is exaggerating: The company makes **extravagant claims** about its beauty products. | The party made **extravagant promises** before the elections.

extreme *adj*

1 very great in degree

NOUNS

extreme care/caution It is necessary to use extreme caution when handling chemicals.

extreme difficulty He had extreme difficulty finding the book she wanted.

extreme importance The article emphasizes the extreme importance of good family relationships.

extreme poverty Extreme poverty still exists in many rural areas.

extreme pressure They are working under extreme pressure.

extreme violence *Many of the refugees had witnessed extreme violence.*

extreme cold/heat *Most plants are not able to withstand extreme cold.*

extreme pain *He was rushed to hospital in extreme pain.*

2 very unusual and severe

NOUNS

an extreme case *In extreme cases, the illness can cause death.*

an extreme example *This incident is an extreme example of poor management.*

extreme circumstances *The use of force is only justified in extreme circumstances.*

an extreme situation *In extreme situations, children may be removed from their parents.*

an extreme measure (=a very unusual or severe action taken to try to solve a problem) *He hoped that such extreme measures would not be necessary.*

an extreme form of sth *Racially motivated attacks are the most extreme form of discrimination.*

extreme weather/conditions *The search had to be abandoned because of the extreme conditions.*

extreme temperatures *Extreme temperatures had caused the pipes to burst.*

PHRASES

go to extreme lengths (=do things that are very unusual) *Criminals will go to extreme lengths to smuggle drugs into the country.*

3 having very strong political or religious opinions which seem unreasonable

NOUNS

extreme views/opinions *Some party members have extreme right-wing views.*

extreme policies *Their policies on immigration seem very extreme.*

an extreme nationalist *The most extreme nationalists wanted complete separation from England.*

ANTONYMS

extreme → **moderate**

eye ⁿ

one of the two parts of the body that you use to see with

COLOUR

brown/blue/grey/green eyes *Both their children have blue eyes.*

dark eyes *She looked into his dark eyes.*

hazel eyes (=pale brown and slightly green or golden) *He was a quiet kindly man, with hazel eyes.*

red/bloodshot eyes (=red because you are upset, tired, ill etc) *My mother's eyes were red from crying.*

⚠ Don't say 'black eyes' when you mean **dark eyes**. If someone has a **black eye**, they have a bruise around their eye after being hit.

SHAPE/POSITION

big/small eyes *She looked at me with those big brown eyes.*

narrow eyes *He has a thin face and narrow eyes.*

deep-set eyes (=deep in your face) *It was difficult to see his deep-set eyes.*

close-set eyes (=close together) *He had a small nose and close-set eyes.*

sb's eyes are open/closed/shut *His eyes were closed and he seemed to be asleep.*

ABILITY TO SEE

sharp/keen eyes (=good at seeing or noticing things) *Her sharp eyes had missed nothing.*

beady eyes (=small and good at noticing a lot of things) *His beady eyes darted around the room.*

SHOWING YOUR FEELINGS/CHARACTER

tired/sleepy eyes *He rubbed his tired eyes and yawned.*

sad eyes *He smiled, but his eyes were sad.*

misty/moist eyes (=almost crying) *Her eyes grew moist at the memory.*

bright eyes (=happy or excited) *Her eyes were bright with hope.*

cold eyes (=unfriendly and not showing any emotion) *Her eyes were cold and uncaring.*

wild/mad/staring eyes (=very angry, afraid etc) *The old man stared at them with wild eyes.*

VERBS + eye

open/close/shut your eyes *Joe closed his eyes and tried to get back to sleep.*

rub/wipe your eyes *Anna rubbed her eyes wearily.*

lower your eyes (=look down at the ground) *Instead of answering the question, he lowered his eyes.*

raise your eyes (=look up at someone or something) *She raised her eyes towards the sky.*

narrow your eyes (=partly close them, especially to show that you do not trust someone) *The woman narrowed her eyes at him suspiciously.*

roll your eyes (=move your eyes up to show you are annoyed, bored, frustrated etc) *When I asked her to tidy her room, she rolled her eyes and sighed.*

shade/shield your eyes (=protect them from a bright light or the sun) *They gazed out to sea, shielding their eyes from the sun.*

avert your eyes *literary* (=look away from something) *He averted his eyes from the body.*

eye + VERBS

sb's eyes open/close *I shook him, and his eyes opened.*

sb's eyes shine/sparkle/twinkle (=are bright because they are very happy) *Jenny's eyes sparkled with excitement.*

sb's eyes light up (=suddenly show excitement or happiness) *His eyes lit up when I mentioned the word 'money'.*

sb's eye/eyes fall on sth (=they suddenly notice it) *My eye fell on a piece of paper on the desk.*

sb's eyes glaze (over) (=they show no expression, because they are very bored or tired) *As I talked, I could see his eyes begin to glaze over.*

two people's eyes meet (=they look at each other's eyes) *Our eyes met across a crowded room.*

eye + NOUNS

eye contact (=when you look directly at someone at the same time as they are looking at you) *Make eye contact with the person interviewing you.*

an eye test (also **an eye exam** AmE) (=to find out how well you can see) *You should have an eye test every couple of years.*

PHRASES

sb's eyes are full of tears/hatred etc *When she put the phone down, her eyes were full of tears.*

sb's eyes are glued to sth/fixed on sth (=they are watching something with all their attention) *Ted sat with his eyes glued to the television.*

can't take your eyes off sb/sth (=be unable to stop looking at someone or something) *She was so beautiful I couldn't take my eyes off her.*

look into sb's eyes *She looked into his eyes and said "Don't worry".*

look sb in the eye (=look directly at someone when speaking to them) *I knew he was lying because he didn't look me in the eye.*

see sth with your own eyes (=see something yourself) *I know he took the money - I saw him with my own eyes.*

before/in front of sb's very eyes (=while someone is watching) *Their homes were destroyed before their very eyes.*

eyesight n someone's ability to see

ADJECTIVES

good/better eyesight *Your eyesight is much better than mine.*

bad/poor eyesight *Moles have very poor eyesight.*

perfect eyesight *People think that you need to have perfect eyesight to become a pilot.*

keen eyesight (=extremely good) *Eagles are known for their extremely keen eyesight.*

failing eyesight (=becoming worse) *In his later years, he suffered from failing eyesight.*

VERBS

have good/bad etc eyesight *She has very good eyesight.*

lose your eyesight *He lost his eyesight as the result of an accident.*

sb's eyesight fails *She's over 80 now, and her eyesight is beginning to fail.*

sb's eyesight deteriorates/gets worse *People's eyesight gradually deteriorates with age.*

eyesight + NOUNS

eyesight problems *Many older people suffer from eyesight problems.*

Ff

face¹ *n*

the front part of your head, or your expression

ADJECTIVES

a pretty/beautiful/handsome/nice face *She has a pretty face – she could be a model.*

an ugly face *I never want to see his ugly face again!*

a round/oval/square face *The woman's face was round and jolly.*

a thin/narrow/long face *The girl had a thin face and big dark eyes.*

a wrinkled/lined face (=with a lot of small lines, especially because someone is old) *The old man looked at me with his wrinkled face.*

a craggy/rugged face (=strong-looking, with deep lines) *Jake looked like a cowboy, with his tanned rugged face.*

a haggard/gaunt/drawn face (=looking very tired or ill) *Her face was haggard and she had not slept for two nights.*

a happy/smiling face *It was good to see the children's happy faces.*

a sad/serious/grim face *Maggie looked at him with a sad face.*

a long face (=an unhappy expression) *I could see from his long face that he wasn't happy with the decision.*

an angry/scowling face *He looked around and saw his boss's scowling face behind him.*

an anxious/worried/puzzled face *The woman glanced up at Kathleen, her face puzzled.*

a shocked/horrified face *"You are not going out in that dress!" my father said with a horrified face.*

a blank/impassive face (=showing no emotion or thoughts) *What was she really thinking behind that blank face?*

How the colour of someone's face shows their feelings

If someone's face is **red** or **scarlet**, they are embarrassed.

If someone's face is **pale** or **white**, they are very worried or afraid.

If someone's face is **grey** or **ashen**, they are very worried, ill, or in pain.

VERBS

pull/make a face (=make a silly expression or make an expression that shows you are unhappy about something) *The kids were pulling faces for the camera.*

sb's face goes red/white etc (also **sb's face**

turns red/white etc) (=it becomes red, white etc) *When he heard the news, his face suddenly went pale.*

sb's face falls (=they look sad or disappointed) *Her face fell when she found out that she hadn't got the job.*

sb's face lights up/brightens (=they start to look happy) *Denise's face lit up when she heard the news.*

sb's face darkens (=they start to look angry) *She handed him the letter and his face darkened.*

sb's face glows (=they look healthy or happy) *Her face was glowing with happiness.*

PHRASES

a look/expression on sb's face *She had a rather surprised look on her face.*

a smile/grin/frown on sb's face *There was a mischievous grin on her face.*

sth is written all over sb's face (=their feelings can be seen very clearly in their expression) *You're jealous – it's written all over your face!*

a sea of faces (=the faces of a very large number of people) *She walked onto the platform and looked out at the sea of faces.*

you should have seen sb's face (=used to say that someone was very angry, surprised etc) *You should have seen his face when I told him that I was resigning.*

sb has a face like thunder (=they have a very angry expression)

face² *v*

1 to have to deal with a difficult situation that is likely to happen

NOUNS

face a problem/difficulty *She told me about some of the problems she was facing.*

face opposition/criticism *The government faced opposition from the courts.*

face a challenge *The coal industry faces serious challenges.*

face the task of doing sth *He faced the task of preparing a three-course meal for 50 people.*

face a dilemma (=have a difficult choice) *The manager is facing the dilemma of who to select for the team.*

face charges/prosecution/trial (=be accused of a crime and have to go to a court of law) *The former chairman faces charges of fraud and theft.*

face the risk/threat of sth *The factory is facing the threat of closure.*

face the prospect of sth (=something bad is likely to happen to you in the future) *Many coastal cities face the prospect of disastrous flooding.*

face starvation *A million people across the country face starvation.*

face extinction (=used when all of a type of animal could die, so that it no longer exists) *The polar bear could face extinction if global warming continues.*
face competition *We are facing strong competition from Chinese companies.*

2 to accept that a bad situation exists

NOUNS

face the truth *Doctors told him he was dying but he just couldn't face the truth.*
face facts *Face facts, Peter, she doesn't love you any more.*
face reality *It's time she faced reality and accepted that it will not be easy to find a job.*

PHRASES

face the fact that... *I had to face the fact that I would never see my mother again.*
(let's) face it (=used when saying that something is true, although it may be hard to accept) *She is quite pretty but let's face it, she's never going to be a model.*

facilitate Ac v formal
to make it easier for something to happen

VERBS

help to facilitate sth *The African Trade Office helps to facilitate trade between the US and countries in Africa.*
be designed to facilitate sth *The course is designed to facilitate language learning.*

ADVERBS

greatly facilitate sth *The internet has greatly facilitated the movement of ideas.*

facility Ac n

1 facilities are rooms, equipment, or services that are provided for a particular purpose

Grammar

Always plural in this meaning.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + facility

modern facilities *The Grand Hotel offers many modern facilities and there is internet access in every room.*
state-of-the-art facilities (=with the most modern equipment) *The college has state-of-the-art recording facilities.*
sports facilities *Have you checked out the local sports facilities?*
leisure/recreational facilities (=for activities that you do for pleasure) *The leisure facilities include a sauna and a gym.*
training facilities *The company plans to set up in-house training facilities.*
cooking/washing etc facilities *The rooms all have cooking facilities and a fridge.*
parking facilities *The building has parking facilities for 20 cars.*

hotel facilities *Make use of the hotel facilities, which are excellent.*
medical facilities *The university has its own medical facilities.*
childcare facilities *More women would work if there were better childcare facilities.*
toilet facilities *Toilet facilities are available at the bus station.*

VERBS

provide/offer facilities *Recycling facilities are provided by the local council.*
use the facilities *Guests are welcome to use all the hotel's facilities.*

PREPOSITIONS

facilities for sb *The sports centre has facilities for disabled people.*
facilities for sth *Some campsites have facilities for barbecues.*

PHRASES

a range of facilities *The range of facilities offered by this hotel is superb.*

2 formal a factory

THESAURUS: facility

facility, plant, works, mill, refinery, foundry, assembly line/production line, sweatshop → **factory**

F

fact n a piece of true information

ADJECTIVES

the basic/key/central facts *The report outlines the basic facts of the case.*
an important/crucial fact *You seem to have forgotten one important fact.*
an interesting/fascinating fact *The research revealed some interesting facts about the behaviour of cats.*
a curious/remarkable/amazing etc fact *The book is full of all kinds of curious facts.*
a well-known/little-known fact *It is a well-known fact that smoking is bad for you.*
a relevant fact *Have we been told all the relevant facts?*
an obvious fact *The writer ignores the obvious fact that not everyone has a car.*
hard facts (=information that is definitely true and can be proven) *His theory is supported by hard facts.*
the bare facts (=only the basic general facts of a situation) *We know the bare facts of his life, but nothing about what he was really like.*
the full facts *I can't give my opinion until I know the full facts.*
a historical/scientific fact *I'm not making this up – it's a historical fact.*
an inescapable/undeniable/indisputable fact (=one that is definitely true and has a big

effect) *It's an undeniable fact that none of us is getting younger.*

VERBS

give/present/provide the facts Newspapers have a duty to give their readers the facts.

tell sb the facts/let sb have the facts If you let him have the facts, he can make his own decision.

state the facts (=say what you know is true) *I'm not exaggerating – I'm just stating the facts.*

stick to the facts (=say only what you know is true) *Just stick to the facts when the police interview you.*

look at/examine the facts *I decided to examine the facts for myself.*

ignore/overlook a fact *He chose to ignore the fact that his wife was having an affair.*

PREPOSITIONS

a fact about sth *Here are some fascinating facts about sharks.*

PHRASES

be aware of a fact *I was aware of the fact that the company was in trouble.*

get your facts right/straight (=make sure that what you say or believe is correct) *You should get your facts straight before making accusations.*

the facts of the case *Let us look at the actual facts of the case.*

facts and figures *The book is packed with facts and figures about the island.*

factor [Ac] n

one of several things that influence or cause a situation

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + factor

an important/significant factor *Peace is the most important factor for economic development.*

a big/major/key factor (=a very important one) *Training is a key factor in the team's success.*

a crucial/critical factor (=an extremely important one) *Timing is often a crucial factor with any business venture.*

the deciding/decisive factor (=the one that has the biggest effect) *The support of women voters could be the deciding factor in the election.*

a contributing factor (=one that helps to make something happen) *Stress is a contributing factor in many illnesses.*

economic/social/environmental factors *The crisis was caused by a wide range of social and economic factors.*

genetic factors *Genetic factors may play a role in who gets the disease.*

a risk factor (=something that makes a bad thing such as an illness more likely) *The highest risk factor for heart disease was found to be smoking.*

VERBS

factors cause sth *The increase in the number of accidents was caused by several factors.*

factors influence/affect/determine sth

Various factors influenced the government's decision.

depend on factors *How well you do in the test depends on a variety of different factors.*

identify factors *Our aim was to identify key factors that affect crime rates.*

consider a factor *The judge also considered other factors, including the man's previous criminal record.*

a factor contributes to sth *A number of factors have contributed to the country's economic problems.*

PREPOSITIONS

a factor in sth *It is estimated that alcohol is a factor in a third of all accidents.*

a factor behind sth *His concern about his health was one of the main factors behind his decision to retire.*

PHRASES

a variety/number of factors *There are a number of factors that need to be considered.*

a combination of factors *A combination of factors led to the factory closing.*

take certain factors into account (=consider them) *You should take all these factors into account.*

factory n

a place where goods are produced in large quantities using machines

NOUNS + factory

a car/textile/chemical/chocolate etc factory

The company plans to build the biggest car factory in Europe.

ADJECTIVES

a modern factory *There are pictures of workers assembling electronic equipment in modern factories.*

a disused factory (=not used any more) *The apartments will be built on the site of a disused paint factory.*

VERBS

work in a factory *My dad works in a carpet factory.*

open a factory *The company opened a new factory in India last year.*

close/shut down a factory *They are planning to shut down the factory and make everyone redundant.*

a factory makes/produces/manufactures things *The factory produces sports shoes.*

factory + NOUNS

a factory worker *Factory workers are usually well paid.*

a factory owner/manager *The factory owner placed a large order for some new equipment.*

a factory closure *Further factory closures have been announced.*

on the factory floor (=among the workers in a factory) *A manager should spend time on the factory floor, as well as in his office.*

THESAURUS: factory

facility

manufacturing facility | **research facility** | **weapons facility**

a factory. **Facility** is more formal than **factory** and is used mainly by people in business and in news reports:

The company plans to set up a big new manufacturing facility in Mexico. | The satellite pictures are of a nuclear weapons facility. | The facility will provide work for over 400 people.

plant

car plant | **chemical plant** | **power plant** | **water treatment plant**

a large factory, especially one where energy, cars, or chemicals are produced:

Workers at the car plant produce over 1,200 cars every day. | Two people were killed in an explosion at a chemical plant.

works

steelworks | **brickworks** | **chemical works** | **cement works** | **printing works**

a factory where steel, chemicals, cement etc are produced, or where books are printed:

The steelworks specialized in the manufacture of rails made from Bessemer steel. | He owns the city's oldest-established printing works.

mill

textile mill | **cotton mill** | **paper mill**

a factory that produces cloth or paper:

The wool was exported to British textile mills in Lancashire.

refinery

oil refinery | **sugar refinery**

a factory where things are removed from oil, sugar etc to make them pure:

The new oil refinery can process 200,000 barrels per day.

foundry

a factory where things are made out of metal using moulds:

The bells were made in a foundry just outside Paris.

assembly line/production line

a system in a factory, in which the products move past a line of workers who each do one part of the work:

Over 1,000 cars come off the assembly line each day.

sweatshop

a factory where people work very hard in bad conditions for little money:

The shoes are made in sweatshops by child workers.

fail

1 to not succeed

Grammar

You often use **fail** with an infinitive verb in this meaning: *The climbers **failed to** reach the top of the mountain. | The team **failed to** win the competition.*

NOUNS + fail

a plan fails *Their plan failed and they had to start again.*

an attempt fails *The prisoners' attempt to escape failed.*

an experiment fails *Ulrich later admitted that his experiment had failed.*

a company/business fails (=it is unable to make a profit and has to close) *The company failed and the investors lost all their money.*

a marriage fails *Some marriages fail after only a few months.*

talks/negotiations fail *The peace talks failed and the fighting continued.*

crops fail (=they do not grow) *The crops failed and the people went hungry.*

ADVERBS

fail completely/totally/altogether

Unfortunately our plan failed completely.

fail badly *Critics say that the current system is failing badly.*

fail miserably/dismally (=very badly) *We have failed miserably to stop climate change.*

fail spectacularly (=extremely badly) *The plan failed spectacularly and the terrorists blew themselves up.*

narrowly fail (=only just fail) *The team narrowly failed to win the game.*

PREPOSITIONS

fail in an attempt/effort/bid to do sth *The two sides failed in their attempt to reach an agreement.*

PHRASES

be doomed to fail (=be certain to fail) *The talks seem doomed to fail before they start.*

sb/sth can hardly fail (=it seems certain they will succeed) *He is the best player and he can hardly fail to win.*

if all else fails (=if every other method fails) *If all else fails, you can borrow some money off your parents.*

THESAURUS: fail

flop/bomb informal

movie | **show** | **record** | **product**

if a movie, show etc flops, it is unsuccessful because people do not like it. **Bomb** is more informal than **flop**:

The show bombed and ended after only a couple of weeks. | His first record flopped and only sold a few copies.

You can also say that a movie, show etc was **a flop**.

fall through

deal | plan | sale

if a deal, plan etc falls through, it is unsuccessful and fails to happen:
They were hoping to buy a house, but the deal fell through at the last minute. | His great ambition was to travel around the world by bus. Those plans fell through.

backfire

plan | strategy | scheme | tactic

if a plan backfires, it has the opposite effect of what it was intended to do:
Her plan to get attention backfired, and instead of being promoted she lost her job. | The company's tactic backfired and they were forced to admit publicly that they were wrong.

collapse

system | economy | talks

to fail suddenly and completely, especially with the result that there is a very serious situation:
People are worried that the banking system could collapse. | In 1929 the US economy collapsed and millions of people lost their jobs. | The talks with the union collapsed and workers went back on strike.

break down

talks | negotiations | communication | relationship | marriage

to fail, with the result that you are unable to continue:
Talks broke down between unions and employers. | Communication sometimes breaks down between couples. | Unfortunately, his marriage had broken down and he and his wife had separated.

companies/businesses

go bankrupt

company | firm | business

if a company or person goes bankrupt, they cannot pay their debts and they have to stop trading permanently:
My father's company went bankrupt, with debts of over \$15 million. | The reason he went bankrupt, he says, is that there weren't enough customers.

go bust informal

company | firm | business

if a company goes bust, they cannot pay their debts and they have to stop trading permanently:
A record number of companies are going bust every week. | His business went bust and he

owes £120,000. | The store went bust and 200 staff lost their jobs.

Another way of saying that someone or something fails

You can use other parts of speech to say that someone or something **failed**. For example, you can say that someone or something was **unsuccessful**: Unfortunately, on this occasion your application was **unsuccessful**. | He was **unsuccessful in** his attempt to reach the South Pole.
You can also say that something was **a failure**: The experiment was **a failure**.

If something failed very badly, you can say that it was **a complete failure**, or **a disaster**: I burnt the pizza and the meal was **a disaster**.

Finally, you can say that someone tried **in vain** to do something (=they tried unsuccessfully): Rescue workers tried **in vain** to save the ship. | All her efforts had been **in vain**.

Another way of saying that a company or business fails

There are many expressions you can use when talking about a company having to close its business.

You can say that a company **closes down**: The steel plant **closed down**, with the loss of 2,500 jobs.

You can say that a company **goes under**: More than 7,000 firms have **gone under** in the last three months (=they had too many debts to be able to continue trading).

Finally, you can say that a company **goes to the wall**: Many small firms will **go to the wall** (=have to close because of difficult financial conditions).

ANTONYMS fail → **succeed**

2 to not pass a test

fail + NOUNS

fail a test/exam If you fail the test, you can always take it again.

fail an interview They told her that she had failed the interview.

ADVERBS

fail sth badly I failed the test badly.
(only) just fail sth His son just failed the entrance exam.

ANTONYMS fail → **pass (1)**

failure *n*

a lack of success in doing something, or something that is not successful

ADJECTIVES

complete/total/utter failure *The project ended in total failure.*

(an) abject/dismal failure (=used to emphasize how bad a failure is) *The experiment was considered a dismal failure.*

a disastrous failure *This approach was a disastrous failure.*

a costly failure (=one that results in a lot of money or many lives being lost) *The war came to be seen as a costly failure.*

a personal failure (=a failure that is someone's personal fault) *He considered his inability to form long-term relationships to be a personal failure.*

a commercial failure (=something that does not make much money) *The film was a commercial failure.*

economic/political failure *Economic failure drove the government out of office.*

VERBS

end in/result in failure *A series of rescue attempts ended in failure.*

be doomed to failure (=be certain to fail) *The rebellion was doomed to failure from the start.*

admit failure *He was too proud to admit failure.*

accept failure *Being able to accept failure is part of life.*

avoid failure *She was anxious to avoid failure.*

failure + NOUNS

the failure rate *There is a high failure rate in the restaurant industry.*

PHRASES

fear of failure *Fear of failure should not deter you from trying.*

the risk/possibility of failure *The risk of failure for a new product is very high.*

an admission of failure *Dropping out of college would be an admission of failure.*

a history/record of failure (=when someone has failed many times in the past) *Some children have a history of failure at school.*

a string of failures (=a series of failures) *The team has had a string of failures in recent games.*

a sense/feeling of failure *He felt a sense of failure when he lost the job.*

ANTONYMS failure → success

faint¹ adj

1 difficult to see, hear, or smell

faint + NOUNS

a faint noise/sound *He could hear the faint sound of voices in the room next door.*

a faint light/glow *I could see a faint light in the distance.*

a faint smell/scent/aroma *When I got into the car, I noticed the faint smell of perfume.*

a faint smile *A faint smile crossed his face.*

a faint trace of sth *There was a faint trace of a foreign accent in his voice.*

the faint outline of sth *I could just see the faint outline of the town.*

a faint memory *Her childhood was now only a faint memory.*

VERBS

become faint *The sound became fainter.*

sound faint *His voice sounded faint on the telephone.*

THESAURUS: faint

faint, weak, pale, poor/bad, soft, low → **dim**

low, soft, silent, hushed, faint, muffled, dull, inaudible → **quiet (1)**

2 very small or slight

faint + NOUNS

a faint hope *There is still a faint hope that the men may be alive.*

a faint possibility *There is only a faint possibility that he will be fit enough to play.*

a faint chance *The team has a faint chance of winning the competition.*

faint² v

to suddenly become unconscious for a short time

PHRASES

be going to faint/be about to faint *She turned pale and looked as if she was about to faint.*

be close to fainting *He was so hungry, he was close to fainting.*

faint at the sight of blood *Are you one of those people who faint at the sight of blood?*

faint from hunger/exhaustion *He fainted from exhaustion.*

Faint is often used when saying that someone was very shocked: *She almost/nearly fainted when she saw the bill.*

fair adj

treating people equally or in a way that is right

NOUNS

fair treatment *They are demanding fair treatment for all workers.*

a fair chance *Everyone should have a fair chance of winning.*

a fair wage *Women workers do not receive a fair wage.*

a fair share of sth (=as much as other people) *He insisted that he had always paid his fair share of taxes.*

a fair system *Do you think the current voting system is fair?*

a fair election *The country's first free and fair elections were held last year.*

a fair trial *The men may be guilty, but they deserve a fair trial.*
a fair hearing (=a chance for you to talk about something, so that your opinions can be considered) *He claimed he was not given a fair hearing and that his views were ignored.*
fair competition *There should be fair competition between US companies and foreign companies.*
fair trade (=in which workers are treated well and there are no unfair taxes or laws which give one country an advantage) *Denying fair trade to developing countries is a major cause of poverty.*

ADVERBS

completely/totally/entirely fair *I don't think this statement is completely fair.*
absolutely/perfectly fair (=completely fair - used for emphasis) *It seems perfectly fair that she should get paid the same as everyone else.*
scrupulously fair (=very careful to treat people fairly) *The judge was scrupulously fair to both sides in the dispute.*

PREPOSITIONS

fair to sb *The referee has to be fair to everyone.*
fair on sb *It's not fair on him, if he has to do all the work.*

You use **fair on sb** especially in negative sentences, when you think someone is being treated badly compared to other people.

PHRASES

it is fair *It's not fair that she gets paid more than me.*
it is only fair *I thought it was only fair to let you know what happened to your money.*
to be fair *To be fair, it is the first time he has ever played the game.*

THESAURUS: fair

reasonable
amount | price | offer | excuse | grounds
fair and sensible according to most people's standards:
It is important to give children a reasonable amount of freedom of choice. | Twenty dollars sounds like a perfectly reasonable price for a meal to me. | The police officer must have reasonable grounds for stopping and searching someone (=a good reason for doing this).
just formal
punishment | cause | war | society | reward
morally right and fair:
We believe our cause is just. | Do you think there is such a thing as a just war? | He will receive his just reward when the time comes.
impartial
advice | account | observer | judge
able to make fair comments or decisions,

because you do not support anyone who is involved in a situation:
Our staff can offer impartial advice on choosing the best investment. | Journalists have a duty to be impartial. | The scientist is supposed to be an impartial observer.
balanced
view | reporting | account
giving fair and equal treatment to all sides of an argument or subject:
The movie gives a balanced view of the situation in Iraq. | Balanced reporting of the news is essential to a democracy.
even-handed
approach | attitude | criticism
giving fair and equal treatment to everyone, and not favouring one particular group:
Schools are expected to have an even-handed approach when they are punishing students. | The author is even-handed in his criticism of both sides.
equitable formal
distribution | treatment
giving equal treatment to everyone involved:
In his speech, he called for a more equitable distribution of wealth. | the equitable treatment of all members of society

ANTONYMS fair → unfair

faith n

1 a strong feeling of trust or confidence in someone or something

ADJECTIVES

great/enormous faith *He had great faith in his team.*
complete/total/absolute faith *The owners have complete faith in Sam as manager.*
blind/unquestioning faith (=trusting someone or something without thinking) *Most people just have blind faith that they will have enough money when they retire.*
unshakeable/firm faith (=that nothing can make weaker) *Her parents had unshakeable faith in her ability.*

VERBS

have faith *They no longer have faith that the police will protect them.*
put/place your faith in sb/sth *People seem less and less inclined to put their faith in science.*
show faith in sb/sth *The club have shown faith in the young goalkeeper by offering him a permanent contract.*
lose faith *After more broken promises by the government, people are starting to lose faith.*
destroy sb's faith in sb/sth *Terry's lies had destroyed Liz's faith in men.*
shake/undermine sb's faith in sb/sth (=make it weaker) *Bad decisions by judges shake the public's faith in the legal system.*

restore sb's faith in sb/sth (=make it return)

His kindness had restored her faith in human nature.

sb's faith is misplaced (=they are wrong to trust someone or something) *I hope their faith in him is not misplaced.*

PREPOSITIONS

faith in sb/sth *After so many disappointments, my faith in him was almost gone.*

PHRASES

have every faith in sb/sth (=trust them completely) *We have every faith in your ability to solve the problem.*

a leap of faith (=something risky that someone does, believing that it may have a good result) *She took a leap of faith and lent him the money he needed to start the company.*

2 a belief in a god or gods

ADJECTIVES

religious faith *Yousuf put his success down to his religious faith.*

deep faith *He is a man of deep faith.*

VERBS

lose faith *Her experience of war led her to lose her faith in God.*

find faith *Christians of all nations have found faith in Christ.*

PREPOSITIONS

faith in God *My first priority has always been my faith in God.*

3 a religion

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + faith

a religious faith *It is easy to concentrate on the differences between the religious faiths and forget what they have in common.*

the Christian/Jewish/Hindu/Muslim etc faith *She was brought up in the Jewish faith.*

a world faith *It is important for students to study other world faiths apart from their own.*

VERBS

practise your faith BrE, **practice your faith** AmE (=do the things that it is your duty to do, according to your religion) *Everybody should be allowed to practice their faith.*

spread the faith *Their mission was to spread the faith.*

faith + NOUNS

a faith community/group (=a group of people living somewhere who belong to a particular religion) *He will meet the leaders of the different faith communities.*

a faith school (=which is based on a particular religion) *Parents want to have the choice of sending their children to a faith school.*

PHRASES

of all faiths/of every faith/of different faiths *People of all faiths are welcome.*

fake adj **THESAURUS** artificial, false

fall¹ v

1 to become less

ADVERBS

fall dramatically (=by a very large amount) *The number of deaths has fallen dramatically.*

fall sharply/steeply (=quickly and by a large amount) *Share prices fell sharply today, leading to fears of recession.*

fall slightly *Sales fell slightly this quarter, from \$5.3 million to \$5.1 million.*

fall significantly (=enough to make a big difference) *The price of corn has fallen significantly.*

fall gradually *The population fell gradually, because fewer people were having children.*

PREPOSITIONS

fall to sth *In winter, the temperature can fall to 20 degrees below zero.*

fall below sth *Unemployment has fallen below one million for the first time in ten years.*

PHRASES

be expected/likely to fall *Interest rates are expected to fall over the coming months.*

2 to move or drop down from a higher position to a lower position

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

fall off sth *Careful you don't fall off your bike.*

fall down/over *He fell over and hurt his leg.*

fall on sth *I fell on a loose stone and went flying through the air.*

fall down *She fell down at school today and grazed her knees.*

fall badly *The old lady fell badly and injured her ankle.*

PHRASES

fall down on your knees *She fell down on her knees and begged him to stay.*

fall² n

1 a decrease in the price, amount, level etc of something

ADJECTIVES

a big/huge fall *The study shows a big fall in the number of people who die from the disease.*

a slight fall *A slight fall in fuel prices has been predicted.*

a sudden/rapid fall *There was a sudden fall in the value of the US dollar.*

a sharp/steep fall (=a sudden big fall) *There has been a sharp fall in the price of electricity.*

VERBS

look/sound/seem familiar *Her face looks familiar and I'm sure I've seen her somewhere before.*

ADVERBS

strangely/oddly familiar *The writing on the envelope looked strangely familiar.*

slightly/vaguely familiar *Her face is vaguely familiar, but I can't remember her name.*

depressingly/painfully familiar *Those problems sound depressingly familiar.*

reassuringly familiar (=familiar in a way that makes you feel relaxed) *His hometown looked reassuringly familiar.*

sth is all too familiar (=you have experienced the same thing many times before) *The problem is all too familiar to many people.*

NOUNS

a familiar face/voice *I recognized a familiar face – it was one of my old school friends.*

a familiar figure (=someone you often see somewhere) *The local policeman became a familiar figure in our school.*

familiar surroundings (=a place you know well) *It was good to be back home in more familiar surroundings.*

a familiar landmark (=a famous building that people can recognize easily) *St Paul's Cathedral is one of London's most familiar landmarks.*

a familiar sight (=something that you often see) *Beggars on the street are a familiar sight.*

a familiar name/word *The company name sounds familiar.*

a familiar refrain (=something that you often hear people say) *Parents hear the familiar refrain from their children "I'm bored!"*

PREPOSITIONS

sth is familiar to sb *The name will be familiar to many people.*

sb is familiar with sth *Are you familiar with his books?*

Familiar sounds a little formal. In everyday English, you often say that you **know** someone or something: *Do you know Los Angeles? | She knew him well.*

You can also say that you have **heard of** someone or something, when you are familiar with their name: *I'm sure that I've heard of him from somewhere.*

familyⁿ

a group of people who are related to each other

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + family

a large/big/small family *He came from a large family and had four sisters.*

a wealthy/rich/well-off family *She was from a wealthy family and did not need to work.*

a poor/low-income/disadvantaged family

Children from poor families are less likely to go to university.

a young family (=with young children) *It's not easy bringing up a young family on your own.*

the whole family/the entire family/all the family *We have invited the whole family to our house for Christmas.*

the Smith/Jones/Brown etc family *The Smith family are living in temporary accommodation.*

the royal family (=the king or queen and their family) *The royal family have large estates in Scotland.*

sb's immediate family (=closest relations) *What if one of your immediate family were disabled?*

sb's extended family (=including not only parents and children, but also grandparents, aunts etc) *She gets a lot of help from her extended family.*

a one-parent/single-parent family *Many of the kids are from one-parent families.*

a nuclear family (=a family consisting of a mother, a father, and their children) *Not everyone lives in a typical nuclear family.*

a close/close-knit family (=spending a lot of time together and supporting each other) *Laura's family are very close.*

a dysfunctional family *formal* (=a family with bad relationships between the members) *Children from dysfunctional families need special help.*

VERBS

come from a family *He comes from a family of doctors.*

start a family (=start to have children) *She wanted to get married and start a family.*

bring up/raise a family (=look after children until they are grown up) *You can work as well as bringing up a family.*

support your family (=provide the money and things they need) *He works hard to support his family.*

sth runs in the family (=used to say that many members have an illness, feature, ability etc) *Depression runs in my family.*

family + NOUNS

a family member/a member of the family *He lost two members of his family in the disaster.*

sb's family background *He comes from a stable family background.*

family life *Some people believe that television is destroying family life.*

a family business (=one run by members of a family) *My parents expected me to join the family business.*

a family car (=one designed for families with children) *It's a practical family car that is also fun to drive.*

a family holiday BrE, **a family vacation** AmE: Most of our family holidays were spent in the south of France.

a family resemblance (=when members of the same family look like each other) *There's a strong family resemblance between all the sisters.*

PREPOSITIONS

a family of four/five etc *This house isn't big enough for a family of seven.*

in sb's family *Everyone in my family is smarter than me.*

△ Don't say 'My family is five.' Say **There are five people in my family.**

famine

n

a situation in which a large number of people have little or no food for a long time and many people die

ADJECTIVES

a severe/terrible famine *The country suffered a severe famine last year.*

a devastating famine (=it causes a lot of damage) *A devastating famine killed over one million people.*

widespread famine *Lack of rain produced widespread famine in Africa.*

the worst famine *In Sudan the year 1888 is remembered as the worst famine in history.*

VERBS

suffer a famine *When the potato crop failed, the people of Ireland suffered a terrible famine.*

be hit by famine *The charity continues to support food distribution in the areas hit by famine.*

be facing famine *Millions of people in West Africa are facing famine.*

cause a famine *The poor harvest caused a famine.*

relieve a famine (=end it) *Donations of grain from Western nations gradually relieved the famine in Ethiopia.*

famine + NOUNS

famine victims (also **victims of famine**) *The organization was founded to provide aid to famine victims.*

famine relief (=help for people suffering from famine) *A concert was organized to raise money for famine relief.*

famine areas *The worst famine areas are in the north of the country.*

famous

adj

known about by a lot of people in a country or in the world, especially because someone or something is very good or impressive

NOUNS

a famous writer/actor/singer/artist *Leonardo was one of the most famous artists who has ever lived.*

a famous person/man/woman *Many famous people are buried there, including Oscar Wilde and Jim Morrison.*

a famous book/story/poem/painting *'Nineteen Eighty-Four' was Orwell's most famous book.*

a famous name/brand *The company owns some famous names, including Johnnie Walker whisky and Gordon's gin.*

famous phrase/words *In John Donne's famous phrase, "No man is an island".*

a famous example/case *The painting is probably the most famous example of his work.*

a famous victory *The Democrats were celebrating a famous victory by Barack Obama.*

VERBS

become famous *She became famous for the gardens she created.*

make sb famous *The song made him famous.*

ADVERBS

internationally famous *The internationally famous Munich beer festival is held in the autumn.*

If something is famous all over the world, you say that it is **world-famous**: *Cheddar cheese is world-famous.*

PREPOSITIONS

famous for sth *France is famous for its wine.*

famous as sth *He is famous as the man who invented the internet.*

THESAURUS: famous

well-known

brand | **book** | **story** | **play** | **poem** | **artist** | **writer** | **actor** | **figure** | **company**

used about things and people that many people know about:

a well-known brand of breakfast cereal | *The film is based on a well-known children's book.* | *Michael appeared in many shows and concerts and was a well-known figure in the theatre in Bradford,* (=someone who people know well). | *He works for a well-known insurance company.* | *She is well known for her views.* | *His work is well known among people who collect modern art.*

You write **well-known** with a hyphen before a noun: *a well-known poem.* You write **well known** without a hyphen when you use it on its own: *He became very well known for his paintings.*

legendary

singer | **musician** | **performer** | **player** | **figure** | **name** | **reputation** | **ability** | **courage**

very famous and greatly admired for a long time – used especially about a singer,

fantastic *adj* **THESAURUS** excellent

fantasy *n*

something that you imagine happening to you, which is extremely unlikely

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + fantasy

a childhood fantasy *The story is just a childhood fantasy.*

a romantic fantasy *She started having romantic fantasies about her boss.*

sth is pure/sheer fantasy (=it is not really true) *None of this will ever happen – it's all pure fantasy.*

VERBS

have fantasies about sth *He had fantasies about being a famous actor.*

act out/play out/live out your fantasies (=do what you imagine you would like to do) *For many people, computer games are a way of acting out their fantasies.*

fantasy + NOUNS

a fantasy world *She created a fantasy world, in order to escape from her job at the factory.*

a fantasy novel/story/tale *The book is a fantasy tale about a boy and his dragon.*

a fantasy figure *Marilyn Monroe was a real person, not just a Hollywood fantasy figure.*

a fantasy life *He lived in a fantasy life where he thought he was a kind of superhero.*

PHRASES

the realms of fantasy (=used when you think someone's ideas are completely wrong and not based on reality) *The idea belongs in the realms of fantasy.*

sb is living in (a) fantasy land (=they are imagining something that will never happen) *If he thinks he can persuade them, he's living in fantasy land.*

far *adj, adv*

a long distance from somewhere

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

far from sth *He was far from home.*

far away *They could hear the sound of water not far away.*

Grammar

Far is not used before a noun. You use **distant**, **remote**, or **faraway** instead.

△ Don't say 'My house is far.' Say **My house is a long way from here**. **Far** is not usually used on its own. **Far** is most commonly used in questions and in negative sentences: "How far is it to the station?" "It's not very far."

THESAURUS: far

a long way

if something is a long way, it is a long distance from a place. **A long way** is much more common than **far**:

It's a long way to the next town. | The school is a long way from her house. | The airport is a long way away – over 50 miles.

miles *informal*

very far:

I was miles from the nearest hospital. | We had been walking for miles and needed a rest.

distant *especially literary*

sound | **voice** | **star** | **planet** | **galaxy** | **horizon** | **land** | **thunder** | **gunfire**

a long distance away, and often difficult to see or hear:

I could hear the distant sound of thunder. | On the distant horizon they saw a small fishing boat. | Several miles distant was the border with Switzerland.

remote

village | **island** | **area** | **place** | **location** | **part** | **corner**

a very long distance away from the nearest town or city, so that few people go there:

He comes from a remote mountain village in Nepal. | They travelled to one of the most remote corners of the world to make this film. | This area is physically remote from the rest of the USA (=used to emphasize that a place is remote).

faraway *especially literary*

place | **land** | **country** | **kingdom**

a very long distance away:

a traveller from a faraway land | He lay in bed dreaming of faraway countries. | Her home was in faraway Australia.

Far away is written as two words when it is used as an adverbial phrase: *Her only living relative lived far away in America.*

faraway *adj, adv* **THESAURUS** far

fare *n*

the price you pay to travel somewhere by bus, train, plane etc

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + fare

an air fare/a plane fare *Air fares are becoming much cheaper.*

a train fare (also **a rail fare** BrE): *Train fares are too expensive.*

a bus/coach fare *The coach fare is only £20.*

a taxi fare *The taxi fare from the airport is €25.*

a one-way fare (also **a single fare** BrE): *A one-way fare costs £75.*

a return fare BrE, **a round-trip fare** AmE: *The airline is offering a \$99 round-trip fare.*

cheap/low fares Several companies offer cheap fares to Barcelona.

high fares People are fed up with paying high fares for short flights.

full fare If you are not a student, you have to pay full fare.

half fare Children can travel half fare.

the normal/standard fare The standard fare is £30, but you pay less if you book early.

the first-class/second-class fare How much is the first-class fare to London?

fare + NOUNS

a fare increase/rise People who travel to work by train are complaining about the fare increases.

VERBS

pay a fare You get on the bus, pay your fare, then sit down.

cut/lower/reduce fares If train companies reduce their fares, it will encourage people to use their cars less.

increase/put up fares The airline plans to increase its fares by 10%.

fares increase/go up Fares have gone up three times in the last two years.

PREPOSITIONS

the fare to a place How much is the fare to Boston?

THESAURUS: fare

price, value, charge, fee, fare, rent, rate, toll → **cost¹ (1)**

farm *n*

an area of land used for growing crops or keeping animals

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + farm

a sheep/cattle/pig farm His family owns a sheep farm in Australia.

a dairy farm (=a farm that has cows and produces milk) The milk comes from local dairy farms.

an arable farm (=where crops such as wheat or corn are grown) The wheat is grown on huge arable farms in Canada.

a fruit farm He lives on a fruit farm and helps to pick apples.

an organic farm (=where artificial chemicals are not used) Organic farms are better for the environment.

a factory farm (=where many animals are kept inside, in small spaces, and made to grow or produce eggs very quickly) It is cruel to keep animals on factory farms.

a 300-hectare/400-acre etc farm He bought a 300-hectare farm in Shropshire.

VERBS

work on a farm I used to work on a farm when I was younger.

live on a farm She lives on a farm in Wiltshire.

own/have a farm The family owned a small farm in Suffolk.

manage/run a farm He manages a large dairy farm.

grow sth on a farm They grew wheat and barley on their farm.

farm + NOUNS

farm produce (=things that are produced on a farm, such as vegetables or eggs) The local shop sells farm produce.

farm animals This crop is used mainly for feeding farm animals.

a farm worker/labourer They employ temporary farm workers to pick the fruit.

farmer *n*

someone who owns or manages a farm

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + farmer

an organic farmer Organic farmers don't use chemicals that damage the environment.

a local farmer We buy our eggs from a local farmer.

a dairy farmer (=farmers who keep cows for their milk) He is a dairy farmer with a herd of 100 cows.

a sheep/pig/cattle/chicken farmer Sheep farmers have been keeping sheep here for hundreds of years.

a rice/wheat/cotton/tobacco farmer In Japan, rice farmers receive a lot of money from the government.

a livestock farmer (=farmers who keep animals) Livestock farmers need to get their animals to market.

farming *n*

the activity of growing crops or keeping animals to produce food

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + farming

organic farming Organic farming does not use chemicals that will harm the environment.

sheep/pig farming There is a lot of sheep farming in central Australia.

dairy farming (=keeping cows for their milk) The grass makes the area suitable for dairy farming.

arable farming (=in which you grow crops such as wheat) There is a big difference between arable farming and keeping animals.

intensive farming (=in which large numbers of animals are kept together in crowded conditions) Many people think that intensive farming is bad for humans as well as the animals.

subsistence farming (=in which the farmer can only produce enough food to feed his or her family) The region is poor and relies heavily on subsistence farming.

farming + NOUNS

the farming industry The farming industry gets huge amounts of money from the government.

one). However, food that is made and eaten quickly is called **fast** food.

When talking about the speed at which someone can do something, you can use either **fast** or **quick**. You can say *She's a fast learner*, or a **quick** learner. However, you say a **fast** computer (not a 'quick' one).

THESAURUS: fast

high-speed

train | **line** | **service** | **rail link** | **collision** | **chase**

able to travel very quickly, or happening when someone is travelling very quickly:

High-speed trains can travel from London to Paris in just over two hours. | The bus was involved in a high-speed collision but luckily no one was hurt. | The police caught up with the gang after a high-speed chase.

supersonic

aircraft | **plane** | **jet** | **airliner** | **fighter** | **bomber** | **speed** | **flight**

a supersonic aircraft can travel faster than the speed of sound:

Concorde was the world's first supersonic passenger aircraft. | The plane was travelling at supersonic speed.

express

train | **bus** | **coach** | **service**

an express train or bus travels quickly because it does not stop at many places:

An express train suddenly came rushing past. | The airport express service operates every 15 minutes.

You can also use **express** as a noun: *It's quicker if you take the express.*

swift

movement | **kick** | **stroke** | **water** | **current**

moving quickly. **Swift** sounds rather formal and is mainly used in written English:

With a sudden swift movement, he seized the shotgun with his left hand. | She gave the door a swift kick. | The water was very swift, shallow, and rocky.

brisk

walk | **pace**

quick and energetic:

They went for a brisk walk in the countryside. | We set off at a brisk pace.

fast-flowing

river | **stream** | **water** | **current**

fast-flowing water moves quickly:

He fell into the fast-flowing river.

ANTONYMS fast → slow

2 able to do something quickly

NOUNS

a fast computer/processor/chip Computer

companies want faster chips, and faster means smaller.

a fast machine *It is one of the fastest machines on the market.*

a fast worker/learner/reader *He's a fast worker and he should have it done by lunchtime.*

THESAURUS: fast

quick

learner | **worker** | **reader** | **mind** | **brain**

able to do something quickly:

He was a quick learner and his English seemed to get better every day. | His mind was surprisingly quick for someone of his age.

high-speed

broadband | **internet access**

high-speed internet connections operate very quickly:

Do you have a high-speed broadband connection at home? | All rooms have high-speed internet access.

ANTONYMS fast → slow

3 taking only a short time to do something

THESAURUS: fast

fast, rapid, speedy, prompt, hasty, cursory → **quick (1)**

fast² adv at a high speed

VERBS

go/drive/travel fast *You're driving too fast – slow down.*

run/walk fast *You can run much faster than I can.*

move fast (=take action quickly) *The rescue workers knew that they had to move fast.*

work fast *There's a lot to do – we need to work fast.*

learn fast *In this job, you have to learn fast.*

be falling/sinking fast *The temperature was falling fast.*

be growing/rising fast *Inflation is rising fast.*

fasten^v

to join together two sides or ends of something in order to close it, or join together two things so they are attached

ADVERBS

fasten sth tightly/securely *The gate was fastened securely with a padlock and chain.*

fasten sth together *A paperclip is for fastening pieces of paper together.*

NOUNS

fasten your belt/seat belt *Please fasten your seat belts ready for landing.*

fasten your coat/tie/shoes *I stopped to fasten my shoe.*

fasten a rope/chain *He fastened the rope to a metal ring on the harbor wall.*

PREPOSITIONS

fasten sth to sth *A name badge was fastened to his jacket with a safety pin.*

fasten sth around sth *She fastened a silk scarf around her neck.*

fat¹ adj

1 weighing too much because you have too much flesh on your body

Be careful when you use fat

Fat is a very direct word. You might use it about yourself, but it will usually cause offence if you use it about someone else. The same is true about other words meaning **fat**.

ADJECTIVES

a fat man/woman/boy/girl *He was a short fat man in his early fifties.*

a fat person *The number of fat people in Britain is rising.*

a fat baby/child/teenager *People made fun of him at school because he was a fat child.*

a fat stomach (also **a fat belly** informal): *The exercise is good for getting rid of a fat stomach.*

a fat face *She was a small woman with a fat face.*

fat hands/fingers *His fat fingers made playing the guitar difficult.*

fat legs/thighs/bottom *He ran as fast as his fat legs would carry him.*

VERBS

get/become fat (also **grow fat** formal): *You'll get fat if you eat too much chocolate.*

look fat *Do I look fat in this dress?*

make sb fat *Eating too much fast food will make you fat.*

ADVERBS

extremely/enormously/incredibly fat *I was incredibly fat in those days.*

PHRASES

big fat informal: *He had a big fat stomach.*

THESAURUS: fat

overweight

weighing more than you should:
One in three Americans is overweight. | She was several kilos overweight. | Diabetes is particularly common among overweight people. | He is grossly overweight (=extremely overweight).

big/large

man | woman | boy | girl | person | bottom | stomach

used when saying that someone has a big body. **Large** is more common than **big** in written English:

My father was a big man. | These chairs have been specially designed for large people. | Does my bottom look big in these trousers?

obese

person | child | teenager | patient

extremely fat in a way that is dangerous to your health:

Obese people cannot control their desire for fattening foods. | Obese patients are put on a special diet. | Her son was clinically obese (=obese according to official medical standards). | a morbidly obese woman (=extremely obese)

chubby

baby | child | boy | girl | cheeks | face | arms | legs | hands | fingers

slightly fat in a nice-looking way:

A chubby little baby was playing on the rug. | He was a chubby boy of about 16. | His cheeks were slightly chubby.

plump

woman | baby | child | body | face | cheeks | arms | chicken

a plump woman, baby, or bird has a pleasantly round fat body:

Her mother was a plump cheerful woman. | She was holding a plump baby in her arms. | She had plump cheeks and pretty brown hair. | The chickens were getting plump.

flabby

stomach | arms | legs | body

having soft loose skin that looks unattractive:

Lack of physical exercise can lead to a flabby stomach. | She was waving her flabby arms in the air. | He looked down at his flabby body.

portly literary

man | figure | frame

a portly person has a fat round body – used especially about middle-aged men:

The farmer was a portly man with a long beard. | She saw a portly figure standing by the gate. | He had difficulty getting his portly frame through the narrow door.

ANTONYMS fat → thin (1)

2 thick

THESAURUS: fat

fat, chunky, heavy → **thick (1)**

fat² n

1 an oily substance in some foods

PHRASES

be low/high in fat (=contain very little fat or a lot of fat) *Cheese is very high in fat.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + fat

low-fat/high-fat (=containing very little fat or a lot of fat) *A low-fat diet with plenty of vegetables is good for you.*

animal/vegetable fat *It is a good idea to cut down on the amount of animal fat that you eat.*

saturated/unsaturated fat *Saturated fat is found mostly in animal products such as meat.*

VERBS

contain fat *The cake contains a lot of fat.*

fat + NOUNS

fat intake (=the amount of fat that you eat) *You should reduce your fat intake.*

fat content (=the amount of fat that a food contains) *There have been calls for manufacturers to reduce the fat content in fast foods.*

2 a substance under the skin of people and animals, that helps to keep them warm

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + fat

body fat *Women tend to have more body fat than men.*

excess/surplus fat (=extra fat) *He needs to lose some of that excess fat.*

VERBS

lose/shed fat *The best way to lose fat is to do some exercise.*

burn off fat (=get rid of fat by exercise) *Logging helps to burn off fat.*

PHRASES

a roll of fat *There was a big roll of fat around her stomach.*

fatal *adj* resulting in someone's death

ADVERBS

often/sometimes/rarely fatal *This type of cancer is often fatal.*

potentially fatal (=used when something can cause someone to die) *Snake bites are potentially fatal.*

invariably fatal (=almost always fatal) *The disease is invariably fatal.*

VERBS

prove fatal (=be fatal) *If it is not treated correctly, the condition can prove fatal.*

NOUNS

a fatal accident *The number of fatal accidents has gone down.*

a fatal crash/collision *Diana died in a fatal car crash in Paris.*

a fatal injury/wound *The cyclist received fatal injuries.*

a fatal disease/illness *The disease can be fatal in young children.*

a fatal shooting *There have been several fatal shootings this year.*

the fatal shot *It was Oswald who fired the fatal shot.*

PREPOSITIONS

fatal to sb *The disease can be fatal to cats.*

THESAURUS: fatal

terminal

illness | cancer | condition

a terminal illness cannot be cured and will cause someone to die:

He has a terminal illness and only has a few months left to live. | Her husband suffers from terminal cancer. | The doctors say his condition is terminal.

mortal *literary*

wound | danger

causing death:

The hero receives a mortal wound to his chest. | The crew of the spacecraft were in mortal danger (=they were in danger of dying).

Mortal is only used before a noun.

fate *n*

the things that happen to someone or something, especially an unpleasant death or end

ADJECTIVES

the same/a similar fate *He did not intend to meet the same fate as his companion.*

a terrible/horrible/grim fate *The crew of the ship met a terrible fate.*

a sad/tragic fate *The play is about the tragic fate of two lovers.*

a cruel fate *She suffered a cruel fate at the hands of her captors.*

sb's ultimate fate (=what finally happens to someone) *The ultimate fate of the refugees is in our hands.*

an uncertain fate (=not clear, definite, or decided) *The bill faces an uncertain fate in the Senate.*

VERBS + fate

suffer a fate *We must prevent other children from suffering the same fate.*

face a fate *Other army bases are facing a similar fate.*

meet your/a fate *This is the battlefield where he met his fate.*

share sb's fate (=have the same fate) *She had no desire to share Linda's fate.*

decide/determine sb's/sth's fate *The meeting will decide the fate of the factory.*

seal sb's fate (=make it certain that something bad will happen to someone, especially that they will die) *Engine failure sealed the pilot's fate.*

leave/abandon sb to their fate (=leave someone in a bad situation) *The abandoned sailors were left to their fate on the island.*

resign yourself to/accept your fate *I had no choice but to resign myself to my fate.*
deserve a fate *These people deserve a better fate.*
discover/find out sb's fate *He only discovered his sister's fate after the war.*

fate + VERBS

sb's/sth's fate depends on sth *The company's fate depends on a decision by the bank.*
a fate awaits sb *formal (=something will happen to someone) A terrible fate awaited any soldier who was captured.*
a fate befalls sb *formal (=something happens to someone) I wondered what fate would befall me.*

PHRASES

your fate is in sb's hands (=someone will decide what happens to you) *His fate is now in the hands of the judge.*

father *n* a male parent

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + father

a good/better father *I hope I've been a good father to you.*
a loving/devoted father *He said he was lucky to have such a loving father.*
a proud father *Steve recently became the proud father of a baby girl.*
an absent father (=who has left the family home) *Absent fathers are being made to pay to support their children.*
a single/unmarried/lone father (=who has to bring up a child without the help of a mother) *The evidence suggests that lone fathers are more likely to work than lone mothers.*
sb's real/birth/biological father *He never knew who his real father was.*
sb's foster father (=a man who looks after a child instead of its real father) *His uncle became his foster father.*
sb's late father (=who has died) *The picture was given to him by his late father.*

VERBS

become a father *Andrew was very excited about becoming a father.*
resemble/take after your father (=be like your father) *They are worried that John will take after his father and start gambling.*

NOUNS + father

a father figure (=someone who seems like a father to you and who you ask for advice) *Mitchell has been a father figure to Reid since he was ten.*

PHRASES

a father of two/three etc *The driver of the car was a father of four.*
be like a father to sb *The coach was like a father to him.*

fault *n*

1 something that is wrong with something, especially something that prevents it from working properly

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + fault

a small/minor/slight fault *It's only a minor fault - it shouldn't take long to fix.*
a serious/major fault *If the product has a serious fault, you should be able to get your money back.*
an electrical fault *The fire was caused by an electrical fault.*
a design fault *The car had a design fault and thousands of vehicles had to go back to the factory.*

VERBS

find/discover/detect/identify a fault *It took them a couple of minutes to find the fault.*
develop a fault *The phone developed a fault and I had to take it back.*
fix/deal with/rectify/cure a fault *I've managed to fix the fault and the computer works OK now.*

PREPOSITIONS

a fault in/with sth *There was a fault in one of the engines.*

PHRASES

for all its faults (=even though there are things wrong with something) *For all its faults, we love this city.*

2 if something is your fault, you made it happen and you are responsible

PHRASES

say/claim that sth is sb's fault *The other driver said it was my fault, because I should have stopped in time.*
the fault lies with sb/sth (=that person or thing should be blamed) *Everyone always thinks that the fault lies with the parents.*
sth is sb's own fault *It's my own fault - I should have made sure the store was open on Sundays.*
sth is sb's stupid fault *It's his own stupid fault for drinking too much last night.*

favour *BrE, favor* *AmE n*

something that you do for someone in order to help them or be kind to them

ADJECTIVES

a big/great/huge favour *I've got a big favour to ask of you. | He acted as though he'd done us a great favor by coming.*
a small/little favour *Can you do me a small favour?*
a special favour *As a special favour, we were allowed to watch the players training.*
a personal favour (=something you do specially for a particular person) *As a personal favor, he let us use the hall to rehearse.*



a political favour *He was accused of granting political favours in return for illegal payments.*

VERBS

do sb a favour *Could you do me a favour and lend me £5?*

ask sb a favour (also **ask a favour of sb** formal): *I felt nervous about asking Stephen a favour.*

owe sb a favour (=feel that you should do something for someone because they have done something for you) *I owe you a favour for all the help you've given me.*

return a favour (=do something for someone because they have done something for you) *He helped me in the past and now he wanted me to return the favor.*

grant sb a favour formal (=do them a favour) *Female soldiers do not wish to be granted any special favors.*

PHRASES

as a favour to sb (=because you want to be kind, not because you have to) *She delivered the parcel as a favour to her sister.*

do yourself a favour (=do something good for yourself) *Do yourself a favour and get a good night's rest before the exam.*

favourable BrE, **favorable** AmE adj

THESAURUS good (1)

favourite¹ BrE, **favorite** AmE adj

your favourite thing or person is the one that you like more than others

NOUNS

sb's favourite food *What's your favourite food?*

sb's favourite book/film/website etc *One of my favourite books as a child was R. L. Stevenson's 'Treasure Island'.*

sb's favourite place *The writing room was her favourite place in the house.*

sb's favourite subject/topic *English was my favorite subject at school.*

sb's favourite pastime (=the thing that someone likes doing the most) *Her favourite pastime is golf.*

sb's favourite kind of sth *He says his favourite kind of music is jazz.*

sb's favourite time of (the) year *Autumn is my favourite time of the year.*

ADJECTIVES

least favourite *Cleaning the shower is one of my least favorite jobs.*

favourite² BrE, **favorite** AmE n

1 something that you like more than others

ADJECTIVES

a great/big favourite (=used when saying that a lot of people like something) *The area is a great favourite with tourists.*

an old/traditional favourite (=popular for a

long time) *The CD contains all the old favorites plus some new additions.*

sb's own/personal favourite *This poem is one of my personal favourites.*

a particular favourite *Their songs were all good – my particular favourite was 'Mamma Mia'.*

a firm favourite (=used when saying that someone likes something very much) *Dahl's books are firm favourites with children.*

an all-time favourite (=your favourite of all the ones that have existed) *This song is one of my all-time favourites.*

a perennial favourite (=something that is always a favourite) *The film is a perennial favourite at Christmas time.*

NOUNS + favourite

a family/crowd favourite *The game quickly became a family favorite.*

VERBS

choose/pick a favourite *All his books are good and it is difficult to choose a favourite.*

remain a favourite *The Empire State Building remains a favorite with visitors to New York.*

PREPOSITIONS

sth is a favourite of sb's *The poem is a favourite of my father's.*

sth is a favourite with a group of people *The bar is a favourite with students.*

2 the team or player that is expected to win a game or competition

ADJECTIVES

the clear/strong favourite *At this stage, the US team looked clear favourites.*

the odds-on favourite (=the one that is most likely to win) *Serena is the odds-on favourite to win.*

the overwhelming favourite (=the one that is much more certain to win than any of the others) *This horse is the overwhelming favourite in tomorrow's race.*

the hot favourite informal (=the one that most people think will win) *The team are hot favourites to win the competition.*

joint favourites (=used when two teams or players are both the favourites) *France and Spain are joint favourites.*

fear¹ n

the feeling you have when you are afraid, or something bad that you are afraid will happen

ADJECTIVES

(a) great/deep/terrible fear *I had a terrible fear that I was going to die.*

(a) genuine/real fear *There was a look of genuine fear on her face.*

constant fear (=all the time) *During the war, we lived in a state of constant fear.*

sb's worst/greatest fear *Her worst fear was that she would never see her children again.*

an irrational fear (=one that is not reasonable) *He grew up with an irrational fear of insects.*

a deep-seated fear (=very strong and difficult to change) *He exploited people's deep-seated fears about strangers.*

sb's fears are groundless/unfounded (=there is no good reason for someone to be afraid) *As it turned out, these fears were groundless.*

VERBS

have no fear (of sth) *He had no fear of death.*

feel fear *For the first time, Peter felt fear.*

show your fear *She was determined not to show her fear.*

shake/tremble with fear *He was shaking with fear after being held at gunpoint.*

be gripped/overcome by fear (=be very afraid) *We were gripped by fear as the boat was tossed around by the waves.*

conquer/overcome your fear (=stop being afraid) *She managed to conquer her fear of flying.*

create/cause fear *The purpose of the terrorist attack was to create fear among the local population.*

confirm sb's fears (=show that what you were afraid of has actually happened) *The look on Colin's face confirmed all my worst fears.*

calm/ease/allay sb's fears (=make someone less afraid) *Frank eased my fears about not being able to speak the local language.*

dispel sb's fears (=make someone stop being afraid) *The announcement failed to dispel fears that jobs would be cut.*

raise fears (=make people feel afraid) *The attack has raised fears of increased violence against foreigners.*

⚠ Don't say that someone 'has fear'. Say that someone **is frightened** or **is afraid**. However, you can say that someone **has a great/terrible fear** of something, or **has no fear** of something.

PREPOSITIONS

fear of sth/sb *Fear of failure should not stop you trying.*

fear about sth *There were fears about the possibility of the disease spreading.*

fears for sb (=worries that something bad might happen to someone) *She spoke of her fears for her children.*

in/from/out of fear (=because you are afraid) *One of the women cried out in fear.*

for fear of doing sth/for fear that sth might happen (=because you are afraid something might happen) *They do not go out alone for fear of being kidnapped. | I didn't want to leave the path, for fear that I might get lost.*

without fear *People should be able to go about without fear of attack.*

PHRASES

filled with fear/full of fear *Mark sat in silence, his eyes filled with fear.*

be white/pale with fear *His face was pale with fear.*

be paralysed with fear (=be so afraid that you cannot move) *Bruce was paralysed with fear when he saw the snake.*

be/live in fear of sth (=be always afraid of something) *They were constantly in fear of an enemy attack.*

be in fear of/for your life (=be afraid that you may be killed) *Celia was in fear of her life when she saw the truck coming toward her.*

strike fear into the heart of sb (=make someone feel afraid) *Their shouts struck fear into the hearts of their enemies.*

a state of fear *People are living in a constant state of fear.*

a sense/feeling of fear *There is a great sense of fear and tension in the area.*

a climate/atmosphere of fear (=when everyone in a place feels afraid) *The killings have created a climate of fear.*

fear² v

to feel afraid or worried that something bad may happen

ADVERBS

secretly fear *He secretly feared that he wouldn't be brave enough to do the jump.*

greatly fear *The disease was greatly feared at the time.*

initially fear *Doctors initially feared he had suffered a heart attack.*

PREPOSITIONS

fear for sb *We fear for him and we're worried that he might be killed.*

fear for sth *She has lost her job and now fears for her future.*

PHRASES

sth is not as bad as you had feared *Luckily, the news was not as bad as we had first feared.*

be feared dead (=be thought to have died – used in news reports) *Hundreds of people are feared dead after a big earthquake hit northern Turkey.*

have nothing to fear (=you do not need to be worried or afraid) *You have nothing to fear in the test if you have studied hard.*

have reason to fear sth (=a good reason to fear it) *He had reason to fear that someone was trying to kill him.*

fear the worst (=think that something very bad has happened) *When Jake didn't return, I started to fear the worst.*

a terrible feeling *I had a terrible feeling of guilt.*

a strong/deep/intense feeling *A deep feeling of sadness came over her.*

an overwhelming feeling (=very great) *When I heard the news, I just had an overwhelming feeling of relief.*

a slight/vague feeling *He didn't know how to explain his slight feeling of unease.*

positive/negative feelings *These women had negative feelings about their bodies.*

mixed/ambivalent feelings (=used when you have doubts about whether something is a good idea) *Her parents had mixed feelings about the marriage.*

bad feeling (=the feeling that you hate someone because of what has happened) *There is still a lot of bad feeling toward the soldiers.*

sb's true/real feelings *He never revealed his true feelings.*

VERBS

have/experience a feeling *I remember experiencing a feeling of tremendous excitement.*

give sb a feeling *My work gives me a feeling of achievement.*

arouse/cause a feeling *The music aroused a feeling of calm within him.*

show your feelings *I know you find it embarrassing to show your feelings.*

express your feelings/put your feelings into words (=tell other people about them) *Children sometimes find it difficult to put their feelings into words.*

hide/conceal/disguise your feelings *She could no longer hide her feelings.*

control/suppress your feelings (=not feel something, or not show your feelings) *She struggled to control her feelings.*

hurt sb's feelings (=make someone feel upset) *I hope I didn't hurt your feelings.*

a feeling comes/sweeps over sb *Suddenly, a feeling of joy came over him.*

PREPOSITIONS

a feeling of guilt/panic/relief etc *Stephen had a sudden feeling of panic.*

sb's feelings about sth/sb *He wrote a poem about his feelings about the death of his father.*

sb's feelings towards/toward sb *She had made her feelings towards him very clear.*

sb's feelings for sb (=especially feelings of love) *Tom's feelings for her hadn't changed.*

PHRASES

feelings are running high (=people have strong feelings, especially of anger) *It was the last game of the season, and feelings were running high.*

2 an idea or opinion about something, especially one that is influenced by your emotions

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + feeling

a strong feeling *Mary has very strong feelings on the subject of women's rights.*

a vague feeling *I had a vague feeling that I had seen him somewhere before.*

a distinct/definite feeling (=used when you feel sure that something is true) *He had a distinct feeling that he was being tricked in some way.*

a good feeling *I had a good feeling about the race (=I thought I would probably win).*

a bad feeling *He had a bad feeling about the project from the start.*

a strange/funny feeling (=not easily explained) *I had the strange feeling that we had met before.*

an uneasy/uncomfortable feeling (=used when you feel a little worried about something) *She had the uneasy feeling that something was wrong.*

a sinking feeling (=a sudden bad feeling that something is true) *I realized with a sinking feeling that I had left my keys at the office.*

a sneaking feeling (=a slight feeling that something is true, without being sure) *I have a sneaking feeling that this band will do very well.*

sb's personal feeling *My personal feeling is that it would be a very good idea.*

a gut feeling (=an opinion based on emotion, not facts) *I had a gut feeling that something very unusual was about to happen.*

VERBS

have a feeling *He has strong feelings about the war.*

get the feeling that *I got the feeling that he didn't like me much.*

PREPOSITIONS

sb's feelings about/on sth *What are your feelings about this subject?*

feisty *adj* **THESAURUS** **determined**

fertile *adj* able to produce good crops

NOUNS

fertile soil *Farmers use the fertile soil to grow huge quantities of rice and vegetables.*

fertile land *On this side of the island, the land is more fertile.*

fertile farmland *Ukraine has vast stretches of fertile farmland.*

a fertile valley/plain *The wheat is grown on the fertile plains of Canada.*

a fertile area/region *This is one of the most fertile areas of the country.*

You can also use **fertile** about situations that are likely to be interesting or useful for someone: *This is particularly **fertile ground** for future research. | The country is now **fertile territory** for extremists.*

Fertile is also used about people, animals, or plants that are able to produce babies, animals, or plants: *The seeds are still **fertile**.*

fervent *adj* **THESAURUS** **enthusiastic**

festival *n*

1 a series of performances or special events in a place

ADJECTIVES

an international festival *They will be taking part in an international festival of drama and dance.*

a cultural festival *A cultural festival will celebrate the traditions of the local people.*

a literary festival *He will be speaking at the town's literary festival.*

NOUNS + festival

a music/rock/pop/folk etc festival *He's appeared at folk festivals all over Europe.*

a film/theatre/music/arts etc festival *The movie won an award at the Cannes Film Festival.*

a beer/wine/food festival *the famous Munich beer festival*

VERBS

have/hold/stage a festival *Tucson had a film festival last month.*

organize a festival *She has organized the annual theatre festival for ten years.*

go to a festival (also **attend a festival** *formal*): *An estimated 20,000 people attended the festival.*

perform/play/appear at a festival *The singer is scheduled to appear at a festival in Amsterdam next month.*

take part in a festival (=perform there) *She is one of the performers taking part in the festival.*

a festival takes place (=happens) *The festival takes place once a year, usually in March.*

a festival opens/starts *The festival opens on June 17th.*

festival + NOUNS

a festival organizer *Festival organizers say they expect more than 50,000 visitors.*

a festival programme *BrE*, **a festival program** *AmE* (=a series of events at a festival) *This year's festival programme includes musicians from all over the world.*

PREPOSITIONS

at a festival *There were lots of people at the festival.*

2 an important religious celebration

VERBS

celebrate a festival *Muslims will celebrate the festival of Eid ul-Fitr on Tuesday.*

have/hold a festival *The festival is held in the middle of summer.*

a festival marks/celebrates sth *Christmas celebrates the birth of Christ.*

PREPOSITIONS

the festival of Easter/Eid/Obon etc *Tomorrow is the start of the festival of Diwali.*

feud *n*

an angry argument between two people or groups that continues for a long time

ADJECTIVES

a bitter feud *There had been a long and bitter feud between the two families.*

a bloody feud (=a violent feud) *The dispute caused a bloody feud between the two groups.*

a long-running feud (=continuing for a long time) *The quarrel developed into a long-running feud.*

a personal feud *The dispute is part of a personal feud between two of the country's most powerful men.*

an internal feud (=between people in an organization) *The party was split by internal feuds.*

VERBS

have a feud *He and his uncle Alfred had a long-running feud.*

be involved in a feud (also **be engaged in a feud** *formal*): *The two men have been engaged in a bitter public feud.*

settle a feud (=agree to end it) *The families eventually settled their feud.*

end a feud *I wish they would end this ridiculous feud.*

a feud breaks out/erupts (=it suddenly starts) *A feud erupted between the neighbours about who owned the land.*

a feud escalates (=it becomes worse) *The feud escalated in the years that followed.*

NOUNS + feud

a family feud *She refuses to speak to her parents because of a family feud.*

a blood feud (=in which people have been killed or injured) *The groups have continued a blood feud for generations.*

PREPOSITIONS

a feud between two people/groups *There was a feud between the two families.*

a feud with sb *They are involved in a continuing feud with neighbours.*

a feud over sth *The murder followed a feud over money.*

fever *n*

an illness in which you have a high temperature

VERBS

have a fever *I had a fever and my muscles ached.*

⚠ Don't say 'I have fever.' Say **I have a fever.**



be running a fever (=have a fever, usually a serious one) *The little boy was running a fever for several days.*

develop a fever *Some people develop a slight fever after having the injection.*

catch a fever (also **contract a fever** formal): *In 1821, he caught a fever and died.*

cause fever *The disease often causes fever.*

ADJECTIVES

a high fever (=a very high temperature) *He is in bed with a high fever.*

a raging fever especially literary (=a very serious fever) *He was admitted to hospital with a raging fever and a temperature of 106 degrees.*

a slight fever *It is nothing to worry about – it's just a slight fever.*

a mild fever (=one whose effects are not serious) *Symptoms often include a mild fever.*

PHRASES

a bout of fever (=an occasion when you have a fever) *My mother was recovering from a bout of fever.*

You can also say that someone **has a temperature** (=their body temperature is too high): *He doesn't look very well – I think he has a temperature.*

fiction ⁿ

books and stories about imaginary people and events

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + fiction

modern/contemporary fiction *I like reading modern American fiction.*

historical fiction *She writes historical fiction.*

science fiction *Arthur C. Clarke wrote science fiction books.*

romantic fiction *Men don't usually like reading romantic fiction.*

crime/detective fiction *Agatha Christie was a crime fiction writer.*

literary fiction (=fiction that is considered to be literature) *The book will appeal to readers of both popular and literary fiction.*

popular fiction (=fiction that is read by large numbers of people, but is not usually considered to be literature) *Many supermarkets now sell popular fiction.*

pulp fiction (=fiction that is not very good and is often about sex and violence) *The novel could be described as pulp fiction.*

VERBS

write fiction *Ruth Rendell writes detective fiction.*

read fiction *She mostly reads fiction.*

publish fiction *Penguin publish fiction and non-fiction books.*

fiction + NOUNS

a fiction writer *Henry James was best known as a fiction writer.*

field ⁿ

1 an area of grass or crops with a border around it

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + field

green/grassy fields *All around the house were green fields and rolling hills.*

open fields (=with nothing growing or built on them) *I saw a fox run across the open field.*

a corn/wheat/cotton etc field *There were corn fields on both sides of the road.*

a playing/sports field (=on which sport is played) *There's a large playing field at the back of the school.*

a rugby/football/cricket etc field *The garden is the size of a football field.*

Battlefield and **minefield** are written as one word.

VERBS

work in the fields (=do farm work) *Most villagers work in the fields during the day.*

plough a field (=make long deep lines in the ground so that you can grow crops) *The farmer was using a tractor to plough the field.*

cultivate a field (=use it for growing crops and plants) *By clearing woods and cultivating fields, man has changed the environment.*

PREPOSITIONS

in a field (=used about fields in the countryside) *The children spent hours playing in the fields.*

on a field (=used about sports fields) *It was one of the best games ever seen on a rugby field.*

a field of corn/wheat/rice etc *The sun set over the fields of corn.*

2 an area of activity that someone is involved in

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + field

sb's chosen field *He is extremely talented in his chosen field.*

a specialist/specialized field *The academic study of music is a specialist field.*

a related field *Graduates with degrees in languages, philosophy, and related fields are invited to apply.*

a research field *The subject has now become a major research field.*

a new field *Human genetics is a relatively new field of research.*

VERBS

work in a field *Many former students are now working in the field of mechanics.*

open up a field (=create it) *New technologies open up new fields of research.*

lead the field (=be the best or most advanced) *US companies lead the field in biotechnology.*

PREPOSITIONS

a field of sth *This is a very exciting field of research.*

in sb's field *He couldn't find a job in his field.*

outside sb's field *I don't know much about physics – it's outside my field.*

PHRASES

an expert in the field *Cole is the most noted expert in the field.*

a pioneer in the field (=someone who discovered new and important things) *He was a pioneer in the field of telecommunications.*

sb's field of expertise (=the subject or activity they are skilled in) *We're looking for a historian whose field of expertise is the Roman Empire.*

fight¹ v

1 if two people fight, they hit each other and try to hurt each other

PREPOSITIONS

fight with sb *Dean was fighting with his brother.*

fight over/about sth *People were so hungry that they were fighting over food.*

Instead of saying that people are fighting, you can say that they are **having a fight**.

2 to take part in a war or battle

ADVERBS

fight bravely (also **fight valiantly** formal): *They fought valiantly to defend their country.*

NOUNS

fight a war *The two countries have been fighting a long war.*

fight a battle *His army fought several battles against the English.*

fight the enemy *They had the guns and equipment needed to fight the enemy.*

PREPOSITIONS

fight against sb *The Greeks fought against the Turks.*

fight with sb (=fight together with someone against another country or group) *He fought with the US forces in Vietnam.*

fight alongside sb (=fight and help another group of people) *Polish airmen fought alongside British pilots in World War II.*

fight over/about sth *The two sides are fighting over land.*

fight for sth *They fought for control of the islands.*

PHRASES

fight to the death (=keep fighting until you are killed) *They say they will fight to the death against the invaders.*

fight to the last man (=fight until there is only one soldier who is still alive) *His soldiers fought to the last man.*

3 to try hard to achieve something

ADVERBS

fight hard (=using a lot of effort) *The people have fought hard for independence.*

fight tirelessly/ceaselessly (=for a long time, without stopping) *He has fought tirelessly for justice for the victims.*

fight desperately (=in a very determined way, even though you know you are unlikely to succeed) *The sailors fought desperately to save the ship.*

fight stubbornly/tenaciously/doggedly (=in a very determined way) *She fought tenaciously to keep her children.*

PREPOSITIONS

fight for sth *At that time, women were fighting for the right to vote.*

4 to try hard to stop something

NOUNS

fight crime/corruption/terrorism *We are determined to fight terrorism.*

fight poverty *Oxfam raises money to fight poverty around the world.*

fight disease *You need your immune system to help you fight disease.*

fight discrimination/prejudice/racism *Dr King fought against racism all his life.*

fight injustice (=fight situations that are not fair) *The organization is dedicated to fighting injustice.*

PHRASES

fight sth tooth and nail (=in a very determined way) *We will fight the proposals tooth and nail.*

THESAURUS: fight

combat

crime | **terrorism** | **disease** | **poverty** | **discrimination** | **racism** | **inflation** | **unemployment** | **climate change** | **problem** | **threat**

to try to stop something bad from happening, or a problem that affects a large number of people. **Combat** sounds more formal than **fight** and is often used in news reports: *Police are being given new powers to combat crime. | New drugs are being developed to combat the disease. | To help combat climate change we are being encouraged to use our cars less. | How can we combat the problem of identity theft?*

wage war on sth

illegal drugs | **corruption** | **terrorism** | **poverty**
to make a determined and organized effort in

order to try to stop something bad from happening, over a long period:

The government says it will wage war on corruption. | Campaigners talked about the need to wage war on poverty.

fight² *n*

1 a situation in which two people or groups hit, push, or hurt each other

ADJECTIVES

a big fight *There was a big fight outside the pub.*

a fair fight *It was a fair fight – two against two.*

a fierce fight *The city was the scene of a fierce fight between armed gangs.*

a bloody fight (=when many people die or are wounded) *After a bloody fight, government troops forced them back.*

NOUNS + fight

a street fight *There were reports of street fights every night in the local newspaper.*

a fist fight (=when people hit each other with their closed hands) *A fist fight broke out after the match.*

a knife/sword fight *There have been several arrests, following knife fights between drunken fans.*

Gunfight and **firefight** (=a fight in which groups of soldiers fire bullets at each other) are written as one word.

VERBS + fight

have a fight *I didn't want to have a fight with him.*

get into a fight (=become involved in a fight) *The two men got into a fight over a girl.*

start a fight *They started a fight in the crowded bar.*

pick a fight (=deliberately start a fight) *The guy tried to pick a fight with Jack.*

stop/break up a fight *The police were called in to break up a fight outside a nightclub.*

win/lose a fight *He always won every fight he was in at school.*

be spoiling for a fight (=be very eager to fight with someone) *The kids went round in gangs, all spoiling for a fight.*

fight + VERBS

a fight breaks out/erupts (=suddenly starts) *A fight broke out and one man was struck on the head.*

a fight takes place (=happens) *The fight took place outside a nightclub.*

PREPOSITIONS

a fight with sb *He had a fight with an older boy.*

a fight between people *There were fights between rival fans.*

a fight over/about sth *He was knifed in a fight over some drugs.*

2 the process of trying hard to achieve, get, or prevent something

ADJECTIVES

a long fight *They won their case after a long fight in the courts.*

a tough/hard fight *We are prepared for a hard fight if necessary.*

a brave/valiant fight *She died yesterday, after a brave fight against cancer.*

a desperate fight *This is the story of their desperate fight for survival.*

a legal fight *A 14-year-old girl won a legal fight to be allowed to wear trousers in school.*

VERBS

win/lose a fight *The islanders won their fight for independence.*

lead a fight *Nelson Mandela led the fight for freedom in South Africa.*

face a fight *The men faced a long hard fight to prove their innocence.*

wage a fight (=try hard to achieve something) *It is over 100 years since Lincoln waged his fight to end slavery.*

continue a fight *The protesters vowed to continue their fight.*

give up a fight *They refused to give up the fight for justice.*

join (in) a fight *He urged others to join the fight to change the law.*

PREPOSITIONS

a fight for sth *We will continue our fight for justice.*

(in) the fight against sth *Schools have an important part to play in the fight against drugs.*

PHRASES

put up a fight (=try very hard to win or achieve something) *The team put up a good fight, but in the end they lost the game 3-2.*

have a fight on your hands (=used to say that someone will find it difficult to do something) *The government is determined to bring in this law, but it has a fight on its hands.*

fighting *n*

a situation in which people or armies attack each other

ADJECTIVES

heavy/fierce/intense fighting *They finally took the town after nine days of heavy fighting.*

violent fighting *There was violent fighting between rebel and government forces.*

hand-to-hand fighting *There was fierce hand-to-hand fighting and hundreds of people were killed.*

sporadic fighting (=occasional fighting) *Sporadic fighting was reported during the rest of October.*

VERBS + fighting

stop/halt/end the fighting Talks were held to halt the fighting.

flee/escape the fighting People fled the fighting and crossed the border into Jordan.

fighting + VERBS

fighting breaks out/erupts (=it suddenly starts) Fighting broke out between the army and the rebels.

fighting continues/goes on The fighting went on for almost a week.

fighting stops/ceases/ends The fighting finally ended and a peace agreement was signed.

PREPOSITIONS

fighting between/among sb More than 35 people were killed in fighting between religious groups.

PHRASES

an outbreak of fighting (=a situation in which fighting suddenly starts) There are still sometimes outbreaks of fighting along the border.

figure ⁿ

a number representing an amount

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + figure

a high/low figure 1,000 calories a day is quite a low figure.

the exact figure What is the exact figure for the number of foreign workers in the country?

an approximate/rough/ballpark figure (=not exact) He gave us an approximate figure for the cost of the repairs.

the final/total figure The final figure is expected to be much higher than this.

a target figure The government set a target figure of 6.2%.

a realistic figure A more realistic figure for energy saving would be 20%.

the latest figures The latest figures show that crime is down slightly.

official figures According to official figures, almost one million people are unemployed.

government figures Government figures suggest the economy is recovering.

sales/unemployment/crime etc figures We exceeded our target sales figures.

trade figures (=showing the value of a country's exports compared to imports) The trade figures were down compared to the previous year.

attendance figures (=how many people went to an event) Last year's fair saw attendance figures of 32,000.

VERBS

calculate a figure The figures were calculated based on the number of cancer cases at 212 hospitals.

add up the figures I must have made a mistake when I added up the figures.

estimate a figure We estimate the figure to be around 15%.

reach a figure The population reached a figure of over 100 million.

exceed a figure (=be more than it) The total figure must not exceed £75,000.

PREPOSITIONS

in figures Write the amount in words and in figures.

according to the figures According to official figures, exam results have improved again this year.

PHRASES

in single figures (=less than 10) Women senior managers in the company are in single figures.

in double figures (=between 10 and 99) Only two students in the class achieved scores in double figures.

four-figure/five-figure/six-figure etc (=in the thousands/ten thousands/hundred thousands etc) He earns a six-figure salary (=more than £100,000).

facts and figures The report contains some interesting facts and figures.

file ^{Ac} ⁿ

1 information on a computer that you store under a particular name

VERBS

open/close a file You may need to close the file and restart the computer.

save a file I saved the file to my hard drive.

create a file She created a file of useful contacts for work.

delete a file I accidentally deleted the wrong file.

access a file You won't be able to access the file if another user has opened it.

edit a file After you've finished editing a file, always remember to save it.

copy a file I copied the file onto a memory stick.

move a file He was trying to move the file from one folder to another.

send/email sb a file Do you want me to send you the file?

attach a file (=send it with an email) Sorry, I forgot to attach the file.

download a file (=copy it from the internet so that you can use it) It just takes a few seconds to download the file.

upload a file (=send a file from your computer onto another computer system using the internet) Save your work, then upload the file.

NOUNS + file

a computer file I've just deleted all my old computer files.

a backup file (=a copy of a file, which is made in case the original becomes lost or damaged) It's always a good idea to have a backup file.

financial services Steve has over 32 years experience in the financial services industry.

financial resources Big companies have the financial resources to invest in research and development projects.

a financial transaction (=the action of buying or selling something) Police are investigating illegal financial transactions involving millions of dollars.

a financial incentive (=money offered to someone in order to encourage them to do something) There should be more financial incentives for people to save.

financial success Financial success is important, but it is not the only thing that matters.

finding *n*
information that someone has discovered as a result of their study or work

Grammar
Often plural.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + finding

research findings Her research findings will be published next month in the 'British Medical Journal'.

the main findings There is a summary of the main findings at the end of the report.

an important finding His study contained some important findings.

an interesting finding Another interesting finding is that many of these patients were women.

a surprising/unexpected finding These unexpected findings could change the way doctors treat the disease.

new/recent findings This view is supported by recent findings.

worrying/disturbing findings One of the most worrying findings was that many young people believe they have no hope of getting a job.

early/preliminary findings (=before you have completely finished your report) The research team published some of their early findings after the first six months.

VERBS + finding

present/report your findings We had to present our findings to the class.

publish your findings His findings were published in the 'International Journal of Linguistics'.

be based on findings The report is based on the findings of a team which visited the country last year.

discuss sb's findings Ministers will be discussing the findings of the report.

PREPOSITIONS

the findings of sth We are waiting for the findings of the research team.

findings from sth The findings from their study are very interesting.

findings on/about sth Recent findings on depression have greatly increased our understanding of the condition.

fine *adj*
1 very good

NOUNS

a fine performance Congratulations on a fine performance.

a fine player/musician/soldier Many fine musicians never become famous.

fine wine/food He likes fine wine and beautiful women.

a fine collection/selection The museum has a fine collection of Roman coins.

a fine example of sth The church is a fine example of Gothic architecture.

a fine shot/goal/save A fine save by the goalkeeper kept the score level.

fine quality Our modern factory produces fine quality carpets.

Fine art
You use this phrase about paintings, sculptures etc that are made by artists for people to look at: She is studying **fine art** at college.

PHRASES

in fine form He was in fine form and scored three times.

in fine style They began their journey in fine style, taking a limousine to the airport.

THESAURUS: fine
nice, fine, sound, attractive, desirable, favourable, positive, beneficial → **good (1)**

2 healthy: She had a bad cold, but she's fine now. | "How are you?" "I'm fine."

I'm fine
You say **I'm fine** when someone asks "How are you?" It means "I'm healthy and everything is OK." Often though, it is just something you say automatically, without thinking.
Don't say 'I'm very fine.'

3 sunny and with no rain

NOUNS
a fine day/morning/afternoon (=bright and sunny, with no rain) It's going to be a fine day tomorrow.

fine weather The weather was fine, so they decided to go sailing.

THESAURUS: fine

good, fine, nice, bright, beautiful/glorious,
clear, cloudless, dry → **sunny**

4 thin or narrow

NOUNS

fine hair/thread/wire They use fine gold thread to make the jewellery.

a fine needle/tube A fine tube is inserted into the body.

a fine brush She used a fine brush to paint the grass.

fine lines As we get older, our skin starts to develop fine lines.

a fine layer/coating The table was covered with a fine coating of dust.

fine rain/drizzle (=consisting of very small drops of rain) A fine rain was falling.

the fine print (=small writing that gives important information which people often miss) Always read the fine print before you sign anything.

THESAURUS: fine

thin, fine → **narrow (1)**

fine² *n*

money that you have to pay as a punishment

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + fine

a large/heavy fine There are heavy fines for people who break the law.

a stiff/hefty fine (=a large fine) The men face stiff fines and a possible jail sentence.

a \$100/£50 etc fine He got a thousand dollar fine.

the maximum fine The maximum fine for dropping litter is £200.

a parking/speeding fine You can get a parking fine if you park outside the police station.

an on-the-spot fine (=a fine that you have to pay immediately to the person who gives it) If you are caught speeding, you have to pay an on-the-spot fine.

an unpaid fine There are companies that collect unpaid fines.

VERBS

pay a fine He refused to pay the fine.

get/receive a fine I got a fine for paying the bill late.

face a fine The company could face fines of up to a million dollars.

give sb a fine (also **impose a fine** formal): Should parents be responsible for fines imposed on their children?

PREPOSITIONS

a fine for sth People should get fines for dropping litter.

finger *n*

one of the four long thin parts on your hand

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + finger

long fingers You need to have long fingers to play the piano.

small/little/tiny fingers The baby had tiny fingers.

thin/slim fingers (also **slender fingers** literary): She had long slender fingers.

fat fingers He held his cigar with two big fat fingers.

chubby/pudgy fingers (=a little fat) The baby touched her hand with his pudgy fingers.

nimble fingers (=skilful fingers) Surgeons need to have nimble fingers.

index finger (=the finger next to your thumb) You point with your index finger.

middle finger He clicked his thumb and middle finger.

third finger (=the third finger from your thumb)

little finger (=the fourth finger from your thumb, which is your smallest finger)

VERBS

put/dip/stick/poke your finger in sth He dipped his finger in the water to see how cold it was.

point your finger at sb/sth The man pointed his finger at my shoes.

prick your finger (=make a small hole in it) She pricked her finger when she was pruning the roses.

click/snap your fingers (=make a noise by rubbing them together) She was clicking her fingers in time to the music.

drum/tap your fingers on sth (=tap one finger after another against something, especially in an impatient way) He waited, drumming his fingers on the desk.

run your fingers through sb's hair (=gently pass your fingers through someone's hair) She ran her fingers through his hair.

cross your fingers (=put one finger over another as a way of wishing for good luck) I crossed my fingers, hoping the letter would be for me.

wag your finger (=shake your finger from side to side to show disapproval) "You naughty girl!" she said, wagging her finger.

fingernail *n*

the hard flat part near the top of your finger

ADJECTIVES

long/short fingernails The woman had long fingernails.

dirty/clean fingernails I cleaned my dirty fingernails with a nailbrush.

sharp fingernails Careful you don't tear the fabric – you have sharp fingernails.

painted fingernails *She had red lipstick and red painted fingernails.*

manicured fingernails (=carefully cut and shaped) *Sally always has perfectly manicured fingernails.*

VERBS

cut your fingernails *She was cutting her fingernails with some scissors.*

file your fingernails *He was filing his fingernails with a nail file.*

paint your fingernails *She likes to paint her fingernails in different colours.*

bite your fingernails *Don't bite your fingernails!*

break a fingernail *I broke a fingernail trying to fix my bike.*

grow your fingernails *I want to grow my fingernails but I can't stop biting them.*

Instead of **fingernail**, in everyday English people usually just say **nail**.

The nails on your toes are called **toenails**.

fingerprint ⁿ

a mark made by the pattern of lines at the end of someone's finger

VERBS

leave fingerprints *The burglar was careful not to leave any fingerprints.*

take sb's fingerprints (=make a copy of them) *The police will take his fingerprints and compare them with ones found at the crime scene.*

look for fingerprints *They went round the whole house looking for fingerprints.*

find fingerprints *The police found no fingerprints except those of the owner.*

PHRASES

a set of fingerprints *Every set of fingerprints is unique.*

finish¹ ^v

1 to do all of something

Grammar

Finish is often followed by a participle in this meaning: *Have you **finished** eating?*
Don't say 'Have you finished to eat?'

NOUNS

finish your work/homework *The work was finished four months ahead of schedule.*

finish your meal/food/drink *You stay and finish your meal.*

finish a book/article/report *She is finishing her first book, which will be published this autumn.*

finish your course/studies/education *I had just finished my university course, and was wondering what to do next.*

finish school/university *He didn't have the money to finish high school.*

ADVERBS

almost/nearly/just about finished *We've nearly finished making the cakes.*

VERBS

let sb finish (=allow someone to finish speaking) *Just let me finish, and then you can make your point.*

wait for sb to finish *We all had to wait for her to finish eating.*

PHRASES

sb will be finished in no time *informal* (=they will have finished very soon) *Don't worry, we'll be finished in no time.*

THESAURUS: finish

complete

work | **task** | **job** | **project** | **course** | **studies** | **PhD** | **training** | **education** | **journey** | **investigation** | **sale** | **term of office**

to finish doing something, especially something that takes a lot of time and effort.

Complete is more formal than **finish**:

Marx died before he could complete the work. | She started a new job as a computer technician after completing her course. | The president has just completed his term of office (=the period when he or she has the position of president).

conclude *formal*

agreement | **deal** | **negotiations** | **work** | **study** | **investigation** | **interview** | **argument**

to finish something, especially an agreement or an investigation:

The US concluded a trade agreement with Mexico. | Police concluded their investigation and a 39-year-old man was charged with the murder.

finalize (also finalise *BrE*)

agreement | **deal** | **negotiations** | **sale** | **details** | **plans** | **arrangements**

to do the last things that are necessary in order to finish an agreement or plan:

The agreement was finalized during ten hours of talks at the presidential mansion. | We have an agreement in principle and we are finalizing the details. | The arrangements are still being finalized.

wrap sth up *informal*

agreement | **deal** | **negotiations** | **investigation** | **game** | **match** | **victory** | **win**

to finish something successfully. **Wrap up** is rather informal and is often used in news reports:

Negotiators are meeting on Friday to wrap up the deal. | The police have a few more days in which to wrap up their investigation. | The game was wrapped up by half-time, with Rooney scoring twice.

round off BrE, **round out** AmE

evening | **day** | **year** | **season** | **meal** | **visit** | **meeting** | **interview** | **game**

to finish something by doing one final thing, especially something enjoyable:

You can round out the evening with a trip to a local nightclub. | The day was rounded off with a picnic. | We rounded off the meal with some Irish coffee.

When saying that you **have finished** doing something in everyday English, you often say that you **have done** it: *Have you done your work/homework/essay?* | *I've done the washing/ironing/cleaning.* This is much more common than saying "I/you have finished".

In informal spoken English, people also say **I'm done** (=I have finished).

ANTONYMS **finish** → **start**¹ (1)

2 to end

THESAURUS: finish

finish, come to an end, draw to a close/an end, run out, expire → **end**² (1)

finish² n

the end or last part of something

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + finish

an early/late finish *On Fridays we have an early finish, and can go home at three o'clock.*

an exciting/dramatic/nail-biting finish *The race had an exciting finish.*

a strong finish *A performance needs a strong finish that leaves the audience wanting more.*

a close/tight finish (=when two competitors finish very close to each other) *Jack came second, but it was a close finish.*

a photo finish (=in which the winner is decided by looking at a photo because it is very close) *His horse was announced to be the winner, after a photo finish.*

finish + NOUNS

the finish line *Bolt was first across the finish line.*

PREPOSITIONS

the finish of sth *We usually have a party to celebrate the finish of filming.*

at the finish *There was a sprint for second place at the finish.*

to/until the finish *She stayed to the finish.*

PHRASES

from start to finish *The whole day was a disaster from start to finish.*

ANTONYMS **finish** → **start**²

fire n

1 flames, light, and heat that destroy and damage things

ADJECTIVES

a big/major/serious fire *The house was destroyed by a big fire.*

a small fire *It was only a small fire and we quickly put it out.*

NOUNS + fire

a forest fire *There have been a lot of forest fires this summer in Greece.*

a brush fire/bush fire (=a very large fire in a wild area of bushes and small trees) *There were frequent brush fires during the hot dry summers.*

a house fire (=a fire that starts inside a house) *Faulty electrical wiring is being blamed for a house fire.*

VERBS + fire

start a fire *The fire may have been started by a cigarette.*

set fire to sth/set sth on fire (=make something start burning) *A candle fell over, setting fire to the curtains.*

sth catches fire (=starts burning) *The boat caught fire and sank.*

put out a fire (also **extinguish a fire** formal) (=stop a fire burning) *Firefighters successfully extinguished the fire.*

fight a fire (=try to make a fire stop burning) *Further attempts to fight the fire were abandoned.*

fire + VERBS

a fire burns *The fire was burning more strongly every minute.*

a fire breaks out (=starts suddenly) *A fire broke out in the engine room.*

a fire goes out (=stops burning) *After several hours, the fire eventually went out.*

a fire rages/blazes (=burns strongly for a long time over a large area) *Fires were raging in the forest near Magleby.*

a fire spreads *The fire spread to the house next door.*

a fire destroys/damages sth *The school was badly damaged by fire.*

fire + NOUNS

the fire brigade/service BrE, **the fire department** AmE (=the organization that works to prevent fires and stop them burning) *Someone had seen the smoke and called the fire brigade.*

a fire fighter/firefighter (=someone whose job is to stop fires burning) *Firefighters rescued ten people from the burning building.*

a fire engine (also **a fire truck** AmE) (=a large vehicle used by firefighters) *The fire engine arrived within a few minutes.*

a fire station (=a building where firefighters are based) *The nearest fire station is over 20 kilometres away.*

a fire extinguisher (=a metal container with water or chemicals in it, used for stopping small fires) *He grabbed a fire extinguisher and put the fire out.*

a fire alarm (=a piece of equipment that makes a loud noise to warn people of a fire in a building) *When the fire alarm went off, we all went outside.*

a fire escape (=metal stairs on the outside of a tall building that people can use to escape if there is a fire) *They rushed down the fire escape.*

PHRASES

be on fire (=be burning) *The whole house was on fire within minutes.*

bring a fire under control *Firefighters took more than an hour to bring the fire under control.*

2 burning material used to heat a room, cook food etc, or get rid of things you do not want

ADJECTIVES

an open fire (=a fire in a room that is not inside a stove etc) *Sophie warmed herself by the open fire.*

a (nice) warm fire *There was a nice warm fire burning in the fireplace.*

a roaring/blazing fire (=one that is burning strongly) *I sat by the roaring fire and dried off.*

NOUNS + fire

a coal/wood/log/gas fire *She lit the gas fire and settled in front of the TV.*

Campfire is written as one word.

VERBS + fire

make/build a fire *He found wood to make a fire.*

start/light a fire *She struck a match and lit the fire.*

stoke a fire (=put more wood or coal on it) *I stoked the fire and boiled some water.*

put sth on the fire *Put another log on the fire.*

cook sth over a fire *They cooked strips of meat over a wood fire.*

fire + VERBS

a fire burns/blazes *A fire was burning merrily in the sitting room.*

a fire smoulders BrE, **a fire smolders** AmE (=a little smoke comes from a fire when it has almost gone out) *The fire was smouldering in the grate and the room was getting cold.*

a fire dies down (=it burns less strongly) *The fire slowly died down.*

PREPOSITIONS

by/in front of the fire *Vernon was sitting in his armchair by the fire.*

PHRASES

the embers of a fire (=pieces of wood, coal etc that have almost been completely burned) *He stared at the glowing embers of the fire.*

fireworkⁿ

an object that burns or explodes to produce coloured lights and noise in the sky

Grammar

Often plural.

VERBS

watch the fireworks *We can watch the fireworks from our bedroom window.*

let off/set off a firework (=make it explode) *People were letting off fireworks in the street.*

light a firework *You need to be careful when lighting fireworks.*

a firework goes off (=it explodes) *There were fireworks going off outside.*

firework + NOUNS

a firework display/show *Every year there is a huge firework display in the park.*

a firework party *We're having a firework party in our garden.*

British people associate **fireworks** with November 5th, which is called Bonfire Night. It was on this night in 1605 that Guy Fawkes tried to blow up the Houses of Parliament. There are **firework** parties and shows on this night each year.

firm¹ adj

1 not soft

PHRASES

nice and firm *Make sure that the apples are nice and firm.*

firm to the touch (=firm when you touch them) *The pears should be firm to the touch.*

NOUNS

a firm base/foundation *The bricks need to have a firm base made of concrete.*

a firm mattress *A firm mattress is good for your back.*

firm ground *The ground is firm enough for the horses to race on.*

firm stomach/thighs/buttocks *If you want a firm stomach you have to do a lot of exercise.*

firm flesh *The melons have firm yellow flesh.*

THESAURUS: firm

firm, stiff, solid, rigid, crispy, crunchy, tough, rubbery, brittle → **hard (1)**

2 not changing your decision, or not likely to change

NOUNS

a firm promise/commitment *The company has made a firm commitment to clean up the oil spill.*

a firm decision/intention *No firm decision has yet been made.*

a firm offer *I will not leave my job until I get a firm offer from the other company.*

a firm date *We should set a firm date for the wedding.*

firm plans *She had no firm plans for the next day, so she agreed to go out with him.*

a firm conclusion *It is difficult to reach a firm conclusion without knowing all the facts of the case.*

firm evidence *There is not enough firm evidence to find him guilty.*

a firm belief/conviction *It is her firm belief that women are better than men.*

a firm believer/supporter *John is a firm believer in natural medicine.*

firm friends *We met three years ago and have been firm friends ever since.*

VERBS

stand/hold firm (=not change your decision) *He is standing firm and refusing to sell his land to developers.*

PHRASES

be firm in your beliefs *She is firm in her belief that she will never have children.*

THESAURUS: firm

stubborn, single-minded, tough, firm, resolute, tenacious, dogged, persistent, ruthless, feisty, strong-willed, headstrong → **determined**

3 strict

NOUNS

firm discipline/control *This school believes in firm discipline and students who break the rules will be dealt with immediately.*

firm leadership/government *The country needs firm leadership.*

firm action *The police should take firm action against people who break the law.*

a firm stance/stand *We fully support their firm stand against racism.*

a firm voice *"We're going now," he said in a firm voice.*

a firm hand (=firm treatment) *He believes that children need a firm hand.*

PREPOSITIONS

be firm with sb *You must be firm with her.*

be firm about sth *She is very firm about us doing our homework on time.*

PHRASES

firm but fair *A good manager needs to be firm but fair.*

take a firm line (=deal with something in a very strict way) *The school takes a firm line about smoking.*

THESAURUS: firm

firm, tough, harsh, stern, authoritarian → **strict (1)**

4 holding or pressing something strongly

NOUNS

a firm grip/hold/grasp *He kept a firm grip on his wallet.*

a firm handshake *Mr Smith welcomed me with a firm handshake.*

firm pressure *Apply firm pressure to the wound.*

firm² *n* a business or company

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + firm

a large/small/medium-sized firm *He is managing director of a large firm.*

an international/multinational firm *They want to encourage more multinational firms to establish factories in Spain.*

a local firm (=based nearby) *The equipment was supplied by a local firm.*

a family firm *The business grew from a small family firm into a large company.*

a foreign/overseas firm *There has been renewed competition from foreign firms.*

a leading firm *The building was designed by a leading firm of American architects.*

a reputable firm (=a firm that people say is good) *Make sure you choose a reputable firm to fit your new windows.*

a rival firm *They didn't want rival firms to know what they were planning.*

a law/accountancy/consultancy firm *She was offered a job with a top law firm.*

an engineering/electronics/advertising firm *Fred worked for an electronics firm.*

VERBS + firm

work for a firm *Chris has been working for this firm for nearly 20 years.*

join a firm *She joined the firm when she was 20.*

set up/start/found a firm *Hanson decided to start his own management consulting firm.*

manage/run a firm *We need someone younger to run the firm.*

take over a firm (=buy it and start to run it) *They expanded by taking over existing firms.*

firm + VERBS

a firm employs sb *The firm employs more than 200 people.*

a firm goes bankrupt (also **a firm goes bust/under** informal) (=it cannot continue because it cannot pay what it owes) *Unfortunately, the firm went bankrupt before the work was completed.*

PREPOSITIONS

a firm of solicitors/accountants/architects etc *Ms Shaw is a partner in a firm of solicitors.*

put up your fists (=put them in a position ready for fighting) *She put up her fists like a boxer.*

fists fly (=people fight with their fists) *There was an angry argument and fists started flying.*

PREPOSITIONS

in your fist *He crumpled the note up in his fist.*

with your fist *She pounded on the door with her fist.*

fist + NOUNS

a fist fight *He got into a fist fight with another teenager who had insulted his girlfriend.*

a fist bump *informal* (=when you touch someone's fist with yours as a greeting) *He said "Hi!" and gave me a fist bump.*

fit¹

1 to be the right size and shape to go on or in something

ADVERBS

fit well *It's important to buy shoes that fit well.*

fit perfectly (=very well) *The dress fitted perfectly.*

fit tightly/closely/snugly *The ring fitted snugly on her finger.*

fit loosely *The jacket fitted loosely around his waist.*

fit properly *The lid doesn't fit properly.*

fit exactly *The piece of wood fitted exactly in the space.*

fit neatly/nicely *Trim the circle of paper so that it fits neatly into the baking tin.*

fit easily/comfortably *The notebook will fit easily into a handbag.*

PHRASES

fit (sb) like a glove (=very well) *The expensive jacket fitted him like a glove.*

2 to match or be similar to something in some way

ADVERBS

fit sth well/perfectly *The man fitted her description perfectly.*

PREPOSITIONS

fit (in) with sth *Their view fits in with mine.*

PHRASES

the punishment should fit the crime *They believe that the punishment should fit the crime and that murderers should be killed.*

fit²

adj healthy and able to do physical exercise

VERBS

get fit *I need to get fit before we go for any long walks.*

keep sb fit *Cycling keeps you fit.*

keep/stay fit *She tries to keep fit by going swimming twice a week.*

look fit *Keith doesn't look very fit – he needs to do some exercise.*

feel fit *Do you feel fit enough to do the race?*

ADVERBS

really/incredibly fit *My dad's really fit for someone of his age.*

physically fit *You need to be physically fit to join the army.*

fully/perfectly fit *It could take months before he is fully fit again after his injury.*

PHRASES

(as) fit as a fiddle (=completely fit) *I feel as fit as a fiddle now.*

fit³

1 a short time during which you cannot control your emotions or actions

ADJECTIVES

an epileptic fit (=caused by epilepsy) *I was worried that she was having an epileptic fit.*

a sudden fit *The woman slammed the door in a sudden fit of rage.*

occasional/periodic fits *He has periodic fits of depression.*

VERBS

have a fit *Nina had a coughing fit.*

cause/trigger a fit *Flashing lights can trigger a fit.*

PREPOSITIONS

a fit of sth *He had a sudden fit of anger.*

in a fit of sth *Paul collapsed in a fit of laughter.*

2 the way in which something fits on or into something

ADJECTIVES

a good/perfect fit *The shoes look a good fit.*

a poor/bad fit *The door was a poor fit and there was a big gap underneath.*

a tight/snug/close fit *We got all the furniture in the van, but it was a tight fit.*

a loose fit *I like skirts with a loose fit.*

a comfortable fit *The dress has an elastic waist for a comfortable fit.*

fitness

how healthy and strong someone is, especially when doing sports or exercise

ADJECTIVES

physical fitness *You need a reasonable level of physical fitness for this job.*

general fitness *Swimming is good for your general fitness.*

full/peak fitness (=maximum fitness) *He has six weeks to get back to peak fitness before the race.*

VERBS

improve/increase your fitness *I'm trying to improve my fitness by playing tennis.*

build up your fitness (=improve it, especially gradually) *Start with a lot of walking to build up your fitness.*

maintain your fitness (=stay fit) *She worked hard to maintain her fitness while pregnant.*

get back to fitness (also **regain your fitness** formal) (=become fit again) *She gradually regained her fitness after her injury.*

fitness + NOUNS

a fitness test (=a test to see if a sports player is fully fit) *He failed a fitness test and will not be playing in tomorrow's match.*

fitness levels *His fitness levels are as good as someone half his age.*

fitness training *The players have to do a lot of fitness training.*

a fitness instructor *He works as a fitness instructor at a local gym.*

a fitness fanatic informal (=someone who likes exercising a lot) *He's a fitness fanatic who works out every day.*

fix ^v **THESAURUS** → repair¹

flag ⁿ

a piece of cloth that represents a country or organization, or is used as a signal

ADJECTIVES

the national flag *People were waving the national flag.*

the American/British/Spanish etc flag *The American flag is known as the Stars and Stripes.*

a white flag (=a sign that you do not want to fight) *They raised a white flag, and the police stopped firing.*

the chequered flag BrE, **the checkered flag** AmE (=a flag with black and white squares, waved at the end of a motor race) *The race official waved the checkered flag to signal the end of the race.*

VERBS

wave a flag *People cheered and waved flags as the parade came by.*

carry/hold a flag *The soldier in front was carrying the French flag.*

fly a flag (=have a flag on a pole) *The ships flew the Spanish flag.*

raise/hoist a flag (also **run up a flag**) *The Marines hoisted the American flag above the embassy.*

lower a flag *The flag is ceremonially lowered at the end of each day.*

hang a flag/put up a flag *They hung a big flag over the entrance to the shop.*

unfurl a flag (=open out a flag) *People in the crowd started unfurling red flags.*

drape a flag over sth/be draped with a flag (=used when people cover something with a flag) *His coffin was draped with a Mexican flag.*

salute the flag *The soldiers stood still and saluted the flag.*

a flag flies somewhere *There was a Red Cross flag flying from the rooftop.*

PHRASES

a flag flies at half-mast (=halfway up a pole, not at the top) *Flags are flying at half-mast today as a sign of respect.*

pledge allegiance to the flag (=swear that you will be loyal to your country) *I pledge allegiance to the flag of the United States of America.*

flame ⁿ

hot bright burning gas that you see when something is on fire

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + flame

bright flames *Bright flames were coming from the fire.*

roaring flames (=very bright and hot and making a loud noise) *A firefighter shouted over the sound of the roaring flames.*

a naked/open flame (=not enclosed with a cover) *Never use a naked flame near spray paint.*

a candle flame *He lit the fire with the candle flame.*

a gas flame *The glass is heated over a gas flame.*

VERBS + flame

put out the flames (also **extinguish the flames** formal) (=make them stop burning) *Firefighters are still trying to put out the flames.*

light the flame (also **ignite the flame** formal) (=make it start burning) *The spark had ignited the flame.*

flame + VERBS

a flame burns *A flame will burn hotter and faster in pure oxygen.*

flames die down (also **flames subside** formal) (=burn less strongly) *By evening, the flames had died down.*

a flame goes out (=stops burning) *Try not to let the flame go out.*

flames flicker (=move unsteadily) *He watched the flames flickering in the fireplace.*

flames engulf sth (=completely surround and burn it) *Flames quickly engulfed the building.*

PHRASES

burst into flames (=suddenly start burning with big flames) *The plane had crashed and burst into flames.*

go up in flames (=be destroyed by fire) *The whole town went up in flames.*

in flames (=being destroyed by fire) *He returned home to find his house in flames.*

flash ¹ ^v

1 to shine brightly for a very short time, once or many times

NOUNS

a light flashes *A police car sped past with its lights flashing.*

a small/little/tiny flaw *It's a small flaw in an otherwise impressive film.*

a minor/slight flaw *I wouldn't worry about it – it's only a minor flaw.*

an obvious/glaring flaw *You don't have to be an expert in statistics to see the obvious flaw in this analysis.*

NOUNS + flaw

a character flaw *He seemed to have no character flaws.*

a design flaw *The type of reactor used at Chernobyl had a design flaw.*

VERBS

have a flaw *The system has some serious flaws.*

find/discover a flaw *Scientists have found flaws in the theory.*

expose/reveal a flaw *The drought of 1976–77 exposed a design flaw in the dam.*

correct a flaw *What would be the cost of correcting the flaws in the software?*

PREPOSITIONS

a flaw in sth *There is a flaw in this argument.*

despite its/his flaws *Despite its flaws, the book is a remarkable achievement.*

flightⁿ

a journey in a plane or space vehicle, or the plane or vehicle that is making the journey

ADJECTIVES

a good/pleasant/comfortable flight *Have a good flight!*

a long/short flight *I was very tired after the long flight.*

a cheap flight *I found a cheap flight on the internet.*

a direct/non-stop flight (=going straight from one place to another without stopping) *She got on the next direct flight to Tokyo.*

a connecting flight *We flew to New York before catching a connecting flight to Chicago.*

a long-haul/long-distance flight (=one travelling a long distance) *You should wear comfortable clothes on a long-haul flight.*

an international flight *The number of international flights increased by over 5% last year.*

a domestic/internal flight (=within a country) *Is there a domestic flight between Boston and Portland?*

a return flight BrE, **a round-trip flight** AmE (=to a place and back again) *The holiday cost nearly £1,000, including a return flight and accommodation.*

a scheduled flight (=a plane service that flies at the same time every day or every week) *There is only one scheduled flight per day between the islands.*

a charter flight (=a plane service that is arranged for a particular group or purpose) *The company is operating charter flights to Crete.*

VERBS + flight

book a flight (=reserve a seat on a particular plane) *I booked a flight to Paris over the internet.*

catch a flight (=be in time to get on a plane) *They caught a flight that night to Frankfurt.*

get a flight (=book it or catch it) *I'll be there tomorrow morning if I can get a flight.*

board a flight (=get on a flight) *We arrived at the departure lounge to board the flight to Madrid.*

get on/off a flight *She'd just got off a flight from Buenos Aires.*

miss your flight (=arrive too late for a flight) *Jack overslept and missed his flight.*

operate flights (=make flights available for people to use) *The airline operates three flights a day between London and New York.*

flight + VERBS

a flight leaves (also **a flight departs** formal): *By the time we got to the airport, our flight had already left.*

a flight arrives/lands *The flight landed 30 minutes late.*

a flight is cancelled *All flights have been cancelled due to fog.*

a flight is delayed *She called to say her flight was delayed.*

a flight is diverted (=it has to change direction and land at a different airport) *Our flight was diverted to Luton because of poor weather.*

a flight is bound for London/New York etc (=it is going there) *Johnson boarded a flight bound for Caracas.*

flight + NOUNS

flight time (=how long it takes to fly somewhere) *Our estimated flight time is 3 hours and 15 minutes.*

the flight number (=the number given to the flight by the airline or airport) *Write the flight number on all your luggage labels.*

a flight attendant (=a person who looks after passengers on a plane) *The flight attendant asked me if I wanted a drink.*

the flight crew (=the pilot and all the other people working on a plane) *The flight crew helped passengers board the plane.*

PREPOSITIONS

a flight to a place *There are three flights a day to Logan Airport from Heathrow.*

a flight from a place *Has the flight from Sydney landed yet?*

floodⁿ

a very large amount of water that covers an area that is usually dry

ADJECTIVES

a big/huge/massive flood *There was a huge flood and many people lost their homes.*

a devastating/disastrous/catastrophic flood (=which affects a place very badly) *The country*

is still recovering from devastating floods that killed more than 700 people.

the great flood (of 1947/2010 etc) (=a very famous flood) People still talk about the great flood of 1826.

the worst flood Last winter the town suffered the worst floods for 50 years.

a flash flood (=a sudden flood) The thunderstorm caused flash floods on some roads.

a spring/summer/winter flood The highways were damaged by winter floods.

flood + NOUNS

flood water/floodwater The kitchen was full of flood water.

flood damage The town suffered extensive flood damage.

a flood victim Helicopters were sent to rescue flood victims.

a flood warning The National Weather Service has issued a flood warning.

flood defences/barriers People living near the river were warned to prepare flood defences.

a flood plain/floodplain (=an area of land that is often flooded by a river) You shouldn't build houses on a flood plain.

VERBS

a flood hits sth (=it affects a place) In 2010, the area was hit by massive floods.

a flood destroys sth The floods destroyed the crops completely.

a flood sweeps away sth The bridge had been swept away by floods.

be cut off by floods (=people are unable to leave a place because of floods) The village was cut off by floods.

a flood subsides (=it goes away) After the flood had subsided, the new seed was sown in the dark fertile soil.

floor ⁿ

1 the flat surface that you stand on inside a building

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + floor

the bathroom/kitchen/bedroom etc floor I've still got to clean the bathroom floor.

a wooden/concrete/stone etc floor He slipped on the marble floor.

a tiled floor (=covered with tiles) Tiled floors can be cold to walk on.

a bare floor (=not covered by anything) The room had a bare floor and a simple bed.

a dance floor Ray and Lisa were the first ones on the dance floor.

VERBS

clean/wash the floor Take your shoes off – I've just cleaned the floor.

scrub the floor (=clean it by rubbing it hard with a stiff brush) She was on her hands and knees scrubbing the kitchen floor.

sweep the floor (=clean it with a brush with a long handle) He grabbed a broom and began sweeping the floor.

fall/drop/sink to the floor He took off his jacket and let it fall to the floor.

hit the floor/land on the floor She fainted, and hit the floor with a thud.

look at the floor She had her head down, looking at the floor.

floor + NOUNS

floor space There's not enough floor space for another bed.

floor polish The room smelt of floor polish.

Floorboard is usually written as one word.

PHRASES

from floor to ceiling Books covered the walls from floor to ceiling.

PREPOSITIONS

on the floor The children can sit on the floor.

all over the floor There were toys all over the floor.

2 a level in a building

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + floor

the top floor He lives on the top floor of a block of flats.

the first/second/third etc floor The fire started on the eighth floor of the hotel.

the ground floor BrE (=at the same level as the ground) They got in through a ground floor window.

the next floor (=the one above) Menswear is on the next floor.

PREPOSITIONS

on a floor There are 17 rooms on this floor.

up/down a floor He took the lift up three floors.

First floor or ground floor?

In British English, the **ground floor** is the floor at ground level. In American English, this is the **first floor**. In British English, the **first floor** is the floor above the one at ground level.

The floor under the ground is called the **basement**.

3 the bottom of the sea or the ocean

NOUNS + floor

the sea/ocean floor These creatures live close to the ocean floor.

flow¹ ^v

to move in a steady continuous stream

ADVERBS

flow fast/swiftly The stream was flowing fast over the stones.

flow freely/easily If the windows are shut, air cannot flow freely through the building.

flow smoothly Keeping to the speed limit helps traffic to flow smoothly.

PREPOSITIONS

flow into/out of sth These gates regulate the amount of water flowing into the canal.

flow through sth The blood flowing through your veins transports nutrients around your body.

flow past sb/sth A constant stream of cars flowed past them.

flow² *n*

a steady movement of something such as water, people, vehicles, or information

ADJECTIVES

a steady/constant/continuous flow There has been a steady flow of customers into the store.

a free flow of sth There needs to be a free flow of air around the room.

NOUNS + flow

the water/blood flow You can adjust the water flow.

the air flow If there is too much air coming out, you can reduce the air flow.

the traffic flow The new road system has improved the traffic flow.

VERBS

control the flow of sth It is impossible to control the flow of information on the internet.

increase/improve the flow of sth Exercise improves the flow of blood to the brain.

reduce/restrict/slow the flow of sth The dam helps to restrict the flow of water.

maintain/ensure the flow of sth More planes were brought in, to maintain the flow of supplies.

stem the flow of sth (=stop it or make it less) She tightened the bandage to stem the flow of blood.

interrupt the flow of sth They want to interrupt the flow of illegal drugs.

PREPOSITIONS

the flow of sth He held up his arm to stop the flow of blood.

against the flow The salmon have to swim against the flow of the river.

flower *n*

a plant which has coloured parts called petals, from which its seeds or fruit develop, or this part of the plant

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + flower

a wild flower The meadow was full of wild flowers.

spring/summer/autumn/winter flowers The mountains were covered with spring flowers.

a lovely/pretty/beautiful flower He gave me a bunch of beautiful flowers.

a delicate flower The bush produces delicate pink flowers.

a garden flower Roses have become one of the best-loved garden flowers.

cut flowers Cut flowers last longer if you change the water in the vase.

dried flowers She brightened up the room with an arrangement of dried flowers.

flower + VERBS

a flower grows Flowers were growing along the side of the road.

a flower blooms (=it appears on a plant) Spring flowers bloomed in the meadows.

a flower appears The first flowers appear in the early spring.

a flower opens As the weather gets warmer, the flowers open.

a flower wilts (=it bends and starts to die) The flowers began to wilt in the hot sun.

VERBS + flower

pick flowers I'll pick some flowers to put on the table.

give/send sb flowers He sent his daughter flowers and a birthday card.

produce flowers During spring, the plant produces beautiful purple flowers.

grow flowers He grows flowers as well as vegetables.

be covered in flowers (=have flowers on every part) The fields are covered in wild flowers.

flower + NOUNS

a flower pot The terrace was covered in flower pots.

a flower bed (=an area for growing flowers in a garden) The flower beds had not been weeded for a long time.

PHRASES

a bunch of flowers He picked a bunch of flowers and gave them to her.

a bouquet of flowers (=a carefully arranged bunch) The bride held a bouquet of flowers.

a vase of flowers There was a vase of flowers on each table.

the flowers are in bloom (also **the flowers are out**) (=they appear on a plant) At this time of the year, most of the flowers are in bloom.

be in flower (=have flowers) The roses are in flower throughout the summer.

be in full flower (=have a lot of flowers) By May, the trees are in full flower.

flowery *adj* **THESAURUS** eloquent

flu *n*

a common illness in which you have a high temperature, a sore throat, cough a lot etc

VERBS

have flu He can't come to school because he has flu.

get/catch flu *I don't want you to get my flu.*
come/go down with flu (=start to have flu)
Half the people in the office have come down with the flu.
recover from flu/get over flu *It was several weeks before she recovered from her flu.*

ADJECTIVES

bad flu *I had really bad flu and I was off work for two weeks.*
mild flu *The illness feels like mild flu.*

flu + NOUNS

a flu virus (also **a flu bug** informal): *I picked up a flu bug from someone at work.*
a flu jab BrE, **a flu shot** AmE (also **a flu vaccination** formal): *Have you had your flu shots?*
a flu outbreak (=when a lot of people get the flu) *Britain was in the midst of its worst flu outbreak in a decade.*
a flu epidemic (=when an extremely large number of people get the flu) *Doctors now fear a flu epidemic.*
a flu strain (=a type of flu virus) *Five hundred chickens died from the H5N1 flu strain.*

PHRASES

be in bed with flu *Steven is still in bed with flu.*
be laid up with flu (=have flu and be unable to work or do anything) *Johnson took over for Ben Miller while he was laid up with flu.*
a case of flu *There have been a number of cases of flu at the college.*
a bout of flu (=an occasion when you are affected by flu) *This is her second bout of flu this winter.*

Flu or the flu?

In British English, people often just say **flu**: *She's off work with flu.* In American English, people always say **the flu**: *She's off work with the flu.* Don't say 'a flu'.

Flu or influenza?

Flu is the usual word to use in everyday English. **Flu** is short for **influenza**, which is more formal: *Millions of people died in the great influenza epidemic after the war.*

fluctuate [Ac] v

to keep changing between a high and a low amount or number

ADVERBS

fluctuate wildly *Oil prices fluctuated wildly.*
fluctuate significantly/considerably *The number of visitors fluctuates considerably, depending on the time of year.*
fluctuate sharply (=change suddenly by a large amount) *The value of the dollar fluctuated sharply.*

PREPOSITIONS

fluctuate between sth and sth *Her weight fluctuated between 50 and 60 kilos.*
fluctuate by sth *The temperature can fluctuate by as much as 30 degrees in one day.*
fluctuate with/according to sth *His mood seemed to fluctuate according to the weather.*
fluctuate from day to day/week to week etc *Prices fluctuate from day to day.*

THESAURUS: fluctuate

alter, turn, adapt, evolve, mutate, fluctuate, alternate → **change¹ (1)**

fluctuation n

a change in a price, amount, or level

ADJECTIVES

minor fluctuations *The number of masters degrees awarded by the college shows only minor fluctuations over the past ten years.*
wild fluctuations (=large changes that are difficult to predict) *The illness can cause wild fluctuations in blood pressure.*
seasonal fluctuations *Many types of businesses experience seasonal fluctuations in sales.*

PREPOSITIONS

fluctuation in sth *Fluctuation in the price of oil can damage the world economy.*

PHRASES

be subject to fluctuation (=something may change) *Prices are subject to fluctuation.*

THESAURUS: fluctuation

alteration, reform, shift, swing, fluctuation, transformation, revolution, shake-up, U-turn → **change²**

fluent adj

able to speak a language very well

NOUNS

fluent English/Chinese etc *She speaks fluent Italian and spends part of each year in Rome.*
a fluent speaker *Collins, a fluent Japanese speaker, acted as our interpreter.*

ADVERBS

very fluent *She is very fluent in Spanish.*
completely/totally fluent *He lived in the US and his English is completely fluent.*

VERBS

become fluent *It is very difficult to become fluent in a language.*

PREPOSITIONS

be fluent in English/Chinese etc *She was fluent in several European languages.*

fly¹ *v*

to travel through the air – used about planes, people in planes, birds, and insects

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

fly to/from a place We flew from London to New York.

fly over/across an area of land/ocean The plane flies over Greenland on its way to Toronto.

fly past I saw a flock of pigeons flying past.

fly high/low They watched the birds flying high above them in the sky.

fly direct/nonstop (=without stopping) She flew nonstop to Singapore.

fly solo (=fly a plane alone) He bought a small plane which he flew solo from Los Angeles to Miami.

fly² *n*

a small flying insect with two wings

VERBS

a fly buzzes A few flies buzzed around the kitchen.

a fly lands A fly landed on his arm and he waved it away.

attract flies If you leave food out, it will attract flies.

PHRASES

a swarm/cloud of flies A swarm of flies was buzzing around my head.

focus¹ *Ac v*

to give special attention to one particular person or thing, or to make people do this

Grammar

Focus is usually used with **on** or **upon** (in more formal English).

ADVERBS

focus mainly/primarily/largely on sth This essay will focus mainly on the work of European philosophers.

focus heavily on sth (=focus a lot on something) The book focuses heavily on the artist's eccentric personality.

focus especially/particularly/specifically on sth I would like to focus particularly on the moral aspects of this issue.

focus only/exclusively/solely on sth Try to focus only on those things which you can easily change.

focus entirely/completely on sth The programme focused entirely on the problems of nuclear energy.

be narrowly/sharply focused on sth (=giving attention to only one thing) Companies are often narrowly focused on making profits.

be firmly/intensely focused on sth She was firmly focused on her exams.

VERBS

stay/remain/keep focused He was finding it hard to stay focused on the game.

help/allow sb to focus Breathe slowly – this will help you to focus better on the task.

PREPOSITIONS

focus on/upon sth He wants to focus more on his career.

focus² *Ac n*

1 the thing, person, situation etc that people pay special attention to

ADJECTIVES

the main/central/primary focus The film's central focus is the relationship between the two women.

a clear/sharp focus Lessons should have a clear focus.

a narrow/tight focus (=attention to only one thing or a few things) Within the narrow focus of this book, the treatment is detailed and full.

VERBS

become the focus When you give a talk you become the focus of attention.

provide a focus The church provided a focus for the community.

shift the focus (=move it to something else) They accused the prime minister of trying to shift the focus onto other issues.

bring sth into focus (=make people start paying attention to it) 9/11 brought the issue of terrorism into sharp focus.

come into focus (=start having attention paid to it) In the 1960s a new set of problems came into focus.

lose focus (=stop paying attention to something you should be concentrating on) You won't win the game if you lose focus.

the focus changes/shifts The focus of the negotiations shifted to working conditions.

PREPOSITIONS

the focus is on sth The focus is now on improving students' communication skills.

the focus of sth The focus of the project is literacy.

a focus for sth Now he had a focus for his investigation.

PHRASES

the focus of attention In this section the focus of attention will be on statistics.

a focus of interest Animal behaviour has always been a focus of interest for scientists.

the focus of debate (=the thing which people are discussing) The strike became the focus of debate in the media.

the focus of concern (=the thing which people are worried about) The spread of the disease has become the main focus of concern.

a change/shift of focus Over the years, there has been a change of focus from treatment to prevention.

2 the clearness of an image

VERBS

come into focus (=become clear) When I put my glasses on everything came into focus.

adjust the focus You can adjust the focus on the binoculars manually.

ADJECTIVES

sharp focus (=very clear) Objects closer to the camera are seen in sharp focus.

PREPOSITIONS

in focus (=showing an image clearly) It's a good photograph with the main building in focus.

out of focus (=not showing an image clearly) The picture is a little out of focus.

fog ⁿ
cloudy air near the ground which is difficult to see through

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + fog

thick/heavy/dense fog Heavy fog is making driving conditions dangerous.

freezing fog (=which forms ice) Flights were cancelled due to freezing fog.

swirling fog (=which blows around) She could not see through the swirling fog.

patchy fog (=in some areas but not in others) Mist and patchy fog will form tonight.

hill/sea/ground fog Rain was forecast, along with hill fog.

VERBS

be covered in fog The mountains were covered in fog.

be shrouded in fog *literary* (=be covered in fog, so that it is difficult to see) The streets of London were shrouded in fog.

fog comes down (also **fog descends** *literary*) (=it appears) Suddenly the fog came down and covered the valley.

fog rolls in (=it arrives from the mountains, the sea etc) The fog rolled in from the ocean.

the fog lifts/clears (=it disappears) He sat and waited for the fog to lift.

PHRASES

a blanket of fog (=a large area of fog) A blanket of fog lay over the town.

a bank of fog (=a large mass of fog) As we approached the coast, we ran into a dense bank of fog.

patches of fog (=fog in some places but not in others) Patches of fog are expected later today.

foggy ^{adj} **THESAURUS** → **cloudy**

fold ^v
to bend something such as paper or cloth, so that one part covers another part

ADVERBS

fold sth neatly Molly shook the crumbs off the tablecloth and folded it neatly.

fold sth carefully He folded his clothes carefully and put them on the chair.

fold sth tightly The note was written on a tightly folded piece of paper.

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

fold sth up Fold up your clothes – don't just leave them on the floor.

fold sth over/under/down etc Fold the paper over, so that you make the shape of a triangle.

fold sth away (=fold something and put it away) I folded away the blankets.

fold sth in half/two The letter will fit in the envelope if you fold it in half.

follow ^v

1 to move along behind someone else

ADVERBS

follow (sb) closely A woman walked down the street with her children following closely behind.

follow quickly/slowly etc Dad went indoors and Frankie and I followed quickly.

follow shortly (=follow soon) Tom's already gone out to Rome and his wife and children will follow shortly.

PREPOSITIONS

follow sb to/into/out of sth Peggy followed her out into the hall.

follow sb down/along sth I followed him down the stairs.

2 to happen or come after something else

ADVERBS

follow soon/closely after sth The next earthquake followed soon after the first one.

follow quickly/swiftly This announcement was followed swiftly by the news that the chairman was planning to resign.

follow immediately As soon as he had asked the question, the answer followed immediately.

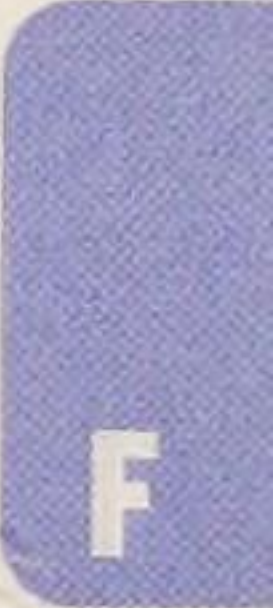
PHRASES

there follows sth After weeks of intense fighting, there followed a brief period of calm.

the days/years/weeks that followed Over the years that followed, friendship turned into love.

follow (hot/hard) on the heels of sth (=happen very soon after another related thing) The band's success follows hard on the heels of their recent US tour.

follow in the wake of sth (=happen after another related thing, especially one that helps cause it to happen) The economic crisis followed in the wake of a sudden rise in the price of oil.



3 to do what someone tells you to do

NOUNS

follow sb's advice *He followed the doctor's advice and had no further trouble.*

follow instructions/directions/guidelines *Follow the instructions very carefully when filling out the form.*

follow the rules *The game is more fun if you follow the rules.*

follow orders *The soldiers are trained to follow orders without questioning them.*

follow your instinct *Cats will follow their natural instinct to hunt, even if they are not hungry.*

ADVERBS

obediently follow sb/sth *The men obediently followed his orders.*

dutifully follow sb/sth (=carefully do what someone says you should do) *The cookbook said to use 300 grams of chocolate, and I dutifully followed these instructions.*

blindly follow sb/sth *disapproving* (=do what someone says without questioning it or thinking for yourself) *I don't just blindly follow everything the boss says I should do.*

THESAURUS: follow

follow, abide by, comply with, respect → **obey**

4 to do the same thing or do something in the same way as someone else

NOUNS

follow sb's example (=do the same thing after another person has done something) *The younger children learned how to behave by following the example of the older ones.*

follow sb's lead (=do the same thing after another person, company etc has done something, especially because you think it is the best thing to do) *If one energy company puts up the price of electricity, the other companies are sure to follow their lead.*

ADVERBS

faithfully follow sth *The TV version faithfully follows the book.*

slavishly follow sb/sth *disapproving* (=do exactly what other people do, without thinking for yourself) *Some people slavishly follow all the latest fashions, with the result that they end up looking silly.*

PHRASES

follow in sb's footsteps (=do the same type of work or achieve the same success as someone else) *She hopes to follow in her father's footsteps and become a lawyer.*

follow suit (=do the same thing that a group of other people, companies etc have just done) *When one supermarket lowered prices, the others felt they had to follow suit.*

follow the family tradition *He followed the family tradition and became a farmer.*

follow the crowd *disapproving* (=do the same as everyone else does – used especially when you think this is a boring thing to do) *She has her own unique style of clothes – she doesn't just follow the crowd.*

be a hard act to follow (=have done something so well that other people will have difficulty doing it to the same standard) *Her sisters had done very well in school, so they were a hard act to follow.*

5 to understand a story, an explanation, or what someone says

PHRASES

be hard/difficult/impossible to follow *The story was really complicated and hard to follow.*

be easy to follow *The instructions are easy to follow.*

not quite follow sb/sth *especially BrE: I'm afraid I don't quite follow you – can you explain the rules again?*

fond

adj
liking someone or something very much, and caring about them a lot

ADVERBS

very/deeply/extremely fond of sb/sth *She was deeply fond of her two nieces.*

quite/rather fond of sb/sth *It was an old car and he was quite fond of it.*

genuinely fond of sb/sth *The boy's nanny seemed genuinely fond of him.*

increasingly fond of sb/sth *He found himself growing increasingly fond of her.*

VERBS

grow fond of sb/sth (=become fond of them) *Over the years we've grown very fond of each other.*

PREPOSITIONS

be fond of sb/sth *He was fond of Lily and wished he could help her.*

food

n
things that people and animals eat

ADJECTIVES

good/delicious/tasty food *Thanks for dinner – the food was delicious.*

fresh food *He buys fresh food from a local farm.*

frozen/canned/processed food *Some people claim that frozen food is just as healthy as fresh food.*

healthy/nutritious food *We try to give the kids good healthy food.*

spicy food (=with a hot taste) *I like spicy food with a lot of chilli in it.*

plain/simple food *He liked eating simple food, nothing spicy.*

hot/cold food *She wanted a rest and some hot food.*

organic food (=produced without using chemicals) *Organic food is better for the environment.*

vegetarian food (=food that does not contain meat) *The restaurant specializes in vegetarian food.*

fatty/salty/sugary/starchy foods *I try to avoid eating fatty foods.*

junk food (=full of sugar or fat, and bad for your health) *Eating too much junk food makes you fat.*

fast food (=food you buy which is prepared quickly and which you can take away with you to eat) *He cooked hamburgers in a fast food restaurant.*

VERBS + food

eat food *He sat in the corner and ate his food.*

have food *Sit down and have some food.*

cook/prepare food *I have to cook some food for this evening.*

serve food *The waitress was serving food to the customers.*

enjoy your food *I've never seen anyone enjoy their food so much.*

chew food *He chewed the food slowly and carefully.*

swallow food (=make it go down your throat) *She had difficulty swallowing her food.*

digest food *If you drink plenty of water, it helps you digest your food.*

food + VERBS

food tastes good/delicious etc *The food at Jan's house always tastes delicious.*

food smells good/delicious etc *The food smelt good to her.*

food + NOUNS

the food industry *The food industry has responded to consumer concerns about health.*

food prices *Food prices have increased rapidly in recent months.*

a food shortage *He remembered the food shortages of the war years.*

food additives (=chemicals that are added to improve the taste or appearance of food) *Biscuits and cakes often contain a lot of food additives.*

fool *n* a stupid person

ADJECTIVES

a silly/stupid fool *Why did you do that, you silly fool?*

a complete/utter/absolute/awful fool *I felt like a complete fool when I found out that I had been cheated out of my money.*

an old/young fool *You old fool! Why don't you watch where you're going!*

a crazy fool *The crazy fool ran right out into the street in front of the cars!*

PHRASES

make a fool (out) of sb (=make someone look stupid) *I'm always afraid I'll make a fool of myself when I have to give a speech.*

feel like a fool *I felt like a fool when I found out she wasn't really a famous singer.*

like a fool *She said she loved me, and like a fool, I believed her.*

Fool or idiot?

Fool seems a little old-fashioned, and people usually use a slightly stronger word such as **idiot**: *You stupid idiot! What did you do that for?*

foolish *adj* stupid and not sensible

VERBS

feel foolish *She felt foolish because she didn't know the answer.*

look foolish *He was certain that he would look foolish if he tried to dance.*

sound foolish *I wanted to ask a question, but I was afraid I'd sound foolish.*

seem/appear foolish *It seems foolish to plan a holiday when we haven't yet saved the money.*

PHRASES

it is foolish to do sth *It would be foolish to ignore her advice.*

sth is foolish of sb *The man started shouting at the police officer, which was very foolish of him.*

be foolish enough to do sth *I was foolish enough to believe him, even though he had lied to me before.*

young and foolish *We were young and foolish and we wanted to enjoy ourselves.*

foot *n*

1 the part of your body that you stand on and walk on

ADJECTIVES

sb's left/right foot *He kicked the ball with his left foot.*

front foot (=of an animal) *A tiger has five claws on each of its front feet.*

back/hind foot (=of an animal) *The horse lifted its back foot.*

big/small feet *He has very small feet for a man.*

bare feet *The marble floor felt cold under his bare feet.*

dainty feet (=small and pretty) *She was sitting on the couch, her dainty little feet tucked under her.*

flat feet (=a medical condition in which your feet rest flat on the ground, with no curved part) *The doctor says I have flat feet.*

VERBS

injure/hurt your foot *Simon injured his foot while playing rugby.*

wipe your feet (=wipe your shoes on a mat to remove dirt) *Be sure to wipe your feet before coming into the house.*

stamp your feet (=hit them on the ground loudly) *He stamped his feet to keep warm.*

tap your feet (=hit the ground with your toes, making a short sound) *She was tapping her feet in time with the music.*

shuffle your feet (=make small movements with them, because you are nervous or impatient) *The boy shuffled his feet and looked down at the floor.*

sb's foot hurts *These boots make my feet hurt.*

PREPOSITIONS

at sb's feet (=on the ground, near your feet) *The dog was sitting at his master's feet.*

under/beneath sb's feet *The sand was hot under her feet.*

PHRASES

the sole of your foot (=the base of it, that you walk on) *The soles of her feet were aching from the long walk.*

2 the lowest part of something, or the end of something

PHRASES

the foot of the stairs/staircase/steps/ladder *Perry stood at the foot of the stairs, looking up at her.*

the foot of the hill/mountain/cliff/slope *The museum is at the foot of the hill.*

the foot of the page *There was a note at the foot of the page.*

the foot of a statue/tree *At the foot of the statue was a big iron candleholder.*

the foot of the bed *She sat at the foot of the bed and took off her shoes.*

football *n*

1 a game played by two teams of eleven players who try to kick a round ball into the other team's goal

This meaning of **football** is used in British English. In American English, people say **soccer**. **Soccer** is also used in British English, but it is less common.

VERBS

play football *The boys are playing football in the garden.*

watch football *He likes to spend Saturday afternoon watching football.*

football + NOUNS

a football match/game *Do you often go to football matches?*

a football team/club *Which football team do you support?*

a football player/star *As a boy, his ambition was to be a football player.*

a football manager/coach *Football managers shouldn't complain about referees' decisions.*

a football fan (=someone who likes football a lot) *Pat is a keen football fan.*

a football supporter (=someone who likes a particular football team and goes to see them play) *After the game, 55 football supporters were arrested.*

a football hooligan (=someone who behaves in a noisy or violent way when they go to watch a football match) *There were fights between gangs of football hooligans.*

a football pitch (=an area of grass where football is played) *An area of waste ground had been turned into a football pitch.*

a football ground/stadium (=a place where people can watch football being played) *Hundreds of fans were making their way towards the football ground.*

the football season (=the period in a year when football is played) *The new football season is just over a week away.*

Instead of **football player**, people often say **footballer**.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + football

professional football *It was his dream to play professional football one day.*

international football (=played by teams representing their country) *He will retire from international football after the World Cup.*

2 a game played in the US by two teams of eleven players who try to carry or kick an oval ball into the other team's goal

British people call this sport **American football**.

VERBS

play football *He played football in college.*

watch football *I like watching football on TV.*

football + NOUNS

a football team *The Dallas Cowboys are a great football team.*

a football player/star *Simpson was a former professional football player.*

a football coach *He is the head football coach at UCLA.*

a football fan *The stadium was crowded with 75,000 football fans.*

a football game *I went to a football game at the University of Arizona last week.*

a football field (=an area of grass where football is played) *Brad was a hero on the football field.*

a football stadium (=a place where people can watch football being played) *The football stadium was filled to capacity.*

the football season (=the period in a year when football is played) *We're coming to the end of the football season.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + football

professional football *I always wanted to play professional football.*

college/high school football *It's the best team in college football.*

footpathⁿ

a narrow path for people to walk along, especially in the country

ADJECTIVES

a public footpath *A public footpath crosses the field.*

a narrow footpath *There is a narrow footpath up the mountain.*

a muddy footpath *At this time of year the footpaths are all muddy.*

VERBS

follow/take/use a footpath *We followed a winding footpath through the woods.*

keep/stick to the footpath (also **stay on the footpath**) *It's important to keep to the footpath, otherwise you'll get lost.*

a footpath leads to sth *The footpath leads to the top of the hill.*

a footpath runs between sth *A footpath runs between the school and Church Street.*

footpath + NOUNS

a footpath sign *Follow the footpath signs to the church.*

PREPOSITIONS

on a footpath *They walked through the woods, staying on the footpaths.*

along a footpath *We walked along a footpath beside the river.*

a footpath across/through sth *She took the footpath across the field.*

forbid^v

if something is forbidden, it is not allowed

Grammar

Forbid is usually used in the passive.

ADVERBS

sth is strictly forbidden *Smoking is strictly forbidden in the mine.*

sth is absolutely/completely/totally forbidden *It was absolutely forbidden to talk to the other prisoners.*

be expressly/explicitly/specifically forbidden from doing sth (=a particular thing is forbidden) *The jury are expressly forbidden from discussing the case outside the court.*

PREPOSITIONS

sb is forbidden from doing sth *Women are forbidden from going out without a veil.*

PHRASES

it is forbidden to do sth *Under Islamic law, it is forbidden to receive interest from savings accounts.*

sth is forbidden by law *Discrimination is forbidden by law.*

forceⁿ

1 physical power or violence

ADJECTIVES

physical force *They had to use physical force to get into the building.*

great/considerable force *The rock had been thrown with considerable force.*

brute force (=force rather than intelligence or careful thinking) *He got the box open using sheer brute force.*

the full force of sth *He slammed the full force of his body into the man to stop him.*

excessive force (=too much force) *The police should not use excessive force when arresting suspects.*

reasonable force (=no more than is necessary) *You have the right to defend yourself with reasonable force.*

VERBS

use force *The police used force to overpower the demonstrators.*

resort to force (=use it because every other method has failed) *The government is prepared to resort to force if negotiations fail.*

PREPOSITIONS

by force (=using force) *He had to be thrown out of the house by force.*

the force of sth *The force of the explosion smashed all the windows.*

with great/considerable etc force *He raised his hand and hit her with terrifying force.*

PHRASES

the use of force *On this occasion, the use of force was fully justified.*

2 a group of people, especially soldiers or police officers

Grammar

You usually say **forces** when talking about a group of soldiers.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + force

the armed forces (=the army, navy, and air force of a country) *Representatives from the armed forces attended the ceremony.*

military forces *US military forces will remain for as long as they are needed.*

VERBS

can/can't forgive sb *I can't forgive her for what she did.*

ask/beg sb to forgive you *The man begged my mother to forgive him for what he had done.*

PREPOSITIONS

forgive sb for sth *She never forgave him for what he said.*

PHRASES

be hard/difficult/impossible to forgive *I found it hard to forgive him for lying to me.*

be prepared/ready/willing to forgive *She was willing to forgive his mistake.*

forgive and forget (=forgive someone and no longer think about it, so that you no longer feel angry) *He didn't seem the type of man who could forgive and forget easily.*

forgiveness *n*

when someone forgives another person

VERBS

ask for (sb's) forgiveness (also **ask (sb's) forgiveness**) *He admitted that he had been rude, and asked for her forgiveness.*

beg (for) forgiveness *She apologized and begged him for forgiveness.*

pray for forgiveness *I prayed for forgiveness for the things I had done.*

seek forgiveness (=look for it) *He sought forgiveness from his wife.*

show (sb) forgiveness *She showed him forgiveness and support.*

PREPOSITIONS

forgiveness for sth *He begged forgiveness for the mistakes he had made.*

form¹ *n*

1 a particular type of something that exists in many different varieties

ADJECTIVES

a common form of sth *Breast cancer is the most common form of cancer among women.*

a simple/basic/primitive form of sth *Flags were used as a simple form of communication.*

a new form of sth *He created a new form of music.*

a different form of sth *There are many different forms of government.*

various forms of sth *The painter uses various forms of technique.*

an early form of sth *Pascal invented a calculating machine that was an early form of computer.*

sth's final form of sth *The report is not yet in its final form.*

a traditional form of sth *Bowing is the traditional form of greeting in Japan.*

the standard form of sth *'BBC English' is often*

regarded as the standard form of the language in the UK.

a mild/severe form of sth *She suffers from a mild form of the illness.*

NOUNS + form

an art form *Music is an art form that has existed since the beginning of time.*

a life form (=a type of living thing) *Do you think we will find life forms on other planets?*

PREPOSITIONS

a form of sth *Poetry is a form of expression.*

in the form of sth *Peace is represented in the form of a dove.*

PHRASES

take the form of sth (=used when saying what something is like) *The examination took the form of an interview.*

in solid/liquid/tablet etc form *The medicine is available in tablet form.*

in any form/in all its forms *He opposed the use of violence in all its forms.*

in some form (or other) *We all need help in some form or other.*

in its original form *In its original form, the building only had three rooms.*

in its present/current form *The organization cannot continue in its present form.*

2 an official document with spaces where you write information

VERBS

fill out a form (also **fill in a form** BrE): *If you want to become a member, you need to fill out a form.*

complete a form formal: *Please complete the form below and we will respond to your request as soon as possible.*

sign a form *The person who signs the form should be 18 or over.*

send in/off a form *I sent in my application form last week.*

return a form formal (=send it back) *You should return the form to the above address.*

NOUNS + form

an application form *Please complete this application form in block capitals.*

a tax form *The tax form must be submitted before the end of the month.*

an order form *Send your completed order form together with your payment to the address below.*

a booking form (=a form you use to reserve something) *Have you filled out a hotel booking form?*

a registration form *On arrival at the hotel, the guest must complete a registration form.*

an online form (=on the internet) *It's easier to fill out an online form.*

an entry form (=to take part in something) *If you wish to take part in the competition, please fill out an entry form.*

form² v

1 to establish something

NOUNS

form a company/organization/society/party etc *The World Trade Organization was formed in 1995.*

form a government *The party has enough votes to form a government.*

form an alliance/partnership *The two countries formed an alliance.*

form a relationship/friendship *The two men formed a close relationship.*

form a band/group *He formed his first band at the age of 14 with three friends from high school.*

THESAURUS: form

open, establish, found, set up, form → **start¹ (3)**

2 to make something start to exist

THESAURUS: form

create, do, produce, manufacture, mass-produce, develop, form, generate → **make (1)**

3 to make a shape or line

NOUNS

form a circle/square etc *The teacher asked the children to form a circle.*

form a line/queue *The visitors had formed a queue outside the museum.*

formal adj

1 formal language or behaviour is used with people who you do not know well, or at important official occasions

NOUNS

formal language *It's best to use formal language when you're writing an essay.*

a formal word *'Acquire' is a formal word for 'get'.*

formal behaviour BrE, **formal behavior** AmE: *His mother's behaviour towards the children was rather formal.*

a formal manner *"Am I speaking to Miss Price?" he asked in a very formal manner.*

VERBS

seem/sound formal *Her voice sounded very formal on the phone.*

ANTONYMS formal → informal

2 made or done officially or publicly

NOUNS

a formal announcement/statement *The chairman will make a formal announcement about the company's future.*

a formal request/invitation *You have to make a formal request to see the documents.*

a formal complaint *She intends to make a formal complaint against the police.*

a formal agreement *The two companies have signed a formal agreement to merge with each other.*

a formal system/procedure *There is a formal procedure for dealing with complaints.*

a formal meeting *The committee held a formal meeting to discuss the issue.*

a formal occasion/event *He only wears his suit at formal occasions such as weddings and funerals.*

a formal investigation/inquiry *The authorities have launched a formal investigation into the accident.*

formal approval *Parliament gave its formal approval to the bill.*

formal education/training/qualifications (=in a school or college) *His father had no formal education after the age of 14.*

ANTONYMS formal → informal

format [Ac] n

the way in which something is arranged, organized, or presented

ADJECTIVES

a new format *The magazine hopes to attract younger readers with its new format.*

a different format *The movie is available in several different formats.*

digital/electronic format *The pictures are sent in digital format.*

a standard/common format *They usually use a standard format for writing business letters.*

the usual/traditional format *The meeting will follow the traditional format, with a speech by the chairman at the end.*

a large/small format *The book was published in a large format with pictures for children.*

a similar format *The August event will follow a similar format to the spring event.*

VERBS

change the format *The TV company has changed the format of the show.*

use a format *This time we're using a slightly different format.*

follow a format *When you're writing an essay, it's best to follow the usual format.*

adopt a format (=start using a format) *The two companies have agreed to adopt a common format for their products.*

PREPOSITIONS

the format for sth *The format for the event is the same as last year.*

in a ... format *The paper is available in a larger format.*

foundation + NOUNS

the foundation stone *The foundation stone was laid in 1829.*

foundry *n* **THESAURUS** **factory**

fracture *v* **THESAURUS** **break¹ (1)**

fragile *adj*
easily broken or damaged – used about physical objects, and also about abstract things

NOUNS

glass is fragile *The glass is extremely fragile.*

fragile bones *Her bones were old and fragile.*

a fragile relationship *He didn't want to create distrust in an already fragile relationship.*

a fragile state *Her health was in a fragile state.*

a fragile ecosystem/habitat *The oil could damage the island's fragile ecosystem.*

a fragile economy *The fragile economy cannot keep up with population growth.*

a fragile democracy *The country's fragile democracy is under threat.*

a fragile peace/truce/ceasefire *A fragile peace has been in place since the war ended.*

fragile health *She wasn't able to travel because of her fragile health.*

THESAURUS: fragile

delicate

cup | flower | necklace | fabric | skin

easily damaged – used especially about things that are made from thin material and look attractive:

The tea was served in delicate little china cups. | The plant has delicate yellow flowers. | People with delicate skin should not go out in strong sunlight.

Delicate is also used about hands or features that are small or thin and look pretty: *The dancers had delicate features.*
It is also used about people who are weak and in poor health: *He was a delicate child and was often ill.*

brittle

bones | nails | hair | material

if something is brittle, it has a hard surface that breaks easily:

An unhealthy diet can lead to the development of brittle bones. | The shampoo is good for brittle hair. | Glass is a brittle material.

breakable

object | ornament

breakable objects must be handled carefully because they will break easily:

Breakable objects should be carefully wrapped in newspaper. | It's best to keep breakable ornaments away from animals and children.

flimsy

shirt | dress | material | wall | furniture | structure

made of thin or light material which is easily damaged or badly made:

His flimsy cotton shirt did not give him much protection from the cold. | The hotel walls were so flimsy that you could hear everything in the next room. | The hut was a flimsy structure that looked like it would collapse at any moment.

fragment *n* **THESAURUS** **piece**

fragrance *n* **THESAURUS** **smell¹**

frail *adj* **THESAURUS** **weak (1)**

framework *n* **Ac**

a set of ideas, rules, or beliefs from which something is developed, or on which decisions and actions are based

ADJECTIVES

a basic framework *This course provides a basic framework for understanding the issues involved.*

a general/broad framework *The meeting established a broad framework for the negotiations.*

a legal/political/social framework *Services must operate within the current legal framework.*

a conceptual/theoretical framework (=a set of ideas that are used as a basis for understanding or doing something) *Scientists are trying to develop a single theoretical framework which explains everything that happens in the universe.*

VERBS

provide/offer a framework *The previous research programme provides a framework for further studies.*

create/build/develop/establish a framework *The aim is to create a framework for discussion.*

introduce/implement a framework *The government has introduced a new framework for inspecting schools.*

use a framework *We use the same framework for all our research.*

PREPOSITIONS

a framework for sth *The data will be used to develop a framework for future policies.*

frank *adj* **THESAURUS** **honest**

freak *adj* **THESAURUS** **unusual**

free *adj*

1 something that is free does not cost you any money

ADVERBS

completely/absolutely free *The design service is absolutely free.*

VERBS

be free *There's a concert in the park, and it's free.*
come free (=be given free when you get or buy something else) *Drinks come free with your meals.*

NOUNS

a free copy *Call us for a free copy of our brochure.*
a free ticket *I was given two free tickets for the concert.*
a free gift *There's a special free gift with this month's magazine.*
free parking *The hotel offers free parking.*
free admission/entry *There is free admission to the gardens for all members.*
free delivery *There is free delivery on all orders over £50.*
free software *You can download free software from this site.*
a free service *We offer a free legal advice service.*
free advice *The police will give you free advice on preventing crime.*

2 not kept as a prisoner

VERBS

set sb/sth free *Stolen cattle were returned to their owners or set free.*
break/struggle/pull free *After a struggle she managed to break free.*
roam/run free (=move around freely - used especially about animals) *Outside, ducks and chickens roam free.*
walk free (=not be sent to prison) *The charges were dropped and he walked free from court.*
remain free *Lozano was allowed to remain free while appealing against his conviction.*

3 not being used

THESAURUS: free

free, vacant → **available**
bare, blank, hollow, free, vacant, deserted, uninhabited, unoccupied → **empty**

freedom *n*

the right to do what you want without being controlled or restricted

ADJECTIVES

total/complete freedom *Riding a motorbike gives me a feeling of total freedom.*
great/considerable freedom *Teachers are given considerable freedom to choose their teaching methods.*
personal/individual freedom *Our personal freedom is being restricted more and more.*
new-found/new freedom (=which someone has been given only recently) *She loved the new-found freedom her car provided.*

a basic/fundamental freedom (=which everyone deserves to have) *Our economy should give all people the fundamental freedom to work.*

political/religious freedom *The people were given political freedom for the first time in the country's history.*

academic freedom (=for people studying at university or doing research) *She wants to teach at a university that provides complete academic freedom.*

artistic freedom *Banning the film would be an unacceptable restriction on artistic freedom.*

VERBS

have freedom *If you had your own apartment you would have more freedom.*
enjoy freedom (=have it - more formal) *Filmmakers today enjoy more freedom than in the past.*
give sb freedom *Our flexible programme gives you the freedom to study when and where you like.*
defend/protect freedom *People have fought wars to defend the freedom that we enjoy.*
value your freedom *I didn't want to get married because I valued my freedom.*
limit/restrict/curb sb's freedom *The new laws would limit our freedom of speech.*

PHRASES

the struggle/fight for freedom *The student movement played an important role in the struggle for political freedom.*
freedom of speech/expression (=the legal right to say what you want) *We will defend freedom of speech and oppose censorship.*
freedom of choice *If more companies come into the market, that gives customers greater freedom of choice.*
the freedom of the press *The freedom of the press is guaranteed by the constitution.*
freedom of movement (=the right or ability to travel, or the ability to move your body freely) *The tight uniforms restrict their freedom of movement.*
freedom of religion/worship *Freedom of religion is threatened in many countries.*

freeway *n* AmE

a very wide road in the US, built for fast travel

ADJECTIVES

a major freeway *The motel is near a major freeway.*
a crowded/congested freeway *Interstate 15 is the most congested freeway in the county.*

VERBS

come off/get off/exit a freeway *He got off the freeway and called police.*
get on a freeway *We need to get on the freeway.*

PREPOSITIONS

a friendship with sb *Her parents disapproved of her friendship with John.*
a friendship between sb and sb *The friendship between Jane and Sarah was as strong as ever.*

PHRASES

the start/end of a friendship *We met at work and that was the start of a long friendship.*
a gesture of friendship (=an action which shows that someone is a friend) *He invited us to his house as a gesture of friendship.*
bonds/ties of friendship (=things that connect friends) *They were united by deep bonds of friendship.*

frighten *v* to make someone feel afraid

PHRASES

(almost) frighten sb to death *informal* (=make someone very frightened) *You almost frightened me to death!*
frighten the life out of sb *informal* (=make someone very frightened) *When I felt his hand on my neck, it frightened the life out of me.*

frightened *adj*

worried that you might be hurt, or that something bad might happen

VERBS

be/feel frightened *Don't be frightened. We're not going to hurt you.*
look/sound frightened *"What are those men doing here?" Garry sounded frightened.*
get frightened (=start to feel frightened) *He used to get frightened when the boys from the village asked him to play with them.*
make sb frightened *The big waves are making me frightened.*

PREPOSITIONS

frightened of sth *Many animals are frightened of fireworks.*
frightened about sth *There's nothing to be frightened about. It'll be all right.*
frightened at sth *She was frightened at the thought of going back there again.*

PHRASES

frightened to death/frightened out of your wits *informal* (=extremely frightened) *I was frightened to death that I was going to make a mistake.*
like a frightened rabbit/animal *The young woman just stared at me like a frightened rabbit.*

Frightened, scared, or afraid?

Scared is a little more informal than **frightened**, and is very common in spoken English. In written English, **frightened** is more commonly used. **Afraid** is more formal than **frightened** and often sounds more serious.

frightening *adj* making you feel afraid

NOUNS

a frightening experience *Going skiing for the first time can be a frightening experience.*
a frightening place *The forest is a frightening place at night.*
a frightening moment *It was the most frightening moment of my life.*
a frightening film/book/story *There are some frightening stories about people getting lost in the mountains.*
a frightening thought/prospect (=something frightening that you imagine happening) *They faced the frightening prospect of having no money.*

ADVERBS

extremely/truly/genuinely frightening *The whole building was shaking – it was truly frightening.*

PHRASES

find sb/sth frightening *I found him a little frightening at first.*
it is frightening to think/imagine... *It's frightening to think what could happen if terrorists got hold of nuclear materials.*

THESAURUS: frightening

scary *especially spoken*
movie | film | story | experience | moment | place | monster | feeling | thought
frightening. **Scary** is more informal than **frightening** and is very common in spoken English:
I don't like watching scary movies. | The subway can be a scary place. | Maybe they're watching us right now – it's a scary thought.

spooky *informal*
atmosphere | house | place | story | tale | feeling | coincidence
frightening and strange, especially because something involves ghosts or powers that people do not understand:
The dark shadows created a spooky atmosphere. | They live in a spooky old house in the country. | By some spooky coincidence, they had been born in the same hospital at the same time.

creepy *informal*
feeling | place | house | guy | film
frightening because you think there is something strange and unpleasant about someone or something, especially when you are not exactly sure what it is:
Do you know that creepy feeling when you think that someone's watching you? | With the wind whistling through the trees and the cries of the owls, Park House could be a creepy place for a child. | There was something creepy about him.

eerie *especially literary*

silence | **stillness** | **feeling** | **sensation** | **sound** | **effect** | **light** | **glow** | **coincidence**
strange and frightening:

An eerie silence descended on the house after the soldiers had gone. | She began to get an eerie feeling that something terrible was about to happen.

chilling

tale | **account** | **story** | **thought** | **reminder** | **moment** | **words** | **message** | **facts** | **discovery** | **performance**

frightening, especially because violence, cruelty, or danger is involved:

The book is a chilling tale of murder and revenge. | The camps are a chilling reminder of the country's past (=they make you remember something terrible that happened).

intimidating

place | **experience** | **atmosphere** | **presence** | **man** | **woman**

making you feel frightened or nervous – used when something makes you lack confidence, or when you feel someone wants to hurt you:

Big schools can be intimidating places for young children. | The city remains calm, in spite of the intimidating presence of large numbers of soldiers.

menacing

way | **manner** | **look** | **presence** | **tone**

behaving in a frightening way – used when someone looks like they are about to hurt you:

The bull started to move towards her in a rather menacing manner. | The boy had a menacing look on his face.

alarming

rate | **increase** | **rise** | **decline** | **number** | **proportions**

very worrying and frightening:

Violent crime is increasing at an alarming rate. | He noticed an alarming rise in the numbers of children with the disease.

daunting

task | **challenge** | **experience** | **prospect** | **thought**

if something is daunting, you are worried because you think it may be too difficult:

Dealing with climate change is an incredibly daunting task. | Your first solo show can be a very daunting experience.

very frightening

terrifying

experience | **ordeal** | **moment** | **prospect** | **thought** | **situation**

extremely frightening:

Crossing the ocean alone must have been a truly terrifying experience. | For one terrifying moment, he thought he was going to be killed.

hair-raising

adventure | **story** | **ride** | **experience** | **encounter**

very frightening and involving danger, in a way that is exciting:

The film tells the story of his hair-raising adventures in the jungles of South America. | They went on a hair-raising ride through the mountains.

spine-chilling

story | **tale** | **novel** | **movie** | **film** | **music** | **moment** | **experience**

a spine-chilling story, film etc is very frightening, because very violent and cruel things happen:

The book is a spine-chilling tale of obsession and murder. | He wrote the spine-chilling music for Hitchcock's film 'Psycho'.

blood-curdling *especially literary*

scream | **howl** | **sound**

a blood-curdling sound is very frightening:

I heard a blood-curdling scream in the middle of the night.

front¹ *n*

the part of something that is furthest forward

VERBS

face the front *Turn around and face the front.*

reach/get to the front *There was a long queue and we waited an hour to get to the front.*

PREPOSITIONS

the front of sth *The front of the house is painted white.*

on the front *It's a thick book with a picture of a soldier on the front.*

on your front (=on the front part of your body) *She was lying on her front on the bed.*

at the front *The photographer asked the smallest kids to stand at the front.*

in the front *Adam was sitting in the front, next to the driver.*

down the front (=across the front surface of something such as a shirt) *His sweater had ice cream all down the front.*

in front (=directly ahead) *Don't get too close to the car in front.*

in front of sb (=directly ahead of someone) *I can't see if you stand in front of me.*

At, on, or in the front?

At the front is used to talk about a forward position in a group, the front part of a building or place, or the beginning part of a book: *There's a small garden **at the front of** the house. | The contents list is **at the front**.*

On the front is used to talk about the front surface or cover of something, such as a book: *The magazine has a famous actor's face **on the front**.*

In the front is used to talk about the forward part inside something, especially a vehicle: *She let me sit **in the front**.*

ANTONYMS **front** → **back**¹ (2)

front² *adj*
at, on, or in the front of something

NOUNS

the front page/cover *The story is on the front pages of all the newspapers.*

the front row *When we went to the theatre, we had seats on the front row.*

the front door/entrance/bedroom (=at the front of a building) *She knocked on the front door, but no-one answered.*

the front garden/lawn *The house has a large front garden and a field at the back.*

the front end/edge/side *The pilot sits in the front end of the plane.*

an animal's front leg/paw *The dog had injured his front leg.*

a vehicle's front seat/wheel/headlights *A woman was sitting in the front passenger seat.*

the front desk/office (=one that people see when they come into a building) *He works at the front desk of a hotel.*

ANTONYMS **front** → **back**²

frontier *n* the border of a country

VERBS

cross the frontier *They crossed the frontier into Switzerland.*

reach the frontier *Alexander's armies reached the frontier of India.*

ADJECTIVES

the northern/southern/eastern/western frontier *The Great Wall protected the northern frontier of China.*

the Russian/Chinese etc frontier *The town is not far away from the Russian frontier.*

PREPOSITIONS

the frontier between sth and sth *The town is close to the frontier between France and Belgium.*

the frontier with sth *Pakistan has a 1,500 mile frontier with Afghanistan.*

on/at the frontier *They were delayed at the frontier by security checks.*

along the frontier *Fighting continues along the frontier.*

frost *n*
very cold weather, when water freezes

ADJECTIVES

a severe/hard/heavy frost *Many plants were damaged by the hard frost.*

a sharp frost (=sudden and severe) *There had been a sharp frost overnight.*

ground frost (=that forms on the ground)

Tonight will be cold, with clear skies and a ground frost in most areas.

an early/late frost *I hoped the early frost wasn't a sign of a bad winter to come.*

VERBS

the frost melts *The frost was gradually melting.*

be covered in/with frost *The lawn was covered in frost.*

protect sth against frost *The plants need to be protected against frost.*

withstand/survive frost *Can the plants withstand frost or will it be too cold for them?*

frost + NOUNS

frost damage *Some crops have suffered frost damage.*

PHRASES

a risk/danger of frost *There is a risk of frost from September onwards.*

frosty *adj* **THESAURUS** → **cold**¹

frown¹ *v*
to move your eyebrows together and make an angry or unhappy face

ADVERBS

frown angrily/irritably/impatiently *He frowned angrily as he listened to her excuse.*

frown disapprovingly *She didn't speak, she just frowned disapprovingly.*

frown slightly/a little *He looked at the letter and frowned slightly.*

VERBS

make sb frown *She couldn't see without her glasses, which made her frown with frustration.*

PREPOSITIONS

frown at sb *"What's all this mess?" she said, frowning at him.*

frown² *n*
an angry, unhappy, or confused expression

VERBS

have a frown on your face *His sister always had a frown on her face.*

wear a frown (=have a frown on your face) *Lucy, wearing a worried frown, asked where Joe was.*

give a frown *The teacher gave a frown and told him not to be so rude.*

a frown crosses sb's face *Suddenly, a frown crossed Anna's face.*

ADJECTIVES

an angry/irritated frown *I could see from his angry frown that something was wrong.*

a worried/puzzled frown *She had a puzzled frown on her face.*

a slight/small frown *A slight frown crossed his face when he read the letter.*

PREPOSITIONS

with a frown "Are you still here?" he said with a frown.

fruit *n*

food such as apples, bananas, and grapes

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + fruit

fresh fruit Try to eat plenty of fresh fruit.

canned fruit (also **tinned fruit** BrE): Canned fruit is on the bottom shelf, next to the sugar.

dried fruit The cake is made with sultanas, currants, and other dried fruit.

ripe fruit When the fruit is ripe, it smells sweet.

citrus fruit (=lemons, oranges, limes etc) The drink has a sharp taste, like citrus fruit.

tropical/exotic fruit He likes tropical fruits such as pineapples and bananas.

soft fruit (=small fruits with no skin or large seed) She made a dessert out of strawberries, raspberries, and other soft fruit.

VERBS

pick fruit You can pick the fruit in October.

a tree bears fruit (=produces fruit) It was too cold for the trees to bear fruit.

grow fruit I'm growing fruit in my greenhouse.

peel fruit (=take off the outer part) Use a sharp knife to peel the fruit.

fruit + NOUNS

a fruit tree They have fruit trees in the garden.

fruit juice She always has a glass of fruit juice for breakfast.

fruit salad (=a dish of many kinds of fruit cut into small pieces) Fruit salad is a very healthy dessert.

a fruit pie For dessert, we're having fruit pie.

a fruit bowl (=a bowl for holding fruit) There was a fruit bowl full of oranges in the middle of the table.

Fruitcake is usually written as one word.

PHRASES

fruit and vegetables People buy fruit and vegetables in the local market.

a piece of fruit (=a whole apple, pear etc, or a piece cut from it) Lunch is usually a sandwich and a piece of fruit.

fruitful *adj* **THESAURUS** **successful (1)**

frustrating *adj* **THESAURUS** **annoying**

frustration *n*

the feeling of being annoyed or impatient, because you cannot control or change something

ADJECTIVES

deep frustration (=a lot of frustration) Children feel deep frustration if they can't communicate.

growing/increasing/mounting frustration He could not hide his growing frustration.

sheer frustration Jack wanted to shout in sheer frustration.

bitter frustration If patients recover much more slowly than they hoped, this can lead to bitter frustration.

VERBS

feel frustration (also **experience frustration** formal): It's natural to feel frustration if you can't do something.

lead to/cause frustration The ferry only takes a limited number of cars, and this can lead to frustration for drivers.

express/vent your frustration The fans expressed their frustration at their team's poor performance.

take your frustration out on sb (=be angry with other people because of your frustration with yourself) Don't take your frustration out on other people.

hide your frustration In the end she could not hide her frustration any longer.

understand sb's frustration I understand your frustration, but please try to be patient.

PREPOSITIONS

frustration at/over sth She feels frustration at her own helplessness.

frustration with sb/sth She tried not to show her frustration with him as he struggled to understand.

do sth in frustration (=showing frustration) He sighed in frustration.

do sth through/out of frustration (=because of frustration) Many people leave their jobs through frustration.

PHRASES

a sense of frustration People often feel a sense of frustration that they are not progressing at work.

a source of frustration Her son is a constant source of frustration to her.

tears of frustration She cried tears of frustration.

fuel *n*

a substance such as coal, gas, or oil that can be burned to produce heat or energy

VERBS

use fuel Our car uses a lot of fuel.

run on fuel (=use fuel as the source of power) Will this engine run on unleaded fuel?

run out of fuel (=have no more left) The ship ran out of fuel and drifted helplessly.

fill up with fuel (=put fuel in a vehicle's fuel tank) Before leaving, I filled up with fuel at the local petrol station.

save fuel You can save fuel by driving more slowly.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + fuel

a fossil fuel (=a fuel such as coal or oil, produced by the gradual decaying of plants and animals) *Global warming may be caused by burning fossil fuels.*

nuclear fuel *What do we do with the spent nuclear fuel?*

solid fuel (=a solid substance, such as coal, that is used as a fuel) *The number of homes using solid fuel for heating has decreased.*

domestic/household fuel (=used in a house) *There has been a sharp rise in domestic fuel costs.*

a clean fuel (=that does not harm the environment) *The proposal is to cut tax on cars that run on clean fuel.*

smokeless fuel (=that burns without producing smoke) *The government is trying to encourage the use of environmentally friendly smokeless fuels.*

fuel + NOUNS

fuel costs/prices *The increase in fuel costs is causing problems for many old people.*

sb's fuel bill *I wish there was some way to cut our fuel bill.*

a fuel tank *The fuel tank holds 14 gallons of petrol.*

a fuel gauge *I noticed the fuel gauge was on empty so I pulled into the nearest gas station.*

fuel consumption (=the amount used) *Fuel consumption averages 54 miles per gallon.*

fuel economy/efficiency *Modern cars have much greater fuel economy.*

PHRASES

sth is running low on fuel (=it does not have much fuel left) *The plane was running low on fuel.*

full adj

1 containing as much or as many things or people as possible, so there is no space left

Grammar

Full is usually used after the verb **be** in this meaning.

NOUNS

a plane/train/bus/car is full *The train was completely full.*

a hotel/restaurant is full *All the hotels are full in August.*

a course/class is full *The college said the course was full and that I'd have to apply again next year.*

a glass/cup/plate is full *He kept pouring until the glass was full.*

a box/bag/suitcase is full *The suitcase was full of clothes.*

a cupboard is full *There was a cupboard full of toys.*

sb's mouth is full (=full of food) *You shouldn't talk with your mouth full.*

a full tank *The car has a full tank of gas.*

ADVERBS

completely full *Each day the café was completely full.*

almost/nearly/virtually/practically full *The bus was almost full and we had to sit separately.*

half full/three-quarters full *The cups are only half full.*

PHRASES

crammed/stuffed/packed full of sb/sth (=very full of people or things) *The hall was crammed full of people.*

chock full of sb/sth informal (=containing a lot of people or things) *The book is chock full of useful information.*

full to the brim (=full to the top with liquid) *The bath was full to the brim with hot water.*

full to bursting (with sth) (=extremely full) *The fridge is full to bursting with pies, cakes, and drinks.*

Full of

You often use **full of** when saying that something contains a lot of things or people: *The book is full of fascinating information.*

Full up

You say that hotels, restaurants, courses etc are **full up**, when there are no more places available: *The hotel is full up for the next three weeks.*

THESAURUS: full

packed

street | road | room | store | restaurant | hall | house | theatre | train | bus | plane | audience completely full of people. **Packed** is a little informal:

The streets are packed with late night shoppers. | The restaurant is packed on Friday nights. | Wherever they play, the house is always packed (=the concert hall or theatre is full). | He gave a speech to a packed audience of students (=a hall full of people who have come to watch or listen to something).

bursting with sth

extremely full of something:

Her wardrobe was bursting with coats and shoes. | At this time of year, the garden is bursting with flowers.

crammed with sb/sth

so full that you cannot fit anyone or anything else in – often used when you think there are too many people or things:

In summer, the hotels are crammed with tourists. | The shelves are crammed with books on art and design.

teeming with sth

full of people, animals etc that are all moving around:

*The rivers are teeming with fish. | The town is teeming with tourists. | The rainforest is **teeming with life** (=many different animals live there).*

overflowing

so full of things, liquid, or people that some of them come outside:

*Heavy rains and overflowing rivers have flooded hundreds of towns and villages. | The drawers were **overflowing with** magazines. | The little meeting hall was **overflowing with** people.*

overloaded

used about a vehicle or a ship which has too many people or things in it:

*an overloaded fishing boat | The trucks are often **grossly overloaded** (=far too overloaded).*

Half full or half empty?

If you say that someone's **glass is always half empty**, you mean that this person is a pessimist, and is never happy with his or her situation.

Someone who thinks their **glass is half full** has a more positive attitude to life.

ANTONYMS full → empty

2 including all of something

Grammar

Full is always used with **the** in this meaning.

NOUNS

the full amount/length/extent (of sth) *The insurance company agreed to pay the full amount.*

the full cost/price (of sth) *The full cost of the repairs could be over \$30,000.*

the full range (of sth) *Patients will have access to the full range of services.*

the full effect/impact (of sth) *People are starting to feel the full impact of the recession.*

the full force *The building suffered the full force of the bomb.*

fun *n, adj*

an experience or activity that is very enjoyable

ADJECTIVES

good fun *BrE: It was good fun working with him.*

great/tremendous fun *The show is great fun for all the family.*

harmless fun (=not likely to upset or offend anyone) *People say these video games are just harmless fun, but some parents disagree.*

VERBS

have fun *Did you have fun at the party?*

join in the fun *On festival days the whole village joins in the fun.*

sth sounds (like) fun *A picnic sounds like fun.*

spoil/ruin the fun *It was cold on the beach but we didn't let that spoil the fun.*

fun + NOUNS

a fun time (=an enjoyable experience)

Everyone had a really fun time at the beach.

PHRASES

just for fun/just for the fun of it (=because you enjoy it) *She's the kind of person who learns a new language just for the fun of it.*

a lot of fun (also lots of fun) *The kids had a lot of fun singing and dancing.*

sth is no fun/not much fun (=not enjoyable) *Being stuck in a traffic jam for three hours was no fun.*

sth is not sb's idea of fun (=something is not the kind of thing you enjoy) *Camping in the rain is not my idea of fun.*

sth is half the fun (=it is a very enjoyable part of something) *Planning a vacation is half the fun.*

have a sense of fun *Children like her because she has a great sense of fun.*

a fun thing to do *We're planning lots of fun things for the children to do.*

in fun (=with the intention of being funny, not of upsetting someone) *We teased her, but just in fun.*

THESAURUS: fun

agreeable, rewarding, entertaining, fun → **enjoyable**

function¹ *Ac n*

the purpose or job that something or someone has

ADJECTIVES

an important/key function *Your kidneys have an important function – they remove waste from your blood.*

a basic function *The most basic function of a home is to provide shelter.*

a useful function *These rules serve no useful function.*

a special/particular/specific function *Each part of the machine has a special function.*

the main/primary function *The main function of a business is to make money.*

a dual function (=two purposes) *School has a dual function: to educate children and help them to become good citizens.*

bodily functions (=eating, breathing, going to the toilet etc) *The nervous system regulates our bodily functions.*

VERBS

have a function *The two switches have different functions.*

fulfil/serve a function (=have a function) *Singing seems to serve two functions for birds – defending territory and attracting females.*

funny adj

1 making you laugh

NOUNS

a funny story *The book is a funny story about a young robot called Tonk.*

a funny joke *Someone told me a really funny joke.*

a funny book/film/play etc *'Shrek' is such a funny film.*

a funny scene/line/part *The play has some funny lines in it.*

a funny moment *There were several funny moments during the trip.*

VERBS

find sth funny (=think that something is funny) *I didn't find the video funny at all.*

look/sound funny *John looked funny in his new hat.*

ADVERBS

hilariously/hysterically/outrageously funny (=extremely funny) *The film is hilariously funny.*

wickedly funny (=very funny but slightly cruel) *He did some wickedly funny impressions of his classmates.*

wonderfully/brilliantly funny *This is a wonderfully funny book.*

wildly funny *The kids all seemed to think it was wildly funny.*

genuinely funny *He was a genuinely funny man.*

unintentionally funny *Some parts of the film are unintentionally funny.*

not that funny *A lot of his jokes aren't that funny.*

PHRASES

see the funny side (=see that something is partly funny) *Luckily, when I explained the situation, he saw the funny side.*

THESAURUS: funny

amusing

anecdote | story | incident | tale | moment | company | spectacle

funny and enjoyable. **Amusing** is more formal than **funny**. It is often used when something is a little funny and makes you smile, rather than laugh:

The book contains many amusing anecdotes about his time in the army (=interesting stories about things that happened to you). | He recalled an amusing incident which happened on his wedding day. | There are some highly amusing moments in the film. | He is very amusing company (=he says things that make you smile and you enjoy being with him). | His parents didn't find the situation very amusing.

humorous

look | story | tale | account | anecdote | moment | speech | verse | style

intended to be funny – used about stories, films, articles etc that have situations that are a little funny:

The novel takes a humorous look at relationships. | It's a humorous short story set in New York. | There were some mildly humorous moments in the film. | He gave a humorous speech at the wedding. | She has written a book of humorous verse.

light-hearted

look | comedy | fun | conversation | banter

done for amusement or enjoyment, and not intended to be serious:

The programme is a light-hearted look at recent political events. | The film is a light-hearted comedy. | The jokes were all good light-hearted fun. | There was some light-hearted banter between Kim and Frank (=conversation in which friends or colleagues gently tease each other).

witty

remark | comment | conversation | repartee | dialogue | line | script | comedy | riposte

using words in a funny and clever way:

Dan often makes witty remarks. | He had some jokes and witty repartee to entertain us (=conversation in which someone gives clever funny answers). | The movie contains some witty lines. | He managed to come up with a witty riposte (=a witty reply).

comic

opera | novel | tale | drama | performer | performance | character | genius

a comic opera, novel etc is intended to be funny. **Comic** is also used about performers and characters:

This comic novel is about the daily life of the Slivenowicz family. | The film is a comic drama starring Penélope Cruz. | Walt Disney created some famous comic characters. | Charlie Chaplin was a comic genius (=a brilliantly funny performer).

comical

funny in a strange or silly way, especially without intending to be funny:

There was something rather comical about the situation. | He plays a comical little man who is full of his own self-importance.

hilarious

story | tale | show | parody | moment | scene | consequences

extremely funny:

She told me a hilarious story about how they met each other. | It was a hilarious parody of a cowboy movie (=a funny film, book etc that copies another more serious film, book etc). | There is one particularly hilarious moment in the play. | In the film, she starts her own restaurant, with hilarious consequences.

hysterical *informal*

extremely funny:

You should have seen the look on his face. It was hysterical!

Hysterical is used in informal spoken English. It does not have any strong collocations, and is often used after the verb **be**.

2 a little strange

VERBS

seem funny *It seems funny that he didn't call.*

sound/look/smell/taste funny *The milk tasted funny.*

feel funny *I feel a bit funny – I need to sit down.*

NOUNS

a funny feeling *I had a funny feeling that I'd seen her somewhere before.*

a funny situation *No one knew what to do – it was a funny situation.*

a funny sound/noise *There was a funny sound coming from the engine.*

a funny smell/taste *What's that funny smell?*

furious *adj* **THESAURUS** **angry**

fury *n*

extreme, often uncontrolled, anger

PHRASES

be shaking with fury *Her face had turned bright red, and she was shaking with fury.*

sb's face is twisted/contorted with fury *The man was so angry that his face was twisted with fury.*

VERBS

cause/provoke fury *The decision caused fury among local people.*

vent your fury (=express it) *He vented his fury by kicking over a wastepaper basket.*

ADJECTIVES

pent-up/suppressed fury (=which has not been expressed) *All her pent-up fury came pouring out.*

PREPOSITIONS

in fury *She began screaming at her husband in fury.*

fuss *n*

a lot of worry, anger, or excitement, usually about unimportant things

ADJECTIVES

a big/great/huge fuss *There was a big fuss when he couldn't find the keys.*

unnecessary fuss *I can't understand all this unnecessary fuss.*

VERBS

make/kick up/create a fuss *There's no need to make such a fuss.*

cause a fuss *The new rules caused a lot of fuss.*

fuss surrounds sth *After all the fuss that surrounded the film, I expected it to be really shocking.*

PREPOSITIONS

without (any) fuss *The children went upstairs quietly and without any fuss.*

a fuss about/over sth *There was a big fuss about who was going to sit at the head of the table.*

PHRASES

a (big) fuss about nothing *People complained that the buildings would spoil the view, but it was all a big fuss about nothing.*

what all the fuss is about (=why people are worried, angry, or excited) *It's just a football game – I don't understand what all the fuss is about.*

with the minimum of fuss/with minimum fuss (=with hardly any problems or interruptions) *The workmen did the job quickly and with the minimum of fuss.*

futile *adj* **THESAURUS** **useless**

future¹ *n*

the time after the present, or what will happen to someone or something then

PHRASES

in the near future (=soon) *We're planning to move house in the near future.*

in the immediate future (=very soon) *There will be no major changes in the immediate future.*

in the distant future (=a very long time from now) *I don't worry about what might happen in the distant future.*

in the not too distant future (=quite soon) *We're planning to go there again in the not too distant future.*

for the foreseeable future (=for as long as you can imagine) *The population is expected to keep growing for the foreseeable future.*

sb's plans/hopes for the future *What are your hopes for the future?*

what the future holds/will bring (=what will happen) *No one knows what the future holds for the company.*

sb has a great/bright future ahead of them *He's a fantastic actor and has a great future ahead of him.*

sb's/sth's future is in sb's hands (=they will decide or control it) *The corporation's future is in the hands of a new management team.*

ADJECTIVES

a great/good future *The country has a great future.*

report/post a gain (=announce a gain in profits) *Stores posted big gains over the Christmas period.*

PREPOSITIONS

gains in sth *There have been substantial gains in efficiency.*

gallery *n*

a building where people can see pieces of art

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + gallery

an art gallery *I first saw his paintings in an art gallery in Spain.*

a picture gallery *The picture gallery is full of treasures.*

a portrait gallery (=showing paintings of people) *The latest painting of Queen Elizabeth is on display at the National Portrait Gallery.*

a private gallery (=owned by a private person) *The drawing was sold to a private gallery.*

a national gallery (=owned by a country) *Edinburgh has three national galleries.*

VERBS

visit/go to a gallery *The children visited the gallery on a school trip.*

a painting hangs in a gallery *Many of her pictures hang in the National Gallery of Canada.*

a gallery shows sth (also **a gallery exhibits sth** formal): *The gallery is showing a series of watercolour works.*

a gallery contains sth (also **a gallery houses sth** formal): *Today the gallery houses a fine collection of photographs and paintings.*

exhibit sth in/at a gallery *It was the first time that the paintings had been exhibited in a gallery.*

gallery + NOUNS

gallery space (=an area for displaying art) *She exhibited her work in the gallery space of the Institute of Art and Technology.*

PREPOSITIONS

at a gallery *More of his work is on show at the gallery.*

in a gallery *It is one of my favourite pictures in the gallery.*

gamble *n*

an action or plan that involves a risk but that you hope will succeed

ADJECTIVES

a big/huge/enormous gamble *Giving him the job seemed like a big gamble.*

a calculated gamble (=in which you consider the risks very carefully) *He made a calculated gamble that an early election would return his party to power.*

a desperate gamble *The parents took a desperate gamble by throwing their baby out of the burning building.*

a reckless gamble (=not at all careful) *He*

described the spending cuts as a reckless gamble with people's livelihoods.

a political gamble *The decision was a huge political gamble.*

VERBS

take a gamble *He was never afraid to take a gamble.*

a gamble pays off (=succeeds) *She gave up a career in law to become an actor, but the gamble has paid off.*

a gamble fails *You must prepare for the possibility that a gamble might fail.*

PREPOSITIONS

a gamble on sth/sb *The publishers' gamble on an unknown author paid off.*

PHRASES

be something of a gamble (also **be a bit of a gamble** spoken) (=involve an amount of risk) *A few years ago, launching a weekly magazine for men would have been something of a gamble.*

gambler *n*

someone who likes to risk money on the result of card games, races etc

ADJECTIVES

a heavy gambler (=someone who gambles a lot and loses a lot of money) *Her father was a heavy gambler and he was always in debt.*

a compulsive gambler (=someone who cannot stop gambling) *The organization was set up to help compulsive gamblers.*

a professional gambler *Many professional gamblers owe great sums of money to other gamblers.*

game *n*

an activity in which you try to win according to agreed rules, or an occasion when a game is played

VERBS

play a game *They explained how to play the game.*

have a game BrE: *They were having a game of golf.*

see/watch a game *Did you see the game last night?*

win/lose a game *Our team won the game with a last-minute goal.*

draw a game BrE (=end the game with the same score as the opposing team or player) *We played badly and were lucky to draw the game.*

the game is tied (=both teams or players have the same score) *The game was tied 10-10 at half-time.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + game

a close/tight game (=when both teams or players play equally well and might win) *It was a close game and we should have won it.*

a tough/hard game (=one that is hard to win) *They are a good team, and it will be a very tough game for us.*

a card/board/ball game *Bridge is a card game for four people.*

a computer/video game *He was up all night playing computer games.*

a team game *I wasn't very good at team games when I was at school.*

a party game *The kids had fun playing party games.*

indoor games *There is a hall for indoor games and social functions.*

a basketball/baseball/football etc game AmE: *He was watching a baseball game on TV.*

a home game (=played at a team's own sports field) *Next Saturday Liverpool have a home game against Manchester United.*

an away game (=played at an opposing team's sports field) *We didn't win any away games last season.*

PREPOSITIONS

a game of tennis/football etc *We played another game of chess.*

a game against/with sb *I watched their last game against Holland.*

PHRASES

the rules of the game *It's against the rules of the game to pick up the ball.*

gang

a group of young people who spend time together, often one that fights against other groups

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + gang

a criminal gang *He had links with a criminal gang.*

a rival gang (=that another gang competes or fights with) *Fighting between rival gangs left dozens of people injured.*

a street gang (=which spends a lot of time on the streets) *He belonged to a notorious street gang in Chicago.*

an armed gang (=with guns) *An armed gang stole jewels worth more than five million pounds.*

a masked gang (=wearing masks to cover their faces) *She woke up to find a masked gang in her bedroom.*

a teenage gang *Teenage gangs often carry knives to make themselves look tough.*

VERBS

join a gang *He was only eight when he joined the gang.*

belong to a gang *Eleven men belonging to a local gang were arrested.*

gang + NOUNS

a gang member (also **a member of a gang**) *Shootings by gang members have increased.*

a gang leader *Gang leaders used cellphones to order the attacks.*

gang violence *Local people say that gang violence is common.*

gang crime (=crime committed by gangs) *Most gang crime happens between gang members.*

gang warfare (=fighting between gangs) *Gang warfare is wrecking the neighborhood.*

gang culture *Tattoos have become an important part of gang culture.*

PREPOSITIONS

a gang of kids/youths etc *There are always gangs of kids hanging around.*

be in a gang (=be a member of a gang) *Has he ever been in a gang?*

gap

1 a big difference between two situations, amounts, groups of people etc

ADJECTIVES

a big/large/wide gap *There is a big gap between our system and theirs.*

a huge/enormous gap *A huge gap still exists between rich and poor.*

a yawning gap (=a very big difference) *There was a yawning gap between the earnings of men and women.*

a narrow gap *The gap between the two candidates is very narrow.*

a growing/widening gap *There is a growing gap in the academic performance of boys and girls.*

a cultural gap (=a difference between cultures) *There is a cultural gap between Europe and America on this subject.*

NOUNS + gap

an age gap (=a difference in age between two people) *There is a big age gap between them - she's 17 and he's 52.*

a generation gap (=the difference in attitudes between older and younger people) *One reason for the generation gap is that younger people have been brought up in a very different way from their parents.*

the gender gap (=the difference between the situation of men and women) *The gender gap was visible in the way men and women voted during the presidential elections.*

the trade gap (=the difference between the amounts a country imports and exports) *Britain's trade gap almost doubled last month.*

VERBS

bridge/close/narrow the gap (=make it less big) *The book aims to bridge the gap between theory and practice.*

widen the gap *Technology has widened the gap between people with and without computer skills.*

the gap narrows/widens (=gets smaller or bigger) *The gap is widening between rich and poor.*

a gap exists A cultural gap exists between the older and the younger generations.

PREPOSITIONS

a gap between sth and sth The gap between rich and poor has grown wider.

2 a space between two things

ADJECTIVES

a narrow/small/little/tiny gap She has a small gap between her front teeth.

a big/wide/enormous/massive gap There is a big gap in the fence.

VERBS

fill in/seal a gap We filled in the gaps around the windows.

a gap opens up A gap had opened up between the wall and the ceiling.

PREPOSITIONS

a gap between There are gaps between the floorboards.

3 a situation in which there is something missing

ADJECTIVES

a big/large/huge/great gap There were huge gaps in his story.

an important/major gap The present study aims to fill an important gap in the research.

VERBS

leave/create a gap His mother's death left a big gap in his life.

fill/plug a gap This machine has been designed to fill a gap in the market.

identify/spot a gap Losey had identified a gap in the existing research.

PREPOSITIONS

a gap in sth There are still many gaps in our knowledge of the laws of physics.

garbage *n* AmE

waste material, such as paper, empty containers, and food thrown away

VERBS

take/put the garbage out Can you take the garbage out for me?

dump garbage (=leave it in a place, especially where it should not be) At the time, the city dumped surplus garbage into the bay.

collect the garbage They come to collect the garbage once every week.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + garbage

household garbage (=produced by people at home) Here are some ideas for reducing your household garbage.

kitchen garbage How can I keep the kitchen garbage from smelling bad?

recyclable garbage (=that can be treated and used again) The blue box is for recyclable garbage.

rotting garbage (=decaying) The smell of rotting garbage was overpowering.

garbage + NOUNS

a garbage can (=a container with a lid for holding waste until it can be taken away) Go and put it in the garbage can.

a garbage truck The garbage truck had already taken the bags away.


a garbage collector (also **a garbage man** informal): She didn't want the garbage collectors seeing what she'd thrown out.

garbage collection People want more frequent garbage collection.

a garbage bag/sack (=a large plastic bag for putting garbage in) Vegetable waste should be put in the green garbage bag.

a garbage dump (=a place where garbage is taken and left) I'm going to take these old toys to the garbage dump.

PREPOSITIONS

 **in the garbage** Don't throw glass in the garbage – recycle it.

In British English, people usually say **rubbish**.

garden *n* especially BrE

the area of land next to a house, where there are flowers, grass, and other plants

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + garden

a beautiful/lovely garden The cottage has a beautiful garden with lots of pretty flowers.

the front garden (=at the front of a house) Our house only has a small front garden.

the back garden (=at the back of a house) The children are playing in the back garden.

a flower/rose/vegetable/herb garden The vegetable garden has rows of cabbages and lettuces.

a well-kept/tidy/neat garden The hotel is set in a well-kept garden.

an overgrown garden (=covered with plants that have grown in an uncontrolled way) The garden is getting rather overgrown.

a secluded garden (=private and quiet) There is a secluded garden where patients can sit.

VERBS

water the garden I need to water the garden – the soil is really dry.

weed the garden (=remove unwanted wild plants) She was outside weeding the garden.

do the garden informal (=take care of it by doing gardening) Grandad is too old to do the garden himself.

plant a garden They planted a beautiful rose garden in her memory.

design a garden Ask a professional to design your garden.

garden + NOUNS

- a garden centre** (=a shop selling plants and things for the garden) *She has gone to the garden centre to get some new plants.*
- a garden shed** (=a small building in the garden for storing tools and equipment) *The lawnmower is kept in the garden shed.*
- a garden path/gate/wall** *Martin was waiting by the garden gate.*
- garden waste** (=grass, leaves etc that you have cut and do not want) *You can use garden waste to make compost.*

PREPOSITIONS

- in the garden** *She is outside in the garden.*

PHRASES

- (at) the bottom of the garden** (=the part furthest from the house) *There was a big apple tree at the bottom of the garden.*

In American English, people usually say **yard**.

garment n **THESAURUS** clothes

gas n

- 1** a substance such as air, which is not solid or liquid, and usually cannot be seen

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + gas

- natural gas** (=gas from under the earth, used for cooking and heating) *Russia supplies huge amounts of natural gas to European countries.*
 - a poisonous/toxic/noxious gas** (=a harmful gas) *The factories send toxic gases into the atmosphere.*
 - greenhouse gas** (=a gas that traps heat above the Earth, causing the surface to become warmer) *If we don't reduce greenhouse gas emissions, we can expect more extreme weather events.*
 - tear gas** (=a gas that stings your eyes, used by the police to control crowds) *Police fired tear gas into the crowd.*
- VERBS**
- gas escapes/leaks (out)** *Ammonia gas leaked out of a broken pipe at the factory.*
 - smell gas** *I'm sure I can smell gas. Can you?*
 - produce gas** *The chemical reaction produced a toxic gas.*
 - release/emit/give off gas** (=let it flow out) *Burning waste releases harmful gases into the atmosphere.*
 - breathe in gas** (also **inhale gas** formal): *Many protesters were suffering the effects of inhaling tear gas.*

gas + NOUNS

- a gas cooker/oven/stove** *Do you use a gas or an electric cooker?*
- a gas fire/heater** (=an object that burns gas

to heat a room) *She turned on the gas fire to warm up the room.*

- a gas leak** (=gas that comes out through a hole in something) *If you suspect a gas leak, do not turn on an electric light.*
- the gas supply** (=the system for supplying gas to someone's house) *Engineers have finally restored the gas supply to the estate.*
- a gas pipeline** *Building the gas pipeline was a joint project involving China and Russia.*

- 2** AmE liquid used to power cars and other vehicles

VERBS

- fill (a vehicle) up with gas** *I filled up with gas before leaving Fresno.*
- run out of gas** (=have no more gas) *We've run out of gas on Route 12. Can you come get us?*

gas + NOUNS

- a gas station** (=a place where you take your car to fill it with gas) *I pulled into the gas station and filled up.*
- a gas pump** (=a machine for putting gas into cars at a gas station) *There were long lines at the gas pumps.*

In British English, people say **petrol**.

gate n

the part of a fence or outside wall that you can open and close to enter or leave a place

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + gate

- the front/back/side gate** *She stood outside the front gate of the cottage.*
- the school/factory/prison etc gates** *Parents were waiting outside the school gates.*
- the main gate/the entrance gate** *Soldiers were guarding the main gate.*
- the garden gate** *Ellie ran down the path towards the garden gate.*

VERBS + gate

- open a gate** *He heard Jack open the gate.*
- close/shut a gate** *Please close the gate behind you.*
- go through a gate** *They went through the gate into the field.*
- lock a gate** (=close it with a key) *The gate was locked, so he climbed over it.*
- leave a gate open** *Someone left the gate open, and the dog got out.*

gate + VERBS

- a gate opens** *The gate opens automatically when you approach it.*
- a gate closes/shuts** *The gates shut behind him with a loud bang.*
- a gate swings open/shut** (=it opens or shuts quickly and smoothly) *As the gate swung open, it hit me in the face.*

a gate leads to sth *She ran through the gate leading to the station.*

PREPOSITIONS

through a gate *Go through the gate and turn left.*

PHRASES

a set of gates *We passed through a second set of gates.*

gather ^v

1 to get things from different places and put them together

NOUNS

gather information/data/statistics *We hope to gather information about people's eating habits.*

gather evidence *Police have not yet gathered enough evidence to prosecute him.*

gather intelligence (=secretly collect information about someone or something) *They were attempting to gather intelligence on US military operations.*

gather material *The research was based on material we had gathered from interviews.*

gather views/opinions/ideas *The meeting aimed to gather the views of local people.*

gather support *He met with other leaders to gather support for military action.*

2 to come together and form a group

NOUNS

people gather *Thousands of people gathered outside the embassy.*

a crowd/group gathers *A crowd gathered to watch the fight.*

friends/family gather *Friends and family gathered to celebrate her 21st birthday.*

supporters/fans gather *His supporters gathered outside the High Court.*

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

gather around/round *Gather round, everyone, so that you can see the screen.*

gather together *Could the bride's family all gather together for a photo?*

quickly/hastily/hurriedly gather *They hastily gathered around the television, to see if there was any news about the storm.*

VERBS

begin to gather *A crowd began to gather outside the building.*

3 to increase in speed, development etc

NOUNS

gather speed/pace *The train started to gather speed.*

gather momentum (=make progress and become more successful) *The campaign is gathering momentum.*

gaze¹ ^v

to look at something for a long time

ADVERBS

gaze longingly (=showing you want something very much) *She was gazing longingly at the cakes.*

gaze wistfully (=in a thoughtful and slightly sad way) *She sat gazing wistfully at photographs of her family far away.*

gaze lovingly/fondly *The old man gazed lovingly at his grandchildren.*

gaze absently/blankly/vacantly (=without paying attention, while thinking about something else) *He sat gazing blankly at the screen.*

PREPOSITIONS

gaze at sb/sth *I gazed at her with admiration.*

PHRASES

gaze into sb's eyes *The two lovers gazed into each other's eyes.*

gaze out of the window *He gazed out of the window at the rain.*

gaze into the distance (=at a point far away, without paying attention) *She just gazed into the distance and gave no answer.*

gaze in awe/wonder at sth *They gazed in awe at the beauty of the landscape.*

gaze² ⁿ

the action of looking at someone or something, especially for a long time

gaze + VERBS

sb's gaze falls on sb/sth (=someone looks at someone or something) *My gaze fell on a photograph on the table.*

sb's gaze moves/travels/shifts *His gaze moved around the room.*

VERBS + gaze

lower/drop your gaze (=look down) *Her eyes met his and she immediately dropped her gaze.*

avert your gaze (=stop looking at someone or something) *He averted his gaze from the beggars that lined the streets.*

meet sb's gaze (=look at someone who is looking at you) *He said nothing, but met her gaze.*

hold sb's gaze (=keep looking at someone who is looking at you) *He held her gaze for a few seconds, then continued eating.*

fix your gaze on sb/sth (also keep your gaze (fixed) on sb/sth) (=look at someone or something continuously) *He fixed his gaze on the clock behind her.*

PHRASES

under sb's watchful gaze (=with someone watching carefully) *Little children play in the sand under the watchful gaze of their parents.*

gear ⁿ

1 the machinery in a vehicle such as a car, truck, or bicycle that you use to go comfortably at different speeds

ADJECTIVES

first/second/third etc gear *The traffic was so bad that we never got out of second gear.*

a low gear (=first or second gear, for going slowly) *You should use a low gear when going up a hill.*

a high gear (=third, fourth, or fifth gear, for going fast) *Put the car into a higher gear.*

top gear BrE (=the highest gear) *Hamilton slipped effortlessly into top gear.*

bottom gear BrE (=the lowest gear) *The car trundled slowly forward in bottom gear.*

the wrong gear *The straining noises from the engine told him that he was in the wrong gear.*

reverse gear (=for driving backwards) *He put the truck into reverse gear.*

VERBS

change gear (also **switch/shift gears** AmE): *It takes some time to learn when to change gear.*

put a car into (first/second/third etc) gear *He put the car into gear, and they moved slowly forwards.*

gear + NOUNS

a gear lever (also **a gear stick** BrE), **a gear shift** AmE (=the stick you move to change gears) *She pushed the gear lever into first gear.*

gear change *A rapid gear change gave them speed on the corner.*

PREPOSITIONS

in first/third etc gear *Andy drove cautiously along in second gear.*

in gear (=with one of the gears connected) *Don't turn off the engine while you're still in gear.*

out of gear (=with no gear connected) *It's a good habit to take the car out of gear while you're at a stoplight.*

2 equipment or clothes for a particular activity

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + gear

protective gear *Police officers wore protective gear including vests and helmets.*

climbing/walking gear *I changed out of my walking gear into some jeans.*

outdoor gear *The store sells waterproof jackets, backpacks, and other outdoor gear.*

camping/fishing gear *We packed all the camping gear into the car.*

combat/battle gear *Armed troops in full battle gear were seen entering the camp.*

riot gear (=worn by police dealing with violent crowds) *70 police officers in riot gear raided the site.*

THESAURUS: gear

clothing, garment, dress, wear, gear, wardrobe
→ **clothes**

gender ^{Ac} ⁿ

the fact of being male or female

gender + NOUNS

a gender difference *There are gender differences in the way alcohol affects the brain.*

a gender gap (=a difference between how men and women behave or how they are treated) *A gender gap still exists between men and women's pay.*

gender roles (=the positions of men and women in society) *It is a country where gender roles have remained largely unchanged.*

gender bias/inequality/discrimination (=when one gender is treated unfairly) *Her research investigates gender bias in the classroom.*

gender equality (=when men and women are treated in the same way) *Organizations have a duty to promote gender equality.*

a gender stereotype (=a fixed idea of what men or women are like) *The characters in the novel were criticized for being gender stereotypes.*

PHRASES

on (the) grounds of gender (=because of gender) *Discrimination on grounds of race or gender is forbidden.*

gene ⁿ

a part of a cell in a living thing that controls what it looks like, how it grows, and how it develops. People get their genes from their parents

ADJECTIVES

a dominant gene (=a gene that has its effect when there is only one copy of it) *The disease occurs when a child inherits a single dominant gene from a parent with the disease.*

a recessive gene (=a gene that has its effect only when there are two copies of it) *The gene for blue eyes is recessive.*

a defective/faulty gene (=a gene that does not work properly) *The disease is caused by a defective gene.*

VERBS

carry a gene (=have a gene that causes a medical condition which you can pass on to your children) *Some women carry a gene which makes them more likely to develop breast cancer.*

inherit a gene (=get a gene from your parents) *Children who inherit the gene may be born with physical abnormalities.*

pass on a gene (=have it inherited by your children) *All animals try to maximize their chances of passing on their genes to the next generation.*

a work of genius *The building is beautiful, a work of genius.*

a man/artist/writer etc of genius *P. G. Wodehouse was a comic writer of genius, whose books still make us laugh.*

genre ⁿ

a style of writing, art, film, music etc

ADJECTIVES

literary/musical/artistic genre *Writers such as Virginia Woolf created a new literary genre.*

a particular genre *Lucas is a master of his own particular genre of film-making.*

a popular genre *A popular genre within the children's publishing market is that of 'real life' teenage fiction.*

VERBS

create/invent/develop a genre *Tarantino has created his own genre of movies.*

mix/combine genres *The book was a fun way to combine two genres that I've always liked: the action thriller and the horror story.*

gentle ^{adj}

1 kind, and careful not to hurt anyone or anything

NOUNS

a gentle man/woman/person *My mother was a kind gentle woman.*

gentle fingers/hand *Her gentle hand stroked my hair.*

a gentle smile *He looked up at her with a gentle smile.*

a gentle touch *He felt his mother's gentle touch on his shoulder.*

a gentle voice *"Where does it hurt?" she asked in a gentle voice.*

gentle persuasion (=speaking kindly in order to persuade someone) *With a little gentle persuasion, the boy's mother got him to go into the classroom.*

PREPOSITIONS

gentle with sb/sth *Be gentle with the baby.*

2 not strong, loud, or extreme

NOUNS

gentle exercise *Gentle exercise will help you feel better more quickly.*

a gentle breeze *There was a gentle breeze, just enough to move the curtains slightly.*

a gentle rain *A gentle rain began to fall.*

gentle pressure *Apply gentle pressure to the wound to stop the bleeding.*

PREPOSITIONS

gentle on sth *Use a soap that is gentle on your skin.*

genuine ^{adj}

1 if a thing or person is genuine, they really are what they seem to be

NOUNS

a document/letter/signature etc is genuine *The historians believe that the documents are genuine.*

a painting/work of art is genuine *An art expert confirmed that the painting was genuine.*

a genuine attempt/effort *There was a genuine attempt to improve living conditions for the working classes.*

a genuine mistake *It wasn't clear if this was a genuine mistake, or a deliberate action.*

ADVERBS

absolutely genuine (=completely genuine) *They are sure that the pictures are absolutely genuine.*

PHRASES

sb/sth is the genuine article (=they really are as good as people say they are) *He was the genuine article, a great champion who never did anything but his best.*

THESAURUS: genuine

genuine, authentic, true, bona fide/bonafide, hard → **real (1)**

2 genuine feelings are sincere

NOUNS

genuine concern *There is genuine concern about the safety of nuclear energy.*

genuine interest/enthusiasm *The students seem to have a genuine interest in the subject.*

a genuine desire *She was motivated by a genuine desire to help the poor.*

a genuine love/affection/respect *Wilentz is a fine scholar, and I have a genuine respect for his work.*

a genuine belief *There was a genuine belief that she was the best person for the job.*

genuine surprise/fear *The decision was greeted with genuine surprise by many older members.*

a genuine person (=someone who is honest about their feelings) *Although she is a famous movie star, she is also a very genuine person.*

ADVERBS

perfectly genuine (=completely genuine) *Their surprise seemed perfectly genuine.*

germ ⁿ

a type of bacteria that spreads disease

VERBS

spread germs *Cover your mouth when you cough so that you don't spread germs.*

protect against germs *Washing your hands will help protect you against germs.*

kill germs *Bleach is good for killing germs.*

be exposed to germs (=be in a place where there are germs) *We are constantly exposed to germs and the possibility of infection.*

contain germs *She is worried that the dirt contains germs that will harm her children.*

ADJECTIVES

deadly germs (=germs that can kill people) *Terrorists could use deadly germs to carry out an attack on a population.*

nasty/harmful germs *There are some nasty germs around.*

germ + NOUNS

germ warfare (=the use of harmful bacteria in war to cause illness and death among the enemy) *The Biological Weapons Convention is a treaty that bans germ warfare.*

PHRASES

the spread of germs *Good hygiene has a major role to play in preventing the spread of germs.*

gesture ⁿ

1 something that you say or do to show how you feel about someone or something

ADJECTIVES

a nice gesture *It would be a nice gesture if we gave them something to say 'thank you'.*

a friendly gesture *Ella bought him a drink as a friendly gesture.*

a generous gesture *Giving all that money was a very generous gesture.*

a grand gesture (=something you do to impress people) *Love is not about grand gestures and expensive gifts.*

a dramatic gesture *In politics, dramatic gestures are sometimes necessary.*

a bold gesture (=that shows you are not scared of taking risks) *Appointing one of his opponents to the government was seen as a bold gesture.*

a token gesture (=done to pretend that you are dealing with a problem) *The inclusion of one woman on the committee was seen as a token gesture.*

a symbolic gesture (=that is intended to show how you feel) *In a symbolic gesture, he gave up his \$10,000 monthly presidential salary.*

an empty gesture (=that does not achieve anything important) *Sacking his deputy was an empty gesture which failed to satisfy his critics.*

a futile gesture (=that is not likely to have any effect) *Sending extra troops was a futile gesture.*

a conciliatory gesture (=that shows you want to solve an argument or disagreement) *The government made several conciliatory gestures to the protesters.*

VERBS

make a gesture *Shouldn't we make some gesture to show we appreciate what she's done?*

PREPOSITIONS

a gesture towards/toward sth *The visit was regarded as a gesture towards repairing relations between the two countries.*

PHRASES

a gesture of goodwill (also **a goodwill gesture**) (=done to show you want to be helpful) *As a gesture of goodwill, customers will be offered a full refund.*

a gesture of friendship *He invited the two men to his house as a gesture of friendship.*

a gesture of support *She wrote a letter to the prime minister as a gesture of support.*

a gesture of solidarity (=done to show loyalty and support) *People sent food parcels to the strikers in a gesture of solidarity.*

a gesture of defiance (=done to show that you will not do what someone tells you to do) *The rebels launched an attack as a gesture of defiance.*

2 a movement of part of your body, especially your hands or head, to show what you mean or how you feel

VERBS

make a gesture *He made a gesture to the waiter.*

ADJECTIVES

a rude/obscene gesture *Luke made a rude gesture with his finger.*

an angry/threatening gesture *One of the men made a threatening gesture and I decided to leave.*

get ^v

1 if you get something, you are given it or buy it, or you find it or succeed in having it through your efforts

Grammar

Get is rarely used in the passive. **Obtain** and **acquire** are often used in the passive.

NOUNS

get a present/some clothes/some food etc *I got some nice presents for my birthday.*

get a letter/email/phone call/message etc *She gets hundreds of emails every day.*

get a job/get work *It is hard for young people to get jobs.*

get a degree *Sachs got his degree in biology from Yale University.*

get money/get a loan *I don't know where he gets his money from.*

get information/details/sb's address etc *You can get more information from the Tourist Office.*

get an answer/reply/reaction *Hopefully we'll get an answer later today.*

get an invitation/offer/complaint *I got an offer of a place on a course.*

get a ticket/table/room/seat *They managed to get a table at an Italian restaurant.*

get a surprise/shock *I got a shock when I opened the front door.*

get a husband/girlfriend etc *He was worried that he would never get a girlfriend.*

PREPOSITIONS

get sth from sb/sth *We get all our food from our local supermarket.*

get sth for sb/sth *Where did you get the idea for the book?*

Get or have got?

Don't confuse *I got some money* (=I received it) and *I have got some money* (=I have it). **Have got** is only used in the present tense. If you want to talk about having something in the past, you say **I had**, not 'I had got'.

THESAURUS: get

receive

prize | **award** | **present** | **money** | **attention** | **support** | **letter** | **message** | **email** | **call** | **answer** | **invitation** | **offer** | **complaint**

to be given something, or to get something that someone has sent you. **Receive** is more formal than **get**:

The winner will receive a prize of \$500. | The case received a lot of attention in the media. | The police received a phone call from someone who said they had some information. | I called her name, but received no answer.

obtain formal

information | **document** | **copy** | **result** | **sample** | **loan** | **permission** | **degree**

to get something, especially by asking officially, or by studying or examining something. **Obtain** is also used about something that is difficult to get:

More information may be obtained from Cambridge Computers Ltd. | Journalists were able to obtain top secret government documents. | You will need to obtain permission from the author, if you want to publish part of the book. | She obtained a master's degree in German.

acquire formal

company | **business** | **land** | **property** | **painting** | **collection** | **skill** | **knowledge** | **reputation** | **information** | **language**

to get something, especially something big or expensive, or to get skills, knowledge etc:

The investment group acquired the company for \$18 a share. | The Museum of Modern Art acquired a collection of Warhol's work. | The course is for students who want to acquire computer skills. | They are studying how children acquire language.

gain

control | **power** | **independence** | **reputation** | **support** | **popularity** | **experience** | **confidence** | **understanding** | **strength** | **momentum**

to get or achieve something. **Gain** is more formal than **get**:

The army has already gained control of the city. | Algeria gained independence from France in 1962. | Gubbay gained a distinguished reputation as a lawyer. | The sport began to gain popularity in the 1950s. | He gained more confidence in his abilities as a public speaker.

win

prize | **award** | **medal** | **right** | **reputation** | **support** | **respect** | **admiration** | **trust** | **confidence**

to get something as a result of your efforts: *He won the prize for best new writer. | The men are hoping to win the right to stay in the US. | The party won support by promising tax cuts.*

earn

reputation | **right** | **respect** | **praise** | **title** | **admiration**

to get something as a result of your efforts, especially because people think you deserve it:

Johnson earned a reputation as one of the hardest-working players in the game. | The team played well and they have earned the right to be in the final of the competition. | She earned the respect of all her colleagues.

Earn is often used with **himself/herself**:

He had earned himself a reputation as a great artist.

inherit

money | **house** | **estate** | **jewellery** | **fortune** | **wealth** | **property**

to get someone's money or property after they die:

Jo inherited a lot of money from her mother. | Who will inherit the house when he dies? | She felt guilty about her inherited wealth, and gave most of it away.

get hold of sth informal

to get something that is difficult to find:

I have been trying to get hold of a map of the area.

2 to become

THESAURUS: get

get, grow, turn, go, come → **become**

3 if you get to a place, you arrive there

THESAURUS: get

get, come, reach, show up, get in, land, pull in, dock → **arrive**

ghost *n*
the spirit of a dead person that some people think they can feel or see in a place

VERBS

- see a ghost** People say they have seen the ghost of a young girl in the room.
- believe in ghosts** Do you believe in ghosts?
- a ghost haunts a place** The house is supposed to be haunted by ghosts.
- a ghost appears** A ghost appeared through the wall.
- a ghost disappears/vanishes** The ghost suddenly vanished into thin air.

ghost + NOUNS

- a ghost story** 'The Turn of the Screw' is a ghost story by Henry James.

ADJECTIVES

- a friendly ghost** Don't be scared – he's a friendly ghost.

PREPOSITIONS

- the ghost of sb** The ghosts of the dead are believed to come out on that night.

gift *n*
1 something that you give someone, usually on a special occasion

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + gift

- a birthday/wedding/Christmas etc gift** The camera was a birthday gift from his parents.
- a free gift** (=something that a shop or business gives you) If you spend over £50, you get a free gift.
- the perfect/ideal gift** This book is the perfect gift for anybody with an interest in birds.
- a suitable gift** What would be a suitable gift for a ten-year-old boy?
- an expensive gift** His wife always gives him expensive gifts.
- a generous gift** She thanked them for such a generous gift.
- a lavish gift** (=a large, impressive, or expensive gift) She received lavish gifts of jewellery and clothes.
- an unwanted gift** You can return any unwanted gifts if you have the receipts.
- a parting gift** (=a gift that you give someone when you leave) Before boarding the train, he gave her the ring as a parting gift.
- a small gift** I decided to give my hosts a small gift.

VERBS

- give sb a gift** We gave her a gift on her birthday.
- receive a gift** He received a lot of gifts from clients.
- accept a gift** Sam accepted the gift on behalf of the school.
- exchange gifts** (=people give each other gifts) It's traditional to exchange gifts at Christmas.

- wrap (up) a gift** We were wrapping gifts for the children.
- make sb a gift of sth** *formal* (=give someone something as a gift) She had always admired the painting so I made her a gift of it.
- sth makes a good/ideal/unusual etc gift** A recipe book makes an ideal gift for someone who likes to cook.
- shower sb with gifts** (=give someone a lot of gifts) She has a rich boyfriend who showers her with gifts.

PREPOSITIONS

- a gift for/to sb** The money was intended as a gift for the children.
- a gift from sb** The bike was a gift from his grandparents.
- as a gift** Please accept the tickets as a gift.

Gift or present?

Present is the usual word to use in everyday conversation. **Gift** sounds more formal. Companies give away **free gifts** (not 'presents').

2 a natural ability to do something well

VERBS

- have a gift** (also **possess a gift** *formal*): She has a gift for making people feel happy.

ADJECTIVES

- a great gift** Being able to get on with all kinds of people is a great gift.
- a special/remarkable gift** The boy has a remarkable gift for music.
- a natural gift** (also **a God-given gift** *literary*): She has a natural gift for all sports.

PREPOSITIONS

- a gift for sth** Because of his gift for languages, he loves to travel.

gifted *adj* **THESAURUS** intelligent, skilful

gigantic *adj* **THESAURUS** huge

giggle¹ *v*
to laugh quickly in a high voice, especially because you are excited or nervous

ADVERBS

- giggle nervously** Instead of answering my question, the girl giggled nervously.

PREPOSITIONS

- giggle at sb/sth** The couple stopped kissing and were giggling at each other.

giggle² *n*
a quick, quiet laugh, in a high voice

ADJECTIVES

- a nervous giggle** She gave a nervous giggle before answering.

G

a little giggle *Angela nodded politely with a little giggle.*

a hysterical giggle (=that someone cannot control) *The children were all in hysterical giggles.*

a high-pitched giggle (=with a very high sound) *The young woman gave a high-pitched giggle.*

helpless giggles (=that you cannot control) *She tried to answer him through helpless giggles.*

VERBS

give a giggle (=laugh) *She gave a little giggle.*

give sb the giggles (=make someone laugh) *The way he was waving his arms around gave us the giggles.*

burst into/collapse into giggles (=suddenly start laughing) *When I said I was their new teacher, the class suddenly all collapsed into giggles.*

stifle/suppress a giggle (=try to not laugh) *Britta covered her mouth to stifle a giggle.*

get/have the giggles (=laugh in a way that is difficult to control) *Now every time he looks at me I get the giggles.*

PREPOSITIONS

with a giggle *"Catch me if you can," she said with a giggle.*

PHRASES

a fit of giggles (= an occasion when you suddenly start laughing a lot) *Her remark sent Danny off into another fit of giggles.*

girl *n* a female child

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + girl

a pretty/beautiful/cute girl *She is a pretty girl with dark brown long hair.*

a little/small girl (=one who is under 10 years old) *I've known Mollie ever since I was a little girl.*

a young girl (=one aged from about 5 to about 16) *Young girls in school uniform were walking to school.*

a baby girl *She just had a baby girl!*

a five-year-old girl/a ten-year-old girl etc *The picture was of an eight-year-old girl.*

a teenage girl *His fans are mainly teenage girls.*

a good/bad girl (=one who behaves well or badly) *Have you put all your toys away? That's a good girl.*

a big girl (=one who is old enough to behave in a sensible way) *She's a big girl; she can take care of herself.*

PHRASES

a girl of three/seven etc (=aged three, seven etc) *The patient was a girl of 12.*

boys and girls *Both boys and girls can apply to join the choir.*

girlfriend *n*

a girl or woman that you are having a romantic relationship with

ADJECTIVES

sb's first girlfriend *Beth was his first girlfriend.*

a steady/long-term girlfriend (=that you are having a long relationship with) *I asked him if he had a steady girlfriend.*

sb's new girlfriend *His parents were looking forward to meeting his new girlfriend.*

an old girlfriend/ex-girlfriend/former girlfriend (=someone who was your girlfriend before) *His old girlfriends were all very glamorous.*

VERBS

have a girlfriend *Paul had never had a girlfriend before.*

split up with your girlfriend *He's just split up with his girlfriend.*

leave your girlfriend *Sam left his girlfriend because they kept arguing.*

be sb's girlfriend *She told him that she wanted to be his girlfriend.*

gist *n*

the main idea and meaning of what someone has said or written

Grammar

Gist is always used in the phrase **the gist**.

VERBS

get the gist (=understand the main meaning) *She knew enough of the language to get the gist of what people were saying.*

give sb the gist (=tell someone the main ideas) *I don't need to know everything that was said - just give me the gist.*

PREPOSITIONS

the gist of sth *The gist of his argument is that full employment is impossible.*

PHRASES

the gist of the conversation *I don't speak a lot of Spanish, but I got the gist of the conversation.*

the gist of the/sb's argument *The gist of her argument is that books give children a wider experience of the world.*

the gist of the story/report/article etc *The gist of the newspaper's story is that people were tricked into working for very low wages.*

give *v*

1 to let someone have something, or put something in someone's hand

NOUNS

give sb a present/gift *At Christmas people give each other presents.*

give sb a prize/award/medal *The judges gave the prize to an Egyptian writer.*

give sb some money/a loan/a grant *She asked her father to give her the money.*

give help/support/backing *The Venezuelan president gave his support to the plan.*
give advice *They can give expert advice on career opportunities for students.*
give an answer *Think carefully before you give your answer.*
give your name/address/phone number *The form asks you to give the address where you are staying.*
give sb a drug/some medicine *The doctor gave him a drug which made him feel sleepy.*
give sb a chance/opportunity *Give me the chance to explain.*

ADVERBS

give generously *The refugees need your help, so please give generously.*

PREPOSITIONS

give sth to sb/sth *The ring was given to her by her grandmother.*
give sb sth for their birthday/for Christmas etc *What did Bob give you for your birthday?*

THESAURUS: give

donate
money | blood | organ | kidney | egg
 to give money or other things to an organization to help with their work. You also use **donate** about giving blood or part of your body to help save someone's life:
*Lawrence sold everything and **donated** the money **to** charity. | Large numbers of volunteers came to the main hospital to donate blood.*

distribute
leaflet | pamphlet | questionnaire | food | aid | copies
 to give things to a large number of people:
*Anti-war protesters were distributing leaflets. | United Nations agencies are **distributing** aid **to** the refugees. | Afterwards, police distributed 2,500 copies of a letter explaining their actions to local residents.*

contribute
money | funds | troops
 to give money, goods etc in order to help to achieve something, especially when other people, organizations, or countries are also doing this:
*Some of America's biggest companies **contributed** money **to** his election campaign. | Canada **contributed** troops **to** the UN peace-keeping force.*

award
prize | medal | degree | damages
 to officially give something such as a prize to someone:
Doris Lessing was awarded the Nobel Prize for Literature. | She was awarded a law degree at Yale University. | The court awarded him

damages of \$500,000 (=they said he should receive this money because of the harm done to him).

leave (also **bequeath** formal)
house | money | painting | collection | estate
 to officially arrange for someone to have something that you own after your death:
*He **left** his house **to** his children in his will. | An uncle **left** her enough money to travel to Europe. | The estate was **bequeathed to** the nation.*

lavish formal
praise | gifts | money | attention
 to give someone a lot of something:
*The French press **lavished** praise **on** the book when it was published. | She was **lavished with** gifts including airline tickets and jewellery. | He was jealous of all the attention that was **lavished on** his sister.*

Lavish is used in two ways. You can **lavish** praise/attention etc **on** someone, or **lavish** someone **with** praise/attention etc.

confer formal
right | power | status | privilege | benefit | title | honour | degree
 to officially give someone a special right, power, or honour:
*The Constitution **conferred** equal rights **on** all US citizens. | In many societies, being a doctor confers special status. | She received the highest honour that her country could **confer on** her. | The university will **confer** the degree of Doctor of Law **on** Professor Gregory.*

bestow formal
honour | gift | title | name | privilege | right | citizenship | favour
 to give someone something to show how much they are respected – a very formal use:
*Churchill was awarded the Congressional Gold Medal, the highest civilian honour that America can bestow. | The king **bestowed** many precious gifts **upon** her.*

to put something in someone's hand

hand
 to put something in someone's hand:
*She **handed** a note **to** the waiter and asked him to give it to the person at the next table. | He **handed** her his coat.*

If you **hand** something **out**, you give it to a group of people: *The teacher was **handing out** forms to the students.*
 If you **hand** something **over**, you give it to someone, especially when you do not want to: *The police officer ordered him to **hand over** the gun.*

2 a short experience of something that helps you understand it

ADJECTIVES

a rare glimpse The programme gives you a rare glimpse into the private life of the royal family.

a fascinating glimpse The exhibition provides a fascinating glimpse of how people lived in ancient Egypt.

VERBS

give/allow sb a glimpse We were given a glimpse of the team's preparations for the Olympic Games.

provide/offer a glimpse The court case offers a glimpse into the top-secret world of medical research.

show/reveal a glimpse The young player struggled at times, but showed glimpses of the great sportsman he could become.

get/have a glimpse We got a few glimpses of how well she could play.

PREPOSITIONS

a glimpse of sth Visit the weekly market to get a glimpse of traditional Italian life.

a glimpse into the future/the past/sb's world The film offers a glimpse into the future of our planet.

global

adj affecting or including the whole world

NOUNS

the global economy The financial problems in the US affected the global economy.

global trade There is a growing global trade in hazardous waste, which needs regulation.

the global market The company has a large share of the global market for computers.

the global village/community (=the world considered as a place where all people live closely together) In today's global village, events in small countries can affect events worldwide.

ADVERBS

increasingly global (=involving more of the world's countries) The economy is increasingly global, so events worldwide have an effect on it.

truly global (=really including every country in the world) The internet is a truly global network that links millions of people.

global warming

a general increase in world temperatures caused by increased amounts of carbon dioxide around the Earth

VERBS

cause global warming Burning fossil fuels such as coal causes global warming.

reduce/curb global warming They failed to agree on actions to curb global warming.

stop/prevent global warming Larger countries should do more to stop global warming.

deal with/tackle global warming Urgent action is needed to tackle global warming.

fight/combat global warming The leaders are meeting to discuss ways to combat global warming.

contribute to global warming (=help cause global warming) Gases such as carbon dioxide contribute to global warming by trapping heat in the atmosphere.

sth is caused by global warming The rise in sea levels is caused by global warming.

sth is linked/related to global warming The recent floods have been linked to global warming.

PHRASES

the effects/consequences of global warming One of the effects of global warming has been the melting of the glaciers.

the threat of global warming To deal with the threat of global warming, countries must work together on clean energy.

globe

n the world

PHRASES

halfway around the globe We had gone halfway around the globe, only to find shops selling the same things we could buy at home.

on/to the other side of the globe The internet allows information to be sent to the other side of the globe with just the click of a button.

in/from every corner of the globe (=in or from every part of the world) Scientific information has come in from every corner of the globe.

ADJECTIVES

the entire/whole globe These lines circle the entire globe, allowing information to travel quickly around the world.

VERBS

circle the globe (=go around the globe) They were the first to circle the globe in a hot-air balloon.

span the globe (=include all the countries in the world) His publishing businesses span the globe.

spread across the globe The slowdown in the economy spread across the globe.

PREPOSITIONS

around/across the globe The book includes stories from writers around the globe.

all over the globe Millions of people all over the globe use the internet to keep in touch.

gloom

1 a feeling of great sadness and lack of hope

PHRASES

be filled with gloom She was filled with gloom when she heard the news.

be sunk/shrouded in gloom (=feel very sad and hopeless) *The boy was sunk in gloom and would not speak.*

cast (a) gloom over sth (=make people feel sad) *Her father's illness cast a gloom over the holidays.*

add to the gloom (=make people feel more sad) *To add to the gloom, the team's best player is injured.*

doom and gloom (=when there seems no hope) *The economic situation is not all doom and gloom – some industries are doing very well.*

an atmosphere of gloom *They laughed, and the atmosphere of gloom lightened a little.*

a sense of gloom *He had a sense of gloom about the test.*

VERBS

gloom descends (=people start to feel sad) *Gloom descended on the crowd when the news was announced.*

gloom deepens (=people feel more sad) *The party's gloom deepened as the election results came in.*

gloom lifts (=people stop feeling sad) *Germany's gloom lifted when Stalkamp scored a goal.*

dispel/lift the gloom (=make people feel less sad) *Now for some good news to dispel the gloom.*

ADJECTIVES

economic gloom *It was a year of economic gloom for the car industry.*

deep gloom *There was deep gloom about the future.*

deepening gloom (=becoming worse) *There is deepening gloom over the country's economic prospects.*

the general gloom (=when many people feel there is not much hope) *Amid the general gloom, there are some positive signs.*

PREPOSITIONS

gloom about/over/at sth *There is deepening gloom over the lack of progress in the peace negotiations.*

2 almost complete darkness – used especially in literature

PHRASES

sb's eyes become accustomed to the gloom (=they start to be able to see in the darkness) *My eyes gradually became accustomed to the gloom.*

be shrouded in gloom *The ballroom was empty and shrouded in gloom.*

peer into the gloom *"Who's that?" the old woman asked, peering into the gloom.*

ADJECTIVES

deep gloom *They wandered through the deep gloom of the forest.*

deepening/gathering gloom (=becoming darker) *We drove through the deepening gloom.*

damp/cold gloom *The two men stood in the chilly damp gloom.*

PREPOSITIONS

in the gloom *All she could see in the gloom was the high wall of a building.*

through the gloom *Through the gloom, he could just make out the figure of a man.*

into/out of the gloom *I stared into the gloom.*

gloomy *adj* **THESAURUS** **cloudy, dark (1), depressing, sad (1)**

glorious *adj* **THESAURUS** **beautiful**

glory *n*

1 praise and admiration from people

PHRASES

sb's moment of glory *His moment of glory came in the second half of the game when he scored.*

a blaze of glory (=when someone or something is praised a lot) *The film opened in a blaze of glory with rave reviews from critics.*

sb's dreams of glory *His dreams of glory were shattered when he lost to Federer.*

VERBS

win glory *These men had won glory in battle.*

bring glory to sb/sth *Locals hope the discovery will bring prosperity and glory to the town.*

cover yourself in glory (=do something that makes people admire you) *As team captain, he hasn't covered himself in glory.*

bask/bathe/revel in the glory of sth (=enjoy the fame and admiration you get) *He basked in the glory of his achievement.*

steal sb's glory (=do something that makes you more admired than someone else doing something similar) *She played brilliantly, but Shaw stole all the glory by scoring three times.*

ADJECTIVES

reflected glory (=fame that you get because you are close to someone admired) *She basked in the reflected glory of her daughter's marriage to such a famous actor.*

personal glory *She put the team's interests above personal glory.*

past glory (=past successes) *Journalists only ever talk about past glories and no one thinks of the future.*

glory + NOUNS

glory days/years (=a time in the past when someone or something was admired) *The team's glory days are over.*

2 great and impressive beauty

PHRASES

restore sth to its former glory (=make something impressive and beautiful again) *This*

G

17th-century house has been restored to its former glory.

in all its/their etc glory Charles had longed to see Venice in all its glory.

ADJECTIVES

sth's full glory Roses reach their full glory in June.

3 something's most impressive feature

ADJECTIVES

sth's great glory The castle's great glory is its massive twin-towered gatehouse.

sth's crowning glory (=the thing that is the most impressive and beautiful) The stunning gardens are the hotel's crowning glory.

glossy *adj* **THESAURUS** shiny

glove *n*

a piece of clothing that you wear on your hand in order to protect it or keep it warm

PHRASES

a pair of gloves Forbes pulled on a pair of black leather gloves.

VERBS

wear gloves I usually wear gloves when gardening.

put on your gloves Put on your gloves, children – it's cold outside.

take off your gloves He took off his gloves and hat.

glow *v*

1 to produce or reflect a soft steady light

NOUNS + glow

the sun glows The evening sun glowed in the sky.

a lamp/light glows The lights of the city glowed in the distance.

a fire glows The fire still glowed in the fireplace.

a cigarette glows The men stood around, their cigarettes glowing in the dark.

ADVERBS

glow softly/faintly/dimly The bedside lamp glowed dimly.

glow brightly/brilliantly The lights inside the shop were glowing brightly.

glow warmly A candle glowed warmly in its holder.

glow briefly The sun glowed briefly on the horizon and was gone.

glow steadily The power light on the computer glowed steadily.

PREPOSITIONS

glow with sth The windows were glowing with a warm yellow light.

PHRASES

glow red/orange/pink The end of her cigarette was glowing red.

2 to look very happy and healthy

NOUNS + glow

sb's face glows (also **sb's cheeks glow**) Her face was glowing as we talked.

sb's eyes glow Her eyes glowed with delight when she saw him.

sb's skin glows To make your skin glow, eat plenty of fresh fruit and vegetables.

ADVERBS

positively glow (=used to emphasize how happy and healthy someone looks) Rachael was positively glowing at her birthday party on Saturday.

PHRASES

glow with health He returned from his holiday glowing with health.

glow with pride/pleasure/happiness She gazed up at him, glowing with happiness.

glum *adj* **THESAURUS** sad (1)

goal **Ac** *n*

1 something that you hope to achieve in the future

ADJECTIVES

the main goal (also **the primary goal** formal): My main goal is to win this race.

the ultimate goal (=that you hope to achieve eventually) The ultimate goal is a fairer and more democratic society.

a long-term goal (=that you hope to achieve after a long time) The organization's long-term goal is to gain a strong position in the European market.

an immediate goal (=that you want to achieve very soon) Our immediate goal is to cut costs.

an ambitious goal (=difficult to achieve) The agreement set ambitious goals to cut greenhouse gas emissions worldwide.

sb's personal goal They had to sacrifice personal goals for their family life.

a common goal (=shared by more than one person or organization) Iran and Turkey shared common goals in their handling of the refugee crisis.

a realistic/achievable goal Students are encouraged to set themselves realistic goals for academic improvement.

a modest goal (=not too difficult to achieve) Don't try to lose a lot of weight quickly; set yourself a more modest goal.

VERBS

achieve/attain/reach your goal She worked hard to achieve her goal of becoming a doctor.

set a goal (=decide what you want to achieve) It helps if you set yourself clear goals.

have a goal Henry had one goal in life: to make a lot of money.

work towards a goal *We are all working towards similar goals.*

pursue a goal *Have we gone too far in pursuing the goal of national security?*

NOUNS + goal

a career/business goal *The plan sets out our business goals and targets.*

THESAURUS: goal

goal, target, objective, ambition → **aim**

aim, goal, objective, the object of sth, the point, intention, ends → **purpose**

2 the action of making the ball go into a goal in a game such as soccer

VERBS

score a goal *Robbie Keane scored a goal just before half-time.*

get a goal *It was great that he got that goal so late in the game.*

head a goal (=score a goal by hitting the ball with your head) *Peter Crouch headed England's equalizing goal.*

concede a goal/let in a goal (=let the other team score a goal) *Arsenal conceded a goal in the final minute of extra time.*

disallow a goal (=not allow a goal to be counted because a rule has been broken) *The goal was disallowed by the referee.*

ADJECTIVES

a spectacular/superb goal (=very good) *He has scored some spectacular goals this season.*

the winning goal *The winning goal came three minutes before the end.*

an own goal (=when a player accidentally puts the ball into his or her own net) *Dixon scored an unfortunate own goal against West Ham.*

a last-minute goal (=one that happens just before the game ends) *Italy won with a last-minute goal.*

goal + NOUNS

a goal scorer *He is the team's top goal scorer.*

go away v **THESAURUS** → **disappear, stop¹ (2)**

god n

1 the spirit or being who Christians, Jews, Muslims etc pray to, and who they believe created the universe

This sense is usually written with a capital letter as **God**.

VERBS

believe in God *Do you believe in God?*

pray to God *They prayed to God for forgiveness.*

worship God (=show love and respect for God) *On this day, people worship God and thank Him for the harvest.*

praise God *They came to the church to praise God.*

find God (=start to believe in God) *He was an armed robber before he found God.*

God exists *I believe that God exists.*

PHRASES

belief/faith in God *Her faith in God helped her deal with her illness.*

God's will/the will of God (=what God wants to happen) *He believed it was God's will that they should suffer.*

Almighty God/God Almighty (=used to emphasize God's power) *He swore by Almighty God to tell the truth.*

the word of God (=what God says) *Missionaries travelled the world to tell people the word of God.*

a gift from God *Life is a gift from God.*

God's existence/the existence of God *Philosophers argued about the existence of God.*

2 a male spirit who is believed by some religions to control the world or part of it, or who represents a particular quality

ADJECTIVES

a Greek/Roman/Egyptian/Norse god *Janus is one of the most important Roman gods.*

PREPOSITIONS

the god of sth *Eros is the Greek god of love.*

gold n

a very valuable soft yellow metal

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + gold

solid gold *The chain was made of solid gold.*

pure gold *Pure gold can be beaten out to form very thin sheets.*

9/18/24 carat gold (=a measurement used to show how pure gold is) *These earrings are 18 carat gold.*

gold + NOUNS

a gold chain/ring/watch/coin etc *He wore a gold ring on the third finger of his left hand.*

gold jewellery BrE, **gold jewelry** AmE: *She likes wearing chunky gold jewellery.*

a gold medal (=for first place in a race etc) *She dreams of winning an Olympic gold medal.*

gold leaf (=a very thin sheet of gold) *The picture frame was covered with gold leaf.*

gold bullion (=bars of gold) *Gold bullion worth £26 million was taken in the robbery.*

a gold bar/ingot (=a piece of gold the size of a brick) *The bank keeps the gold bars locked in its vault.*

a gold mine *Her father worked in a gold mine.*

a gold rush (=a time when people hurry to a place where gold has been found, hoping to find gold themselves) *People headed west in the days of the California gold rush.*

VERBS

prospect for gold (=try to find gold) *The company had prospected for gold in China, with some success.*

pan for gold (=wash soil in order to find small pieces of gold in it) *Every day he went down to the river to pan for gold.*

find gold (also **strike gold**) *The French came to America in the hope of finding gold there.*

Using gold when saying that something is very valuable

If you say something is **(like) gold dust**, you mean it is difficult to get and people will pay a lot of money for it: *Tickets for the show are like gold dust.*

A **gold mine** is often used about something that makes a lot of money for someone: *The shop turned out to be a gold mine for us.*

Strike gold originally meant "to find gold". It is now usually used when someone has discovered or created something very valuable: *The company that makes the drug thinks it has struck gold.*

golden *adj*

having a bright yellow colour like gold

NOUNS

golden hair *She had golden hair and blue eyes.*

a golden beach *The Costa del Sol has almost two hundred miles of golden beaches.*

golden sand *The resort has a long beach of fine golden sand.*

golden light *In the evening, the front of the house is bathed in golden light.*

a golden glow *The interior was lit only by the golden glow of the fire.*

a golden colour BrE, **a golden color** AmE: *This soup is a beautiful golden color.*

Golden or gold?

Golden is the usual word to use when talking about colour: *She has beautiful golden hair. | the island's golden beaches*

Gold is the usual word to use when saying that something is made of gold: *a gold bracelet. Golden* is rarely used in this meaning, but you will sometimes see it in stories: *the goose that lays the golden eggs | The Man with the Golden Gun.* In these phrases the idea of the colour and the material are mixed together.

golf *n*

a game in which you hit a small white ball into holes in the ground

VERBS

play golf *I often play golf at the weekends.*

take up golf (=start playing golf) *She took up golf as a way of getting more exercise.*

golf + NOUNS

a golf course (=an area of land designed for playing golf) *The hotel has an 18-hole golf course.*

a golf club (=an organization that runs a golf course, or the building where members meet) *Keith is a member of the Royal Aberdeen Golf Club.*

golf clubs (=long thin sticks for hitting the ball in golf) *She bought a new set of golf clubs.*

a golf tournament/championship *He will play in the British Open golf championship.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + golf

amateur/professional golf *The standard of amateur golf is improving.*

tournament/championship golf *The course is suitable for world-class championship golf.*

PHRASES

a game/round of golf *He invited me to join him for a round of golf.*

good *adj*

1 used about things that you like, or about things that are useful, suitable, or of high quality

NOUNS

a good time/day/year *We had a really good time at the party.*

good news *I have some good news – you've passed your exam.*

a good idea/suggestion *It's a good idea to take some warm blankets if you're driving in snow.*

good advice *The book offers plenty of good advice on buying a house.*

the good thing/aspect/point *The good thing about this car is that it is cheap to run.*

a good reason/excuse/argument *Is there a good reason why you haven't done your homework?*

a good effect *The changes had a good effect on the economy.*

a good example/illustration *The church is a good example of early English architecture.*

good luck *Some people believe that black cats bring good luck.*

good weather *I hope we have good weather for our picnic next week.*

good food *The restaurant serves good food at a reasonable price.*

a good book/film/song *Have you read any good books recently?*

ADVERBS

really good *I thought the play was really good.*

rather/quite/pretty good *The facilities at the school are quite good.*

particularly/especially good *The food was nice and the dessert was especially good.*

outstandingly/exceptionally good *2009 had been an exceptionally good year for the company.*

PHRASES

be of good quality *The carpets are of good quality and are very expensive.*

THESAURUS: good

nice

day | **place** | **house** | **hotel** | **feeling** | **idea** | **surprise** | **meal** | **weather**

pleasant and enjoyable. **Nice** is very common in spoken English. In essays and formal written English, it is better to use other words:

Have a nice day. | Heidelberg is a nice place to live. | What a nice surprise! I wasn't expecting to see you. | It will be really nice to meet your brother.

fine

view | **food** | **example** | **performance** | **painting** | **collection** | **building** | **church** | **piece of work**

very good and impressive:

The hotel has fine views of the old town. | This restaurant serves some of the finest food in Italy. | The house is a fine example of a Tudor building. | The museum has a fine collection of clocks dating back to 1658.

Fine can be used to talk about good weather: *If it's fine tomorrow, we'll go for a walk.*

You can also use **fine** to say that your health is good, especially when you were ill before: *I'm fine now.*

sound

advice | **reason** | **judgment** | **decision** | **strategy** | **investment**

good and sensible:

The book is full of sound advice. | There is a very sound reason for this decision. | Property always makes a sound investment.

Sound is often used after an adverb: **financially/theoretically/morally/ecologically etc sound**: *The product is easy to use and is environmentally sound.*

attractive

offer | **idea** | **prospect** | **opportunity** | **proposition** | **option** | **alternative** | **deal** | **price** | **rate** | **feature** | **argument** | **investment** | **target**

if something is attractive, it seems good and makes you feel that you want to do something:

It was a very attractive offer and I was tempted by it. | Setting up your own business may seem like an attractive proposition, but you need to be aware of the risks involved. | The product is available at a very attractive price.

desirable formal

quality | **feature** | **attribute** | **place** | **location** | **area** | **aim** | **goal** | **outcome** | **state of affairs**

used about things that you want to have, places where you want to live, or things that you want to happen:

Most drivers put safety at the top of the list of desirable features in a car. | California remains a desirable place to live. | Getting rid of all nuclear weapons sounds like a very desirable aim. | Clearly, this situation is not a desirable state of affairs.

favourable BrE, favorable AmE

response | **reaction** | **reception** | **impression** | **reviews** | **comments** | **conditions** | **climate** | **position** | **result** | **outcome**

good - used especially when people like something, or when the conditions are suitable for success:

The new style of exam received a favourable response from teachers. | She wanted to make a favourable impression at the interview (=she wanted people to like her and think she was suitable for the job). | Conditions are favourable for sailing. | There was little hope of a favourable outcome.

positive

effect | **influence** | **impact** | **experience** | **step** | **aspect** | **feedback** | **response** | **reaction** | **comments** | **results** | **contribution**

good - used especially when something has a good or useful effect, or shows that you like something:

Exercise has a positive effect on health. | Working here has been a very positive experience for me. | There are a lot of positive aspects to retirement, but there is a negative side too. | The response from our customers has been very positive.

beneficial

effect | **impact** | **influence** | **consequences** | **change** | **arrangement** | **role**

having a good effect:

Drinking plenty of water has a beneficial effect on your skin. | Aspirin has a potentially beneficial role in preventing heart attacks.

ANTONYMS good → bad (1)

2 doing something in a skilful way

NOUNS

a good player/team *The team has some really good players.*

a good actor/singer/painter/writer *He's a very good actor and he's been in a lot of films.*

a good swimmer/skier/driver/teacher *I'm not a very good swimmer.*

a good student *Amelie's teachers say she is a good student who asks intelligent questions.*

a good cook *Eva was a good cook and often made cakes for us.*

good English/French/Japanese etc Your French is really good – have you lived in France?

a good game It was a good game and the players played well.

a good performance/speech We want to put on a good performance.

a good job/good work Ken did a good job of painting the house.

a good grade/mark Svetlana always gets good grades in English.

⚠ Don't say 'I want to be a good English speaker.' Say **I want to speak English well/fluenty/like a native speaker.**

ADVERBS

really good Daniel is really good at tennis.

rather/quite/pretty good I'm quite good at art.

exceptionally/outstandingly good Mike has done an outstandingly good job and I'd like to thank him.

good enough The team are not good enough to win the competition.

PREPOSITIONS

good at (doing) sth Ella is very good at making clothes.

PHRASES

be good with your hands (=be good at making things) My dad was very good with his hands and made some beautiful things for the house.

be good with figures (=be good at doing calculations) You should ask Steve – he's very good with figures.

be good with words Some sports players aren't very good with words.

be good with people/children He is very good with children and knows how to talk to them.

ANTONYMS

good → **bad** (3)

3 behaving in a way that is morally right, or in the way that you should behave

NOUNS

a good man/woman/person Ford was a good man who was well respected by voters.

a good boy/girl/child/dog Have you been a good boy at school today?

good behaviour BrE, **good behavior** AmE: It is important to reward good behaviour.

good manners (=polite behaviour) It is only good manners to obey the traffic regulations wherever you are.

good intentions She was full of good intentions when she started her job.

a good deed (=a good thing that you do) I feel like I've done my good deed for today.

PHRASES

as good as gold (=very well behaved) The children were as good as gold.

be on your best behaviour BrE, **be on your best behavior** AmE (=behave as well and

politely as you can) You'd better be on your best behaviour when your grandmother comes to visit.

it is good of sb to do sth (=it is kind) It was good of them to offer to lend us the money.

THESAURUS: good

nice

person | **man** | **guy** | **bloke** | **woman** | **child** | **kid**

good, kind, and friendly. **Nice** is very common in spoken English. In written English, it is better to use other words:

Dave's a really nice guy. | **It was nice of him to help.**

well behaved

child | **pupil** | **dog** | **pet** | **crowd**

behaving in a polite calm way, and doing what you are told to do:

The children were very well behaved all day. | Well-behaved dogs are welcome at the hotel. | A police spokesman said the crowd was remarkably well behaved.

You write **well-behaved** before a noun. You write **well behaved** if there is no following noun.

decent

person | **man** | **woman** | **guy** | **bloke** | **chap** | **citizen**

good and honest, and treating people in a fair and kind way:

My parents were decent hard-working people. | Hopefully the kids will grow up to be decent citizens. | **It's decent of you to join us.**

honourable

BrE, **honorable** AmE
man | **woman** | **thing** | **history** | **profession** | **war** | **defeat** | **surrender** | **settlement** | **compromise**

morally correct and showing that you have high moral standards, especially when you do something that you feel is your duty:

Her father was a brave and honourable man. | In the circumstances, the only honourable thing she can do is to resign. | The country has a long and honourable history.

respectable

man | **woman** | **person** | **family** | **citizen** | **business** | **occupation**

behaving and living your life in a way that most people think is morally correct – this use seems rather old-fashioned these days:

The bar was no place for a respectable married man. | His mother wants him to marry someone from a respectable family.

virtuous

formal or humorous
man | **woman** | **life** | **conduct**

behaving in a morally correct way and having very high moral standards:

Everybody agreed that Senator Daley was a wise and virtuous man. | She **felt very virtuous** because she hadn't drunk any alcohol for a year.

upright formal

citizen | **member of the community** | **man**
having high moral standards and always obeying the law:

Wordsworth was a man of integrity, an upright citizen. | He was a good honest upright man.

dutiful formal

wife | **daughter** | **son** | **husband** | **servant**

careful to do what people expect you to do, especially people in your family – this use seems rather old-fashioned these days:

She remained the dutiful wife, never complaining about her husband.

THESAURUS: good

generous, considerate, thoughtful, caring, sympathetic, compassionate, warm-hearted/kind-hearted, benevolent, benign, nice, good, sweet → **kind**²

ANTONYMS **good** → **bad** (4)

good-looking adj **THESAURUS** → **beautiful**

goods n

things that are produced in order to be sold

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + goods

electrical goods People spend more money on electrical goods than on clothing.

household goods (=which you use in your home) The high street has several shops selling household goods.

consumer goods (=televisions, washing machines etc) The market for consumer goods is huge.

white goods BrE (=large electrical equipment such as washing machines and refrigerators) Sales of white goods have increased by 15%.

luxury goods People are getting richer and the demand for luxury goods is growing.

imported goods The government raised taxes on imported goods.

manufactured goods (=made in large quantities using machines) Imports of manufactured goods have increased rapidly.

damaged/defective/faulty goods (=that have something wrong with them) Faulty goods can be returned to the manufacturer for a refund.

stolen goods The police charged him with handling stolen goods.

VERBS

produce/manufacture goods The company produces goods for export.

import goods Huge quantities of goods are imported from China.

export goods We export our goods all over the world.

supply goods The firm supplies goods and services to Europe.

deliver goods We promise to deliver the goods in time for Christmas.

transport goods Companies are still choosing to transport most of their goods by road.

THESAURUS: goods

goods, commodity, merchandise, wares, export, import → **product**

gorgeous adj **THESAURUS** → **beautiful**

gossip n

conversation or information about other people's private lives

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + gossip

the latest gossip Annie told me all the latest gossip from work.

juicy gossip informal (=interesting gossip) Do you want to hear some juicy gossip?

hot gossip informal (=new and interesting) The magazine features hot gossip from the world of show business.

idle gossip (=not based on facts) I'm not interested in idle gossip.

malicious gossip (=unkind and intending to upset or harm someone) Criticisms of him were based on malicious gossip.

office gossip He told her a few bits of office gossip which he thought might interest her.

VERBS

spread gossip Someone's been spreading gossip about Lucy and Ian.

gossip goes around (=it is told by one person to another) It was a small village, and any gossip went around very quickly.

gossip + NOUNS

a gossip column (=a regular article in a newspaper or magazine about the private lives of famous people) The princess often appeared in the gossip columns.

PREPOSITIONS

gossip about sb/sth There is always a lot of gossip about professional football players.

PHRASES

a piece/bit/snippet of gossip I've got a piece of gossip which might interest you.

be the subject of gossip (=be talked about) His close friendship with Carol was the subject of gossip.

government n

1 the group of people who govern a country or state

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + government

the UK/Japanese etc government The UK government has offered to send aid.

the Labour/Conservative etc government *In August 1931, the Labour government collapsed.*

a left-wing/right-wing government *The new left-wing government restructured the economy.*

central/national government (=that deals with national rather than local things) *Funding will continue to be available from central government for further education for adults.*

federal government (=of the whole of the US rather than of the individual states) *The state, rather than the federal government, would have to pay the extra cost.*

local/state/city government (=in a particular area) *Libraries are the responsibility of local government.*

a democratic government/a democratically elected government *A military group tried to overthrow the democratically elected government.*

an authoritarian government (=a strict one which forces people to obey it) *An increasingly authoritarian government is threatening people's political freedom.*

a coalition government (=one made up of members of more than one political party) *The country has had a succession of weak coalition governments.*

government + NOUNS

a government minister *A government minister said that there would be an inquiry.*

a government official (=someone who works for a government in an official position) *He had a meeting with French scientists and government officials.*

a government department/agency/body *The Ministry of Justice is the government department responsible for prisons in England and Wales.*

government policy *Government policy on education has been criticized.*

government spending *Government spending on health care totals about \$60 billion a year.*

government cuts (=a reduction in the amount of money a government spends) *Many research centres will close because of government cuts.*

VERBS + government

elect a government *A new government was elected last October.*

form a government *Neither party had the majority necessary to form a government.*

bring down a government (=force it to lose power) *It was a major scandal that nearly brought down the government.*

overthrow/topple a government (=remove it, especially by force) *Soldiers made an unsuccessful attempt to overthrow the government.*

government + VERBS

a government comes to power/takes office (=it starts to have power) *The new government took office in May.*

a government falls/collapses (=it suddenly fails and cannot continue) *The government collapsed after only nine months.*

PREPOSITIONS

under a government *Structural reforms are unlikely under the present government.*

PHRASES

a member of the government *The prime minister and other members of the government travelled to Davos for the meeting.*

a change of government *I hope that we will have a change of government soon.*

2 the process, method, or system of governing a country or state

ADJECTIVES

strong/firm government *We need a leader who can provide strong government.*

good/effective government *The lack of effective government has caused problems over many years for the country.*

democratic government *He promised more democratic government for the island.*

authoritarian government *Powers were limited to prevent authoritarian government.*

big government (=when the government has a lot or too much control over people's lives) *President Clinton declared an end to big government.*

small government (=when the government does not have too much control over people's lives) *The party has traditionally supported the idea of small government.*

graceful *adj*

moving in a smooth and attractive way, or having an attractive shape

NOUNS

a graceful movement *He watched her graceful movements as she came towards him.*

sb's graceful neck/legs/arms *She had slender graceful arms.*

sth's graceful lines (=graceful shape) *People admire the building's graceful lines.*

grade [Ac] *n*

a number or letter that a student is given for their work or for an examination

ADJECTIVES

a good grade *If you study hard, you will get good grades.*

a bad grade *Matt was disappointed because he got a bad grade.*

a high grade *She got high grades in all her science subjects.*

a low grade *These boys receive low grades because they fail to turn in assignments.*

the top grade *Ted's was the top grade in the maths exam.*

grade + NOUNS

grade A/B/C etc *BrE: Applicants must have Grade A, B, or C in two GCSE subjects.*

VERBS

get/receive a grade *He had always received good grades.*

achieve a grade *BrE: Rick had achieved good exam grades.*

give/award sb a grade *A quarter of all students were given a grade A.*

improve your grades *She's working hard to improve her grades.*

gradual *adj*

happening slowly over a long period of time

NOUNS

a gradual change/shift *Over the last ten years, there has been a gradual change in people's attitudes.*

a gradual process *Learning is a gradual process.*

a gradual increase in sth *One symptom is a gradual increase in your weight.*

a gradual decline/reduction/decrease in sth *There was a gradual decline in the birthrate during that decade.*

a gradual improvement/deterioration *There has been a gradual improvement in girls' performance in mathematics.*

the gradual development of sth *A long novel is able to show the gradual development of a character.*

a gradual loss of sth *There is a gradual loss of function of some brain cells which can result in forgetfulness.*

THESAURUS: gradual

gradual, leisurely, unhurried, measured, sluggish, lethargic, languid, glacial → **slow**

graduate *n*

someone who has completed a university degree

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + graduate

a university/college/art school etc graduate *Many university graduates are facing unemployment.*

a history/science etc graduate *They want to persuade more science graduates to become teachers.*

a recent/new graduate *The firm hires 100 new graduates every year.*

a Cambridge/Harvard/Bristol University etc graduate *The head teacher was a Cambridge graduate.*

In American English, **college graduate** is used more often than **university graduate**, and someone who has completed their studies at high school is a **high school graduate**.

graduate + NOUNS

a graduate trainee/recruit *BrE: He joined the newspaper as a graduate trainee.*

a graduate engineer/teacher/nurse *BrE: The number of jobs for graduate engineers in Scotland has almost doubled in the past 18 months.*

graduate recruitment *BrE (=employing new graduates) Businesses have found it increasingly difficult to maintain their level of graduate recruitment.*

a graduate student *especially AmE: He worked on the project while a graduate student at Yale.*

a graduate degree *AmE (=one you take after your first degree) She has a graduate degree in education from Ohio State.*

a graduate program *AmE (=a course or courses for graduates) She hopes to continue her Arabic studies in a graduate program at Georgetown University.*

graduate school *AmE (=a college where graduates can study) After graduation, Karen and Jess are planning to go to graduate school.*

PREPOSITIONS

a graduate of/from York University/Boston University etc *Terry is a graduate of York University.*

a graduate in engineering/philosophy etc *The ideal candidate will be a graduate in electronic engineering.*

graduation *n*

the time when you complete a university degree course, or your education at an American high school

graduation + NOUNS

a graduation ceremony *She had come to attend her sister's graduation ceremony.*

graduation day *That photo was taken on graduation day.*

a graduation present/gift *His parents gave him a car as a graduation gift.*

NOUNS + graduation

college/high school graduation *AmE: He had been with the bank since college graduation.*

PREPOSITIONS

graduation from college/high school/Yale etc *He went to work for the company after his graduation from Syracuse University.*

after graduation *After graduation, he moved to Washington.*

grammar ⁿ

the way the words of a language are combined into sentences and can change their forms

ADJECTIVES

English/French etc grammar *The students have been taught the basics of English grammar.*

bad/poor grammar *Bad grammar is not acceptable in essays.*

good grammar *A secretary should have good grammar and spelling.*

correct/proper grammar *They provide examples of correct grammar for students to use.*

grammar + NOUNS

a grammar book *They all opened their grammar books.*

grammar rules *Understanding grammar rules can help with fluency and accuracy.*

Grammar or grammatical?

You can say **grammar rules** or **grammatical rules**. It is much more common to say a **grammatical error/mistake** than a 'grammar error/mistake'.

VERBS

learn grammar *I need to learn some grammar.*

teach (sb) grammar *He taught us Latin grammar.*

use grammar *It's important for journalists to use proper grammar.*

correct sb's grammar *His mother used to correct his grammar when he talked.*

grant ^{Ac} ⁿ

an amount of money given to someone, especially by the government, for a particular purpose

NOUNS + grant

a government grant *The school has won a £25,000 government grant for new sports equipment.*

a research grant *He received a research grant to study the effect of pollution on the environment.*

a student grant *If you are on a low income, you may be able to get a student grant.*

a block grant *AmE (=money given by the central government to state governments to pay for particular services) Congress approved block grants for education, health, and social services.*

VERBS

get/receive a grant *It is likely that you will receive a grant to pay for your tuition.*

get/obtain a grant *We may be able to get a grant to put a new roof on the building.*

give/award sb a grant *He has been awarded a grant to study in Paris.*

apply for a grant *If you wish to apply for a grant, write to the Treasurer.*

qualify for a grant *(also be eligible for a grant) (=be allowed to receive a grant) This booklet explains who is eligible for a grant.*

PREPOSITIONS

a grant of £5,000/\$8,000 etc *The library received a grant of \$20,000 to improve its computer facilities.*

a grant from sb *Training was funded by a grant from the Sports Council.*

a grant for sth *People on low incomes can be given a grant for home improvements.*

graph ⁿ

a drawing that uses a line or lines to show how two or more sets of measurements are related to each other

VERBS

a graph shows sth *The graph shows the increase in blood pressure.*

draw a graph *Draw a graph to show changes in the temperature over this period.*

plot sth on a graph *(=show facts, numbers etc as points on a graph) The different values can be plotted on a graph.*

grasp ^v

1 to take and hold something firmly

ADVERBS

grasp sth firmly *He was sitting down, grasping the box firmly in his hands.*

grasp sth tightly *She grasped her bag tightly and pressed it to her chest.*

PHRASES

grasp sb by the hand/arm/wrist *She grasped the screaming child by the arm.*

grasp hold of sth/sb *The goalkeeper managed to grasp hold of the ball.*

2 to completely understand a fact or an idea

ADVERBS

fully grasp sth *They did not fully grasp the seriousness of the problem.*

easily grasp sth *This course will help you to easily grasp the basics of the language.*

VERBS

try to grasp sth *The students were asked to try to grasp the meaning of the poem.*

fail to grasp sth *The government failed to grasp the severity of the financial crisis.*

struggle to grasp sth *He was struggling to grasp what he had done wrong.*

PHRASES

difficult/hard to grasp *Some pupils find even basic concepts in mathematics difficult to grasp.*

grasp the fact that *My boyfriend won't grasp the fact that he needs to be a bit more romantic.*

grateful *adj*

feeling or showing that you want to thank someone for something that they have done

ADVERBS

very/really/deeply grateful We are deeply grateful for their support.

extremely/immensely/enormously grateful I am extremely grateful to him for getting me out of a very awkward situation.

so grateful (also **most grateful** formal): If you could help me, I would be so grateful.

eternally grateful (=grateful forever) He gave me my first job, and for that I will be eternally grateful.

just grateful I'm just grateful to have the chance to put things right.

NOUNS

a grateful look/smile The woman gave him a grateful look.

grateful thanks formal: Our grateful thanks go to everyone who helped to organize the event.

PREPOSITIONS

be grateful for sth I am grateful for the opportunity to explain my work.

be grateful to sb He was grateful to Sam for his advice.

gratitude *n* the feeling of being grateful**ADJECTIVES**

sb's deep/profound/immense/heartfelt gratitude (=which someone feels very strongly) My only emotions afterwards were relief and deep gratitude.

sb's eternal/undying gratitude (=forever) The doctors who saved my daughter have my undying gratitude.

sb's sincere gratitude First, I must express our sincere gratitude for all you have done.

VERBS

show your gratitude He bought them a present to show his gratitude.

express your gratitude We would like to express our gratitude to everyone for their generous donations.

feel gratitude He felt some gratitude to Eleanor for giving him this idea.

earn sb's gratitude (=make someone feel grateful) Her willingness to help earned the gratitude of her colleagues.

PREPOSITIONS

gratitude to/towards sb I would like to express my gratitude to all the people who have helped us.

gratitude for sth Maureen ought to show some gratitude for what Dean has done.

with gratitude She accepted his offer with gratitude.

in gratitude for sth We'd like to take you out to dinner in gratitude for what you've done.

PHRASES

a feeling/sense of gratitude She had a sudden feeling of gratitude towards him.

a gesture/token of (sb's) gratitude (=something you do to show you are grateful) I think I deserve a small gesture of gratitude for my efforts, don't you?

owe sb a debt of gratitude (=someone deserves your gratitude) I owe my former teacher a deep debt of gratitude.

grave¹ *adj* **THESAURUS** bad (2)**grave**² *n*

the place in the ground where a dead body is buried

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + grave

a shallow grave (=not very deep in the ground) The body of a woman was found in a shallow grave in the woods.

a mass grave (=filled with many people) Victims of the disease were buried in mass graves.

an unmarked grave (=one that does not have anything to show where it is or who is in it) Until 1855, poor people here were buried in unmarked graves.

a family grave (=one where members of a family are buried together) Walter was buried in the family grave in Finchley cemetery.

a war grave (=one where a soldier killed in a war is buried) He has gone to visit the war graves in Flanders.

VERBS

dig a grave In the churchyard, a man was digging a grave.

mark a grave The stone marked her grave.

bury sb in a grave (=put someone in a grave) She was buried in a grave next to her older sister.

visit sb's grave I always visit my mother's grave on her birthday.

desecrate a grave (=deliberately damage it) More than 300 graves had been desecrated.

greasy *adj* **THESAURUS** dirty**great** *adj* **THESAURUS** big (3), excellent, powerful (1)**greed** *n*

a strong desire for more food, money, power, possessions etc than you need

ADJECTIVES

human greed We can all see the damage that human greed has done to the environment.

corporate greed (=greed by big companies or people who work for them) Critics saw the large bonuses as evidence of corporate greed.

personal greed The country's leaders are motivated mainly by personal greed.

insatiable greed (=that can never be satisfied) His insatiable greed was his downfall.

pure/simple greed *Why have they increased their prices? Pure greed.*

VERBS

be driven/motivated by greed (=greed is the reason for doing something) *The people who are developing this land are driven by greed.*

satisfy your/sb's greed (=get as much of something as you can for yourself, even though this harms other people) *Some people will do anything in their power to get what they want, and to satisfy their greed.*

PREPOSITIONS

greed for sth *There appeared to be no end to the man's greed for power.*

greedy *adj*

always wanting more food, money, power, possessions etc than you need

NOUNS

a greedy person/child/relative etc *Greedy relatives wanted to get their hands on the old lady's money.*

greedy banks/corporations *This ruling will hurt the customer and increase profits for greedy corporations.*

greedy eyes *He looked at the gold with greedy eyes.*

greedy hands *Greedy hands grabbed at the cakes on the plate.*

a greedy pig *informal* (=someone who is greedy) *Have you eaten them all, you greedy pig?*

PREPOSITIONS

greedy for sth *The company was greedy for profits.*

green *adj, n*

1 the colour of grass or leaves

TYPES OF GREEN

pale/light/soft green *The room had pale green walls.*

dark/deep green *The plant has dark green leaves and white flowers.*

bright green *She dyed her hair bright green.*

lime green (=bright light green) *The lime green sofa contrasted with the red carpet.*

emerald green *The sea was a beautiful emerald green.*

PREPOSITIONS

in green *Fiona was dressed in green.*

PHRASES

a shade of green *Her eyes were an odd shade of green.*

2 harming the environment as little as possible, or connected with protecting the environment

NOUNS

green products *There is an increasing market for green products.*

green energy/fuels *The school is switching to green energy by installing solar heating panels.*

green technology *Car makers are investing in green technology.*

a green car/vehicle *They are funding research into greener cars.*

green transport *BrE, green transportation* *AmE: Mountain bikes are a popular method of green transport.*

green issues *The group has been campaigning on green issues for ten years.*

the Green Party *I usually vote for the Green Party.*

VERBS

go green (=change in order to harm the environment less) *We're always being told that we must go green.*

THESAURUS: green

eco-friendly, green, clean, renewable, sustainable, carbon-neutral, low-carbon, low-energy → **environmentally friendly**

greeting *n*

1 something you say or do when you meet someone

ADJECTIVES

a friendly/warm greeting *He didn't respond to my friendly greeting.*

a polite greeting *We exchanged the usual polite greetings.*

a formal greeting *After formal greetings, they were invited to sit down and watch the ceremony.*

a traditional greeting *A bow is the traditional Japanese greeting.*

VERBS

exchange greetings (=greet each other) *We exchanged greetings if we met in the street.*

shout/call out a greeting *One of the boys shouted a greeting.*

give/offer sb a greeting *He always gave her a friendly greeting.*

nod/wave a greeting *The man nodded a greeting to us.*

acknowledge/return sb's greeting (=greet someone who has greeted you) *She acknowledged their greetings with a wave.*

ignore sb's greeting *The old woman ignored his greeting and continued talking to her friend.*

PREPOSITIONS

in greeting *Jack raised a hand in greeting as they drove past.*

2 a friendly message that you send someone, for example on their birthday or at Christmas

NOUNS + greeting

birthday/Christmas etc greetings *He sent her some flowers with birthday greetings.*

holiday greetings *AmE: The president sent holiday greetings to Muslims in the United States and across the world.*

season's greetings *The Christmas card said "Season's Greetings" inside.*

VERBS

send greetings *At Christmas some people just send greetings by email.*

greeting + NOUNS

a greetings card *BrE, a greeting card* *AmE: The shop sells a range of greetings cards for all occasions.*

PREPOSITIONS

greetings from sb *Greetings from the whole family.*

greetings from somewhere *Greetings from sunny Cornwall.*

greetings to sb *Greetings to all the family.*

grey *adj* **THESAURUS** **cloudy, rainy**

grief *n*

extreme sadness, especially because someone you love has died

ADJECTIVES

deep/great grief *She expressed deep grief at his death.*

terrible/overwhelming grief *Childlessness brings feelings of terrible grief.*

public grief *There was a great public grief when Princess Diana died.*

private/personal grief *Too often the media intrudes on private grief.*

VERBS

feel grief *When her father died, she felt no grief.*

deal with/cope with your grief *People deal with their grief in different ways.*

come to terms with your grief (=accept the sad event and not be upset any more) *Counselling helped her come to terms with her grief.*

PREPOSITIONS

grief at/over sth *Her grief at his death was deep and sincere.*

grief for sb *He had been driven mad by grief for his son.*

PHRASES

be overcome/overwhelmed with grief (=feel it so strongly that you feel you cannot continue) *When his wife died, he was overcome with grief.*

be racked/wracked with grief (=feel extremely deep grief) *She was so racked with grief that she couldn't sleep.*

mad with grief *Her poor husband was mad with grief.*

an outpouring of grief (=the strong expression of a lot of grief) *The tragedy prompted a national outpouring of grief.*

feelings of grief *In his poems, he writes about his feelings of grief for his mother.*

grievance *n*

a belief that you have been treated unfairly, or a complaint that you have been treated unfairly

ADJECTIVES

a genuine grievance (=a real one) *He felt that he had a genuine grievance and was prepared to take the company to court.*

a legitimate grievance (=one that is reasonable) *Many people feel that the rebels have a legitimate grievance.*

an old/long-standing grievance (=one that you have felt unhappy about for a long time) *Years later, we became friends again and sorted out our old grievances.*

a personal grievance *He had turned the dispute into a personal grievance.*

VERBS

have a grievance (against sb) *I had no grievance against him.*

air your grievances (=tell people you think you have been treated unfairly) *There must be an opportunity for both sides to air their grievances.*

nurse/harbour a grievance (=think about it a lot or for a long time) *He was nursing a grievance about not being picked for the team.*

settle a grievance (=solve one) *The union decided to settle its grievance in the law courts.*

PREPOSITIONS

a grievance against sb/sth *If you have a grievance against a company, then you must go through a formal complaints procedure.*

PHRASES

a sense of grievance (=a feeling that you have been treated unfairly) *Anti-Americanism in these countries comes from a deep sense of grievance against the United States.*

grill *v* **THESAURUS** **cook¹**

grim *adj* **THESAURUS** **bad (1), depressing**

grimy *adj* **THESAURUS** **dirty**

grin¹ *v*

to smile widely, showing your teeth

ADVERBS

grin broadly/widely *She was grinning broadly when she opened the letter.*

grin sheepishly (=in a way that shows you are embarrassed) *"Sorry about that!" he said, grinning sheepishly.*

grin mischievously (=in a naughty way) *She grinned mischievously at me and I wondered what she was planning to do.*

grin inanely (=in a way that makes you look stupid) *The picture shows him grinning inanely at the camera.*

PREPOSITIONS

grin at sb He grinned at me and said "I've passed my test!"

PHRASES

be grinning from ear to ear (=in a way that shows you are very pleased) He came out of the interview grinning from ear to ear.

be grinning like an idiot (=in a way that makes you look stupid) Her friend was still grinning like an idiot.

grin² *n* a wide smile

ADJECTIVES

a wide/broad/big grin She opened the door with a wide grin.

a mischievous grin "Let's play a trick on her," he suggested, with a mischievous grin.

a sheepish grin (=embarrassed because you have done something silly or wrong) "Sorry," he said with a sheepish grin.

a silly grin "Wipe that silly grin off your face!" the teacher shouted.

VERBS

give a grin He gave a big grin when she walked into the room.

a grin spreads over/across sb's face A self-satisfied grin spread across his face.

sb's face breaks/splits into a grin The old man's face broke into a grin.

PHRASES

a grin on sb's face He looked at me with a big grin on his face.

grip¹ *n*

1 the action of holding something tightly

Grammar

Usually singular in this meaning.

ADJECTIVES

a firm/tight grip The streets were crowded and she kept a tight grip on her bag.

a strong grip Maggie took the boy's arm in a strong grip.

a good grip (=with which you can keep hold of something) The rocks were wet and slippery and it was difficult to get a good grip.

an iron/vice-like grip (=very strong) Victor was holding her wrist in an iron grip.

VERBS

keep a grip on sth (also **maintain a grip on sth** formal): Alain kept a firm grip on the bag.

tighten your grip (=hold something more tightly) Holding her son's hand, she tightened her grip as they crossed the road.

loosen/relax your grip (=hold something less tightly) Lee loosened his grip on the dog's collar.

have a grip on sth You need to have a good grip on your tennis racket.

get a grip on sth (=hold something that is hard to hold firmly) I got a grip on the rope and pulled myself up.

lose your grip (=accidentally let go of something) As he was climbing up he lost his grip and fell.

release your grip/let go of your grip (=stop holding something) The guard released his grip on the prisoner and pushed him into the cell.

sb's grip tightens His grip tightened on the steering wheel.

PREPOSITIONS

sb's grip on sth I felt her grip on my wrist.

2 power or control over someone or something

Grammar

Always singular in this meaning.

ADJECTIVES

a tight/firm/strong/powerful grip She kept a firm grip on her voice, trying to hide her fear.

an iron grip (=very strong) Previously the government had kept an iron grip on national spending.

a tenuous grip (=not strong) He is losing support and has only a tenuous grip on the presidency.

VERBS

have a grip on/over sth The president has a firm grip on power.

lose your grip The government seems to be losing its grip on the economic situation.

tighten your grip (=start to have more power and control) The army tightened their grip on the area.

relax/loosen your grip (=start to have less power or control) The movie is a powerful drama which never loosens its grip on you.

keep/maintain your grip Voters will decide whether the Republicans maintain their grip over the Senate.

break sb's/sth's grip (=stop someone or something having power or control) Police and community groups are working to break the grip of gangs in the city.

PREPOSITIONS

a grip on/over sth Religion had a powerful emotional grip over people's lives.

PHRASES

be in the grip of sth (=be in a bad situation that you cannot control) Europe is in the grip of the worst economic recession for 50 years.

grip² *v* to hold something tightly

ADVERBS

grip sb tightly/firmly/hard The little boy gripped his mother's arm tightly.

gripping *adj* **THESAURUS** interesting

groan *n*

a long deep sound that you make when you are in pain or do not want to do something

ADJECTIVES

a low/deep groan He gave a low groan when he saw the mess in the kitchen.

a loud groan There was a loud groan of disappointment from the crowd.

a little/small groan She let out a little groan of frustration as she struggled to open the door.

VERBS

give a groan He gave a groan when I asked him to wash the dishes.

let out a groan She tried to sit up, let out a groan of pain, and collapsed again.

hear a groan He could hear groans of pain coming from the patient in the next bed.

PREPOSITIONS

a groan of protest/disappointment etc The announcement was met with groans of protest.

with a groan With a small groan of annoyance, he got up to answer the door.

PHRASES

moans and groans (=complaints about unimportant things) Everything I ask her to do is met with moans and groans.

grotesque *adj* **THESAURUS** ugly (1)**ground** *n*

1 the surface of the earth

ADJECTIVES

muddy ground They were picking up potatoes from the muddy ground.

firm/soft ground We managed to get the car back onto firm ground.

frozen ground Snow fell on the frozen ground.

dry/wet ground The ground is so dry that the dirt turns to dust.

VERBS

fall to the ground The tree fell to the ground.

hit the ground I caught the ball just before it hit the ground.

leave the ground The plane left the ground and went up into the air.

PREPOSITIONS

on the ground She lay on the ground and looked up at the stars.

above/below the ground The miners work thousands of feet below the ground.

2 a subject that people are talking about or dealing with

ADJECTIVES

new/fresh ground The research covers some interesting new ground.

the same (old) ground I don't want to have to go over the same ground again.

familiar ground If you have read any of his other books, you will be on familiar ground.

dangerous/shaky ground When I saw her face suddenly change, I knew that we were on dangerous ground.

safe ground I think the author decided to stick to safe ground.

common ground (=things that you agree about or share an interest in) There is some common ground between the two political parties.

VERBS

cover/go over ground In her speech she covered a lot of ground.

break new/fresh ground (=deal with something that people have not dealt with before) The film broke new ground and was the first film to be shown in 3-D.

3 your grounds for doing something are your reasons for doing it

Grammar

Always plural in this meaning.

ADJECTIVES

good/strong/reasonable/valid grounds for sth There are strong grounds for believing that the same thing could happen again.

on medical/legal/financial/moral grounds Ethan was forced to give up work on medical grounds.

on compassionate grounds (=because something bad has happened in your life) When my dad died, I was allowed time off work on compassionate grounds.

VERBS

have grounds for sth He may have grounds for a claim against the company.

give grounds for sth The latest news about the US economy gives grounds for optimism.

PREPOSITIONS

on ... grounds I don't agree with animal experiments on moral grounds.

on the grounds that His application was turned down on the grounds that he didn't have enough experience.

grounds for sth The court decided that she had grounds for divorce.

group *n*

several people or things together

VERBS

join a group I asked him if he wanted to come over and join our group.

belong to a group Snakes belong to the same group of animals as lizards and crocodiles.

put/divide/organize sth/sb into groups The children were divided into groups according to their age.

get into groups *The teacher told the students to get into groups.*

leave a group *Rebecca left the group following a disagreement.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + group

an age group *The show appeals to people from all age groups.*

a social group (=from a particular part of society) *The researchers studied the health of different social groups.*

an ethnic/racial group (=who belong to a particular race) *The university welcomes applications from all ethnic groups.*

a minority group (=who belong to a different race, religion etc from most people in a place) *Conditions for some minority groups have got worse in recent years.*

a terrorist group *A terrorist group has claimed responsibility for the bombing.*

a splinter/breakaway group (=that has separated from another political or religious group) *The Social Democratic Party (SDP) was formed as a splinter group of the main Socialist Party.*

a pressure group (=one that tries to make the government do something) *Friends of the Earth is a leading environmental pressure group.*

a close-knit/tightly knit group (=in which everyone knows each other well and supports each other) *The young artists in Paris formed a close-knit group.*

group + NOUNS

a group discussion *The course includes both individual work and group discussions.*

a group decision *It wasn't just my idea – it was a group decision.*

PREPOSITIONS

a group of sb/sth *A group of teenagers were standing on the street corner.*

as a group *The team work well as a group.*

in/within a group *People in lower income groups will be worst affected by the new tax.*

outside a group *They weren't allowed to speak to people outside the group.*

PHRASES

a member of a group *She's a member of a Christian group at the school.*

THESAURUS: group

a group of things

bunch

flowers | **roses** | **keys** | **fruit** | **grapes** | **bananas**
a group of things that are held or tied together, or that grow together on a plant:
He handed me a bunch of roses. | The manager took out a huge bunch of keys and unlocked the door. | I've brought you a bunch of grapes.

bundle

papers | **clothes** | **letters** | **documents** | **newspapers** | **sticks**

a group of things that have been put or tied together, often in an untidy way:

Bundles of papers and files filled the shelves. | The room was untidy and a large bundle of clothes lay near the wardrobe door. | The old woman was carrying a bundle of sticks. | She tied the letters into a bundle.

sheaf especially literary

papers | **letters** | **notes** | **documents**

a lot of pieces of paper held or fastened together in a flat pile:

He produced a sheaf of papers and asked Harry to sign every one. | She sat down at the desk, pulling a sheaf of notes towards her.

cluster

houses | **buildings** | **shops** | **trees** | **stars** | **galaxies** | **islands** | **cells**

a group of things of the same kind that are close together in a place:

The track ended at a cluster of farm buildings. | Near to the house was a cluster of small trees. | The Faroes are a cluster of islands between Scotland and Iceland. | They found a small cluster of cancer cells.

a group of animals

herd

cows | **deer** | **elephants**

a group of cows, deer, or elephants:

A herd of cows was blocking the road.

flock

sheep | **birds** | **seagulls** | **geese** | **crows** | **pigeons**

a group of sheep or birds:

The farmer has over 100 sheep in his flock. | A flock of seagulls landed on the ocean.

pack

dogs | **wolves** | **hounds**

a group of dogs or wolves:

The dogs work in packs. | According to legend, the children were raised by a pack of wolves.

school/shoal

fish | **dolphins**

a group of fish or dolphins:

Piranha fish live in shoals in the wild. | A school of dolphins swam alongside our boat.

litter

puppies | **kittens**

a group of baby animals born at one time to a particular mother:

He was one of a litter of seven puppies.

grow v

1 to increase in amount, size, number, or strength

ADVERBS

grow rapidly/fast *The city grew rapidly.*

grow slowly *The business grew slowly at first.*

grow steadily *The economy has grown steadily.*

grow significantly *They have seen the value of the shares grow significantly over five years.*

have grown considerably *Since then, the number of students has grown considerably.*

grow dramatically *British exports grew dramatically at the end of the eighteenth century.*

grow exponentially (=keep growing at increasing speed) *Computer speed is growing exponentially.*

PREPOSITIONS

grow by... *Sales are expected to grow by six percent this year.*

grow (from...) to... *The population of the village grew from 3,000 to over 20,000.*

grow in size/number/popularity etc *Farms have been growing in size.*

2 if a living thing grows, it becomes bigger

NOUNS

a child/animal grows *The children have all grown since I last saw them.*

sb's hair grows/nails grow *Don't worry – your hair will grow back.*

a plant/tree grows *The plant grows rapidly.*

grass grows *In spring, the grass starts to grow.*

ADVERBS

grow quickly/rapidly/fast *The weeds are growing fast.*

grow well *There are many plants that will grow well in shade.*

grow tall/long *The trees have grown so tall they hide the house. | I'm going to let my hair grow long.*

grow 3 inches/30 centimetres etc *I had grown six inches since he had last seen me.*

PREPOSITIONS

grow into sth *He had grown into a tall strong youth.*

Grow up means to develop from being a child to being an adult: *Their children have grown up and left home.*

PHRASES

grow to 12 feet/40 metres etc *This fish can grow to 12 feet.*

grow to a height of 20 inches/3 metres etc *The plant grows to a height of 20 inches.*

3 to look after plants

NOUNS

grow crops/food *Farmers have cleared the land to grow crops.*

grow plants *If you haven't got much space, you can grow plants in containers.*

grow flowers/vegetables/fruit/herbs etc *She grew the flowers for the wedding herself.*

ADVERBS

be locally grown *All the vegetables are locally grown.*

grow sth organically (=without using chemicals) *Many people choose to buy vegetables that have been grown organically.*

PHRASES

grow your own vegetables/food *He likes gardening and grows his own vegetables.*

grow sth from seed *You can grow herbs from seed.*

THESAURUS: grow

cultivate

to grow a crop. **Cultivate** is more formal than **grow**:

The Mayans were the first people to cultivate cocoa. | When did people begin to keep livestock and cultivate crops?

4 to become

THESAURUS: grow

get, grow, turn, go, come → **become**

growthⁿ

1 an increase in the success, importance, or size of something

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + growth

economic/industrial growth *China enjoyed a long period of economic growth.*

population growth *The country has one of the highest population growth rates in the world.*

rapid growth *During this period there was rapid growth in the economy.*

strong growth *Many industries are expecting strong growth this year.*

steady growth *There has been a steady growth in employment.*

slow/sluggish growth *Economists are forecasting a period of slow growth.*

exponential growth (=becoming much faster very quickly) *Internet advertising has experienced exponential growth in the last few years.*

zero growth (=no growth) *The company recorded zero growth this quarter.*

annual growth *Mexico achieved a remarkable annual growth rate of 8%.*

VERBS

stimulate/encourage/promote growth (=make it more likely to happen) *Greater government spending may stimulate economic growth.*

maintain/sustain growth *Governments that want to survive have to maintain growth.*

achieve growth *After the war, Europe achieved remarkable economic growth.*

growth slows (down) *Economic growth slowed last year.*

growth + NOUNS

a growth area/industry (=a type of activity that is increasing) *Recycling waste is a huge growth industry.*

the growth rate *The economic growth rate averaged only 1.4 percent.*

PREPOSITIONS

the growth of sth *The growth of the internet has allowed more people to work from home.*

growth in sth *There has been a growth in the number of elderly people.*

2 the development of the physical size of a person, animal, or plant

ADJECTIVES

normal growth *This protein is essential for normal growth.*

healthy growth *Make sure your children get all the right vitamins for healthy growth.*

abnormal growth *The gene causes abnormal growth in the cells.*

VERBS

stimulate/encourage growth (=make it more likely to happen) *This process produces nutrients that stimulate the growth of new grasses.*

stunt/inhibit growth (=stop someone or something from growing as much as they should) *Seckel syndrome is a rare disease that stunts growth.*

grudge

a feeling of dislike for someone because you cannot forget that they harmed you in the past

VERBS

bear/carry a grudge (=have a grudge) *I try not to bear grudges.*

have/hold a grudge *The police asked if anyone might have had a grudge against the victim.*

harbour a grudge BrE, **harbor a grudge** AmE (=have a grudge for a long time) *He was the sort of person who would harbour a grudge for years.*

nurse a grudge (=have a grudge and keep finding reasons for it) *She was still nursing a grudge against her former boss.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + grudge

a personal grudge *It is known that the man had a personal grudge against his co-worker.*

an old/ancient/long-standing grudge *He said they should celebrate their achievements, not nurse old grudges.*

a childhood grudge (=from when someone was a child) *Police hinted that Robert's crime was motivated by a childhood grudge.*

PREPOSITIONS

a grudge against sb/sth *Do you have some sort of grudge against her?*

PHRASES

bear/hold etc no grudge *He insisted that he held no grudge against Taylor.*

someone with a grudge *The bomb could be the work of someone with a grudge against the company.*

grumpy adj **THESAURUS** angry

guarantee¹ [Ac] v

1 to promise that something will happen

NOUNS

guarantee sb's safety/security *New measures will help guarantee the safety of passengers.*

guarantee sb's rights/freedom *The law guarantees equal rights for men and women.*

guarantee standards/quality *Companies must be able to guarantee the quality of their products.*

guarantee the accuracy of sth *We cannot guarantee the accuracy of this information.*

ADVERBS

personally guarantee *I can personally guarantee that you will have the delivery on Thursday.*

effectively guarantee (=used when saying what the real situation is, even though it may seem different officially) *The bank has effectively guaranteed to lend him the money.*

2 to make something certain to happen

NOUNS

guarantee success *There is no way of guaranteeing success.*

guarantee a place *A win today will guarantee the team a place in the final.*

guarantee (sb) a job *Training programmes do not guarantee a job, but they do provide necessary skills.*

ADVERBS

almost/practically/virtually guarantee *The island has beautiful beaches and friendly people, so a good time is virtually guaranteed.*

automatically guarantee *Having a lot of money does not automatically guarantee happiness.*

sth is by no means guaranteed (=it is not certain to happen, even though some people think that it is) *Victory is by no means guaranteed.*

guarantee² [Ac] n

1 a company's formal promise to repair or replace a product if it breaks

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + guarantee

a one-year/two-year etc guarantee *The washing machine has a five-year guarantee.*

a full guarantee (=one that covers all problems) *All our bathrooms come with a full guarantee.*

a lifetime guarantee *They say that their furniture has a lifetime guarantee.*

a money-back guarantee (=one that gives you back the money you paid if there is a problem) *The company offers a 30-day money-back guarantee on all its products.*

VERBS + guarantee

have a guarantee *All our boots have a five-year guarantee.*

come with/carry a guarantee *The building work comes with a 30-year guarantee.*

extend a guarantee (=make it last for a longer period) *For an extra £20 you can extend the guarantee to two years.*

guarantee + VERBS

a guarantee covers sth (=it includes something) *The guarantee doesn't cover accidental damage.*

a guarantee runs out/expires (=it ends) *Customers have to pay for repairs after the guarantee runs out.*

PREPOSITIONS

a guarantee on sth *The company offers a five-year guarantee on all new cars.*

a guarantee against sth *There is a guarantee against all electrical faults.*

be under guarantee (=be protected by a guarantee) *We paid for the repair because the computer was no longer under guarantee.*

2 a person's firm promise to do something

VERBS

give/offer sb a guarantee (also **provide sb with a guarantee**) *He gave me a guarantee that the work would be finished next week.*

get/receive a guarantee *I received a guarantee that prisoners would be treated fairly.*

demand a guarantee *Customers are demanding guarantees that their goods will be delivered on time.*

ADJECTIVES

a cast-iron guarantee (also **an absolute guarantee**) (=one that is completely definite) *The manager has given him a cast-iron guarantee that he will be promoted.*

sb's personal guarantee *I give you my personal guarantee that I will be at the meeting.*

PHRASES

a guarantee of satisfaction (=a promise that someone will be pleased with something you are giving them) *Each of our products comes with a guarantee of complete satisfaction.*

guard¹ *n*

someone whose job is to protect a place or person, or prevent someone from escaping

ADJECTIVES

an armed guard *Armed guards stood in front of the gate.*

NOUNS + guard

a security guard *There were two security guards on duty outside the building.*

a border guard *We were stopped by border guards.*

a prison guard *Prison guards patrolled the jail.*

Bodyguard (= someone whose job is to protect an important person) is written as one word.

VERBS

a guard escorts sb (=goes with someone) *Six guards escorted the men into court.*

a guard patrols somewhere (=a guard walks regularly around) *Guards patrolled the area with dogs.*

post/station a guard somewhere (=make a guard stand somewhere) *Armed guards were posted by the exit.*

PHRASES

be on guard duty (=be standing as a guard somewhere) *Two men were on guard duty at the gate.*

guard² *v*

1 to stand next to someone or something to protect them or prevent them from escaping

ADVERBS

be heavily/closely/tightly guarded (=with a lot of soldiers or weapons) *The US embassy is heavily guarded.*

PREPOSITIONS

guard sth from/against sth *The missiles are there to guard the city from attack.*

2 to prevent someone from taking something or finding out about something

ADVERBS

be closely/carefully/tightly guarded *The name of the new car is a closely guarded secret.*

jealously/fiercely guard sth (=in a way that shows you care a lot about something) *Universities have jealously guarded their independence.*

guess¹ *v*

to try to answer a question or form an opinion when you are not sure whether you will be correct

ADVERBS

guess right/correctly *The first team to guess correctly wins the game.*

guess wrong/incorrectly *If they guess incorrectly, the other team gets the points.*

NOUNS

guess the answer *You can probably guess the answer to that question.*

PREPOSITIONS

guess at sth *We can only guess at the cause of the crash.*

PHRASES

be difficult/hard/easy to guess *It was difficult to guess his age.*

let me guess *What star sign are you? Let me guess.*

guess² *n*

an attempt to answer a question or make a judgment when you are not sure whether you will be correct

ADJECTIVES

a rough guess (=one that is not exact) *This is just a rough guess, but I think it would cost about \$50.*

a wild guess (=one made without much thought or information) *I made a wild guess and I got the answer right first time.*

a lucky guess *"How did you know?" "It was just a lucky guess."*

a good/fair/reasonable guess (=one that is likely to be right) *I'm not sure how old she is, but I can make a good guess!*

sb's best guess (=one that you think is most likely to be right) *My best guess is that it will take around six months.*

an educated/informed guess (=a guess based on things that you know are correct) *Stockbrokers try to make educated guesses as to which stocks will do well.*

VERBS

make a guess *I didn't know the answer to question 7, so I just had to make a guess.*

have a guess BrE, **take a guess** AmE: *Go on, have a guess at how much it cost.*

hazard a guess (=guess something, when you feel very uncertain) *No one at this stage is prepared to hazard a guess about the outcome of the elections.*

PHRASES

my guess is (that)... *My guess is there won't be many people there.*

at a guess BrE (=used when saying that you are making a guess) *I'd say the house was built around 1900, at a guess.*

I'll give you three guesses (=used when you think it will be easy for someone to guess something) *"Where is he?" "I'll give you three guesses."*

guest *n*

someone who is invited to your home or to an event or special occasion

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + guest

a wedding/party/dinner guest *We need to send out invitations to all the wedding guests.*

the main/chief/principal guest *The prime minister was one of the main guests at the event.*

an uninvited guest *She was surprised when an uninvited guest arrived at the door.*

an unwelcome guest (=one who is not wanted) *Security guards were employed to keep out unwelcome guests.*

a regular/frequent guest *The Johnsons were regular guests at Eric's house.*

an honoured guest BrE, **an honored guest** AmE (=one who is given special respect and treatment) *They were the honoured guests of the Queen at the Royal Garden Party.*

a distinguished guest (=one who people respect or admire a lot) *Many distinguished guests were invited to the opening ceremony.*

VERBS

have guests (=have people visiting you in your house) *We had guests over Christmas, and the house was full.*

invite a guest *The guests were invited to a dinner at his country house.*

greet/welcome the guests *Roger was busy greeting the guests as they arrived.*

entertain guests (=have guests at your house or another place for a meal or party) *Their garden is a wonderful place to entertain guests.*

guest + NOUNS

the guest list (=a list of the people invited to an event) *The guest list included many of his old school friends.*

a guest speaker/lecturer (=one who is invited to an event from another organization, university etc) *The guest speaker at the conference was Dr Kim.*

PHRASES

the guest of honour BrE, **the guest of honor** AmE (=the most important guest) *The senator was guest of honor at a reception held at the embassy.*

guide *n*

1 someone whose job is to show people around a place

ADJECTIVES

a local guide *If you are going into the jungle, you need to hire the services of a local guide.*

NOUNS + guide

a tour guide *A group of teenagers were listening to their tour guide.*

a mountain guide *They went climbing with a mountain guide.*

a museum guide *The museum guide explained about the history of the coins.*

a tourist guide *She works as a tourist guide in her vacation.*

VERBS

hire a guide *You can hire a guide for \$30 a day.*

act as a guide *The hotel owner acted as our guide.*

work as a guide *He works as a guide for Japanese tourists.*

2 something that provides information and helps you to form an opinion or make a decision

ADJECTIVES

a good/reliable/accurate guide *The weather forecast is not always a very reliable guide to the weather.*

a rough guide (=not exact) *These figures are only meant to be a rough guide.*

a general guide *As a general guide, you need one kilo of sugar for every kilo of fruit.*

VERBS

use sth as a guide *This information should only be used as a general guide.*

provide/offer a guide *The tests offer a guide to students' abilities.*

act/serve as a guide *His paintings act as a guide to how he was feeling at the time.*

3 a book or piece of writing that gives information about something

ADJECTIVES

a useful/handy guide *The website also includes a useful guide for writing research papers.*

a practical guide *This book is a practical guide to designing your own website.*

a detailed guide *There is a detailed guide of the best walks in the area.*

a brief/quick/short guide *The article includes a brief guide to local restaurants.*

a comprehensive guide (=including all the information you need) *The tourist office produces a comprehensive guide to the city.*

the definitive guide (=the best guide) *He wrote the definitive guide to photography.*

an introductory guide *The book is intended as an introductory guide to the subject.*

a step-by-step guide (=a guide that clearly explains each stage in a process) *The magazine offers a step-by-step guide to making wine.*

NOUNS + guide

a travel guide *I read about the beach in the travel guide.*

a study guide *You can use study guides to help you prepare for your exam.*

a reference guide *The book is intended as a reference guide for students.*

VERBS

produce/publish a guide *They produced a handy guide to identifying butterflies.*

PREPOSITIONS

a guide to sth *There is a short guide to hotels in the area.*

a guide for sb *This is a useful guide for walkers.*

Guidebook is written as one word.

guidelines Ac *n*
rules or instructions about the best way to do something

ADJECTIVES

new guidelines *The government has announced new guidelines for food safety.*

strict guidelines *There are strict guidelines on how the money can be used.*

clear guidelines *Students should be given clear guidelines on which books they need to study.*

simple/basic guidelines *Here are some simple guidelines to help you when you are choosing a pet.*

general/broad guidelines *The committee produced a set of general guidelines.*

detailed/specific guidelines *Detailed guidelines are available for students who are planning to take the exam.*

NOUNS + guidelines

government guidelines *Under government guidelines, everyone can have free emergency treatment.*

policy guidelines *We need to establish clear policy guidelines.*

safety guidelines *Try to follow these basic safety guidelines.*

VERBS

follow guidelines *You must follow these guidelines when you are writing your application.*

meet guidelines (also **comply with guidelines** formal) (=obey them) *All new vehicles must meet the guidelines on emissions.*

issue/lay down guidelines *The hospital has issued strict new guidelines on the treatment of mentally ill patients.*

provide/offer guidelines *They should provide some sort of guidelines which tell you how to fill out the form.*

introduce/implement guidelines (=start to use guidelines for the first time) *The new guidelines will be introduced next year.*

establish/draw up guidelines *The school has drawn up guidelines for teachers.*

produce/publish/bring out guidelines *Guidelines have been published on prevention and treatment of the disease.*

adopt guidelines (=start to use them) *Many states have adopted the guidelines.*

revise guidelines (=change them) *The guidelines are being revised.*

PREPOSITIONS

under guidelines *Under current guidelines, the treatment is not offered to people over 65.*

guidelines on/about sth *There are new guidelines on the employment of children.*

PHRASES

a set of guidelines *We have developed a new set of guidelines.*



Hh

habitⁿ

something you do regularly, often without thinking about it

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + habit

a bad habit Some children develop bad habits and always leave their room in a mess.

an annoying/unpleasant/nasty habit He had an annoying habit of eating with his mouth open.

a dirty/filthy habit We all know smoking is a filthy habit.

a good habit Exercising every day is a good habit to get into.

a strange/peculiar/odd habit Amy had a lot of peculiar habits, one of them being to stare at you without blinking.

a disconcerting habit (=making you feel slightly worried or embarrassed) The president has a disconcerting habit of saying exactly what he is thinking.

an unfortunate habit (=one that you wish was different) She had an unfortunate habit of forgetting what she wanted to say.

eating/drinking habits (=the kinds of things you eat or drink regularly) You need to change your eating habits and start eating healthy foods.

buying/spending habits (=the kinds of things you buy regularly) People are changing their spending habits because they are worried about their jobs.

VERBS

have a habit (of doing sth) He has a habit of being late.

sth becomes a habit Thinking negatively can become a habit.

get into a habit (=start doing something regularly or often) Try to get into the habit of walking for 30 minutes each day.

get out of a habit (=stop doing something regularly or often) I was busy at work and got out of the habit of exercising.

break/kick a habit (=stop doing something that is bad for you) I've smoked for years, but I really want to kick the habit.

develop/form a habit He felt very uncomfortable in social situations and had developed the habit of avoiding them.

change your habits It's sometimes difficult for people to change their habits.

make a habit of (doing) sth (=start doing something regularly) You can leave work early today as long as you don't make a habit of it.

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

out of/from habit (=because you have been doing something regularly for a long time) I always go to the same supermarket, out of habit.

PHRASES

be in the habit of doing sth On Friday evenings, Carrie was in the habit of visiting her parents.

(by/from) force of habit (=used about a habit that is difficult to change) I still think about her every day – force of habit, I suppose.

change/break the habits of a lifetime (=stop doing the things you have done for many years) It is hard to change the habits of a lifetime, but you must eat more healthily.

habitatⁿ

the natural home of a plant or animal

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + habitat

sth's natural/native habitat (=the type of place where an animal or plant usually lives or grows) She studies gorillas in their natural habitat.

a wildlife habitat The area has a rich variety of wildlife habitats.

an important habitat The island is an important habitat for exotic animals.

a fragile habitat (=that could easily be damaged) The forest has become an increasingly fragile habitat.

an endangered/threatened habitat (=that is in danger of being destroyed) These wetlands are one of Britain's most endangered habitats.

a suitable habitat The land provides a suitable habitat for many types of birds.

VERBS

damage/destroy a habitat Widening the road will damage the habitat of many birds.

threaten a habitat (=be likely to damage it) Huge out-of-town developments are threatening wildlife habitats.

protect/conserve/preserve a habitat These laws will protect the habitat of endangered species such as wolves.

provide a habitat (=be suitable and available as a habitat) Marshes provide a habitat for many species of wading birds.

create a habitat The aim is to create a suitable breeding habitat for rare birds.

a habitat disappears The number of bears is falling because their natural habitat is disappearing.

PREPOSITIONS

a habitat for sth The woods provide an excellent habitat for dozens of small mammals.

PHRASES

loss of habitat The elephants are threatened by loss of habitat.

the destruction of sth's habitat The destruction of the bird's habitat has been worst in the south.

hair

the mass of things like fine threads that grow on your head

Grammar

When talking about the mass of things on your head, **hair** is always uncountable. You say *He has got brown hair*. Don't say 'He has got a brown hair.'
The countable form **a hair** is used when talking about a single piece of hair: *I found a hair in the sink*.

ADJECTIVES - COLOUR

- dark hair** *He's about six feet tall, with dark hair and brown eyes.*
- fair hair** *Her long fair hair fell untidily over her shoulders.*
- black/brown hair** *Her long black hair hung down her back.*
- blond/blonde hair** (=pale yellow in colour - 'blonde' is used especially about women) *Anneka has short blonde hair and blue eyes.*
- red/ginger hair** (=orange-brown in colour) *The boy had red hair and his friends called him 'carrot'.*
- grey/white/silver hair** (=used about old people's hair) *She was about 70, with grey hair.*

Other hair colours

Jet black hair is completely black. **Chestnut hair** is dark brown. **Sandy hair** is pale brown. **Mousy hair** is an unattractive pale brown colour. **Auburn hair** is brownish-red. **Golden hair** is a beautiful yellow colour.

ADJECTIVES - LENGTH

- short hair** *I like your hair when it's short like that.*
- long hair** *A few of the boys had long hair.*
- shoulder-length/medium-length hair** *He had shoulder-length brown hair.*

ADJECTIVES - TYPE

- straight hair** *Bella has long straight hair.*
- curly hair** *When he was young, his hair was thick and curly.*
- wavy hair** (=with loose curls) *Her golden wavy hair fell around her shoulders.*
- thick hair** *She had thick hair down to her waist.*
- spiky hair** (=stiff and standing up on top of your head) *Billy had black spiky hair.*

ADJECTIVES - CONDITION

- glossy/shiny hair** *She combed her hair until it was all glossy.*
- greasy hair** (=containing too much oil) *This shampoo is ideal for greasy hair.*
- dry hair** (=lacking oil) *Use a shampoo for dry hair.*
- sb's hair is in good/bad/terrible etc condition** *How do you keep your hair in such perfect condition?*

VERBS

- have ... hair** *She has beautiful blonde hair.*
 - brush/comb your hair** *He cleaned his teeth and brushed his hair.*
 - wash your hair** *He showered and washed his hair.*
 - do your hair** (also **fix your hair** AmE) (=arrange it in a style) *She's upstairs doing her hair.*
 - have your hair cut/done/permed** (also **get your hair cut etc**) (=by a hairdresser) *I need to get my hair cut.*
 - cut sb's hair** *My mum always cuts my hair.*
 - dye your hair (blonde/red etc)** (=change its colour, especially using chemicals) *Craig has dyed his hair black.*
 - wear your hair long/in a ponytail etc** (=have that style of hair) *He wore his hair in a ponytail.*
 - grow your hair (long)** (=let it grow longer) *I'm growing my hair long, but it's taking forever.*
 - lose your hair** (=become bald) *He was a small round man who was losing his hair.*
 - run your fingers through sb's hair** (=touch someone's hair in a loving way) *He ran his fingers through her smooth silky hair.*
- ⚠ Don't say 'I cut my hair' if another person cut your hair for you. Say **I had my hair cut**.

hair + NOUNS

- hair colour** BrE, **hair color** AmE: *You've changed your hair colour!*
- hair products** (=products such as shampoo that you use to make your hair look nice) *The company has launched a new range of hair products.*
- hair loss** *The drug can cause hair loss.*

Hairstyle, haircut, and hairdresser

(=someone who cuts people's hair as a job) are written as one word.

PHRASES

- a strand/wisp of hair** (=a thin piece of hair) *She brushed away a strand of hair from her eyes.*
- a lock of hair** (=a fairly thick piece of hair) *She tossed a stray lock of hair back off her forehead.*
- a mop of hair** (=a large amount of thick untidy hair) *He had an unruly mop of brown hair.*
- have a full head of hair** (=used to say that a man has not lost any hair) *Even though he is 70, he still has a full head of hair.*

haircut

1 if you have a haircut, someone cuts your hair for you

VERBS

- have a haircut** *How often do you usually have a haircut?*
- get a haircut** *She went to get a haircut.*



need a haircut *Your hair is too long – you need a haircut.*

give sb a haircut *Last time they gave me a terrible haircut.*

2 the style your hair is cut in

ADJECTIVES

a new haircut *I like your new haircut.*

a short haircut *A short haircut really suits him.*

a good/decent haircut *A good haircut can make you look ten years younger.*

a stylish haircut *The band all have stylish haircuts.*

a bad haircut *He had a bad haircut and wore unfashionable clothes.*

halfⁿ

one of two equal parts of something

ADJECTIVES

the top/bottom half *The bottom half of the wall is painted blue.*

the first/second half *Profits doubled in the first half of the year.*

the northern/southern half *The northern half of the city is more industrial.*

the other half *Half the patients were given the drug and the other half were given a sugar pill.*

the last/latter half *He had a lot of illness in the latter half of his life.*

VERBS

break/cut/tear sth in half *He tore the paper in half.*

divide/split sth in half *Divide the dough in half.*

reduce/cut sth by half *The company has reduced the number of staff by half.*

decrease/fall by half *Share prices fell by half.*

increase/rise by half *The number of passengers using the service has increased by half.*

PHRASES

one/two etc and a half *"How old is she?" "Five and a half."*

halt¹

ⁿ a stop or pause

ADJECTIVES

a sudden halt (also **an abrupt halt** formal): *My happiness was brought to a sudden halt by the death of my father.*

an immediate halt *The government called for an immediate halt to the fighting.*

a complete halt *Traffic on the busy motorway has slowed almost to a complete halt.*

a temporary halt *The game was brought to a temporary halt when the floodlights failed.*

a grinding halt (=one in which all of a system stops completely) *One accident can bring the whole road system to a grinding halt.*

VERBS

bring sth to a halt (=make it stop moving or

operating) *The city was brought to a halt by the transport strike.*

sth/sb comes to a halt (=they stop moving or operating) *The bus came to a halt right outside the school.*

call for a halt to sth (=publicly ask for something to stop) *The government has called for a halt to the violence.*

call a halt to sth (=stop doing it) *University officials have asked the students to call a halt to their protest.*

order a halt to sth (=officially say that something must stop) *The president ordered a halt to nuclear tests on the islands.*

demand a halt to sth (=firmly ask for something to stop) *Irish farmers demanded a halt to imports of British cattle.*

put a halt to sth (=stop something) *The bad news put a halt to our celebrations.*

sth grinds to a halt (=it stops slowly – used for emphasis) *If the computer system fails, the entire banking system could grind to a halt.*

sth draws to a halt (=a vehicle slows down and stops) *As the train drew to a halt, people started to get off.*

sth screeches to a halt (=a vehicle stops very quickly with a loud high sound) *A police car screeched to a halt and two officers jumped out.*

PREPOSITIONS

a halt to sth *The government has agreed to meet protesters if there is an immediate halt to the violence.*

halt² v **THESAURUS** stop¹ (3)

hand¹

ⁿ the part of your body at the end of your arm, including your fingers and thumb, that you use to hold things

ADJECTIVES

sb's right/left hand *She held the book in her right hand.*

big/small hands *He has very big hands and feet.*

strong hands *His strong hands gripped her shoulders.*

delicate hands (=small and thin) *Ben has very delicate hands for a man.*

clammy/sweaty hands (=with a lot of sweat) *His hands get clammy when he's nervous.*

rough hands *The farmer had big rough hands.*

gnarled hands (=rough and twisted because of old age) *The photograph showed the gnarled hands of the old man.*

sb's free hand (=the hand someone is not already using) *Amy was stroking the dog with her free hand.*

an outstretched hand (=stretched out towards someone or something) *She took her father's outstretched hand and began to walk from the room.*

VERBS + hand

- wave your hand** *Marta waved a hand to attract his attention.*
- clap your hands** *They were singing and clapping their hands.*
- wash your hands** *Go wash your hands before dinner.*
- hold hands (with sb)** *Joanne and Kevin held hands on the sofa.*
- shake sb's hand** (also **shake hands with sb**) *"Nice to meet you," he said, as they shook hands.*
- take sb's hand** (=hold someone's hand) *He reached across the table and took her hand in his.*
- join hands** (=take hold of the hands of people on either side of you) *They stood in a circle and joined hands.*
- clasp your hands** (=hold them together tightly) *Emily clasped her hands together and stood there nervously.*
- raise your hand** (also **put your hand up**) (=lift your hand, especially when you want to ask or answer a question) *If you know the answer, raise your hand.*

hand + VERBS

- sb's hands shake/tremble** *His hands trembled as he lifted the cup.*
- sb's hand holds sth** *His other hand was holding his mobile phone.*
- sb's hand touches sth** *Daniel's hand touched mine.*
- sb's hand grips/clutches sth** (=holds something firmly) *Her hands gripped the steering wheel very tightly.*

hand + NOUNS

- a hand movement** *The disease means she has trouble controlling her hand movements.*
- a hand gesture/signal** (=a movement of your hand to show what you mean) *He made a rude hand gesture at the other driver.*
- hand cream/lotion** *If your hands feel rough, put some hand cream on them.*

PREPOSITIONS

- in sb's hand** *In her hand was a tattered old photograph.*
- with your hands** *I grasped the vase with both my hands.*
- by hand** (=done or made by a person and not a machine) *You should wash delicate clothes by hand.*

PHRASES

- hand in hand** (=holding hands with each other) *The couple left the building hand in hand.*
- the palm of your hand** (=the inside surface of your hand) *The phone could fit into the palm of his hand.*
- the back of your hand** (=the outside surface of your hand) *Let a dog sniff the back of your hand, rather than your fingers.*
- with your bare hands** (=without using a tool,

- weapon, machine etc) *With his bare hands, he forced the doors apart.*
- on your hands and knees** (=in a crawling position) *They got down on their hands and knees to search.*

hand² v **THESAURUS** **give (1)**

handicap n

a situation that makes it difficult for someone to do what they want

ADJECTIVES

- a real handicap** *Not speaking the language is a real handicap.*
- a major/big handicap** *The lack of an industrial sector in the country is a major handicap to improving its economy.*
- a serious/severe handicap** *His old age proved to be a serious handicap to being elected president.*

VERBS

- have a handicap** *The English team had a big handicap because several of their best players were injured.*
- overcome a handicap** *She had to work hard to overcome the handicap of coming from a very poor family.*

PREPOSITIONS

- a handicap to sth** *Being a small country is not necessarily a handicap to economic success.*
- a handicap for sb** *Shyness can be a handicap for anyone who wants to become an actor.*

Handicapped

This word was used in the past about disabled people. It is now becoming old-fashioned and is considered offensive by many people.

handle n

the part of something used for opening it or holding it

VERBS

- turn the handle** *She turned the handle and went inside.*
- try the handle** (=try to turn it) *He tried the handle, but the door was locked.*
- hold the handle** *Hold the handle of the basket carefully so that you don't drop it.*
- grab/grasp the handle** *I grabbed the handle of the door and pulled it open.*

NOUNS + handle

- a door handle** *He put his hand on the door handle and tested it.*

handshake n

the act of taking someone's right hand and shaking it

ADJECTIVES

a firm handshake *He greeted me with a firm handshake.*

a farewell handshake (=when saying 'goodbye') *After a brief farewell handshake, he boarded the train.*

a secret handshake (=done in a special way as a secret signal) *Club members greet each other with a secret handshake.*

VERBS

give sb a handshake *The women hugged me and the men gave me a handshake.*

greet sb with a handshake *He greeted all of his guests with a handshake.*

exchange handshakes *The teams exchanged handshakes at the end of the game.*

handsome *adj*

1 a handsome man is good-looking

NOUNS

a handsome man/boy *Your husband is a very handsome man.*

a handsome prince *A handsome prince kissed her and she woke up.*

a handsome face *His handsome face looked sad for a moment.*

handsome features *His handsome features are framed by thick dark hair.*

Handsome is normally only used about men. It is sometimes used in literature about a woman, especially an older woman with very strong or noticeable features: *She was a tall handsome woman dressed in riding clothes.*

ADVERBS

strikingly handsome (=in a very noticeable way) *He is a strikingly handsome young man.*

devastatingly handsome (=extremely handsome) *A smile passed across his devastatingly handsome face.*

darkly handsome (=handsome, with dark hair and skin) *He was lively, funny, and darkly handsome.*

ruggedly handsome (=handsome, with strong features) *I like men who are ruggedly handsome, not pretty boys.*

classically handsome (=handsome in a way that has always been considered to be handsome) *His face is interesting, rather than classically handsome.*

VERBS

look handsome *You look very handsome in your new suit.*

PHRASES

tall (dark) and handsome *Jack is very tall and handsome.*

young and handsome *She likes working with men, particularly if they are young and handsome.*

THESAURUS: handsome

handsome, good-looking, pretty, attractive, cute, lovely, gorgeous, glorious, picturesque, magnificent, stunning, breathtaking/spectacular, exquisite → **beautiful**

2 large or impressive

NOUNS

a handsome profit *He sold the house at a handsome profit.*

a handsome sum *£10,000 is a handsome sum.*

a handsome reward *She received a handsome reward for finding the wallet.*

PHRASES

pay handsome dividends (=have very good results later) *Being well prepared will pay handsome dividends in a job interview.*

handwriting *n*

the style of someone's writing

ADJECTIVES

neat/clear handwriting *Your handwriting is much neater than mine.*

legible/illegible handwriting (=written clearly, or not written clearly enough for you to read) *He writes very quickly and his handwriting is almost illegible.*

small/tiny handwriting *Her handwriting was so tiny I couldn't read it without my glasses.*

bad/poor/terrible/awful handwriting (=untidy and difficult to read) *Like many doctors, she has terrible handwriting.*

good/lovely/beautiful handwriting *I received a postcard in her familiar lovely handwriting.*

sb's best handwriting *The teacher encouraged pupils to do the test in their best handwriting.*

VERBS

have neat/small etc handwriting *Yu Yin has tiny handwriting.*

recognize sb's handwriting *I didn't recognize the handwriting on the envelope.*

read sb's handwriting *I left her a note and hoped she would be able to read my handwriting.*

handwriting + NOUNS

a handwriting expert (=someone who studies people's handwriting) *A handwriting expert is sure that the letter was written by the suspect.*

PHRASES

in (sb's) handwriting *Entry forms must be completed in the candidate's own handwriting.*

handy *adj* **THESAURUS** usefulhappen *v*

used when saying that there is an event, especially one that is not planned

NOUNS

- an accident/incident/event happens** *The accident happened at 6.15 a.m.*
- an attack/explosion/murder etc happens** *Neighbours are shocked that such an attack could happen in their village.*
- a change happens** *They don't believe that climate change is really happening.*
- a disaster/earthquake happens** *The question is, could an earthquake like this happen in California?*
- a miracle happens** *I was hoping that a miracle would happen.*
- a ... thing happens** *A funny thing happened last week when I was on the subway.*
- something/nothing happens** *If something happens, call me immediately.*

VERBS

- make sth happen** *It's up to you - only you can make it happen.*
- let sth happen** *The authorities are determined not to let the same thing happen again.*
- predict/know that sth will happen** *It's impossible to predict what will happen next.*

ADVERBS

- happen quickly/slowly/gradually** *It all happened so quickly that there was nothing I could do.*
- happen overnight** (=immediately) *Change doesn't happen overnight.*

PREPOSITIONS

- happen to sb** *The same thing happened to my sister.*

PHRASES

- sth is bound to happen** (=certain to happen) *An accident was bound to happen sooner or later.*
- sth happens all the time/every day** (=it happens often) *This kind of thing happens all the time where I live.*
- whatever happens** *We'll still be friends, whatever happens.*

THESAURUS: happen

take place

- meeting | conference | ceremony | marriage | competition | game | race | demonstration | change | accident | incident | attack | murder** to happen. **Take place** is often used about things that have been planned:
- The meeting took place in Paris on January 12th. | The ceremony will take place in Westminster Abbey. | Important changes were taking place across the Arab World. | They want to avoid the kind of accident that took place at Three Mile Island in the US.*

occur formal

- problem | accident | incident | attack | explosion | situation | case | disease | condition**

to happen. **Occur** is used about events that have not been planned, especially bad events. **Occur** is more formal than **happen**: *Problems might occur if there is a big rise in sea levels. | The accident occurred on the northbound No. 3 Freeway. | A similar situation occurred in Thailand in 2004.*

come up

- question | opportunity | chance | problem** to happen - used especially about problems, questions, and opportunities:
- This question often comes up when I'm talking to students. | After a year, an opportunity came up to move to Vienna. | There aren't any jobs at the moment, but we'll let you know if something comes up* (=if there are any opportunities for jobs).

arise formal

- problem | difficulty | question | opportunity | chance | circumstance | need | dispute | conflict | doubt | concern** to happen - used especially about problems, questions, and opportunities. **Arise** is more formal than **come up**. It is often used when talking about dealing with possible problems:
- There may be financial problems arising from the patient's illness. | The question arose as to who the money belonged to. | Charles decided to talk to her about it, when the opportunity arose. | The lifeguard will be there to rescue you, should the need arise* (=if necessary). *A dispute arose between the steel companies and their employees.*

crop up

- problem | issue | emergency | question** to happen suddenly or often - used especially about less serious problems that can easily be dealt with:
- Traditionally, if a problem crops up, a manager goes in and tells people what to do. | The same issues always keep cropping up on every project. | Here is my phone number, just in case something crops up.*

strike

- disaster | tragedy | earthquake | tsunami | hurricane | storm | drought** to happen suddenly - used about very bad events:
- They were coming down the mountain when disaster struck. | I was on the 38th floor of an office building when the earthquake struck.*

turn out

- well | fine | okay | badly | as planned** used when saying whether something happens successfully, in the way that you wanted:
- Luckily, everything turned out well in the end. | Things don't always turn out as planned. | How did it all turn out?*

materialize (also **materialise** BrE)
to happen – used when saying that
something did not happen, even though
people expected it to:
*The rains **failed to materialize** last year. | The
violence the newspapers had predicted **did not**
materialize.*

Instead of saying that something
happened, you often use **there is/was**: *The
leaflet tells you what to do if **there is** an
accident (=if an accident happens).
You say that **there is something going on**,
when you know that something is
happening, but you are not sure what it is:
***There's something going on** outside our house.**

happiness *n* the state of being happy

ADJECTIVES

great happiness *His grandchildren bring him
great happiness.*
true/real happiness *She found true happiness
with a man she loved.*
perfect/pure/sheer happiness *The birth of my
child was a moment of sheer happiness.*
personal happiness *People are realizing that
wealth and success do not always bring personal
happiness.*
future happiness *Your future happiness depends
on this decision.*
lasting happiness (=that continues for a long
time) *In her second marriage, she found lasting
happiness.*

VERBS

find happiness (also **achieve happiness**
formal): *His ambition was to be a musician but he
unexpectedly found happiness as a teacher.*
bring (sb) happiness *She wrongly believes that
money can bring happiness.*
be filled with happiness *She ran towards me,
her eyes filled with happiness.*

PHRASES

a feeling of happiness *Being by the ocean gave
her a feeling of great happiness.*
the pursuit of happiness (=the act of trying to
achieve happiness) *Life, liberty, and the pursuit
of happiness are seen as basic rights.*
I wish you every happiness (=used to say that
you hope someone will have a happy life)
*I wish you both every happiness in your new life
together.*

happy *adj*
having feelings of pleasure, for example
because something good has happened to you
or you are very satisfied with your life

VERBS

be/feel happy *It's a lovely house and we've been
very happy here.*

look happy *They looked so happy and proud of
their son.*

make sb happy *I loved her and thought I could
make her happy.*

NOUNS

a happy ending *The story has a happy ending
and the baby bear finds his mother again.*

a happy man/woman/couple/family *If we
win, I'll be a very happy man.*

a happy face/smile *I looked around at the
happy faces of the children.*

a happy child/boy/girl *Nigel was a happy boy
with lots of friends.*

a happy childhood/marriage *Although we were
poor, we had a very happy childhood in many
ways.*

a happy time/occasion/experience *Floyd's
farm was a place where I spent many happy
times.*

a happy life *We hope you have a long and happy
life together.*

happy memories *The film brought back many
happy memories.*

happy birthday/Christmas/New Year (=used
as a greeting on someone's birthday, at
Christmas etc) *I wanted to wish you a very
happy birthday.*

the happy news (=often used when
someone has a new baby or is going to have
one) *She couldn't wait to tell her friends the
happy news.*

PREPOSITIONS

happy with sth (=used especially when saying
someone is satisfied) *I'm happy with the
situation.*

happy about sth *When I talked to her about the
idea, she seemed very happy about it.*

happy for sb *I'm so happy for you both.*

happy in your job/work/marriage/life *He is
happy in his job and has no intention of leaving.*

ADVERBS

blissfully/deliriously happy (=extremely
happy) *Ronni had never been so deliriously happy
in her life.*

perfectly happy (=completely happy and not
wanting anything to change) *I'm perfectly happy
here – I don't want to move.*

fairly/reasonably happy (=fairly satisfied) *He
was reasonably happy with his performance in the
competition.*

genuinely happy *She seemed genuinely happy to
be there.*

PHRASES

happy as can be/happy as anything especially
spoken (=extremely happy) *His parents are as
happy as can be.*

THESAURUS: happy

cheerful

voice | smile | face | expression | manner | mood | atmosphere | woman | man | room | place | colour

looking or sounding happy:

"Great to see you!" he said in a cheerful voice. | It was the end of term and everyone was in a cheerful mood. | Mrs Johnson was a cheerful woman with enormous energy. | The room was painted in bright cheerful colours. | He seems a lot more cheerful today.

contented

smile | expression | silence | sigh | mood | man | woman | baby | cat

feeling happy with your life, job, situation etc.

Contented sounds a little formal and is mainly used in written English:

There was a contented smile on the little boy's face. | He was a contented man, with a good wife and a prosperous farm. | She was contented with her job at the university.

Contented or content?

You can also use **content** to mean "satisfied with your life": *Henry was happy and if he was content, so was Diana.*

However, usually **content** means that someone does not want to do anything else, or have anything else: *He was content to just sit back and wait. | The team had to be content with second place.*

pleased/glad

happy because something good has happened:

I'm pleased I passed my exam. | He was glad to see someone that he knew.

Pleased and **glad** are not usually used before a noun.

If someone seems happy, you can also say that he or she is **in a good mood**.

very happy

delighted

very happy because something good has happened:

The doctors say they are delighted with her progress.

thrilled

very happy and excited about something:

He's thrilled at the idea of going to Disneyworld.

overjoyed

very happy because you have heard some good news:

She was overjoyed when she found out that her son was safe.

Delighted, thrilled, and overjoyed are not used before a noun.

ecstatic

fans | crowd | welcome | review

extremely happy and feeling very excited:

The crowd were ecstatic, and cheered wildly. | The play received ecstatic reviews. | The coach said he was simply ecstatic about yesterday's result.

blissful

smile | weeks | hours

extremely happy, especially because something gives you a lot of pleasure:

The man lay asleep, a blissful smile on his face. | For two blissful weeks we explored the islands. | It sounded blissful - sea, sun, and good food.

If someone is extremely happy because something good has happened, you can say that he or she is **on top of the world** or **over the moon**: *I was over the moon when I found out that I'd passed my exam.*

ANTONYMS happy → sad

harassmentⁿ

unpleasant or threatening behaviour towards someone

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + harassment

sexual harassment *The woman accused her boss of sexual harassment.*

racial harassment *At school he was the victim of bullying and racial harassment.*

frequent/continual harassment (=happening often) *Female students experience frequent harassment.*

police harassment *African-Americans have been complaining about police harassment for years.*

VERBS

suffer/experience harassment *Employees can take legal action to protect themselves if they have suffered harassment.*

be subjected to harassment (=suffer harassment) *Opposition party members have been subjected to harassment and death threats.*

accuse sb of harassment *Under the new law, an employee who keeps making remarks about a woman's appearance could be accused of sexual harassment.*

complain of harassment *The group was set up to protect journalists, who often complain of harassment by the authorities.*

PREPOSITIONS

harassment of sb *Sexual harassment of women is still a problem.*

harassment against sb *There have been reports of threats and harassment against human rights groups.*

PHRASES

a victim of harassment *Victims of harassment in the workplace can take their company to court.*

accusations/allegations of harassment *False accusations of harassment can destroy people's lives.*

a campaign of harassment *She was accused of carrying out a campaign of harassment against her ex-husband.*

hard *adj*

1 having a surface that is difficult to press down, cut, or break

NOUNS

a hard chair *She was sitting on a hard wooden chair.*

a hard bed *The beds were hard and uncomfortable.*

a hard floor *The plate smashed on the hard stone floor.*

the hard ground *Players can easily injure themselves on the hard ground.*

a hard surface *The birds drop shellfish onto hard surfaces in order to break them open.*

a hard material/substance *Diamonds are the hardest substance known to man.*

a hard case (=used to protect something from being damaged) *I keep my guitar in a hard case when I'm travelling.*

hard metal/stone *The steps were made of hard stone.*

hard skin *The skin on his feet had become very hard.*

cheese/bread/potatoes etc are hard *The bread was old and very hard.*

ADVERBS

extremely/incredibly hard *The pan is made of an extremely hard type of metal.*

rock hard (=extremely hard and very difficult to break) *The ice was rock hard.*

VERBS

set hard *It takes a few days for the concrete to set hard.*

go hard (=become hard) *The bread had gone hard.*

THESAURUS: hard

firm

mattress | cushion | texture | pear | apple | tomato | muscles

not easy to press or bend, but not completely hard – used especially when this seems a good thing:

I like to sleep on a firm mattress. | This particular cheese has a good firm texture. | It's best to buy pears when they are still firm. | These exercises will make your stomach muscles nice and firm.

stiff

collar | cardboard | card | paper | material | cotton | body | brush

difficult to bend and not changing shape:

The collar of the shirt felt stiff and uncomfortable. | The box was made out of stiff cardboard. | His body was stiff and motionless.

solid

gold | silver | iron | metal | wood | oak | pine | rock | stone | block of sth

consisting of a thick hard material and not hollow or liquid:

She was wearing a solid gold bracelet. | All the rooms have solid wood floors. | The sculpture was carved out of solid rock. | During winter the lake became a solid block of ice.

rigid

frame | structure | case | container

having a structure that is made of a material that is difficult or impossible to bend:

The tent is supported by a rigid frame. | The camera is supplied with a rigid case. | Carry sandwiches in a rigid container.

crispy

bacon | chicken | duck | lettuce | pancake

used about thin pieces of food that are pleasantly hard, which make a noise when you bite them:

They had fried eggs and crispy bacon for breakfast. | It's best to use crispy lettuce leaves for the salad. | Fry the potato slices until they are nice and crispy.

crunchy

carrots | vegetables | lettuce | salad | biscuit | toast | peanut butter | texture

food that is crunchy makes a noise when you bite on it – used especially about things that are fresh, for example fruit, vegetables, and nuts:

The carrots are nice and crunchy. | I made a delicious crunchy salad. | The beans have a crunchy texture.

tough

meat | steak | leaves

meat, vegetables, or plants that are tough are difficult to chew or cut:

The meat was tough and flavourless. | The steak I had yesterday was a bit tough. | The outer leaves of the cabbage can be rather tough.

rubbery

chicken | texture

having a rather hard surface which bends like rubber, and seems unpleasant:

The chicken was a bit rubbery. | The cheese has a mild flavour, and a slightly rubbery texture.

brittle

bones | nails | hair | material

if something is brittle, it has a hard surface that breaks easily:

Old people often have brittle bones. | The shampoo is good for brittle hair. | Glass is a brittle material.

ANTONYMS **hard** → **soft (1)**

2 difficult

THESAURUS: hard

hard, tough, demanding, challenging, daunting, awkward, tricky, delicate → **difficult**

3 tiring

THESAURUS: hard

exhausting, hard, gruelling, punishing, backbreaking, wearing → **tiring**

hardened *adj* **THESAURUS** → **experienced**

hard-hearted *adj* **THESAURUS** → **unkind**

harm¹ *n*

damage, injury, or trouble caused by someone or something

VERBS

cause (sb/sth) harm We try not to use chemicals that cause harm to the environment.

do (sth) harm The scandal did a lot of harm to his reputation.

suffer harm *formal*: Luckily, no one suffered any serious harm.

prevent harm Pregnant women should stop smoking in order to prevent harm to their unborn babies.

reduce/minimize harm The new law aims to reduce the harm caused by drugs.

protect/shield sb/sth from harm They offer advice on how to protect children from harm when using the internet.

⚠ Don't say 'give harm' or 'make harm'. Say **do harm** or **cause harm**.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + harm

great/serious/significant harm If you drink too much alcohol, you can do yourself serious harm.

lasting/permanent harm The doctor says that there is no permanent harm to his legs.

irreparable harm (=which cannot be made better) The stories in the newspapers caused irreparable harm to her career.

untold harm *formal* (=very great harm) Bullying causes untold harm and can affect a child for the rest of his or her life.

potential harm People need to be more aware of the potential harm of some foods.

physical harm (=to someone's body) Too much exercise can cause physical harm.

psychological/emotional harm (=to someone's mind) Some of these children have suffered serious emotional harm.

PREPOSITIONS

harm to sb/sth Plastic bags cause a lot of harm to the environment.

PHRASES

mean no harm (=not intend to hurt or upset someone) He apologized and assured me that he meant no harm.

come to no harm/not come to any harm (=not be hurt or damaged) She was pleased her car had come to no harm.

do more harm than good Vitamin pills sometimes do more harm than good.

out of harm's way (=in a place where something cannot cause harm or be harmed) If you have children, make sure you keep medicines out of harm's way.

harm² *v*

to have a bad effect on something or someone

ADVERBS

seriously/severely harm sb/sth The incident has seriously harmed his chances of winning the election.

deliberately/intentionally harm sb/sth They had been accused of deliberately harming their children.

irreparably harm sth (=in a way that cannot be repaired) Environmentalists said the area's wildlife would be irreparably harmed by the building work.

physically harm sb (=harm someone's body) Prisoners will not be physically harmed in any way.

harmful *adj* causing harm

NOUNS

a harmful effect We all know about the harmful effects of smoking, so why do so many people still smoke?

a harmful side effect The drug appears to have no harmful side effects.

harmful consequences She was unaware of the harmful consequences of her actions.

a harmful substance The workers may have been exposed to harmful substances.

harmful bacteria Cooking should kill any harmful bacteria.

ADVERBS

extremely harmful Smoking is extremely harmful to your health.

potentially harmful (=could be harmful) Many natural foods are potentially harmful.

positively harmful (=very harmful - often used when this is the opposite of what people expect) Hiding your true feelings can be positively harmful.

PREPOSITIONS

harmful to sb/sth These chemicals are harmful to the environment.

hate² *n*

the angry feeling that someone has when they hate someone

PHRASES

be full of hate/be filled with hate *Her eyes were full of hate.*

a look of hate *He gave me a look of pure hate as I entered the room.*

a love-hate relationship (= in which you sometimes like and sometimes hate someone or something) *She had a love-hate relationship with her mother.*

ADJECTIVES

absolute/pure hate *There was a look of pure hate in his eyes.*

hate + NOUNS

a hate figure (=someone who a lot of people hate) *He became a national hate figure because of his remarks.*

hate mail *She began receiving hate mail and abusive phone calls after she appeared on the show.*

a hate crime (=crime that is committed by someone because they hate a particular group of people and want to hurt them) *Most hate crimes are based on race or ethnicity.*

a hate campaign *Barker was the victim of a vicious hate campaign.*

You say that something is a **pet hate** when you particularly dislike it: *Rice pudding has always been one of my pet hates.*

Hate or hatred?

Hatred and **hate** both mean "the feeling of hating someone". **Hatred** is more common.

Hate is often used in compounds such as **hate figure**, **hate mail**, or **hate crime**, and often has the feeling that you want to harm someone because you hate them so much.

hatred *n*

an angry feeling of extreme dislike for someone or something

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + hatred

deep/bitter/passionate/intense hatred (=that you feel very strongly) *What had she done to provoke such deep hatred?*

pure hatred (=complete hatred) *The child opened her eyes and stared at Juliet with pure hatred.*

irrational hatred (=very unreasonable) *Some drivers seem to have an irrational hatred of cyclists.*

pathological hatred (=very strong and unreasonable, and impossible to change) *My sister had a pathological hatred of men.*

racial hatred *The attack was motivated by racial hatred.*

religious/sectarian hatred (=between different religious groups) *The law makes it an offence to stir up religious hatred.*

VERBS

have a hatred of sb/sth *Gang members have a hatred of the police.*

feel hatred *I just feel hatred for the evil person who killed my brother.*

incite/stir up hatred (=encourage people to hate each other. 'Incite' is more formal than 'stir up') *He faces criminal charges for inciting racial hatred.*

fuel hatred (=make hatred stronger) *The government's policy will only fuel racial hatred.*

preach hatred (=try to persuade other people to hate a particular group of people) *They continue to preach hatred in the name of religion.*

PREPOSITIONS

hatred of sth *Racism and hatred of foreigners is on the increase in some countries.*

hatred for sb/sth *Abby made no secret of her hatred for her father.*

hatred towards sb *It is terrifying to know that someone can feel such hatred towards another person.*

PHRASES

full of/filled with hatred *She told me, in a voice full of hatred, that I meant nothing to her.*

feelings of hatred *It will take a long time for their feelings of hatred to go away.*

hazard *n*

something that may be dangerous, or cause accidents or problems

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + hazard

a serious/major/real hazard *Fumes from the factory posed a serious hazard to the health of people living in the area.*

a potential/possible hazard (=something is likely to be a hazard) *Microwave ovens are a potential hazard if not used properly.*

a fire hazard *Christmas lights and decorations pose a potential fire hazard.*

a health hazard *The waste needs to be removed before it becomes a health hazard.*

a safety hazard *Protesters claim that the nuclear reactor is a safety hazard.*

an occupational hazard (=a hazard that always exists in a particular job) *Catching frequent colds is an occupational hazard when working with young children.*

a natural hazard (=caused by nature) *One of the most widespread natural hazards is flooding.*

an environmental hazard *Oil from the tanker caused an environmental hazard.*

VERBS

cause/create a hazard *There was concern that overhead power lines could cause a health hazard.*

- pose/present/constitute a hazard** (=be a possible hazard) *It was not known whether radiation from the weapons posed any hazard to soldiers.*
- eliminate a hazard** (=get rid of a hazard) *They took steps to eliminate all potential fire hazards.*
- reduce a hazard** *The authorities are trying to reduce the hazard of flooding by building new flood defences.*
- avoid a hazard** *The road safety classes aim to help children to avoid hazards while crossing the road.*

PREPOSITIONS

- a hazard to sth/sb** *The chemical is present at levels which are likely to be a hazard to health.*
- a hazard for sb** *Icy paths are a hazard for elderly people.*
- the hazard from sth** *The hazard from lead in water is very serious.*

hazardous *adj* **THESAURUS** **dangerous, poisonous**

hazy *adj* **THESAURUS** **cloudy**

head *n*
1 the top part of your body that has your face at the front and is supported by your neck

ADJECTIVES

- a bare head** (=not covered with a hat) *The sun beat down on her bare head.*
- a bald head** (=with no hair) *His bald head shone with sweat.*
- a shaved/shaven head** (=with the hair removed from it using a razor) *He has a shaved head and a small beard.*

VERBS + head

- turn your head** *John turned his head to look at the boy.*
- shake your head** (=move it from side to side, especially to show disagreement) *"It's too much," he said, shaking his head.*
- nod your head** (=move it up and down, especially to show agreement) *The audience nodded their heads enthusiastically.*
- raise/lift your head** (=look up) *Tom raised his head to listen, then went back to his book.*
- bow/bend/lower your head** (=look down) *He bowed his head and tried not to look at her.*
- scratch your head** (=especially because you do not understand something) *He scratched his head and started looking through the drawers again.*
- bang/bump your head** *He fell over and banged his head.*

head + VERBS

- sb's head hurts/aches** *Dan's head was aching and he was tired.*
- sb's head rests on sth** *Tom's head was resting on her shoulder.*

head + NOUNS

head injury *Wearing a helmet reduces the risk of head injuries.*

PHRASES

- a shake of your head** *He answered with a shake of his head.*
- a nod of your head** *With a nod of her head, she indicated that he should sit on the chair.*
- dive head first into sth** *They dived head first into the water.*
- from head to toe** (=over all your body) *She was dressed in black from head to toe.*
- with your head held high** (=with your head and neck straight, especially as a sign of confidence or pride) *Anne walked home with her head held high.*

THESAURUS: head

head, subconscious, psyche, mentality, the ego
 → **mind**

2 your mind and thoughts

VERBS

- use your head** (=think carefully) *If you used your head, you could do it without any problem.*
- clear your head** (=make yourself able to think more clearly) *All he wanted was some fresh air to clear his head.*
- sb's head is spinning/reeling/swimming** (=they cannot think clearly, especially because they are very tired, ill etc) *My head was spinning after the interview.*

ADJECTIVES

- a cool head** (=an ability to stay calm) *Sarah has a cool head, she won't panic.*
- a clear head** (=an ability to think clearly and sensibly) *I didn't drink any alcohol because I wanted to keep a clear head for the next day.*
- a level head** (=an ability to be calm and sensible) *Nursing is a job where a level head is essential.*

PREPOSITIONS

in your head *Bertie quickly did the calculation in his head.*

PHRASES

- sth comes into/enters your head** (=you think of something) *I said the first thing that came into my head.*
- put sth into sb's head** (=make someone think or believe something) *What put that idea into your head?*
- get/put sth out of your head** (=stop thinking or worrying about something) *I know you're worried about your exams but try to put them out of your head.*
- get your head round sth** BrE (=be able to understand something) *He just couldn't get his head round what he was supposed to be doing.*

get sth into your head (=realise that something is true) *Can't you get it into your head that he is never going to change?*

headache *n* a pain in your head

VERBS

have a headache (also **have got a headache** spoken): *If you have a headache, you should go and lie down.*

get headaches/suffer from headaches (=regularly have a headache) *He sometimes gets headaches at school.*

give sb a headache *The noise was starting to give her a headache.*

cause headaches *The drug can cause headaches.*

complain of a headache (=say that you have a headache) *The patient complained of headaches and had difficulty looking at bright objects.*

relieve a headache formal (=make it better) *Sleep sometimes relieves a headache.*

a headache goes away (=it stops) *She lay down until her headache went away.*

ADJECTIVES

bad/terrible/severe headache *I've got a really bad headache.*

△ Don't say 'a strong/heavy headache'.

a splitting/blinding headache (=a very bad headache) *The next day he woke up with a splitting headache.*

a throbbing/pounding headache (=a very bad headache with regular strong pains) *He had a throbbing headache, behind his nose and his eyes.*

a slight headache (also **a bit of a headache** spoken) (=one that is not very serious) *I'd rather stay at home - I've got a bit of a headache.*

△ Don't say 'a little headache'.

headline *n*

the title of a newspaper report, which is printed in large letters above the report

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + headline

a newspaper headline *The story dominated newspaper headlines around the world.*

a front-page headline *The front-page headline was "Prime Minister resigns".*

a big headline *Sex scandals always get big headlines.*

a banner headline (=a very large headline across the top of the page) *The paper ran its famous banner headline "We are all Americans now".*

national/international headlines *The announcement made the national headlines.*

a tabloid headline (=in a newspaper that has a lot of stories about famous people, shocking events etc) *One tabloid headline read "Doctor of Death".*

a lurid/sensational headline (=one that is deliberately shocking) *There were lurid headlines about the singer's alleged sexual activities.*

PHRASES

be in the headlines (=be reported in many newspapers as an important story) *The case has been in the headlines all week.*

VERBS + headline

have/carry a headline *'The Times' carried the headline "Massive Earthquake hits Los Angeles".*

run a headline (=use a headline) *One newspaper ran the headline "Crime rate hits all-time low".*

read a headline *He picked up the paper and read the headlines.*

make/grab (the) headlines (=be reported in many newspapers as an important story) *The issue that has grabbed the headlines this year is food safety.*

hit the headlines (=be reported for the first time in many newspapers) *The woman hit the headlines after she was arrested for the murder of her husband.*

dominate the headlines (=be the story that is most often reported in newspapers) *The war continues to dominate the headlines.*

headline + VERBS

a headline reads/says *The next morning's headline read: "Missing boy found".*

a headline screams (=it states something unusual or shocking that is difficult to ignore) *"Dog ate my husband" screamed one headline.*

headline + NOUNS

headline news *The protests made headline news.*

a headline writer *He is the man that headline writers call "Mac the Knife".*

headstrong *adj* **THESAURUS** **determined**

health *n*

the general condition of your body and how healthy you are

ADJECTIVES

good/excellent health *Physical exercise is essential to good health.*

poor/bad health *He wanted to join the army but his health was too poor.*

ill health (=bad health - always used as a fixed phrase "ill health") *He retired early due to ill health.*

frail health (=when someone seems very weak) *The Pope's frail health was causing concern.*

failing/declining health (=someone's health is getting worse) *Despite failing health, she travelled to Australia to visit her son.*

physical health *Poverty affects children's physical health.*

mental health *The long hours of work were having an effect on his mental health.*
general health *A balanced diet will improve your general health.*
human health *Some chemicals pose a significant risk to human health.*

VERBS

have good/poor etc health (also **enjoy good/poor etc health** formal): *The study showed that happy people enjoy better physical health.*
damage your health *There is no doubt that smoking can seriously damage your health.*
endanger your health formal (=cause danger to your health) *Being overweight endangers your health.*
improve (sb's) health *Doing more exercise will improve your health.*
sb's health improves/gets better *Her health improved slowly after she came home from hospital.*
sb's health deteriorates/gets worse *Her health deteriorated rapidly and she died two days later.*

health + NOUNS

health care/healthcare *Many Americans cannot afford even basic health care.*
a health problem *He missed a lot of time at work through health problems.*
a health condition (=illness or health problem that affects you permanently or for a very long time) *The test can be used to test for specific health conditions such as diabetes.*
a health risk/hazard/threat (=something that could damage your health) *The report looked at the health risks linked to eating excess sugar.*
health benefits *There are many known health benefits of doing yoga.*
a health warning (=a warning printed on a product that could harm you) *There is a health warning on cigarette packets.*
health education *Health education is vital in helping to stop the spread of diseases.*

PHRASES

be good for your health *Eating plenty of vegetables is good for your health.*
be bad for your health *Smoking is bad for your health.*
be in good health (=be healthy) *Doctors who visited him said that he was in good health.*
be in rude health formal (=be very healthy) *Isabel had always been in rude health.*
be in poor health (=be unhealthy) *Her parents were elderly and in poor health.*
for health reasons *I don't eat meat for health reasons.*
sb's state of health *Your choice of exercise must depend on your general state of health.*

healthy adj

1 physically strong and not likely to become ill or weak

VERBS

stay/remain healthy *If you want to stay healthy, you should try to get plenty of sleep.*
look healthy *The children all looked happy and healthy.*
keep sb healthy *Exercise keeps you healthy.*

ADVERBS

perfectly healthy (=completely healthy, with no health problems) *I've always been perfectly healthy until now.*

NOUNS

a healthy baby/child/person *She gave birth to a healthy baby boy.*
a healthy body *Salt is essential for a healthy body.*
healthy skin/teeth *Vitamin A is good for healthy skin.*
healthy cells/tissue *The drug leaves healthy cells unharmed.*
a healthy plant/animal *Make sure that the plants are healthy when you buy them.*

2 good for your body and making you strong

NOUNS

a healthy diet *A healthy diet is one that contains lots of vitamins and minerals.*
healthy food *I try to eat plenty of healthy food, especially fresh fruit and vegetables.*
a healthy meal *Poor families find it difficult to afford healthy meals.*
healthy exercise *Cycling is good fun and healthy exercise.*
a healthy lifestyle *He has a very healthy lifestyle and goes to the gym three times a week.*
healthy living/eating *The booklet gives advice on healthy living.*

THESAURUS: healthy

nutritious
food | meal | snack
nutritious food contains substances that are good for your health:
*Eggs are a **highly nutritious** food. | The programme shows you how to make quick and nutritious meals.*
balanced
diet
a balanced diet contains the right amounts of the different types of foods that your body needs:
It is important to eat a balanced diet.

You can say that a food **is good for you**:
*Peanut butter **is good for you**.* You can also say that a food **is low in** something:
*Prawns **are low in** calories.*



hearing ⁿ

1 a meeting of a court or special committee to find out information

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + hearing

a court hearing *At a court hearing last week, he was accused of hiding evidence.*

a public hearing *A public hearing on the proposal will be held next week.*

a congressional hearing *At a congressional hearing, the Secretary of State admitted that the case had been wrongly handled.*

a disciplinary hearing (=one to decide if someone should be punished) *A disciplinary hearing ruled that Mr Reid should be dismissed from his job.*

a preliminary hearing (=one happening before the main hearing) *He appeared in court for a preliminary hearing.*

an appeal hearing (=one to try to change an earlier decision) *At the appeal hearing, his lawyer argued that the conviction was unlawful.*

VERBS

hold/conduct a hearing *The committee promised to hold hearings on discrimination in the armed forces.*

attend a hearing *He was arrested after failing to attend a court hearing.*

tell a hearing sth *A doctor told the hearing that she could not say for certain when Ms Williams had died.*

open/close a hearing *The committee opened a hearing into the scandal yesterday.*

adjourn a hearing (=stop it until a later time) *The hearing was adjourned until January 23rd.*

a hearing takes place *The next hearing will take place on April 2nd.*

PREPOSITIONS

at a hearing *At the hearing, he denied lying about the money.*

2 the sense which you use to hear sounds

ADJECTIVES

good/sharp/acute hearing *My hearing isn't as good as it used to be.*

bad/poor hearing *You'll have to speak clearly – she has very bad hearing.*

VERBS

have good/bad etc hearing *Dogs have excellent hearing.*

lose your hearing (=become unable to hear) *He lost his hearing as a child after suffering scarlet fever.*

sb's hearing deteriorates/gets worse *Your hearing deteriorates as you get older.*

affect/impair your hearing (=make your hearing worse) *Listening to loud music will eventually impair your hearing.*

hearing + NOUNS

hearing loss *Many older people suffer from some degree of hearing loss.*

a hearing problem/difficulty/impairment *The phone is suitable for people with hearing difficulties.*

a hearing aid (=a piece of equipment worn in or around someone's ear to help them hear) *My grandfather wears a hearing aid.*

PHRASES

be hard of hearing (=not be able to hear well) *There is a subtitling service for people who are hard of hearing.*

heart ⁿ

1 the organ in your chest which pumps blood through your body

VERBS

sb's heart beats *Her heart was beating fast.*

sb's heart pounds/thuds/thumps (=it beats very strongly) *He reached the top of the hill, his heart pounding.*

sb's heart races (=it beats very fast) *Was there someone there in the dark? Joe's heart began to race.*

ADJECTIVES

a healthy heart *Eating oily fish can help maintain a healthy heart.*

a bad/weak heart *The effort proved too much for her weak heart.*

heart + NOUNS

a heart attack (=a sudden and very painful event in which your heart stops working) *Jim had a heart attack and died at the age of 55.*

heart disease *Smoking increases the risk of heart disease.*

heart trouble/problems *You should not take this medication if you have heart problems.*

heart failure (=when your heart stops working, either suddenly or gradually) *The cause of death was heart failure.*

a heart condition/defect (=something wrong with your heart) *The baby was born with a heart condition.*

sb's heart rate (=the number of times someone's heart beats per minute) *Your heart rate increases as you exercise.*

heart surgery/operation *Geoff is going into the hospital for a heart operation.*

a heart transplant (=a medical operation to put a heart from someone else into a person's body) *In 1967, Dr Barnard performed the first heart transplant.*

2 the part of you that feels strong emotions and feelings

ADJECTIVES

a big heart (=a kind and generous character) *She may be only small, but she has a big heart.*

a good/kind/warm heart (=a kind character)
My father had a good heart.

a soft heart (=a kind and sympathetic character)
Julia's soft heart had been touched by Minnie's grief.

a cold/hard heart (=used about someone who does not feel sympathy for other people)
It takes a hard heart not to be moved by these images of suffering.

with a heavy heart (=feeling very sad)
She made her way to the hospital with a heavy heart.

with a light heart (=feeling happy)
Paul left for home with a light heart.

a broken heart (=when someone feels very sad, especially because a love affair has ended)
I wonder how many broken hearts Carlo was responsible for.

VERBS + heart

break sb's heart (=make someone feel very sad)
It broke my heart to see him so sick.

win sb's heart (=make someone love you)
The singer won the hearts of millions of teenagers.

touch sb's heart (=make someone feel strong feelings, especially of sympathy)
The sight of starving children touched the hearts of people around the world.

set your heart on sth (=want to do something very much)
She had set her heart on becoming an actor.

follow your heart (=do what your emotions want you to do)
Follow your heart. Who cares what everyone else thinks?

heart + VERBS

sb's heart aches (=they feel very sad)
It made his heart ache to look at her.

sb's heart leaps/jumps/lurches *literary* (=you suddenly feel excited, frightened etc)
The unexpected sound of his voice made her heart leap.

sb's heart sinks (=they suddenly feel very unhappy or lose hope)
My heart sank when I saw Richard's car outside the house.

my heart bleeds (=you feel a lot of sympathy – often used ironically to mean that you do not have any sympathy for someone)
It makes my heart bleed to see them suffer.

PREPOSITIONS

at heart (=used for saying what someone is really like even though they may seem different)
I'll always be a Canadian at heart even though I now live in Britain.

from the heart
His comments were spoken from the heart.

in your heart (=used for saying that you know something but do not want to admit it)
In my heart, I knew he didn't really love me.

PHRASES

affairs of the heart (=matters relating to love)
I had little experience of affairs of the heart.

a heart of gold (=a very kind character)
She

was rather brisk in manner but with a heart of gold.

a heart of stone (=a very cruel character)
You'd have to have a heart of stone not to feel sorry for them.

with all your heart and soul (=used when you feel something very strongly)
She loved Peter with all her heart and soul.

from the bottom of your heart (=used to emphasize that your feelings are sincere)
I thank you from the bottom of my heart.

3 the most important or central part of something

Grammar

In this meaning, you always say **the heart of** something.

PHRASES

the heart of the matter/issue/problem
We need to get to the heart of the matter.

be/lie at the heart of sth (=be the most important or central part)
Unemployment is at the heart of many of society's problems.

go to the heart of sth (also **strike at the heart of sth**) (=involve or deal with the most important or central part)
These are difficult questions which go to the heart of the education process.

ADJECTIVES

the very heart of sth
The hospital was built at the very heart of the community it serves.

heartbreaking *adj* **THESAURUS** sad (2)

heartbroken *adj* **THESAURUS** sad (1)

heartless *adj* **THESAURUS** cruel (1)

heat *n*

1 very hot weather or conditions

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + heat

the summer heat
Air-conditioning is great in the summer heat.

the tropical/desert heat
He stepped off the plane into the tropical heat.

burning/searing/blistering/scorching heat (=extreme heat)
The desert is a place of scorching heat by day and bitter cold by night.

stifling/oppressive/sweltering heat (=extreme heat that makes you feel uncomfortable)
They spend the summer in the mountains to escape the oppressive heat.

intense/extreme heat
People in the region are suffering from intense heat and continuing drought.

dry heat
The garden soil had cracked in the dry heat.

heat + NOUNS

a heat wave (=a period of unusually hot

weather) *In the summer of 2006, there was a heat wave in Britain.*

heat exhaustion (=weakness and sickness caused by doing too much in very hot weather) *Several players were suffering from heat exhaustion.*

a heat haze (=the effect when very hot weather makes it difficult to see things clearly) *A heat haze shimmered above the fields.*

PREPOSITIONS

in the heat *She was starting to sweat in the heat.*

PHRASES

the heat of the day *The locals retreat to their cool houses and sleep during the heat of the day.*

2 the warmth produced by something

VERBS

produce/generate heat *Lightbulbs generate heat as well as light.*

withstand heat *The material is capable of withstanding extreme heat.*

absorb heat *Stone absorbs the heat from the sun.*

conduct heat (=allow heat to move through) *Metals conduct heat better than other materials.*

retain heat (=keep heat) *Close the door to retain the heat in the room.*

NOUNS + heat

body heat *More than 30% of body heat can be lost through your head.*

heat + NOUNS

heat loss *Double glazing reduces heat loss through windows.*

a heat source (=something that produces heat) *Don't put a fridge next to a radiator or any other heat source.*

heated *adj* **THESAURUS** **angry**

heating *n*
a system for making a room or building warm

ADJECTIVES

central heating (=a system in which water or air is heated in one place and sent around a building) *Most houses now have central heating.*

gas/electric heating *Electric heating is the only source of hot water in the cottage.*

solar heating (=powered by the sun) *They've installed solar heating in the new house.*

VERBS + heating

put/switch/turn the heating on *Why don't you put the heating on if you're cold?*

switch/turn the heating off *We turn the heating off before bed.*

turn the heating down/up *Can you turn the heating down a bit?*

have the heating on (=use the heating) *It's getting colder, but we haven't had the heating on yet.*

leave the heating on (=continue to use the heating) *I don't like to leave the heating on at night.*

install heating *We're thinking of installing underfloor heating.*

heating + NOUNS

a heating bill *Many people can't afford to pay their heating bills.*

a heating system *The gas leak was caused by a faulty heating system.*

heavy *adj*

1 weighing a lot

NOUNS

a heavy bag/suitcase *He had a heavy bag on his back.*

a heavy load *If you have to carry a heavy load, divide the weight between two bags.*

a heavy weight *Take care when lifting heavy weights.*

heavy equipment/machinery (=large and powerful) *They used heavy machinery to clear the site.*

heavy artillery/weapons/guns (=large and powerful) *Troops with heavy weapons were advancing into the area.*

a heavy vehicle/lorry *The road is not suitable for heavy vehicles.*

heavy lifting (=lifting heavy objects) *He has a bad back and can't do any heavy lifting.*

ADVERBS

very/extremely heavy *The boy was very heavy to carry.*

quite/fairly/rather heavy *Her bag was quite heavy.*

THESAURUS: heavy

cumbersome

heavy and difficult to move or carry:

The old movie cameras were very big and cumbersome. | He was carrying cumbersome diving equipment.

weighty *literary*

tome | volume

heavy – used about books, especially ones that contain a lot of information about a serious subject:

This is a weighty tome that deals in depth with the subject (=a big book that contains a lot of information). | The encyclopedia consists of twelve weighty volumes.

If something is very heavy, you can also say that it **weighs a ton**: *This suitcase weighs a ton – I don't know if I can lift it.*

ANTONYMS **heavy** → **light**² (**1**)

2 great in amount or degree, or very severe

NOUNS

- heavy traffic** *We were late because we got stuck in heavy traffic.*
- heavy rain/downpour/rainfall** *Heavy rains had left the roads flooded.*
- heavy snow/snowfall** *Heavy snowfalls are expected in the north.*
- heavy fighting** (=a lot of fighting in a war, with many people hurt) *More than 100 people were killed in heavy fighting.*
- heavy drinking/smoking** (=drinking a lot of alcohol or smoking a lot) *Heavy drinking increases the risk of liver disease.*
- a heavy drinker/smoker** *Her father was a heavy smoker and died aged 58.*
- heavy losses** (=when someone loses a lot of something, usually money) *The company made heavy losses last year.*
- heavy casualties** (=a large number of people injured or killed) *Both armies suffered heavy casualties.*
- heavy use/demand** *The equipment is strong enough to withstand heavy use.*
- a heavy fine/penalty** *Those who break the law face heavy fines.*
- a heavy burden** (=a very difficult responsibility) *Looking after a sick relative is a heavy burden.*
- heavy pressure** *Businesses are under heavy pressure to cut costs.*

ADVERBS

- unusually heavy** *Unusually heavy rain has caused flooding in the area.*

PHRASES

- pay a heavy price** (=have to suffer or give up a lot for something) *Ordinary people pay a heavy price when their governments go to war.*

ANTONYMS **heavy** → **light²** (3)

hectic *adj* **THESAURUS** **busy** (1)

height *n*

- 1** how tall someone or something is

ADJECTIVES

- of average/medium height** *Nick was a slim man of average height.*
- a considerable height** (=a height that is quite tall) *The trees had grown to a considerable height.*
- a maximum/minimum height** *The plants reach a maximum height of 50 cm.*

VERBS

- measure sb's/sth's height** *The nurse measured his height.*
- grow to/reach a height of sth** *Sunflowers can grow to a height of 15 feet.*
- reduce/increase sth's height** *They decided to increase the height of the wall.*

PREPOSITIONS

- in height** *He was a small man, only 1.6 metres in height.*

- 2** the distance that something is from the ground

VERBS

- reach a height** *The plane reached a height of 500 metres before it came down.*
- gain height** (=become higher) *He liked to walk in the early morning before the sun had gained height.*
- lose height** (=become lower) *The plane suddenly lost height.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + height

- a great/considerable height** *He had fallen from a great height.*
- shoulder/waist/chest/head height** (=the same level as someone's shoulder, waist etc) *He held the ball at waist height.*

help¹ *v*

- to make it possible or easier for someone to do something by doing part of their work or by giving them something they need

ADVERBS

- help considerably/enormously/tremendously** *The sleeping pills helped considerably.*
- greatly help** *Of course, the money will greatly help.*
- really help** *It really helps if you can speak the local language.*
- help a little** *I'm glad I was able to help a little.*
- definitely/certainly help** *The trees definitely help to reduce the noise from the traffic.*

PREPOSITIONS

- help (sb) with sth** *Can you help with the washing up?*

PHRASES

- anything/nothing I can do to help** *If there's anything I can do to help, just give me a call.*

help² *n*

- 1** things you do to make it easier or possible for someone to do something

VERBS

- ask (sb) for help** *He asked for help with the cleaning.*
- appeal for help** (=publicly ask for help) *The police are appealing for help to track down the killer.*
- seek help** (=try to find help) *He decided to seek medical help for his drink problem.*
- give sb help** *Do you want me to give you some help?*
- get/receive help** *She gets no help from her husband.*
- accept help** *Her father was a proud man who wouldn't accept help from anyone.*

offer (your) help *The taxi driver offered his help and we accepted.*

provide help *The government should do more to provide help for people who are looking for work.*

need help *Some of the older patients need help with walking.*

enlist sb's help (=persuade someone to help you) *She enlisted the help of a private investigator to find her missing son.*

find help *To get it finished by tomorrow, we'll need to find help from somewhere.*

refuse help *She refused medical help despite being injured.*

ADJECTIVES

medical/financial/legal/technical help *We received a lot of financial help from my family.*

practical help *The organization offers practical help with finding accommodation.*

expert/specialist help *Expert help is available if you want to give up smoking.*

professional help *You need to seek some professional help.*

outside help (=from someone who is not in your organization, family etc) *Can you do it yourself or do you need outside help?*

extra help *Some of the younger children need extra help with writing.*

PREPOSITIONS

help with sth *Do you want any help with the washing up?*

help in doing sth *Our business advisers offer help in starting your own business.*

help from sb *Help from the public was essential in solving the crime.*

with sb's/sth's help *With the help of a dictionary, I managed to read the article.*

2 someone or something that helps

VERBS

a great/big help *Thank you. You've been a great help.*

a real help *Talking to someone can be a real help when you are worried.*

PREPOSITIONS

a help to sb *She was a great help to me when I was sick.*

be of help (=be something that helps) *This information may be of help to you.*

helpful

adj
providing useful help in making a situation better or easier

ADVERBS

extremely helpful *The staff were extremely helpful and offered to carry our bags to our room.*

most helpful *formal, especially spoken* (=very helpful) *Thank you for your suggestions – you've been most helpful.*

especially/particularly helpful *The books are particularly helpful for parents with small children.*

NOUNS

helpful advice *He gave me some helpful advice about visiting Paris.*

a helpful hint *This website contains helpful hints on how to improve your grammar skills.*

a helpful suggestion *His colleagues had plenty of helpful suggestions.*

helpful information *The book is packed with helpful information and good ideas.*

VERBS

find sth helpful *I found his explanation very helpful.*

prove helpful (=be helpful when you are doing something) *Her language skills proved helpful when she was travelling around Europe.*

PREPOSITIONS

helpful to sb *They are trained to be polite and helpful to customers.*

helpful for sb/sth *Professor Taylor's book is very helpful for students who want a general introduction to the subject.*

THESAURUS: helpful

handy, helpful, worthwhile, valuable, invaluable, indispensable → **useful**

heritage

n
customs, buildings, art etc which have existed for a long time and are important to a group of people or a place

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + heritage

a rich heritage *The town has a rich heritage and there are many historic buildings.*

sb's common/shared heritage *The UK and the US share a common heritage and language.*

the national/nation's heritage *These works of art are considered of great importance to Russia's national heritage.*

cultural heritage *Cubans are proud of their cultural heritage.*

artistic/architectural/literary heritage *The city takes great pride in its architectural heritage.*

VERBS

preserve/protect sth's heritage *They want to preserve the country's heritage for future generations.*

PHRASES

sth is part of sb's/sth's heritage *The castle is part of the heritage of Wales and should be preserved for the Welsh people.*

hero

1 someone, often a man, who is admired for doing something extremely brave or for a particular skill

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + hero

- a great hero He finally got to meet his great hero, the footballer David Beckham.
- a real/true hero Virginia Hall was a true hero of the French Resistance.
- a war hero His father was a war hero, a former fighter pilot.
- a national/local hero In Cuba, Fidel was seen as a national hero.
- a sporting hero There are many female sporting heroes, for example Venus Williams.
- sb's boyhood/childhood hero (=when you were a boy or a child) McEnroe had been one of his boyhood heroes.
- a cult hero (=someone who a particular group of people admire) She became a cult hero for her role in the film.
- a folk hero (=an ordinary person who becomes a hero for a particular group) He was a folk hero in his home country because of his escapes from the police.
- an unsung hero (=someone whose bravery or effort is not noticed or recognized) These volunteers are the unsung heroes of the campaign.
- an unlikely hero (=someone who people did not expect to be a hero) A taxi driver became an unlikely hero when he helped to get the woman to hospital.
- a reluctant hero (=someone who is a hero but does not want to be) The reluctant hero did not want to talk to the press about how she prevented the robbery.

VERBS

- be sb's hero Keith Richards was my hero and I wanted to play the guitar like him.
- become a hero He became a national hero for his part in the war.
- be hailed (as) a hero (=people say you are a hero) He was hailed a hero after saving the young girl's life.

hero + NOUNS

- hero worship (=admiration for someone, especially when it is extreme or unreasonable) They treat her with a kind of hero worship.

PREPOSITIONS

- a hero to sb Some called him a criminal, but he was a hero to many.

PHRASES

- receive/be given a hero's welcome (=be treated as a hero when you arrive somewhere) The team were given a hero's welcome when they returned to the city.
- the hero of the hour (=someone who does something brave or admirable at a particular

time) The Russian president emerged as the hero of the hour.

2 the main male character of a film, book etc

VERBS

- play the hero Sean Penn plays the hero of the film.

ADJECTIVES

- a romantic hero The movie features Clark Gable as the romantic hero.
- a tragic hero Othello is the tragic hero of Shakespeare's play.

Hero or heroine?

When talking about people who are admired for their bravery, skill etc, you can use **hero** about both men and women. Women are also called **heroines**: His grandmother was a national **heroine**. When talking about films and books, you use **hero** for the main male character and **heroine** for the main female character.

heroic adj THESAURUS brave

hesitation

a short pause before you do something, or the feeling that you should not do something

ADJECTIVES

- a brief/momentary hesitation After a brief hesitation, she answered "Yes".
- a little/slight hesitation There was a slight hesitation in his voice.
- the slightest/least hesitation They agreed to help without the slightest hesitation.

PREPOSITIONS

- without (any) hesitation/with no hesitation He agreed without hesitation.
- after some hesitation After some hesitation, one of the boys began to speak.
- hesitation over/about sth There was some hesitation over who should take the penalty kick.

PHRASES

- have no hesitation in doing sth I would have no hesitation in recommending her for the job.
- a moment's hesitation After a moment's hesitation, she decided to accept their offer.
- show some/no hesitation The judges showed no hesitation in declaring him the winner.
- a trace of hesitation (=a very small amount) I could detect a trace of hesitation in her voice.

hide

to make sure that something cannot easily be seen or found

ADVERBS

- be well hidden (=be very difficult to see or find) The entrance to the cave was well hidden.

100 miles per hour along a straight stretch of interstate highway.

a federal highway We were heading southwest on the busy federal highway.

VERBS

drive along a highway We were driving along the highway from Montreal to Ottawa.

travel on/along a highway I was traveling north along the highway.

turn off/pull off a highway Near the Oregon border, we turned off Highway 97 to Highway 161.

build a highway They are planning to build a highway across the country.

highway + NOUNS

highway traffic She decided to take the train in order to avoid the highway traffic.

the highway patrol (=the police who control a highway) Colorado Highway Patrol officers charged him with drunk driving.

the highway system In the 1950s, construction of the vast interstate highway system began.

highway safety We need to look at ways of improving highway safety.

PREPOSITIONS

on a highway There was a lot of traffic on the highway.

along a highway Port Arthur is just one mile along the highway to the west.

a highway to/from somewhere The road connects the village with the main highway to Veracruz.

hilarious *adj* **THESAURUS** → **funny (1)**

hill *n*

an area of land that is higher than the land around it, like a mountain but smaller

ADJECTIVES

a steep hill She pushed her bicycle up the steep hill.

rolling/gentle hills (=hills with slopes that are not steep) He loved the green rolling hills of Dorset.

a high/low hill We climbed a very high hill today called An Teallach.

green hills (=covered with grass) New Zealand is a country of lush green hills.

VERBS

climb a hill (=walk or drive up a hill) She climbed the hill out of the village.

go down a hill It's best to use a low gear when you are going down steep hills.

a hill overlooking sth The castle is on a hill overlooking the town.

sth nestles in/among hills literary (=it is surrounded by hills) The farmhouse nestles in the hills of southern Spain.

hill + NOUNS

a hill town the hill towns of Tuscany

a hill farm/farmer They have a small hill farm in Devon.

PREPOSITIONS

on a hill Their house is on a hill overlooking the sea.

PHRASES

the top of a hill The view from the top of the hill was beautiful.

the brow/crest of a hill (=the top part of a hill) A car appeared over the brow of the hill.

the bottom/foot of a hill The house was at the bottom of a hill.

hint *n*

1 something that you say or do to suggest something to someone, without telling them directly

VERBS

give (sb) a hint Come on, what is it? Give me a hint.

drop a hint (=give a hint) She was dropping quite a few hints about what she'd like for her birthday.

get the hint (=understand a hint) I looked hopefully at the cake, but he didn't get the hint.

take a/the hint (=understand a hint and do something) Mark took the hint and stopped talking.

ADJECTIVES

a broad/strong/heavy hint (=one that is very easy to understand) He had dropped a heavy hint that they might get married.

a subtle/gentle hint (=sometimes used ironically when someone is being very obvious) Is your yawning a subtle hint that you're bored?

a vague hint (=so general that it is not at all clear) In his article, he gave only vague hints as to what he had actually done.

PREPOSITIONS

a hint about sth His wife kept dropping hints about all the work that needed to be done.

PHRASES

I can take a hint (=used when you understand someone's hint) All right, I can take a hint. I'm leaving.

2 a useful piece of advice about how to do something

VERBS

give/offer hints Can you offer some hints on what to look for when buying a car?

ADJECTIVES

helpful/handy/useful hints The book gives some handy hints on owning a dog.

PREPOSITIONS

a hint on (doing) sth There are some hints on decorating your home.

historic *adj*

1 a historic building or place is important because it is old

NOUNS

a historic building/house/monument *The town has many historic buildings, including a 15th-century town hall.*

a historic town/city/capital/port *York is a beautiful and historic city.*

a historic place/site *There are many castles and other historic places which you can visit.*

a historic landmark (=a well-known place which is easy to recognize) *The Eiffel Tower is Paris's most famous historic landmark.*

sth's historic character *They say that the development would be harmful to the historic character of the town.*

PHRASES

of historic interest *The village of Hutton is over a thousand years old, and has many buildings of historic interest.*

of historic importance *The church is of historic importance and is an attraction for many tourists.*

THESAURUS: historic

elderly, aging, aged, ancient, antique, historic, vintage, age-old → **old (1)**

2 a historic event is very important and will be recorded as part of history

In more formal English, people also say *an historic* event, moment etc.

NOUNS

a historic event *Neil Armstrong's walk on the moon was a historic event.*

a historic moment/day *The signing of the agreement was a historic moment in relations between the two countries.*

a historic opportunity *This is a historic opportunity to achieve peace.*

a historic victory *Switzerland won a historic victory over Spain in the World Cup.*

a historic role *President Yeltsin played a historic role in leading Russia to democracy.*

a historic agreement *He called the treaty a historic agreement.*

Historic or historical?

Don't confuse **historic** and **historical**.

Historic is used about places that are important because they are old, or about important events. For example, you say *The city has many historic buildings* (not 'historical buildings').

Historical just means relating to history. You say *historical* evidence (not 'historic evidence').

THESAURUS: historic

big, significant, major, notable, key, essential, vital, crucial/critical, paramount, historic, landmark, momentous → **important (1)**

historical *adj* relating to history

Grammar

Historical is usually used before a noun.

NOUNS

historical research/study/analysis *Historical research has shown that people have been living there for hundreds of years.*

historical evidence/facts/data *There is no historical evidence for the story.*

historical records/documents *According to the historical records, they moved to London in 1737.*

historical events/periods *The film is based on actual historical events.*

a historical figure *Robin Hood was a real historical figure.*

a historical novel/play/romance (=which takes place during a period in the past) *The book is a historical novel set in 18th-century Paris.*

a historical reason/explanation/connection *There are all sorts of historical reasons why the two countries are suspicious of each other.*

the historical background/context/perspective *You need to understand the historical background to the war.*

△ A book about history is a **history book**. Don't say 'a historical book'.

A film, play, or programme which tells a story about people who lived in the past is often called a **period drama**.

history *n*

all the things that have happened in the past, or the study of these events

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + history

American/Chinese/British etc history *We studied American history and the War of Independence.*

world history *The attack changed the course of world history.*

local history *The building is now a museum of local history.*

early/ancient history *I'm reading a book about ancient Roman history.*

modern/contemporary/recent history *For the first time in modern history, the country had a female leader.*

political/social/economic history *The 1780s were a dramatic time in French political history.*

art/music/sports etc history *The Beatles are an important part of Britain's music history.*

family history (=the history of one particular family) *My grandfather has researched our family history and discovered that we come from the south of Ireland.*

a long history (=something has existed for a long time) *The 1970s were the most successful years in the theatre's long history.*

a rich history (=an interesting and important history) *Greece has a very rich history.*

human history *It was the most destructive war in human history.*

VERBS

study/teach history *Paul studied history at Bristol University.*

trace the history of sth (=find out what the history of something is) *He traces the history of the game back to the late 1700s.*

be steeped in history (=be connected with many important events) *Cambridge is steeped in history and tradition.*

go down in history (=be remembered for many years) *She will go down in history as one of the greatest tennis players of all time.*

make history (=do something important that will be recorded and remembered) *Ordinary Berliners made history when they tore down the wall.*

shape history (=influence events) *He is one of the politicians who shaped 20th-century history.*

rewrite history (=change what we believe are the facts about the past) *Politicians often try to rewrite history to justify their actions.*

history shows/tells/teaches us (that)...
History teaches us that society is always changing.

history + NOUNS

a history book *History books often don't tell you much about the lives of ordinary people.*

a history teacher/student *He gave a series of lectures to history students about the English civil war.*

PREPOSITIONS

the history of sth *The book is about the history of flying.*

in (sth's) history *This was the worst battle in the country's history.*

during sth's history (=during the time since something started) *During its 80-year history, the organization has undergone many changes.*

throughout history *Throughout history the achievements of women have often been ignored.*

PHRASES

a period of/in history *It was an interesting period in Japanese history.*

change the course of history *Roosevelt and Churchill helped to change the course of history.*

for the first time in history *For the first time in history, the US had a black president.*

hit¹ v

1 to touch someone or something quickly and hard with your hand, a stick etc

ADVERBS

hit sb/sth hard *He felt as though someone had hit him very hard in the stomach.*

PREPOSITIONS

hit sb/sth with sth *He accidentally hit his thumb with the hammer.*

hit sb/sth on sth *A small piece of rock flew off and hit me on the chin.*

hit sb/sth in sth *The door swung back and hit her right in the face.*

hit sth into/over sth *She hit the ball into the net.*

hit sb over the head (=hit someone on their head) *The robbers hit him over the head with a baseball bat.*

2 to have a bad effect on someone or something

ADVERBS

hit sb badly/severely/hard *Local farmers have been hit very hard by the dry weather.*

be worst hit (=be the most badly affected) *Unemployment increased in many areas of the country, with the North the worst hit.*

hit² n

something or someone that is very popular and successful

VERBS

become a hit *The TV series became a hit with viewers.*

prove (to be) a hit (=be a hit) *Patrick proved a big hit with the audience.*

have a hit *Michael Jackson had a big hit with the song.*

ADJECTIVES

a big/great/huge/massive hit *The new museum has been a big hit with families.*

sb's latest hit *She sang her latest hit.*

sb's greatest hits *The band released a record of their greatest hits.*

an instant hit *With his experience and enthusiasm, he was an instant hit.*

a runaway hit (=something that quickly becomes successful) *The film has become a runaway hit.*

NOUNS + hit

a number one hit (=a song that is number one on the weekly list of the most popular records) *Her single 'Crazy In Love' was a number one hit all over the world.*

a smash hit (=a very successful song, play, film etc) *They had a smash hit with their first single.*

a box office hit (=a play or film that is very

successful) *The film 'Mamma Mia' was a box office hit.*

hit + NOUNS

- a hit movie/film** *She worked on the hit movie 'Toy Story'.*
- a hit show/musical/comedy** *Gervais was co-writer of the hit comedy 'The Office'.*
- a hit song/record/single** *The band has had a couple of hit singles.*
- a hit series** *She took part in the hit series 'Who Do You Think You Are?'.*

PREPOSITIONS

- a hit with sb** *She was a popular politician and a huge hit with voters.*

hobbyⁿ

an activity that you enjoy doing in your free time

ADJECTIVES

- an interesting/fascinating/absorbing hobby** *Growing roses is a fascinating hobby.*
- sb's favourite/main hobby** *His favourite hobby is motor racing.*
- a strange/unusual hobby** *Keeping snakes may seem like an unusual hobby.*
- an expensive hobby** *Photography is an expensive hobby.*

VERBS

- have a hobby** *At the interview they asked me if I had any hobbies.*
- take up a hobby** (=start doing it) *If you are feeling bored, you should take up a hobby.*
- sb's hobbies include sth** *Susan's hobbies include reading, cooking, and drama.*

PHRASES

- sth started as a hobby** *It started as a hobby and then she decided to start her own cake-making business.*

Instead of saying "What are your hobbies?", people often say **What do you do in your free time?**

hoist^v **THESAURUS** lift¹ (1)

hold¹^v

to have something in your hand, hands, or arms

ADVERBS

- hold sb/sth tightly** *She took his hand and held it tightly.*
- hold sb close** (=put your arms around someone and hold them close to your body) *Max held her close and wiped away her tears.*
- hold sth up** *Hold the picture up so we can see it.*
- hold sth out** *He held out his hand to help her to her feet.*

PREPOSITIONS

- hold onto sth** *I walked carefully down the steps, holding onto the rail.*
- hold sth for sb** *Could you hold my bag for me?*
- hold sth in your hand/hands/arms** *I held the baby in my arms until she fell asleep. | He was holding a key in his hand.*

hold²ⁿ

the action of holding something with your hands

ADJECTIVES

- a tight/firm hold** *Rose had a tight hold of her hand.*

VERBS

- tighten your hold** *Luke tightened his hold on his wallet.*
- loosen/relax your hold** *Laughing, he loosened his hold until she could pull her arms free.*
- release your hold** (=stop holding something) *As soon as his fingers released their hold, Robyn turned and ran.*

PHRASES

- keep hold of sth** (=hold something without letting go) *I had to run to keep hold of the leather strap.*
- get/take hold of sth** (=start holding something) *Wallace took hold of Fred's jacket and pulled him roughly backwards.*
- catch/grab/seize etc hold of sth** (=start holding something quickly and firmly) *She grabbed hold of the letter and tore it open.*
- have hold of sth** (=be holding something) *Nathan had hold of her hand again.*

hold up^v **THESAURUS** steal

holeⁿ

an empty space in something solid

ADJECTIVES

- a big/massive/great hole** *There was a big hole in the middle of the field.*
- a small/tiny hole** *The plant's leaves are full of tiny holes.*

VERBS

- dig a hole** *I began digging a hole for the tree.*
- make/cut a hole** *Make a hole for the wire to go through.*
- drill/bore a hole** (=make a hole using a special tool) *The engineers began boring a hole in the side of the mountain.*
- blow/blast a hole** *The explosion blew a massive hole in the side of the building.*
- burn a hole** *The hot iron had burned a hole in the shirt.*
- come in through a hole** *Rain was coming in through a hole in the roof.*
- fill in a hole** *Can you help me fill in this hole?*

H

NOUNS + hole

a bullet hole *The car was full of bullet holes.*

a mouse/rabbit hole *We found a mouse hole behind the fridge.*

PREPOSITIONS

a hole in sth *There was a huge hole in the road.*

holiday ⁿ

1 BrE a period of time when you travel to another place for pleasure

Holiday is used in British English. American speakers say **vacation**.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + holiday

a good/great/nice holiday *We had a great holiday in Austria.*

a summer/winter holiday *They were going to a house on the coast for their summer holidays.*

a skiing/camping/walking etc holiday *They went on a camping holiday in France.*

a beach holiday *The hotel is in the perfect place for a relaxing beach holiday.*

a foreign/overseas holiday *We couldn't afford to go on foreign holidays.*

a two-week/seven night etc holiday *The prize is a fabulous two-week holiday to Jamaica.*

a package holiday (=in which you pay a price that includes travel, room, and food) *The company organizes package holidays to Spain and Greece.*

a family holiday *I first visited Orkney on a family holiday when I was a boy.*

sb's dream holiday (=the best holiday you can imagine) *They won a dream holiday for two to the Caribbean.*

VERBS

go on holiday *The children were excited about going on holiday.*

have/take a holiday *We've had two lovely holidays in Italy.*

book a holiday *I booked the holiday online.*

plan a holiday *He and Marcia were planning a holiday in Japan.*

cancel a holiday *We had to cancel the holiday because my dad was ill.*

holiday + NOUNS

a holiday resort (=a place with many hotels where a lot of people go on holiday) *Benidorm is a terrific holiday resort with so much to do.*

a holiday destination (=a town or country where a lot of people go on holiday) *Marmaris is one of Turkey's most popular holiday destinations.*

a holiday home/house/cottage/apartment (=a house that someone owns and uses for holidays) *They bought a holiday home in France.*

holiday accommodation *The tourist office can give information about holiday accommodation in the area.*

the holiday season *The town is very busy during the holiday season.*

holiday photos (also **holiday snaps** informal) (=photographs that you take when you are on holiday) *Do you want to see our holiday snaps?*

PREPOSITIONS

on holiday *What did you do on holiday?*

PHRASES

a holiday abroad (=a holiday in a country other than the one you live in) *They were planning a holiday abroad that year.*

the holiday of a lifetime (=a very good or expensive holiday that you will only take once) *We took the family on a holiday of a lifetime to Orlando, Florida.*

2 BrE a time of rest from work or school

NOUNS + holiday

the school holidays *The school holidays start tomorrow.*

the summer holidays (=time during the summer when children do not go to school) *What are you doing in the summer holidays?*

ADJECTIVES

paid holiday (=when you are paid by your employer but do not have to go to work) *We get 25 days' paid holiday a year.*

VERBS

take a holiday *I'm taking a holiday on Tuesday next week.*

get/have holiday *How much holiday do you get?*

holiday + NOUNS

holiday pay (=money from your employer when you have a holiday) *Many workers do not get holiday pay.*

a holiday job (=a job you do when you have a holiday from school or college) *I had a holiday job working on a farm.*

PREPOSITIONS

(away) on holiday *I'm away on holiday until June 1st.*

in/during the holidays *He came to stay with us in the school holidays.*

PHRASES

a week's/two weeks' etc holiday *I get five weeks' holiday a year.*

3 a day fixed by law when people do not have to go to work or school

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + holiday

a national/public/official holiday *July 4th is a national holiday in the US.*

a bank holiday BrE (=an official holiday when banks and some businesses are closed) *The last Monday in August is a bank holiday.*

a religious holiday *Christmas Day is a religious holiday.*

a Jewish/Muslim etc holiday *The family always observe the Jewish holiday Yom Kippur.*

the Passover/Thanksgiving etc holiday *The market was closed because of the Thanksgiving holiday.*

holiday + NOUNS

a holiday weekend *Many people travel during the Easter holiday weekend.*
the holiday season *AmE (=time between Thanksgiving and New Year) Sales of toys usually increase during the holiday season.*

VERBS

celebrate/observe a holiday *Jewish people were gathering to observe the Passover holiday.*

hollow *adj* **THESAURUS** empty

holy *adj*
if something is holy, it is treated with special respect, especially because it is connected with God or religion

NOUNS

a holy place/city/site *Jerusalem is regarded as a holy city by Jews, Christians, and Muslims.*
holy ground *You are standing on holy ground.*
the Holy Land (=Israel/Palestine) *Millions of people visit the Holy Land each year.*
a holy mountain/river *Kanchenjunga is regarded as a holy mountain.*
a holy man *Mount Koya is the burial place of Japan's great holy man, Kobo Daishi.*
a holy book *The holy book contains guidelines about the behaviour expected from Muslims.*
a holy war *He called for a holy war against the American invaders.*
a holy relic (=a holy object) *The box was used for storing holy relics.*
holy water *I dipped my fingers in the holy water and crossed myself.*
the holy month (of Ramadan) *The festival marks the end of the holy month of Ramadan.*
a holy day *They light the candle on Sundays and holy days.*

VERBS

be considered holy/be regarded as holy *This site is also considered holy by Muslims.*

Holy or sacred?

These words mean the same and have many of the same collocations. You can say a **holy place/city/mountain/relic** or a **sacred place/city/mountain/relic**.
There are some differences. You say a **holy man** and a **holy war** (not a 'sacred' one). It is more common to say a **holy book**, but a **sacred text**. It is more common to say **holy water**, but a **sacred flame**.
Holy is used with a capital letter about many things that are connected with the Christian religion – for example, the **Holy Bible**, the **Holy Spirit**, the **Holy Ghost**, the **Holy Father**, and the **Holy Cross**.

home *n*
the house, apartment, or place where you live

VERBS

live at home (=live with your parents) *More people in their twenties are still living at home because housing is so expensive.*
leave home *Lisa had left home at age 16.*
work from home/work at home (=instead of in an office) *I work at home three days a week.*
stay at home *BrE, stay home* *AmE: Last night we stayed at home and watched TV.*
head for home (=begin the journey to your home) *Tired and weary, they headed for home.*
make your home somewhere (=start living somewhere) *A family of birds made their home under the roof.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + home

a nice/beautiful/luxurious home *We interviewed the star in her luxurious home.*
affordable homes (=that do not cost too much money) *We need to provide affordable homes for young people.*
a permanent/temporary home *Flood victims were offered temporary homes.*
a happy home (=a happy family) *We had a happy home when I was young.*
a secure/stable home (=a caring family without a lot of changes) *He had grown up in a stable home.*
sb's childhood/boyhood etc home (=where you lived as a child) *I had not been back to my childhood home for ten years.*
the family home (=where a family lives) *The house was once the family home of the Kennedys.*
a second home (=in addition to the one where you usually live, for holidays etc) *About 300,000 British people have a second home abroad.*
a holiday home *BrE, a vacation home* *AmE: They bought a luxury holiday home in Spain.*

home + NOUNS

home address/phone number *If you give me your home address, I'll send you a copy.*
a home owner *Home owners will be badly affected by the rise in mortgage rates.*
home comforts (=things at home which make your life pleasant) *I really missed my home comforts when I was travelling.*

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

at home *I wasn't at home when he called.*
away from home *He was spending more and more time away from home.*

homely *adj* **THESAURUS** ugly (1)

homesick *adj* **THESAURUS** sad (1)

H

homework *n*

work that a student at school is asked to do at home

VERBS

do your homework *Paul, have you done your homework?*

give (sb) homework (also **set (sb) homework** BrE): *The teacher gave them some homework to do by Monday.*

get homework *I think we get too much homework.*

help sb with their homework *I often have to help her with her homework.*

hand in your homework (=give it to the teacher) *You must hand in your homework by Friday.*

finish your homework *You're not going out until you've finished your homework.*

NOUNS + homework

biology/history/French etc homework *The science homework was really hard.*

homework + NOUNS

a homework assignment *Students are given homework assignments to do.*

PREPOSITIONS

for homework *For homework, finish the exercise on page 14.*

△ Don't say 'make/write your homework'. Say **do your homework**.

PHRASES

a piece of homework *I still have one more piece of homework left to do.*

honest *adj*

if you are honest, you tell the truth and do not cheat or steal

NOUNS

an honest man/woman/person *He looked like an honest man, so she agreed to lend him the money.*

an honest face *The lady had a kind honest face.*

an honest answer/opinion *I'm going to ask you something and I want an honest answer.*

an honest mistake *Please believe me. It was an honest mistake.*

the honest truth (=used when emphasizing that this is the truth) *The honest truth is that nobody knows why he left his job.*

an honest debate/discussion *We need to have an honest debate about the future of the European Union.*

an honest assessment/appraisal *During his speech, the president gave an honest assessment of the current state of the economy.*

ADVERBS

completely/totally/absolutely/perfectly

honest *I'll be perfectly honest with you - I don't really want to go to the party.*

scrupulously honest (=very careful to be honest) *Lawyers have to be scrupulously honest in their dealings with their clients.*

painfully honest (=in which you talk about things that are difficult or embarrassing to talk about) *This is a painfully honest account of her relationship with her parents.*

brutally honest (=in a way that may seem unkind) *To be brutally honest, she's too old for the job.*

refreshingly honest (=in a way that is unusual and good) *He is refreshingly honest about the mistakes he has made.*

PREPOSITIONS

honest with sb *I don't think you are being completely honest with me.*

honest about sth *It's always best to be honest about your feelings.*

PHRASES

let's be honest *Let's be honest, she only married him for his money.*

to be honest (=used when saying what you really think) *To be honest, I don't like her very much.*

THESAURUS: honest**truthful**

answer | account

if you are truthful, you do not tell any lies:
The truthful answer is that we do not know. | It was a truthful account of life inside the camp. | To be truthful with you, I had to admire this guy. | I don't think she is being entirely truthful with us.

sincere

apology | thanks | belief | desire | wish | hope
if you are sincere, you say what you really think or feel:

Please accept our sincere apologies for the delay. | We published the story in the sincere belief that the documents were genuine. | It was their sincere desire to make sure that no further lives were lost. | He sounded so sincere that I forgave him at once.

frank

discussion | debate | account | assessment | admission

speaking honestly and directly about something, especially something that people find difficult to discuss:

The programme contains a frank discussion about sex. | It was an unusually frank admission of guilt. | In her book, she is brutally frank about their marriage (=in a way that may shock people). | To be frank, I have no idea where the money has gone.

If you say that **there was a full and frank exchange of views**, this usually means that there was an angry argument, because people said what they really thought.

straight *informal*
answer | **talking**

saying what you really think:

*I need a straight answer. | After some straight talking by the manager, the team started to play better. | I can't help you if you're not **straight with** me.*

open

willing to talk about your feelings and opinions in an honest way, rather than trying to hide them:

*American people tend to be more **open about** their feelings. | She's very easy to talk to because she's so open.*

Open is not used before a noun in this meaning.

candid *formal*

admission | **interview** | **discussion** | **statement** | **assessment**

honest about the facts, or about your opinions and feelings, even if other people disapprove of them:

*It was an unusually candid admission for a politician. | In a candid interview, he talks about his reasons for resigning. | The actor has always been completely **candid about** his past.*

direct

answer | **manner** | **way**

saying exactly what you think in a clear way, even when this might annoy or upset people:

When I asked him what he thought of my work, I got a surprisingly direct answer. | Not everyone liked her direct manner. | The boss can be very direct.

blunt

message | **warning** | **statement** | **answer** | **language** | **words**

saying exactly what you think in a few words without trying to be careful or polite, even when this might annoy or upset people:

*He gave them a blunt warning - either go back to work, or face the consequences. | Diplomats expressed surprise at the blunt language of the text. | Sorry if I was a bit **blunt with** you earlier.*

forthright *formal*

manner | **way** | **views** | **statement** | **speech** | **attack** | **rejection**

saying exactly what you think, without being afraid of what other people will think:

Her husband told her in a forthright manner where he thought she was going wrong. | The

Chief Executive Officer issued a forthright statement in which he described the company's financial position as "deeply worrying".

outspoken

critic | **opponent** | **advocate** | **supporter** | **views** | **opinions** | **comments** | **criticism** | **opposition**

expressing your opinions publicly in a very direct way, which may offend or annoy some people:

Ozawa is an outspoken critic of the government. | The senator is an outspoken advocate of tax cuts (=someone who strongly supports an idea). | Professor Dawkins is known for his outspoken views on religion.

ANTONYMS **honest** → **dishonest**

honesty *n* the quality of being honest

ADJECTIVES

complete/total honesty *I want complete honesty from you.*

brutal honesty (=honesty that might hurt someone) *Sometimes brutal honesty is necessary to get someone to change.*

painful honesty (=about something that is upsetting or embarrassing for you) *"I don't know," she said with painful honesty.*

refreshing honesty (=that you like because it is unusual) *He admitted, with refreshing honesty, that the team hadn't deserved to win.*

PREPOSITIONS

with honesty *He talked with complete honesty about his drink problem.*

PHRASES

in all honesty (=used to emphasize that you are being honest) *In all honesty, I found it a bit boring.*

honour *BrE*, **honor** *AmE* *n*

1 something that makes you feel very proud

ADJECTIVES

a great honour *It was a great honour to meet my hero in person.*

a rare honour (=a very special honour that is not given to many people) *Being asked to paint a portrait for the Queen is a rare honour for any artist.*

a dubious honour (=something that you are not sure that you should be proud of) *The city has the dubious honor of being the smoggiest city in the world.*

a signal honour *formal* (=a great honour) *He received the signal honour of becoming an Honorary Fellow of the college.*

VERBS

have the honour *formal*: *As a young man, he had the honour of meeting Winston Churchill.*

do sb the honour *formal* (=make someone proud and happy by doing something for

them) *Will you do me the honour of becoming my wife?*

PREPOSITIONS

the honour of doing sth *Over 100 players competed for the honour of representing the county in the national finals.*

PHRASES

it is an honour to do sth (=used as a polite way of saying that you are pleased to do something) *It is an honour to have you here, sir.*

2 the respect that you, your family, your country etc receive from other people, which makes you feel proud

VERBS

bring honour to sb/sth (=make people respect someone or something) *The bravery of these men has brought honour to their regiment.*

defend sb's/sth's honour (=do something to protect it when it is being attacked) *To defend his honour and his business interests, he was prepared to go to court.*

save the honour of sb/sth (=stop it being lost) *He saved the team's honour by scoring a goal in the final minute.*

uphold the honour of sb/sth (=defend it) *She felt duty bound to uphold the honour of her country.*

restore the honour of sb/sth (=make it return to its former state) *He would be forced to restore the honor of his family name.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + honour

national honour *For the French team, winning tomorrow's game is a matter of national honour.*

family honour *Refusal of a marriage offer is seen as an attack on the family honour.*

PHRASES

sb's/sth's honour is at stake (=someone may lose their honour) *People believed that the country's honor was at stake over the incident.*

3 strong moral beliefs and standards of behaviour that make people respect and trust you

PHRASES

a man of honour *I know Tom to be a man of honour and integrity.*

a matter/point/question of honour (=something you feel you must do because of your moral beliefs) *To my mum, paying bills on time is a point of honour.*

a code of honour (=a set of moral rules, laws, or principles that people follow) *We abide by a strict military code of honor.*

a sense of honour (=a desire to do what is morally right) *Is he marrying her out of some misplaced sense of honour?*

a badge of honour (=something that shows you have honour) *He wore his battle scars as a badge of honour.*

sb's word of honour (=a promise based on strong moral beliefs) *I give you my word of honour that you will not be harmed.*

be/feel honour bound to do sth (=feel that you should do something, because it is morally right or your duty to do it) *My father felt honour bound to help his sister.*

4 a prize or title given to someone for an achievement

ADJECTIVES

highest honour *The Victoria Cross is Britain's highest honour for bravery.*

a top honour *Joey was awarded the top honour in recognition of his work.*

a major honour *The team last won a major honour in 2001.*

VERBS

win/receive an honour *The company has won several honours including the Queen's Award for Export.*

give/award (sb) an honour *Many people who are awarded this honour go on to win the Nobel Prize.*

bestow an honour on sb *formal* (=give it to them) *The honour is normally bestowed on someone who has done something for the city.*

accept an honour *Paltrow accepted the honor at a city hall ceremony.*

PREPOSITIONS

an honour for sth *The Hero Star medal is Russia's top honour for bravery.*

hope¹ _v

to want something to happen or be true and to believe that it is possible or likely

ADVERBS

really/very much hope *I really hope things get better.*

secretly hope *She had secretly hoped to marry him.*

sincerely hope *We sincerely hope that you enjoy your stay with us.*

desperately hope *The team desperately hopes to win the match.*

fervently hope *formal* (=very much want something to happen) *He fervently hopes to be picked for the team.*

PREPOSITIONS

hope for sth *They are hoping for good weather.*

PHRASES

hope for the best *We shall continue to hope for the best and prepare for the worst.*

be hoping against hope (=hope for something that is very unlikely to happen or be true) *She glanced about the hall, hoping against hope that Richard would be waiting for her.*

hope and pray *They were hoping and praying for a better future.*

sth is too much to hope for *We might win the competition, but I guess that is too much to hope for.*

hope² *n*

the feeling that what you want will happen, or something that you want to happen

VERBS + hope

have hope *The situation looked bad, but we still had hope that things would get better soon.*

give/offer hope *The research has given hope to thousands of people who have the disease.*

lose/give up/abandon hope (=stop hoping) *After six weeks, she had abandoned hope of finding him alive.*

raise sb's hopes (also **get/build sb's hopes up**) (=make someone feel that what they want is likely to happen) *I don't want to raise your hopes too much.*

pin your hopes on sth (=hope for one thing that everything else depends on) *After a difficult year, the company is pinning its hopes on its new range of products.*

cling to the hope that (=keep hoping that something will happen, even though it seems unlikely) *They clung to the hope that one day a cure would be found.*

dash/shatter sb's hopes (=make what someone wants seem impossible) *The ending of the talks has dashed any hopes of peace.*

live in hope (=keep hoping) *We haven't had any success yet, but we live in hope.*

hope + VERBS

hopes are fading (=people have much less hope of doing something) *Hopes are fading that rescuers will find any more survivors.*

sb's hope lies in/with sth (=something gives people hope) *Our real hope lies with a vaccine.*

ADJECTIVES

fresh/renewed hope *The news has given the family renewed hope that their daughter may still be alive.*

false hope *We don't want to give people false hopes.*

a vain/forlorn hope (=hope for something that is impossible) *He traveled south in the vain hope of finding work.*

sb's only/one hope *My only hope is that someone may have handed in the keys to the police.*

sb's last hope (=the only person or thing left that can help someone) *No one else would lend us the money – you are our last hope.*

hopes are high (=people think that something good will happen) *Hopes are high that the hostages will be released soon.*

PREPOSITIONS

hope for/to sb *This drug offers new hope for breast cancer sufferers.*

hope for sth *The Pope has voiced hope for peace.*

hopes of (doing) sth *Rita has hopes of becoming a nurse.*

in the hope of doing sth (=because you hope that you will do it) *Shoppers flocked to the sales in the hope of finding a bargain.*

in the hope that (=because you hope that something will happen) *We went for a picnic anyway, in the hope that the weather would improve.*

PHRASES

be full of hope *His voice sounded full of hope.*

a glimmer/ray of hope (=a little hope, or something that gives you a little hope) *The new treatment gives patients a glimmer of hope.*

sb's hopes and dreams/fears *We talked about all our hopes and dreams for the future. | The crew members have different hopes and fears about the trip.*

keep sb's hopes alive (=make someone still have hope) *A goal in the 33rd minute kept England's hopes alive.*

hopeless *adj* **THESAURUS** useless

horizon *n*

1 the line where the land or sea seems to meet the sky

ADJECTIVES

the distant/far horizon *Beyond the thick forests lie the Rocky Mountains on the distant horizon.*

VERBS

scan the horizon (=examine it carefully but quickly) *He scanned the horizon for any sign of the boat.*

dominate the horizon (=be the biggest and most noticeable thing on the horizon) *The castle dominates the horizon.*

appear on the horizon *Clouds had begun to appear on the horizon.*

disappear over the horizon *She watched the car until it disappeared over the horizon.*

PREPOSITIONS

on the horizon *They could see a ship on the horizon.*

above/below the horizon *The sun disappeared below the horizon.*

over/beyond the horizon *He saw the moon rising up over the horizon.*

2 your horizons are the limits of your ideas, knowledge, and experience

Grammar

Always plural in this meaning.

VERBS

broaden/expand sb's horizons *Which books would you say have broadened your horizons?*

H

ADJECTIVES

limited/narrow horizons *They are incapable of seeing beyond their own narrow horizons.*

horizontal *adj* **THESAURUS** flat¹

horrible *adj* **THESAURUS** terrible

horrific *adj* **THESAURUS** terrible

horror *n*

1 a strong feeling of shock and fear

ADJECTIVES

absolute/sheer/abject horror (=great horror)
There was a look of sheer horror on her face.

mock horror (=horror that is not real)
Grandma raised her hands in mock horror.

VERBS

fill sb with horror *The idea of killing an animal filled him with horror.*

imagine sb's horror *Imagine his horror when he found the body.*

PREPOSITIONS

in horror *Ashley stared in horror at the black hairy spider.*

with horror *Staff watched with horror as he set the documents on fire.*

to sb's horror *To my horror, I realized my shirt was wet with blood.*

horror at sth *He was filled with horror at the thought of what he had to do.*

PHRASES

a look of horror *Suddenly, a look of horror spread over his face.*

2 something that is very shocking and terrible

ADJECTIVES

the true/full horror of sth *He suddenly realized the true horror of what he was doing.*

unspeakable/unimaginable horror (=used when emphasizing how bad something is) *The refugees had suffered unspeakable horrors.*

VERBS

experience/suffer a horror *His grandfather had experienced the horror of the First World War.*

hospitable *adj* **THESAURUS** friendly

hospital *n*

a large building where sick or injured people receive medical treatment

Grammar

In British English, people usually miss out **the** before **hospital** and say **go to hospital**. In American English, people say **go to the hospital**.

VERBS

go to (the) hospital *The pain got worse and she had to go to the hospital.*

go into (the) hospital (=go to hospital and stay for treatment which has already been planned) *He's going into hospital for an operation next week.*

be taken/rushed to (the) hospital *Three people were taken to hospital after a crash on the motorway.*

be airlifted to (the) hospital (=be taken there in a plane or helicopter) *A man was airlifted to hospital with serious injuries.*

be admitted to (the) hospital (=be taken into the hospital) *He was admitted to hospital suffering from chest pain.*

leave/come out of (the) hospital *He is expected to come out of hospital later this week.*

be discharged/released from (the) hospital (=be allowed to leave a hospital because you are better) *It was several weeks before he was released from hospital.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + hospital

a general hospital (=one that treats many different types of disease and injury) *The injured were taken to Bristol General Hospital.*

a psychiatric hospital (also **a mental hospital** old-fashioned) (=for people with mental illnesses) *He was admitted to a secure psychiatric hospital.*

a maternity hospital BrE (=for women having babies) *Many maternity hospitals have been forced to close.*

a children's hospital *They are trying to raise money to build a children's hospital.*

a military hospital *Injured soldiers were taken to a nearby military hospital.*

a teaching hospital (=one where medical students receive practical training) *The nurse had trained at a London teaching hospital.*

a private hospital BrE: *The operation was carried out at a private hospital.*

hospital + NOUNS

hospital treatment/care *He is badly hurt and needs urgent hospital treatment.*

a hospital stay (=the period someone spends in hospital) *New surgical techniques mean a hospital stay of less than 48 hours.*

a hospital bed *There is a shortage of hospital beds.*

a hospital ward (=a room for patients staying in a hospital) *She works on a busy hospital ward.*

hospital doctor/nurse/staff *Hospital doctors often work long hours.*

PREPOSITIONS

in (the) hospital *His wife visited him in hospital.*

at a hospital *She's a doctor at Addenbrooke's Hospital.*

hostageⁿ

someone who is kept as a prisoner by an enemy in order to force people to agree to their demands

VERBS

take sb hostage (=force someone to be a hostage) *The bank robbers took three customers hostage and threatened to shoot them.*

seize a hostage *Rebel gunmen seized 30 more hostages in Chechnya.*

keep/hold sb hostage *They kept him hostage for nine months in the jungle.*

hold a hostage *Police have surrounded the house where the hostages were being held.*

rescue a hostage *US special forces attacked the bus and rescued the hostages.*

release/free a hostage *The terrorists have agreed to release all the hostages.*

hostage + NOUNS

a hostage crisis *Diplomatic talks have begun to bring the hostage crisis to an end.*

hostage-taking *They use hostage-taking as a way of getting money to buy weapons.*

PHRASES

the release of the hostages *The government is continuing its efforts to secure the release of the hostages.*

hostile^{adj}

1 angry and deliberately unfriendly towards someone

ADVERBS

openly hostile (=used when someone does not try to hide their unfriendly feelings) *The guards were openly hostile to him.*

increasingly hostile *The boy became increasingly hostile to his parents and refused to talk to them.*

downright hostile (=extremely hostile in a very unpleasant way) *She was downright hostile towards us.*

NOUNS

a hostile welcome/reception (=people are hostile to someone when they arrive somewhere) *The visiting team received a hostile reception from the crowd.*

a hostile attitude *Some young people have a very hostile attitude to the police.*

a hostile crowd/audience *A hostile crowd of protesters gathered outside the parliament building.*

a hostile atmosphere *There was a hostile atmosphere at the match, and the police made several arrests.*

VERBS

become hostile *The neighbours became hostile and started shouting at her.*

PREPOSITIONS

hostile to/towards sb *The local people are often hostile to foreigners.*

2 opposing something very strongly

ADVERBS

deeply hostile *They were deeply hostile to any kind of change.*

bitterly hostile *Public opinion is bitterly hostile to tax increases.*

hostile + NOUNS

a hostile response/reaction *The plan met with a hostile response from the workers.*

VERBS

remain hostile to sth *UK shoppers still remain hostile to genetically modified foods.*

PREPOSITIONS

hostile to/towards sth *They became hostile to the war when they realised how many soldiers were being killed.*

hostilityⁿ

unfriendly and angry feelings, or strong opposition

ADJECTIVES

deep hostility *There was deep hostility to the changes among the workforce.*

open hostility (=not trying to hide your feelings of hostility) *The two women looked at each other with open hostility.*

outright hostility (=complete hostility) *The mood in the village had changed to outright hostility.*

great/considerable hostility *The reforms were greeted with considerable hostility.*

widespread hostility (=among many people) *There is widespread hostility towards the foreign soldiers in the country.*

growing hostility *He had noticed a growing hostility towards refugees.*

personal hostility *The writer seems to have a personal hostility to Mary Kingsley.*

mutual hostility (=between two people or groups) *The mutual hostility between the two groups seems to be deep-rooted.*

VERBS

face hostility *Foreigners often face hostility from the local population.*

meet sb/sth with hostility (also **greet sb/sth with hostility**) *The idea was met with hostility when it was first suggested.*

feel hostility *I felt no hostility towards him - I just felt sorry for him.*

arouse/provoke hostility formal (=cause hostility) *The speaker aroused hostility among some members of the audience.*

PREPOSITIONS

hostility to/towards sb/sth *The plans had to be abandoned because of hostility to them.*



hostility against sb *There have been reports of violent hostility against foreigners.*

hostility between sb *There is a lot of hostility between the two groups.*

hot *adj* having a high temperature

NOUNS

hot weather/climate *In hot weather, the plants need to be watered every day.*

a hot day/evening/summer *It was a hot day and everyone was wearing T-shirts.*

a hot country *The bird normally lives in hot countries.*

hot drink/food/meal *A hot drink will help to warm you up.*

hot water/bath/shower *There is hot water in all the rooms.*

ADVERBS

incredibly hot (=very hot) *Tokyo gets incredibly hot in summer.*

boiling hot (=very hot) *The car is boiling hot.*

scorching hot (=extremely hot) *The drill gets scorching hot.*

blazing hot (also **baking hot** BrE) (=extremely hot – used about the weather) *It was a baking hot week in August.*

scalding hot (=extremely hot – used about liquids) *The coffee was scalding hot.*

burning hot (=used about someone's skin or the weather) *His forehead was burning hot.*

steaming hot (=used about drinks or the weather) *The waitress put a steaming hot cup of coffee on the table.*

piping hot (=very hot – used about food and drink) *The fruit pie was covered with piping hot custard.*

red hot (=so hot that it glows red, or extremely hot to touch) *Take care – the iron is red hot.*

white hot (=white hot metal has been heated to a very high temperature) *He held the metal in the flame until it became white hot.*

uncomfortably hot *The sweater made her feel uncomfortably hot.*

unbearably/oppressively hot (=so hot that it is very uncomfortable) *The office gets unbearably hot in summer.*

VERBS

be/feel hot *I was hot and tired after the journey.*

become/get hot *The water gets hot very quickly.*

keep sth hot *The flask will keep the tea hot.*

serve sth (while it is) hot *Serve the soup hot with fresh bread.*

PHRASES

hot and cold *The bar serves hot and cold food.*

Hot is also used about food that is very spicy: *I like a nice **hot** curry.*

THESAURUS: hot

warm

weather | **climate** | **day** | **evening** | **summer** | **water** | **air** | **wind** | **clothes** | **bed** | **fire** | **bed**
a little hot, especially in a way that seems pleasant:

*Florida is full of British people who are attracted by the warm climate. | Scrub your hands with soap and warm water. | I was looking forward to being in a **nice warm** bed. | **It's lovely and warm** in here. | He moved his legs in order to try to **keep warm**.*

boiling

spoken

very hot:
***It's boiling** in my office. | You must be **absolutely boiling** in that sweater!*

Boiling is not usually used before a noun. You use **boiling hot** before a noun: a **boiling hot** day.

scorching

heat | **sun** | **weather** | **day** | **summer** | **desert**
extremely hot, especially because the sun is shining very strongly:

The local people are accustomed to the scorching heat of the desert. | When we got to Spain, the weather was scorching.

humid

weather | **climate** | **conditions** | **air** | **atmosphere** | **night** | **day** | **morning** | **summer**
hot and with a lot of moisture in the air:

*The night was hot and humid, and she was unable to sleep. | Hong Kong **gets** very **humid** at this time of year.*

feverish

feeling very hot because you are ill:

*His head ached and he **felt feverish**.*

Feverish is not usually used before a noun.

Another way of saying that something is hot

You can also say that a room, car etc **is like an oven**: ***It's like an oven** in here.*

If part of your body feels very hot and painful, you say that it is **burning**: *His forehead was **burning**. | I had a **burning** sensation in my mouth.*

ANTONYMS **hot** → **cold**¹

hotel

a building where people pay to stay and eat meals

VERBS

stay at/in a hotel *We stayed at a hotel near the airport.*

check into a hotel (also **book into a hotel** BrE):

He checked into the hotel a little after 2 p.m.

check out of a hotel (=leave a hotel) *We packed and checked out of the hotel.*

book a hotel BrE (=arrange to stay in it) *Have you booked the hotel yet?*

run/manage a hotel *They run a small hotel in Cornwall.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + hotel

a two-star/five-star etc hotel *On our honeymoon, we stayed in a four-star hotel in Paris.*

a luxury hotel *He took her to a luxury hotel in central London.*

a comfortable hotel *The Beau Rivage is a comfortable hotel on the lakeside.*

a budget hotel (=with rooms at low prices) *The chain now has 200 budget hotels in Europe.*

a country hotel (=a hotel in the countryside) *They chose a quiet country hotel for their honeymoon.*

hotel + NOUNS

a hotel room *She was watching TV in her hotel room.*

a hotel suite (=a set of rooms in a hotel) *The singer was staying in a luxury hotel suite.*

a hotel guest *Hotel guests have free use of the gym and pool.*

the hotel manager/receptionist/porter *Speak to the hotel manager if you are not happy with your room.*

the hotel restaurant/bar/gym *The hotel bar was empty.*

the hotel reception/lobby *She waited for him in the hotel lobby.*

a hotel chain/group (=a group of hotels owned by the same company) *The building has been bought by the Hilton Hotels chain.*

PREPOSITIONS

at/in a hotel *I'll meet you at the hotel.*

hour ⁿ

a unit for measuring time. There are 60 minutes in one hour, and 24 hours in one day

PHRASES

half an hour (also **a half hour**) (=30 minutes) *I'll meet you in half an hour.*

(a) quarter of an hour (=15 minutes) *She was only gone for about a quarter of an hour.*

three quarters of an hour (=45 minutes) *The journey takes three quarters of an hour.*

miles/kilometres an hour (=used in speeds) *The speed limit is 65 miles an hour.*

£10/\$7 etc an hour (=used to say how much someone is paid or something costs) *I earn £5 an hour babysitting.*

an hour's walk/drive etc *Frankfurt is about three hours' drive away.*

VERBS

sth takes an hour (also **it takes an hour to do sth**) *It took about three hours to paint the whole wall.*

spend an hour *I spent an hour reading.*

last (for) an hour *The meeting lasted almost two hours.*

an hour goes by/passes *Six hours had passed since he left, and I was starting to get worried.*

PREPOSITIONS

for an hour/for two hours etc *I study for an hour every evening.*

in an hour/in two hours etc (=one hour etc from now) *We'll have to leave in an hour.*

within an hour/within two hours etc (=before one hour etc has passed) *I should be back within an hour.*

over an hour/over two hours etc (=more than an hour etc) *It took us over three hours to get there.*

under an hour/under two hours etc (=less than an hour etc) *You can be in Amsterdam in under an hour.*

an hour/two hours etc of sth *After ten hours of work, I was very tired.*

by the hour (=according to the number of hours) *You can hire a boat for a whole day or by the hour.*

house ⁿ

a building that someone lives in

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + house

a small/big/huge etc house *They live in a huge house in London.*

a beautiful/nice/lovely house *Her family has a beautiful house overlooking the bay.*

a three-bedroom/four-bedroom etc house *A four-bedroom house in this area costs around £350,000.*

a semi-detached house BrE (=one that is joined to another house on one side) *It was a semi-detached house with a very small garden.*

a detached house BrE (=that is not joined to other houses) *Fontaine lives in a large detached house.*

a terraced house BrE, **a row house** AmE (=joined to other houses on two sides) *They lived with their four children in an old row house.*

a country house (=a very large house in the countryside) *After the war, many big country houses had to be sold because the owners could not afford to maintain them.*

a council house BrE (=one owned by a local council that people can rent cheaply) *There are not enough council houses available for people to live in.*

a derelict house (=that no one lives in and is in very bad condition) *Some derelict houses in our street are being knocked down.*

VERBS

live in a house *The star lives in a big house in Hollywood.*

buy a house *We bought this house when Liam was just a baby.*

rent a house (=pay rent to live in it) *They decided to rent a house in the suburbs.*

sell a house *We decided to sell the house and move back to Seattle.*

move into/out of a house *We're moving into our new house next week.*

build a house *The family is building a house on land overlooking Galway Bay.*

put up houses (=build houses, especially quickly) *I think they've ruined the village by putting up these new houses.*

decorate a house (=put paint or wallpaper on the inside walls of a house) *The couple are busy decorating their new house.*

renovate a house (=repair a house so that it is in good condition again) *He makes money by renovating old houses and selling them.*

house + NOUNS

house prices *House prices have tripled over the last ten years.*

house hunting (=the activity of looking at houses that you might buy) *Have you had any success with your house hunting?*

housework ⁿ

work that you do to take care of a house, for example washing, cleaning etc

VERBS

do the housework *Women usually do the housework.*

help sb with the housework *Her husband sometimes helps her with the housework.*

share the housework *We share the housework - I do the cleaning and he washes the dishes.*

hug¹ ^v

to put your arms around someone and hold them tightly to show love or friendship

ADVERBS

hug sb tightly *She hugged her daughter tightly and said goodbye.*

hug sb close (=hug someone tightly) *Sarah kissed him and hugged him close.*

hug² ⁿ

the action of putting your arms around someone to show affection

VERBS

give sb a hug *Mary gave him a friendly hug and got onto the train.*

ADJECTIVES

a big hug *She came over to him and gave him a big hug.*

a quick hug *He gave her a quick hug and said goodbye.*

huge ^{adj} extremely big

NOUNS

a huge amount/quantity *There is a huge amount of work to be done.*

a huge number *Huge numbers of people use the airport each year.*

a huge increase *There has been a huge increase in the number of cars on our roads.*

a huge profit/loss/debt *The company made a huge profit last year.*

a huge impact/effect *The new technology will have a huge impact on people's lives.*

a huge success *The book was a huge success and sold millions of copies.*

a huge difference *There is a huge difference between acting and directing.*

ADVERBS

absolutely huge *The task ahead of them is absolutely huge.*

⚠ Don't say 'very huge'.

THESAURUS: huge

enormous

enormous means the same as **huge**, and can be used with the same collocations:

The building cost an enormous amount of money. | She gets enormous pleasure from her work. | The impact of his discovery was absolutely enormous.

massive

massive means the same as **huge** and **enormous**, and can be used with the same collocations. It sounds a little more informal:

There was a massive increase in food prices. | The company is massive, operating in 150 countries. | They heard a massive explosion.

When you use **massive** about objects and buildings, it has the feeling of being very solid or heavy: *The castle is surrounded by a massive stone wall. | a massive wooden table*

giant

giant things are much bigger than other things of the same kind:

There is a giant TV screen on the wall. | He works for a giant electronics corporation.

Giant is often used about animals and plants: *a giant snake | a giant mushroom*

Giant is only used before a noun.

vast

amount | quantity | number | range | area | distance | majority

vast amounts, numbers, areas, or distances are extremely big:

A vast amount of energy is wasted. | Sweet foods like ice cream contain vast quantities of sugar. | The gallery has a vast number of paintings. | The fire spread over a vast area. | The vast majority of children did not go to school.

colossal

statue | amount | bill | mistake | waste
a colossal object or amount is extremely big. A colossal mistake is a very serious. **Colossal** sounds even bigger than **huge**:
In the middle of the square there is a colossal statue. | There is still a colossal amount of work to be done. | She received a colossal phone bill. | The war was a colossal mistake.

gigantic

creature | snake | wave | proportions | scale
extremely big and very frightening or worrying. **Gigantic** sounds even bigger than **huge**:
The earth was once inhabited by strange gigantic creatures. | The debt has now increased to gigantic proportions. | This is corruption on a gigantic scale.

immense

satisfaction | pleasure | respect | relief | importance | value | power | problems | difficulties | amount
immense feelings are very strong. **Immense** is also used about something that is very important or serious:
Her job gives her immense satisfaction. | The forest is of immense importance because of its wildlife. | The country faces immense economic problems. | The book contains an immense amount of information about China.

tremendous

change | opportunity | impact | difference | pressure | effort | amount | respect | achievement
having an extremely big effect. You also use **tremendous** when you think someone or something is very impressive:
There have been some tremendous changes in our society. | My parents had a tremendous impact on me. | The organization does a tremendous amount of good work. | I have tremendous respect for him as a scientist. | Four Olympic gold medals is a tremendous achievement.

monumental

task | effort | struggle | mistake | error | moment | significance
needing a very large amount of effort, or very serious or important. **Monumental** sounds even bigger than **huge**:
Clearing up all the mess will be a monumental task. | There was a monumental struggle for power. | Releasing the terrorists was a monumental mistake. | It was a monumental moment when Obama became president.

mega-

megastore | megacity | megacorporation | megastar

used as a prefix, in the names of very big or important things:
Huge megastores have been built on the edge of town. | The singer is now a megastar (=she is very famous).

whopping informal

used before a number, when you want to emphasize that it is extremely big:
He lost a whopping 23 kilos. | The film cost a whopping \$200 million to make.

human adj

belonging to or relating to people, especially as opposed to machines or animals

NOUNS

- the human body** The diagram shows all the organs in the human body.
- the human mind/brain** Distances in space are too great for the human mind to comprehend.
- human life** I believe that all human life is precious.
- the human race** (=all people as a group) We are all members of the human race.
- human rights** It is important to respect the prisoners' basic human rights.
- human error** (=a mistake made by a person) Investigators concluded that the crash was caused by human error.
- human behaviour** BrE, **human behavior** AmE: We study aspects of human behaviour that result from our social upbringing.
- human relationships** Trust is an essential ingredient in all human relationships.
- the human spirit** The film is about the triumph of the human spirit.

PHRASES

- fit for human consumption/habitation** (=suitable to be eaten or lived in by people)
This meat is not fit for human consumption.

humdrum adj **THESAURUS** boring

humid adj **THESAURUS** damp (1), hot

humiliating adj **THESAURUS** embarrassing

humorous adj **THESAURUS** funny (1)

humour BrE, humor AmE n

the quality of being funny or being able to find things funny

PHRASES

- a sense of humour** (=the ability to make people laugh, or to laugh at funny things) I'm afraid my dad doesn't have a very good sense of humour.
- sb's brand of humour** (=the type of jokes etc



that a particular person likes or tells) *His brand of humour is not enjoyed by everyone.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + humour

gentle/subtle humour *His novels are full of gentle humor.*

black/dark humour (=about unpleasant things such as death) *The film is a light comedy but there are moments of black humour.*

dry/deadpan humour (=in which someone appears to be serious but is really being funny) *Sometimes people don't understand his deadpan humour.*

wry humour (=making something seem both funny and sad) *He wrote with wry humour about his time in prison.*

VERBS

see/appreciate the humour (=understand that something is funny) *I was covered in mud, but I could still see the humour in the situation.*

hunger

lack of food, especially for a long period of time, that can cause illness or death

VERBS

die from/of hunger *Thousands of people are dying from hunger every day.*

suffer from hunger *He experienced a hard life in the desert, suffering from hunger, thirst, and loneliness.*

fight hunger *The organization aims to fight hunger, poverty, and disease.*

alleviate hunger *formal* (=make the problem of hunger less serious) *Billions of dollars have been spent on alleviating hunger in Africa.*

satisfy sb's hunger (=stop someone feeling hungry) *Sugary foods are high in calories and do not satisfy your hunger for long.*

⚠ Don't say 'I have hunger.' Say **I'm hungry.**

hunger + NOUNS

a hunger strike (=refusal to eat food as a protest, especially by a prisoner) *He was on a hunger strike in prison.*

hunger pangs (=sudden feelings of hunger) *I was getting hunger pangs and my stomach was rumbling.*

PHRASES

be weak from hunger *I hadn't eaten for two days and was weak from hunger.*

hungry

1 wanting to eat something, or ill because of lack of food

VERBS

be/feel hungry *I'm hungry – can we stop for a meal?*

get hungry (=become hungry) *If you get hungry, there's some salad in the fridge.*

go hungry (=not get anything to eat) *Life was not easy and we often went hungry.*

ADVERBS

always/constantly hungry *We were always hungry in wartime.*

desperately hungry *The people are desperately hungry and they need our help.*

2 wanting something very much

Grammar


In this meaning, you usually say **hungry for** sth.

PHRASES

hungry for success/victory/power/profit *He has been training hard and is hungry for success.*

hungry for news/information/knowledge *The media are hungry for news about the royal family.*

hungry for love/affection *The little boy was hungry for love.*

 **hungry for justice/revenge** *The team will be hungry for revenge on Saturday.*

hunk

THESAURUS piece

hunky

THESAURUS strong (1)

hurricane

THESAURUS wind

hurry

if you are in a hurry, you want to go somewhere or do something quickly

Grammar

The noun **hurry** is usually used in the phrase **be in a hurry.**

ADVERBS

be in a big/great hurry *She was in a big hurry to get home.*

be in a terrible/frightful/desperate hurry *I can't talk to you now – I'm in a terrible hurry.*

be in no hurry *"Take your time – we're in no hurry."*

hurt¹

1 to injure yourself or someone else

ADVERBS

hurt sb/sth badly *Luckily, nobody was badly hurt in the accident.*

seriously/severely hurt sb/yourself *A fall like that could kill or seriously hurt someone.*

intentionally/deliberately hurt sb *I would never intentionally hurt anyone.*

NOUNS

hurt your leg/arm/finger/back etc *Ouch! I think I've hurt my back.*

hurt yourself *She hurt herself when she fell over.*

2 if part of your body hurts, it feels painful

ADVERBS

hurt a lot *If your stomach hurts a lot, see a doctor.*

really hurt *My ankle really hurts when I walk.*

hurt badly *His head was hurting quite badly, and he wanted to lie down.*

hurt like hell *informal (=very very much) It was only a little knock, but it hurt like hell.*

PHRASES

it hurts when/if (=it feels painful) *It hurts when I lift up my arm.*

hurt² *adj*

1 suffering pain or injury

ADVERBS

badly/seriously hurt *Fortunately, no one was seriously hurt.*

slightly hurt *A driver was slightly hurt after two cars collided.*

VERBS

get hurt *Sometimes players get hurt in training.*

2 upset because someone has done something unkind or unfair

ADVERBS

deeply hurt *She was deeply hurt that Gabriel no longer loved her.*

terribly hurt *My mother would be terribly hurt if I didn't call and see her when I was in London.*

slightly hurt *He felt slightly hurt that Ella had forgotten his birthday.*

easily hurt *Be careful what you say to her – she's very easily hurt.*

VERBS

get hurt *Some people don't want a serious relationship because they fear getting hurt.*

feel hurt *I felt hurt that he had not bothered to call me.*

look hurt *He looked hurt when she didn't join him.*

sound hurt *"Don't you like it?" he asked, sounding hurt.*

NOUNS

hurt feelings *David bravely hid his hurt feelings.*

hurt pride *It was hurt pride that made me behave so coldly towards you.*

a hurt look/expression *He saw Tom standing at the door with a hurt look.*

a hurt voice *"Why don't you want me to come?" she asked in a hurt voice.*

hurtful *adj* **THESAURUS** **unkind****husband** *n*

the man that a woman is married to

ADJECTIVES

a good husband *He's a very good husband and father.*

a devoted/loving husband *Paul was a devoted husband and he often bought her gifts.*

sb's first/second/third etc husband *Stuart is her second husband.*

sb's new husband *She and her new husband bought a house in the country.*

sb's ex-husband (also **sb's former husband** formal): *My children live with my ex-husband.*

sb's future husband *I met my future husband when we worked together.*

sb's late husband (=someone's husband who is now dead) *Her late husband had been a police officer.*

sb's estranged husband formal (=someone's husband that they no longer live with – used especially in newspapers) *She and her estranged husband rarely speak.*

a faithful/unfaithful husband *Unfaithful husbands are often very good at telling lies.*

VERBS

have a husband *She had a husband who loved her very much.*

find a husband *Magazines used to give women advice on how to find a husband.*

meet your husband (=meet the man who will become your husband) *I met my husband at university.*

leave your husband (also **walk out on your husband**) (=decide you do not want to live with your husband any longer) *She left her husband after two years of marriage.*

lose your husband (=your husband dies) *Jill lost her husband last year.*

be divorced/separated from your husband *Joanna is divorced from her husband.*

NOUNS + husband

a house husband (=a husband who does not have a paid job, but cleans the house and looks after the children while his wife works) *More and more men are becoming house husbands.*

PHRASES

husband and wife *It is a small company that is run by husband and wife.*

husky *adj* **THESAURUS** **low** (3)**hygiene** *n*

the practice of keeping yourself clean and the things around you clean, in order to prevent the spread of disease

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + hygiene

personal hygiene *A healthy lifestyle includes having a nutritious diet and good personal hygiene.*

good/proper hygiene *Schools should have policies to ensure good hygiene in kitchen areas.*

bad/poor/inadequate hygiene *Poor hygiene leads to the spread of disease.*

basic hygiene *A lack of basic hygiene causes a wide range of illnesses.*

food hygiene *Anybody who handles food as part of their job must be trained in food hygiene.*

hygiene + NOUNS

hygiene standards *Food factories must meet strict hygiene standards.*

hygienic *adj* **THESAURUS** **clean¹ (1)**

hyperactive *adj* **THESAURUS** **energetic**

hypothesis [Ac] *n*

an idea that is suggested as an explanation for something, but that has not yet been proved to be true

VERBS

test/examine a hypothesis *He set up an experiment to test his hypothesis.*

support a hypothesis (*also be consistent with a hypothesis formal*): *The test results supported her hypothesis.*

put forward a hypothesis (*also propose a hypothesis formal*): *This hypothesis was first put forward by Einstein in the early 20th century.*

be based on a hypothesis *The theory is based on the hypothesis that man first appeared in Africa more than 100,000 years ago.*

develop/form a hypothesis (*also formulate a hypothesis formal*): *Researchers developed the hypothesis that there was a link between diet and blood pressure.*

prove/confirm a hypothesis *There is no way of proving this hypothesis.*

accept/reject a hypothesis *Most scientists accept the hypothesis that the universe began between 10 and 20 billion years ago.*

a hypothesis explains sth *The hypothesis explains the observed facts.*

ADJECTIVES

a working hypothesis (=a hypothesis that can be used now, but you may have to change later) *He developed a working hypothesis.*

an alternative hypothesis *No one has been able to suggest an alternative hypothesis.*

a plausible hypothesis (=one that can be believed) *I have yet to see a plausible hypothesis which can explain why this happens.*

PREPOSITIONS

a hypothesis about sth *His research tests a hypothesis about a possible cause of the disease.*

hypothetical *adj*

based on a situation that is not real, but that might happen

ADVERBS

purely hypothetical *The question is purely hypothetical.*

NOUNS

a hypothetical situation/scenario *Imagine the hypothetical situation of going to live alone on an island. Which books would you take with you?*

a hypothetical question *Let me ask a hypothetical question. What would you do if you saw a UFO?*

a hypothetical example/case *He brought up a hypothetical case to make his point.*

a hypothetical problem *The students were given a number of hypothetical problems to solve.*

hysteria *n*

uncontrolled excitement or fear

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + hysteria

mass/public hysteria (=among a lot of people) *There was mass hysteria when she died.*

anti-communist/anti-British etc hysteria

During the 1950s, the US was gripped by anti-communist hysteria.

media/press hysteria *Much unnecessary anxiety about the disease has been caused by media hysteria.*

VERBS

create/provoke hysteria *The terrorists are trying to create hysteria and make people frightened to go to work.*

whip up hysteria (=encourage it) *Extremists have been whipping up hysteria in the local community.*

border on/verge on hysteria (=be close to hysteria) *He arrived in a state of excitement bordering on hysteria.*

PREPOSITIONS

hysteria about/over sth *There is a lot of hysteria about bird flu at the moment.*

PHRASES

be in a state of hysteria *Her family were in a state of hysteria because they did not know where she was.*

a mood/atmosphere/climate of hysteria *The government was accused of creating a mood of hysteria about the crisis.*

a wave/tide/outbreak of hysteria *A wave of hysteria about communism was sweeping the country.*

be on the verge/edge of hysteria (=be nearly hysterical) *She was deeply upset and on the verge of hysteria.*

hysterical *adj* **THESAURUS** **funny (1)**

ii

ice *n* water that has frozen

ADJECTIVES

thick ice *Thick ice was preventing the ship from moving.*

thin ice *The ice is too thin to skate on.*

black ice (=a thin layer of ice on a road, which is difficult to see) *Black ice on the roads is making driving conditions very dangerous.*

crushed ice (=broken into small pieces, for example to add to a drink) *Serve the cocktail with crushed ice.*

VERBS

be covered in ice *Our driveway was covered in ice.*

ice melts *The ice in my glass had begun to melt.*

ice forms *Ice was forming on the surface of the lake.*

ice cracks *We could feel the ice cracking beneath our feet.*

scrape the ice off sth *He scraped the ice off the car windscreen.*

ice + NOUNS

an ice cube (=a small square piece of ice that you add to a drink) *She put a couple of ice cubes in her glass.*

an ice rink (=a specially prepared surface of ice where you can skate) *The floor was as slippery as an ice rink.*

the ice cap (=an area of thick ice that permanently covers the North and South Poles) *As the polar ice caps melt, sea levels will rise.*

an ice floe (=a large flat piece of ice that has broken off and is floating in the sea) *We could see penguins standing on the ice floes.*

PHRASES

a block of ice *The fish were packed in blocks of ice, ready for transportation.*

a sheet of ice *A thin sheet of ice had formed over the surface of the pond.*

A very large mass of ice floating in the sea is called an **iceberg**. A long thin pointed piece of ice that hangs from something is called an **icicle**.

idea

1 a plan or suggestion that someone thinks of

ADJECTIVES

a good/bad idea *"Let's have a party!" "Good idea!"*

a great/brilliant/excellent etc idea *It sounds like a great idea to me!*

a nice idea *It's a nice idea, but I don't think we have enough money.*

an interesting idea *The idea sounded interesting, but I didn't think it would work.*

a simple idea *His idea was simple but effective.*

a bright idea (=a very good idea - often used in a joking way to mean a stupid idea) *Whose bright idea was it to build the school next to a busy road?*

a new/original/fresh idea *The company is looking for people who can come up with fresh ideas for selling its products.*

a radical idea (=very new and different, so that people may not agree with it) *He has some radical ideas about reforming the healthcare system.*

a stupid/silly/crazy etc idea *The idea sounded crazy to me, and I told him so.*

a half-baked idea (=one that has not been carefully thought about) *His speech was full of half-baked ideas about borrowing money to help to pay off the country's debts.*

a big idea (=an idea for a big change, or for something new and important) *The government has some big ideas for improving schools.*

the basic idea *The basic idea is that freedom is not free and we must always work hard to protect it.*

the whole idea *I think we should forget the whole idea and start again.*

VERBS + idea

have an idea *He thought he would never be able to escape. Then he had an idea.*

come up with an idea (=think of an idea) *Why don't you ask Helen? She's always coming up with interesting ideas.*

hit on an idea *informal* (=suddenly think of an idea) *Then we hit on the idea of having the concert on the beach.*

conceive an idea *formal* (=first think of an idea) *Edison conceived the idea of a machine that could record sounds.*

get an idea *Martha got the idea from an article in a magazine.*

give sb an idea *What gave you the idea for the book?*

toy with an idea (=think about doing something, but not very seriously) *I'm toying with the idea of going back to college.*

abandon/give up/forget an idea *He abandoned the idea of studying medicine and decided to be an actor.*

reject/dismiss an idea *The committee rejected the idea.*

share/exchange ideas (=talk to each other about your ideas) *It will be an opportunity for local business people to share ideas.*

bounce ideas off each other (=discuss each other's ideas and think of good new ones) *The students work in groups and bounce ideas off each other.*

brainstorm ideas (=get a group of people to all try and think of ideas) *We had a meeting to brainstorm ideas for the new advertising campaign.*

idea + VERBS

an idea comes to/occurs to sb (=someone suddenly thinks of an idea) *The idea came to me while I was having a bath.*

PREPOSITIONS

the idea of (doing) sth *Who first had the idea of preserving food in cans?*

the idea for sth *The idea for the poem came from an experience he had while travelling.*

PHRASES

be full of ideas (also **be bursting with ideas**) (=have a lot of ideas) *The children were enthusiastic and full of ideas.*

have the right idea (=be planning or doing something that will probably have a good result) *He has the right idea, but how would it work in practice?*

2 an image in your mind or an understanding of something

ADJECTIVES

a clear/definite idea *John had a very clear idea of how he wanted the house to look.*

a rough/general idea *Can you give me a rough idea of the cost?*

a vague idea *She had only a vague idea of how much her husband earned.*

a fixed idea *I certainly had no fixed idea of what to do when I graduated from college.*

the very idea (=just the idea) *The very idea of eating meat made her feel ill.*

VERBS

have an idea/some idea/no idea *When she woke, she had no idea what time it was.*

give sb some/an idea *I wanted to give you a clearer idea of the business.*

get the idea (=begin to understand something or how to do something) *I'm not explaining it very well, but you get the idea.*

PREPOSITIONS

an idea of sth *We try to give the children an idea of what things were like in the past.*

PHRASES

not have the faintest/slightest/foggiest idea (=not know at all) *I haven't the faintest idea where he is.*

3 an opinion or belief

ADJECTIVES

an old/traditional idea *They have some very traditional ideas about women's role in society.*

a strange/funny idea *I had the strange idea that I could eat and not get fat.*

a false/mistaken idea *He thought it would be easy to do, but he soon realised that this idea was mistaken.*

strong ideas *Parents have strong ideas about what their children should and should not eat.*

VERBS

have an idea *My mother had the idea that being in the cold air was good for you.*

express an idea *Students are taught how to express their ideas clearly.*

support an idea *The statistics supported the idea of a link between smoking and cancer.*

reinforce an idea (=make someone believe it more strongly) *These TV programmes reinforce the idea that architects only design spectacular buildings.*

challenge an idea (=say or show that it might be wrong) *She challenged the idea that housework is women's work.*

PREPOSITIONS

ideas about/on sth *People have funny ideas about computers.*

PHRASES

get/have the wrong idea (=think that something is true when it is not) *You seem to have got the wrong idea about me.*

ideal

a principle about what is morally right, or a perfect standard that you hope to achieve

ADJECTIVES

a high ideal (also **a lofty ideal** formal): *Most politicians start out with high ideals about changing the world.*

a noble ideal (=good and impressive) *A united and peaceful country remains a legitimate and noble ideal.*

a romantic ideal *Paul gave up his romantic ideal of love at the age of nineteen.*

political ideals *Are you willing to fight for your political ideals?*

democratic/socialist/liberal ideals *The authorities put her in prison, but she refused to abandon her democratic ideals.*

revolutionary ideals *He still believed in the revolutionary ideals of equality and justice.*

VERBS

believe in an ideal *We believe in the ideal of justice for all.*

be committed to an ideal (=believe in it strongly) *Everyone in the party is committed to the same ideals.*

meet/live up to your ideals (=reach the standard of your ideals) *We still have not met our ideal of liberty for all.*

fall short of your ideals (=not be as good as you think something should be) *In appearance, she fell somewhat short of his ideals.*

be true to your ideals (=behave in the way that you believe is right) *Stick to your principles and be true to your ideals.*

cling to your ideals (=continue to believe them even when real life seems very different) *He still clings to ideals of loyalty and friendship.*

abandon your ideals (=stop believing in them) *Have these young people abandoned the ideals of the Civil Rights Movement?*

betray your ideals (=do something that is not acceptable according to them) *He refused to betray his socialist ideals.*

identical Ac adj

exactly the same, or very similar

VERBS

look/sound identical *The phones look identical and it is difficult to tell them apart.*

ADVERBS

completely/absolutely identical *The cells are completely identical in all respects.*

almost/nearly/virtually/practically identical *Last week, two different groups of scientists presented virtually identical results.*

identical + NOUNS

an identical twin *Identical twins share the same genes.*

an identical copy *Cloning is a process where an identical copy of an original organism or thing can be created.*

PREPOSITIONS

identical to sth *His laptop is identical to mine.*

identical in size/shape/appearance *The boxes are identical in size.*

identity Ac n

someone's identity is their name or who they are

ADJECTIVES

sb's real/true identity *The true identity of the author was not revealed until 100 years later.*

a new/different identity *He avoided arrest by adopting a new identity.*

a false identity (=when someone pretends to be another person) *He used a fake passport to assume a false identity.*

VERBS

find out/discover sb's identity *The police have yet to discover the victim's identity.*

hide/conceal sb's identity *She used a false name to conceal her identity.*

protect sb's identity (=make sure no one finds

out who someone is) *Journalists frequently protect the identity of their sources.*

reveal/disclose sb's identity (=show or say who a person is) *The company did not reveal the identity of the prospective buyer.*

steal sb's identity (=pretend to be another person) *Someone had stolen my identity and taken money out of my bank account.*

prove your identity *I have lost all my documents so I can't prove my identity.*

identity + NOUNS

identity card/papers/documents

(=documents that show who you are) *Each member of staff is issued with an identity card.*

identity theft/fraud (=the crime of stealing another person's personal details in order to pretend to be that person) *Identity theft is becoming more and more common because of the internet.*

PHRASES

proof of identity (=something that proves you are who you say you are) *You will need proof of identity, such as a driving licence.*

a case of mistaken identity (=when people think that someone is a different person) *When he was arrested, he said it was a case of mistaken identity.*

idiom n THESAURUS phrase

ignite v THESAURUS burn¹ (2)

ignorance Ac n

lack of knowledge or information about something

ADJECTIVES

complete/total/sheer ignorance *Her comments were based on total ignorance.*

widespread ignorance (=among many people) *There is widespread ignorance about where our food comes from.*

general/public ignorance *Many people are unaware that they have diabetes because of public ignorance about the disease.*

blissful ignorance (=happy because you do not know about something) *Isabel remained in blissful ignorance of her husband's affair.*

VERBS

show/display/demonstrate ignorance *His remarks showed a complete ignorance about politics.*

reveal/betray your ignorance *I kept quiet, because I didn't want to reveal my ignorance.*

admit your ignorance *He was too embarrassed to admit his ignorance.*

plead/claim ignorance (=say you have no knowledge of something and you cannot be blamed) *The children pleaded ignorance when I asked where the chocolate had gone.*

PREPOSITIONS

ignorance of sth *Ignorance of the law is no excuse.*

ignorance about sth *Fear was made worse by ignorance about how the disease spread.*

ignorance among sb *There is much ignorance among the public about these issues.*

PHRASES

the level of ignorance *I am always surprised at the level of ignorance about scientific matters.*

ignorant **Ac** *adj*

not knowing facts or information that you ought to know

ADVERBS

totally/completely/wholly ignorant *He is totally ignorant of the facts.*

blissfully ignorant (=happy because you do not know about something unpleasant) *Many people remain blissfully ignorant about the dangers of too much sun.*

largely ignorant (=ignorant about most of something) *Her mother was largely ignorant of the situation.*

woefully/grossly ignorant *disapproving* (=used when you are very shocked that someone does not know about something) *People are woefully ignorant of other cultures.*

wilfully ignorant *disapproving* (=deliberately not trying to find out about something) *Politicians seem wilfully ignorant about the effects of the war on ordinary people's lives.*

VERBS

remain ignorant *There are still many people who remain ignorant of their rights.*

keep sb ignorant *Anna had been kept ignorant about her father's poor health.*

PREPOSITIONS

ignorant of/about sth *As a city girl, I was completely ignorant about country life.*

ignore **Ac** *v*

1 to not consider or obey something because you do not think it is important

ADVERBS

completely/totally ignore sth *Their evidence was completely ignored at the trial.*

deliberately/wilfully ignore sth *The company deliberately ignored the laws about dumping waste.*

blatantly ignore sth (=deliberately ignore something in a shocking way that shows you do not care) *Some motorists blatantly ignore the speed limits.*

blithely ignore sth (=not take any notice of something in a way that seems rather careless) *The government blithely ignored the facts about global warming.*

routinely/systematically/consistently ignore sth (=often ignore something- used when you disapprove of this) *Regulations about food safety are routinely ignored in some restaurants.*

NOUNS

ignore sb's advice *He ignored his doctor's advice and continued working.*

ignore a warning *Many people ignore warnings about the dangers of sunbathing.*

ignore the evidence *We cannot ignore the evidence about climate change.*

ignore the problem/issue *We cannot ignore the problem of homelessness.*

ignore the fact that... *It is impossible to ignore the fact that traffic congestion is getting worse.*

ignore a law/rule *Many employers are choosing to ignore the laws about maximum working hours.*

ignore a sign *Cyclists often just ignore road signs and go down streets the wrong way.*

ignore sb's wishes *The council has completely ignored the wishes of local residents.*

VERBS

choose to/decide to ignore sth *Some people have chosen to ignore their doctor's advice.*

tend to ignore sth *Such advice tends to be ignored.*

continue to ignore sth *The country continues to ignore international laws on human rights.*

PHRASES

sth is impossible to ignore *The problem is now so serious that it is impossible to ignore.*

sb cannot afford to ignore sth (=you must not ignore it, because there will be very serious problems) *The government cannot afford to ignore the increase in unemployment.*

2 to pretend not to notice or hear someone or something

ADVERBS

completely/totally ignore *I said hello but he completely ignored me.*

virtually ignore *She virtually ignored me.*

simply ignore *The troops either didn't hear, or simply ignored, the call.*

deliberately ignore *The children were deliberately ignoring me.*

studiously/pointedly ignore (=very deliberately) *He studiously ignored her question.*

politely ignore *Unpleasant questions are politely ignored.*

VERBS

choose/decide to ignore sth *Barker chose to ignore her comments.*

try to ignore sth *She tried to ignore the sound of his crying.*

ill *adj*

suffering from a disease or not feeling well

Grammar

You do not usually use **ill** before a noun, unless it has an adverb in front of it.

VERBS

feel ill *I've been feeling ill since I woke up this morning.*

look ill *He looked rather ill when I saw him.*

become ill (also **get ill** informal): *She became ill after eating oysters.*

fall ill formal (=become ill) *Louise fell ill while she was on holiday.*

be taken ill (=become ill suddenly) *Henry was suddenly taken ill and had to go to the hospital.*

make sb ill *I think it was the heat that made me ill.*

ADVERBS

seriously ill (=very ill) *Any seriously ill patients are usually sent to a state hospital.*

gravely ill formal (=extremely ill) *She went to visit her grandfather, who was gravely ill.*

critically/desperately/dangerously ill (=so ill that you might die) *He got news that his mother was critically ill in hospital.*

terminally ill (=with a very serious illness that you will die from) *He is terminally ill with cancer.*

chronically ill (=with a long-term illness that cannot be cured and will not get better) *Chronically ill patients often find it difficult to get travel insurance.*

mentally ill (=with an illness of your mind) *Caring for mentally ill people can be challenging.*

PREPOSITIONS

ill with flu/pneumonia/cancer etc *He became ill with pneumonia.*

Other ways of saying that someone is ill

You can say that someone is **sick**, especially in American English. You can also use **unwell**, which is formal and is not used before a noun.

illegal **Ac** adj not allowed by the law

NOUNS

an illegal weapon *He was charged with carrying an illegal weapon.*

illegal drugs *She was found guilty of possession of illegal drugs.*

an illegal substance (=an illegal drug) *Customs officials found an illegal substance in Smith's luggage.*

illegal parking/gambling/hunting etc *The fines for illegal parking are likely to increase.*

illegal activities *They were suspected of being involved in illegal activities.*

illegal use of sth *There has been an increase in the illegal use of guns.*

illegal possession of sth *Illegal possession of a weapon is punishable by a prison sentence.*

an illegal immigrant (=someone who enters a country illegally) *An estimated seven million illegal immigrants are brought into Europe each year.*

ADVERBS

highly illegal (=completely illegal) *He was driving at a speed which was highly illegal.*

completely/totally illegal *The deal was completely illegal.*

strictly illegal (=completely illegal - used for emphasis) *Copying music files is strictly illegal.*

technically illegal (=according to the exact details of a law) *This type of boxing, although technically illegal, remained popular until the 1880s.*

VERBS

become illegal *The drug did not become illegal until the 1970s.*

make sth illegal *She was involved in the campaign to make hunting illegal.*

declare sth illegal *The strike was declared illegal on July 7th.*

do something/anything illegal *I don't know why they're complaining - we're not doing anything illegal.*

PHRASES

it is illegal to do sth *It is illegal to sell tobacco products to anyone under the age of 16.*

THESAURUS: illegal**unlawful**

killing | violence | arrest | detention | act | means | strike

illegal. **Unlawful** is more formal than **illegal**. It is used especially when a particular action is considered to be illegal, although there are some situations where such actions can be legal:

The soldiers were found guilty of the unlawful killing of an unarmed civilian. | Anyone who has been a victim of unlawful arrest has the right to compensation. | The money was obtained by unlawful means. | The judges said that the strike was unlawful.

illicit

drug | substance | alcohol | activity | trade | use | affair

illicit drugs, goods, or activities are illegal and are used or done secretly:

Illicit drugs are sometimes used by athletes to help improve their performance. | Some government officials were involved in illicit activities. | The poet had an illicit affair with his half-sister.

Illicit is usually used before a noun.

illegitimate *formal***use | way**

using your power or authority in a way that is not allowed or not acceptable according to rules or agreements:

*The report warns about the illegitimate use of power by the US and other countries. | He **declared** that the Council and its decisions were **illegitimate**.*

unconstitutional

not allowed by a country's constitution (=the set of rules and principles by which a country is governed):

*The court ruled that the new law was **unconstitutional**. | Critics say that the president's decision was **unconstitutional**.*

Unconstitutional is not usually used before a noun.

You can also say that an action is **against the law**: *Driving a car without insurance is **against the law**.*

ANTONYMS **illegal** → **legal** (2)

illness *n*

something wrong with your health, or the state of being ill

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + illness

a serious/severe illness *His illness is more severe than the doctors first thought.*

a minor illness *He suffered a succession of minor illnesses.*

a terminal illness (=causing death eventually, and not possible to cure) *At that point the illness was thought to be terminal.*

a fatal illness (=causing death quite quickly) *She developed a fatal illness.*

an incurable illness (=not possible to cure) *The film tells the sad story of a young boy with an incurable illness.*

a life-threatening illness (=likely to cause death) *Doctors say that his illness isn't life-threatening.*

a long/short illness *She nursed him through his long illness.*

a childhood illness *Measles is a common childhood illness.*

mental/psychiatric illness *The man who attacked the painting had a history of mental illness.*

a chronic illness (=that lasts a long time, and cannot be cured) *Diabetes is a chronic illness.*

VERBS

have an illness *When did you first find out that you had the illness?*

suffer from an illness *She suffers from a rare illness.*

get/develop an illness *She developed the illness when she was in her 50s.*

contract an illness *formal* (=get an illness by catching it from another person) *He contracted the illness while he was working abroad.*

recover from an illness *It took several months for him to recover from his illness.*

die of/from an illness *His father had died of a mysterious illness.*

treat an illness *No one had any idea how to treat his illness.*

cure an illness *This isn't an illness that can be cured.*

prevent illness *Vaccines have been successful in preventing illness.*

cause/lead to illness *Inadequate hygiene can lead to illness.*

be diagnosed with an illness (=be found by doctors to have an illness) *Her husband had just been diagnosed with a terminal illness.*

PHRASES

the symptoms of an illness *Symptoms of the illness include vomiting and severe headaches.*

a stage of an illness *He was in the last stage of a terminal illness.*

illusion *n*

an idea about something that is not really true

PHRASES

be under an illusion (=believe something that is not true) *Some people are under the illusion that smoking is a harmless activity.*

have no illusions about sth (=used when you know that something is difficult) *She had no illusions about how difficult the job would be.*

sth is just an illusion *He says that for him, love is just an illusion.*

ADJECTIVES

a dangerous illusion *The idea that we can all stay young forever is a dangerous illusion.*

a grand illusion *Leaders sometimes have grand illusions about curing all the world's problems.*

a romantic illusion *People have all kinds of romantic illusions about life in the country, but the reality is very different.*

an optical/visual illusion (=an image or view that tricks your eyes into seeing something that is not there) *He thought he could see water in the distance, but it was just an optical illusion caused by the heat.*

VERBS

create/give an illusion *The white walls create the illusion of space.*

shatter/destroy/dispel an illusion *Their illusions of creating a perfect society were completely shattered.*

suffer from an illusion *Some people suffer from the illusion that money will solve all their problems.*

maintain an illusion *His parents tried to maintain the illusion that they were all one big happy family.*

foster an illusion (=encourage people to believe something that is not really true) *He believes that doctors have fostered the illusion of miracle cures.*

THESAURUS: illusion

false, misleading, trumped-up, myth, illusion, misconception, delusion, fallacy → **untrue**

image Ac n

1 the way a person, organization etc seems to the public

ADJECTIVES

a good/positive image *It is important to present a positive image of yourself at the interview.*

a bad/negative/poor image *It's difficult to explain why the industry has such a bad image.*

a glamorous image *These parties were part of Hollywood's glamorous image.*

a wholesome/clean-cut image (=morally good and never doing anything bad) *The recent scandal has damaged his clean-cut image.*

the traditional image of sth *They want to improve the traditional image of English food.*

sb's/sth's public image *Her public image does not reflect the way she behaves in private.*

the popular image of sb/sth (=that many people have) *The popular image of him as a quiet shy man is not entirely accurate.*

sth's corporate image (=a company's image) *The bank wanted to improve its corporate image.*

VERBS

have an image *In those days cigarettes had a rather glamorous image.*

give (sb) an image *You need to choose clothes that give the right image.*

create an image *The company is trying to create an image of quality and reliability.*

present/project/promote an image *He presented an image of himself as an energetic young leader.*

cultivate an image (=try to develop a particular image) *He was trying to cultivate an image of himself as an intellectual.*

improve/enhance sb's/sth's image *The casino industry was keen to improve its image.*

damage sb's/sth's image *Has this scandal damaged the company's image?*

tarnish sb's/sth's image (=damage it slightly) *His behaviour has tarnished the image of the sport.*

clean up your image (=improve your image after it has been damaged) *The pop star promised to clean up his image after he was released from prison.*

lose/shed an image (=get rid of it) *The party struggled to lose its image of being somewhat old-fashioned.*

THESAURUS: image

image, name, standing, prestige, stature → **reputation**

2 a picture that you see or that you have in your mind

ADJECTIVES

a visual image *Sounds and visual images are stored on the disk.*

a mental image *She had a sudden mental image of herself walking out onto the stage.*

a photographic/television image *His paintings are so detailed they look like photographic images.*

a powerful image *The man's face as he is shot is a powerful image.*

a clear image *I have a very clear image of how Miami looked that day.*

a vivid image (=very clear) *A series of vivid images came into her mind.*

disturbing/horrifying/horrific images *We were warned that the show has some disturbing images in it.*

VERBS

have an image (=have it in your mind) *She had an image of the bunch of flowers lying on the path.*

conjure up an image (=make you have it in your mind) *The word 'breakfast' conjures up the image of a steaming cup of coffee.*

imaginary adj

not real, but produced from pictures or ideas in your mind

imaginary + NOUNS

an imaginary world *In her books, she creates an imaginary world of magicians and wizards.*

an imaginary line *The equator is an imaginary line around the middle of the earth.*

an imaginary creature *The unicorn is an imaginary creature.*

an imaginary friend *Many young children have an imaginary friend.*

an imaginary conversation *She sat in the bedroom having imaginary conversations with her teacher.*

ADVERBS

completely/purely/wholly/entirely imaginary *The story was purely imaginary.*

imagination n

the ability to form pictures or ideas in your mind

ADJECTIVES

a vivid/fertile/lively imagination (=an ability to think of a lot of strange ideas and things)

that could happen) Carroll had a very vivid imagination, as can be seen in books like 'Alice's Adventures in Wonderland'.

a good imagination If you want to be a writer, you need to have a good imagination.

great imagination (=a lot of imagination) His paintings show great imagination.

creative imagination Reading depends greatly on the creative imagination of the reader.

an overactive/fevered imagination (=a mind that imagines strange things that are not real – used especially when something seems crazy) These stories are the product of an overactive imagination.

VERBS

use your imagination Musicians need to use their imagination as well as their technical skills.

have (an) imagination Her poems show that she has a lot of imagination.

show/display imagination His latest paintings display a vivid imagination.

stimulate sb's imagination (=make someone use their imagination) The aim of the exhibition is to stimulate people's imagination.

sth takes imagination It doesn't take much imagination to guess what would happen.

PHRASES

be a figment of sb's imagination (=be something that someone imagines, not something real) Were the lights in the sky real, or just a figment of my imagination?

be a product of sb's imagination (=be something that is not real or true) Professor Dawkins believes that religion is a product of the human imagination.

let your imagination run wild/run riot (=think of many strange or wonderful things) When he writes songs, he lets his imagination run riot.

be full of imagination Her stories are full of imagination.

Lack imagination

If you say that someone's work **lacks imagination** or shows **a lack of imagination**, you mean that there is nothing new or original about it: A lot of today's pop music seems to **lack imagination**.

imagine

to form a picture or idea in your mind about what something could be like

VERBS

can/can't imagine Joe couldn't imagine life without his wife.

ADVERBS

can easily imagine (also **can well imagine**) I can easily imagine how frightening the accident must have been.

can hardly/scarcely imagine (=find it difficult to imagine) She could scarcely imagine what living in such conditions would be like.

fondly imagine (=believe something because you want it to be true, when it is not true) He had fondly imagined that she was in love with him.

PHRASES

sth is difficult/hard to imagine It is difficult to imagine being in a prison – it must be horrible.

sth is easy to imagine It was easy to imagine his father's reaction.

be bigger/smaller/worse etc than sb

imagined The interview was much worse than I had imagined.

be what/how sb imagined (=be what or how you thought something would be like) The job was not what he imagined.

sb is imagining things (=they think something is true when it is not true) Am I imagining things or did I see you in town earlier?

let us imagine... (=used to encourage someone to think about a possibility) Let's imagine you could do any job in the world – what would you do?

imbalance

a situation in which there is not an equal balance between two things

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + imbalance

a serious/dangerous imbalance There is a serious imbalance between the rich and the poor in the world.

a great/huge/major imbalance There is a great imbalance between government spending on roads and public transport.

a growing/increasing imbalance The increasing imbalance of wealth in the global economy is becoming a problem.

a chemical imbalance Some mental illnesses are caused by a chemical imbalance in the brain.

a power imbalance A power imbalance exists between the north and the south of the country.

VERBS

there is an imbalance/an imbalance exists At the higher levels of management, there's definitely an imbalance between the number of men and women.

cause/create an imbalance Human activity has caused an imbalance in the climate system.

correct/redress/counteract the imbalance (=make something more balanced) Eighty per cent of our wealth belongs to five per cent of the people, and we need to counteract this imbalance.

reduce the imbalance The president stressed the need to reduce the trade imbalance.

PREPOSITIONS

an imbalance between sth and sth The economy is failing because of the great imbalance between imports and exports.

an imbalance in sth *There is an imbalance in the country's population: for every seven women there are now only three men.*

imitation¹ *n*

something that is made to look like another thing, but is often not as good

ADJECTIVES

a cheap imitation *There are a lot of cheap imitations of the Swiss Army knife.*

a poor/pale imitation (=used when you are emphasizing that something is not nearly as good as another thing) *The new film is a pale imitation of the original movie.*

a good imitation *It's a remarkably good imitation of a real diamond.*

imitation + NOUNS

an imitation gun/weapon/firearm *He had used an imitation gun to rob the bank.*

an imitation diamond/stone *The diamonds were all imitation.*

imitation leather/wood/gold etc *The seats were imitation leather.*

imitation² *adj* **THESAURUS** artificial

immaculate *adj* **THESAURUS** clean¹ (1)

immense *adj* **THESAURUS** huge

immigrant **Ac** *n*

someone who enters another country to live there permanently

ADJECTIVES

European/African/Jewish etc immigrants *There has been a recent increase in the number of African immigrants.*

an illegal immigrant *Large numbers of illegal immigrants try to enter the country.*

a legal immigrant *720,000 legal immigrants were admitted to the United States in that year.*

a recent immigrant *The majority of workers at the factory are recent immigrants.*

a first-generation immigrant (=someone who came to a country as a child or adult) *Her parents were first-generation immigrants from Poland.*

a second-generation immigrant (=who was born in a country to parents who were immigrants) *The boys are second-generation immigrants who grew up speaking English.*

VERBS

welcome immigrants (=be pleased to accept them) *The US has always welcomed immigrants.*

immigrant + NOUNS

an immigrant family *A quarter of the school's students are from immigrant families.*

immigrant workers *Many immigrant workers live in poor areas of the city.*

an immigrant community/group *There are shops catering for various immigrant communities.*

an immigrant population *The immigrant population increased rapidly during the 1970s.*

PREPOSITIONS

immigrants from a country *His grandparents were immigrants from Mexico.*

immigrants to a country *Many immigrants to the United States are better educated than the average American.*

PHRASES

a wave/influx of immigrants (=a large number of them) *A new wave of immigrants arrived in the 1950s.*

a flood of immigrants *disapproving* (=a very large number that arrive at the same time - used especially when you think there are too many) *Some people are worried that there will be a flood of immigrants coming into their country.*

immigration *n*

the activity of entering another country in order to live there

ADJECTIVES

illegal immigration *The Coast Guard plays a critical role in fighting drug smuggling and illegal immigration.*

large-scale/mass immigration *Mass immigration helped to double the country's population.*

immigration + NOUNS

immigration policy *A large majority of Americans want to see the nation's immigration policy reformed.*

immigration controls/restrictions *The party is calling for immigration controls to be tightened.*

immigration law/rules/legislation *Under immigration law, foreign nationals have to register with the police once they arrive.*

the immigration issue *The immigration issue could greatly damage the party at the next general election.*

the immigration authorities/service *The journalists are being held by the immigration authorities, because they are suspected of entering the country illegally.*

sb's immigration papers *The police officer asked to see his immigration papers.*

sb's immigration status *Employers have a duty to check the immigration status of foreign workers before offering them a job.*

an immigration official/officer *Immigration officers stopped and arrested the man at JFK airport.*

the immigration minister *The immigration minister spoke about the government's plans to reduce immigration to more manageable levels.*

VERBS

control/limit/restrict immigration *The European Union has policies to control immigration from non-member countries.*

PREPOSITIONS

immigration from another country *When did immigration from Mexico to the US begin?*

PHRASES

a wave of immigration (=a sudden increase in the number of immigrants) *In the 1950s Britain experienced a wave of immigration from the West Indies.*

immoral *adj* **THESAURUS** **bad (4)**

impact [Ac] *n*

the effect or influence that an event, situation etc has on someone or something

ADJECTIVES

a big/great/profound impact *The internet has had a big impact on people's shopping habits.*

a huge/enormous/massive impact *Industry has made a huge impact on the environment we live in.*

a real impact *informal (=big)* *The film made a real impact on cinema audiences.*

a major/significant/strong impact (=important) *The war had a major impact on French domestic politics.*

little impact *New technologies have had little impact on the overall level of employment.*

a minimal/negligible/minor impact (=very small and not important) *The change in government had a minimal impact in rural areas of the country.*

a lasting impact (=one that lasts for a long time) *Karen made a lasting impact on everyone she met.*

the long-term/short-term impact (=over a long or short period) *Scientists are assessing the long-term impact of the floods.*

a negative/damaging impact (also **an adverse impact** *formal*): *The impact on the environment of a new airport would be negative.*

a positive impact *Cuts in interest rates should have a positive impact on spending.*

a disastrous/devastating impact (=very bad) *His leg injury had a disastrous impact on his footballing career.*

an immediate impact *The change in the law will have an immediate impact for consumers.*

the full impact of sth (=all the different effects) *It will take some time for the full impact of the disaster to be understood.*

the potential/likely impact *He's studying the potential impact of climate change.*

VERBS

have an impact *New technology has had a massive impact on our lives.*

make an impact *The product quickly made an impact on the market.*

feel the impact of sth *Many families are feeling the impact of rising food prices.*

assess/consider/examine the impact of sth *Further studies are needed to assess the impact of GM crops on the countryside.*

reduce/lessen/soften the impact (=make it less severe or unpleasant) *The chemical industry is looking at ways to reduce its impact on the environment.*

minimize the impact (=make it as little as possible) *We need to minimize the impact of tourism on the islands.*

increase the impact *Pictures and music will increase the impact of your presentation.*

PREPOSITIONS

an impact on sb/sth *We believe the smoking ban will have a massive impact on public health.*

impatience *n*

the feeling you have when you are annoyed because something has not happened or someone has not done something soon enough

ADJECTIVES

growing/mounting/increasing impatience *He listened to her explanation with growing impatience.*

VERBS

control your impatience (also **contain/curb your impatience** *formal*): *You must learn to control your impatience.*

hide your impatience *His mother was finding it increasingly difficult to hide her impatience.*

express/show/reveal impatience *He expressed his impatience at the delay.*

PREPOSITIONS

impatience at sth *He sighed with impatience at being made to wait.*

impatience with sb/sth *Sometimes Joe was unable to hide his impatience with his staff and started shouting at them.*

with impatience *She was waiting with impatience for her husband's return.*

impatient *adj*

annoyed because something has not happened, or wanting something to happen as soon as possible

VERBS

get/become/grow impatient *The band were over an hour late and the audience were starting to get impatient.*

seem/sound impatient *His voice was starting to sound impatient.*

ADVERBS

increasingly impatient *They are becoming increasingly impatient with the slow pace of change.*

PREPOSITIONS

impatient with sb *She was becoming impatient with her husband because she thought they would miss the plane.*

impatient with/at sth *There was no sign of the train and they were getting impatient at the delay.*

impatient for sth (=you want to have something soon) *He is impatient for news about the results of his test.*

If you feel **impatient** because you want something good to happen soon, you often say that you **can't wait** for it to happen:
I can't wait for the summer vacation. | She can't wait to see all her friends.

impetus *n*

an influence that makes something happen or makes someone or something more likely to be successful

ADJECTIVES

new/fresh impetus *The rise in oil prices has given fresh impetus to research into alternative forms of energy.*

further/added/extra impetus *We need to find a good team leader to give this project added impetus.*

the initial/original impetus *The initial impetus for the development of the railway came from plantation owners.*

the main impetus *The main impetus towards equal opportunity policies has come from female members of staff.*

a major/strong/great impetus *The construction of a power station will provide a major impetus for the local economy.*

real impetus *Shocking news reports gave real impetus to campaigns to protect children from abuse.*

the necessary impetus *Her earlier defeat could provide her with the necessary impetus to win this race.*

VERBS

give impetus to sth *We hope the new factory will give impetus to the local economy.*

provide impetus *The festival's success provided the impetus for the creation of the Southbank Centre.*

add impetus *The improvement in US-Soviet relations had added further impetus for a US policy revision.*

gain/receive impetus *The peace movement gained impetus after a civilian plane was attacked.*

lose impetus *The business began to lose its impetus.*

impetus comes from sth *The impetus to change a product may come from the customer.*

PREPOSITIONS

impetus for sth *The impetus for change must always come from within.*

the impetus behind sth *The impetus behind these cuts has been the need to reduce government spending.*

implication *Ac n*

1 a possible future effect or result of an action, event, decision etc

Grammar

Usually plural in this meaning.

ADJECTIVES

the financial/political/legal/social implications *Managers must be aware of the financial implications of their decisions.*

the possible/potential implications *He was worried about the possible implications of his illness.*

the wider implications (=affecting more people or society in general) *What are the wider implications of this change in the law?*

the practical implications *We discussed the practical implications of the decision.*

important/serious/profound implications *The results of the research could have important implications.*

major/huge implications (=very important or serious) *The lack of affordable housing has major implications for families in rural areas.*

far-reaching implications (=affecting a lot of things in an important way) *This trial could have far-reaching implications for the American justice system.*

the full implications (=all the different effects) *The full implications of the decision will become clear over the next few weeks.*

long-term implications *Eating a poor diet can have long-term health implications.*

VERBS

have implications *This is an environmental disaster which will have implications for more than one country.*

understand/realize/grasp the implications *The government has been slow to grasp the implications of the current teacher shortage.*

consider/assess the implications *Before you make your final decision, you should consider the implications carefully.*

study/examine the implications *He has studied the implications of recent technical innovations.*

discuss the implications *The paper discusses the implications of the agreement.*

PREPOSITIONS

the implications of sth *What are the implications of these proposals?*

implications for sth *This election has profound implications for the future of our democracy.*

2 something that you say in a way that is not direct

ADJECTIVES

a clear/obvious implication *There was a clear implication in what he said that I was lying.*

a strong implication *Police statements carried the strong implication that the man was guilty.*

VERBS

have/carry an implication *The word 'know-all' usually carries implications of disapproval.*

resent an implication (=be annoyed by it) *He resented the implication that he wasn't doing enough to help.*

PREPOSITIONS

by implication *The article examines the processes by which English, and by implication, any language, is learned.*

imply [Ac] v

to suggest that something is true, without saying this directly

ADVERBS

strongly imply sth *He strongly implied that he would like to leave.*

clearly imply sth *In the interview, she clearly implies that the minister lied.*

wrongly/falsely imply sth *The newspaper wrongly implied that he had been addicted to drugs.*

subtly imply sth (=in a very indirect way) *They subtly implied that she was not good enough to do the job.*

NOUNS

an implied criticism *He was a little hurt by her implied criticism.*

an implied threat *There seemed to be an implied threat that the company would close the factory if the workers went on strike.*

PHRASES

seem to imply sth *The advertisement seems to imply that taking vitamin tablets can prevent any illness.*

do/did not mean to imply sth *I'm sorry, I didn't mean to imply that it was your fault.*

be taken to imply sth (=be understood to imply something) *This statement should not be taken to imply that there will be no job cuts.*

as the name implies *The Cornmarket, as the name implies, was once the place where corn was bought and sold.*

import n

a product that is brought from one country into another so that it can be sold there, or the business of doing this

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + import

Chinese/German etc imports *Japanese imports rose by 5% last year.*

foreign imports *Foreign imports into Britain continued to grow.*

cheap imports *Farmers are complaining about cheap imports flooding the market.*

oil/coal/food etc imports *Japan is dependent on oil imports for almost all its basic energy needs.*

agricultural imports *The country relies heavily on agricultural imports.*

luxury imports *Higher duties were placed on luxury imports.*

VERBS

imports increase/rise/grow *Imports increased by 13 percent last year.*

imports fall/drop *Imports of consumer goods fell sharply in December.*

ban imports (=officially order them to stop) *The organization wants the government to ban imports of exotic birds.*

control/restrict imports *The scheme aims to control imports of cheap goods.*

reduce/cut imports *New investment will reduce imports and save jobs.*

import + NOUNS

an import ban *The US imposed an import ban on several types of fish.*

import restrictions/controls *Strict import controls were introduced.*

import quotas (=limits on the number of imports allowed) *Import quotas restrict the number of foreign cars which can be sold in the country.*

import taxes/duties/tariffs *Import duty on cigarettes has increased by 5%.*

PREPOSITIONS

the import of sth *The import of weapons and explosives is forbidden.*

ANTONYMS import → export

importance n

the quality of being important

Grammar

Importance is often used in the phrase **be of ... importance**.

ADJECTIVES

great/considerable/enormous importance *Their friendship was of great importance to her.*

vital/crucial/critical importance (=very great) *This research is of vital importance.*

overriding importance (=greater than for anything else) *The question that will be of overriding importance is how you are going to finance your training.*

equal importance *When applying for a job, qualifications and experience are often of equal importance.*

particular importance *Tourism has particular importance in some regions.*

relative importance (=compared to other

things) Discuss the relative importance of the factors affecting people's health.

growing/increasing importance This is evidence of the growing importance of the internet as a source of information.

international/national/local importance Crime is an issue of national importance.

economic/political importance The role of the police has great political importance.

VERBS

have importance This is an issue that has importance for all of us.

attach importance to sth (=think it is important) She attached great importance to loyalty.

emphasize/stress the importance of sth I'd like to emphasize the importance of reading exam questions carefully.

exaggerate/overestimate the importance of sth It is hard to exaggerate the importance of this development.

recognize/realize the importance of sth We all recognize the importance of his work.

underestimate the importance of sth Do not underestimate the importance of good illustrations.

assume/take on importance (=become important) The town assumed importance once it was connected to the rail system.

lose its importance The island lost its importance when trade routes changed.

grow/increase in importance (=become more important) The country's tourism industry has grown in importance.

decline in importance (=become less important) The party declined in importance as new parties were formed.

PREPOSITIONS

the importance of sth The article stresses the importance of regular exercise.

importance to sb These records are of importance to local historians.

PHRASES

a sense/feeling of importance (=a feeling that you are an important person) Sitting behind the big desk gave her a feeling of importance.

matters of importance He consulted Lansdowne on all matters of importance.

be of little/no importance Where the money came from is of no importance.

be of the utmost importance/be of paramount importance (=be extremely important) It is of the utmost importance that this matter is kept confidential.

be of secondary importance (=be less important than another thing) It is how confidently you speak that matters; what you say is of secondary importance.

important adj

1 having a big effect or influence on people's lives, or on what happens in the future

NOUNS

an important event/occasion The Civil War was the single most important event in American history.

an important moment/time/day Today is a very important day for her – she's getting married.

an important decision Choosing a home is one of the most important decisions of your life.

an important meeting He has an important business meeting.

an important point/question/issue The important point to remember is that language is constantly changing.

an important part/feature/aspect Music is an important part of the life of the community.

an important role/contribution Agriculture still has an important role in the country's economy.

an important factor Price is always an important factor.

an important source of sth Vegetables are an important source of vitamin C.

the (most) important thing spoken: You're safe – that's the most important thing.

PREPOSITIONS

be important to sb/sth My relationship with God is very important to me.

be important for sth Regular exercise is important for health.

ADVERBS

extremely/highly important The right to privacy is a highly important issue.

tremendously/incredibly/hugely important Radio still plays an incredibly important part in people's lives.

vitaly/crucially/critically important (=extremely important for someone or something to succeed) It is vitally important for buyers to have accurate and independent information.

particularly/especially important Training is particularly important for young people who've never had a job.

increasingly important China now has an increasingly important role in world affairs.

equally important The father's role is equally important.

strategically important (=important because of its position) Turkey is strategically important, because of its border with Iran, Iraq, and Syria.

VERBS

become important Combining a career with a family is becoming important to more and more women.

PHRASES

it is important (that)... It is important that the patient understands the risks.

most important of all *Most important of all, try to get as much information as you can about the universities you are considering going to.*

THESAURUS: important

big
day | occasion | moment | decision | game | problem | issue | mistake
important or serious:

The couple have spent months getting ready for the big day. | Choosing the right course is a big decision. | Crime is a big problem.

significant
difference | change | increase | reduction | improvement | progress | number | proportion | effect | impact | role | contribution
important enough to be noticeable or have a big effect. You often use **significant** about things that have been measured:

There is no significant difference between the two groups. | The researchers found significant changes in the level of carbon in the atmosphere. | There have been a significant number of cases of the disease in Canada. | The results are not statistically significant.

major
problem | issue | part | change | cause | factor | reason | contribution | source
one of the most important or serious things:
Homelessness continues to be a major problem. | Selling goods on the internet is now a major part of their business. | Smoking is a major cause of heart disease. | Oil is a major source of income for the government.

Major is always used before a noun.

notable *formal*
exception | feature | achievement | success | victory | example
important or interesting and deserving your attention:
Apart from one or two notable exceptions, there are very few women in positions of power. | The Theory of Evolution was his most notable achievement. | The film is notable for its use of special effects.

very important or extremely important

key
part | area | element | role | factor | point | issue | question | objective
extremely important:
Listening is a key part of communication. | Wheeler had a key role in the development of the atom bomb. | Training is a key factor in the team's success. | Cost is naturally a key issue. | One of their key objectives is to reduce the amount of waste. | Timing is key.

essential
part | element | aspect | feature | role | supplies

extremely important, because something cannot exist without it, or you cannot do something without it:
Protein is an essential part of a healthy diet. | The US is sending essential supplies of food and medicine to the victims of the earthquake. | Oxygen is essential for life.

vital
part | element | role | information | evidence | clue | source | resources
extremely important, because something cannot exist without it, or you cannot do something without it:
Communication is a vital part of our business. | Forests play a vital role in reducing the impact of climate change. | His evidence was vital to the case.

Vital or essential?
These words basically mean the same. **Essential** sounds more neutral: *Calcium is essential for healthy bones.* **Vital** sounds stronger and more urgent: *It is vital that he gets the money today.*

crucial/critical
role | part | factor | time | moment | stage | question | issue
extremely important, because without it there could be serious problems. You also use **crucial/critical** about times and questions that are extremely important:
Oil plays a crucial role in the country's economy. | He was worried about losing his voice at a crucial moment in front of an audience. | The critical question is whether this trend is likely to continue.

paramount *formal*
consideration | concern
more important than anything else, so that you must consider it when deciding what to do:
The safety of the child must be the court's paramount consideration (=the thing that most affects their decision). | The needs of the students are paramount.

In more formal English, if something is very important, you can say it is **of great/considerable importance**: *Tourism is of great importance to the local economy.* If something is extremely important, you can say that it is **of major/vital/crucial/paramount importance**: *Customer loyalty is of paramount importance to us.*

important in history

historic
moment | event | agreement | opportunity | victory
very important and having a great effect on future events:

Today is a historic moment for our country. | The politicians must seize this historic opportunity for peace.

landmark

decision | **judgment** | **ruling** | **case** | **study** | **report** | **agreement** | **deal** | **victory** | **achievement** | **event** | **visit**

very important and having a great effect on future events, or on the future development of something:

In a landmark decision, the Supreme Court said that students of all races should be able to attend the college. | They published a landmark study which showed that aspirin could reduce the risk of heart disease.

Landmark is often used as a noun: The case was **a landmark** for women's rights (=an important event which had a great effect on the development of women's rights).

momentous *formal*

event | **decision** | **occasion** | **change** | **consequences** | **victory** | **year**

extremely important and having a very great effect on the future. **Momentous** sounds even more important than **historic** or **landmark**:

Momentous events were taking place across the Arab World. | This was to be a momentous decision, although he did not know it at the time. | The party won a momentous victory.

ANTONYMS **important** → **unimportant**

2 an important person, organization, or country has a lot of power or influence

NOUNS

an important person/man/woman He is a very important man and he does not like to be kept waiting.

an important customer/client Japan Airlines is one of our most important customers.

an important guest/visitor We are expecting some important visitors tomorrow.

an important friend/ally Turkey is an important ally and a good friend of the United States.

THESAURUS: important

top

man | **woman** | **executive** | **scientist** | **expert** | **job**

most important. **Top** sounds rather informal and is often used in news reports:

He is the party's top man in the Senate. | In China, over 30 per cent of top executives are women. | Who is the **top dog** around here? (=the most important person - an informal use)

key

player | **member** | **personnel**

a key person is very important to the success of a group or organization:

The team will be without one of their key players. | She is a key member of the laboratory staff, with over 28 years' experience.

leading

figure | **member** | **expert** | **authority** | **scientist** | **intellectual** | **writer** | **artist** | **opponent**

important and well respected:

His uncle was a leading member of the Egyptian Communist Party. | Professor Cole is one of the country's leading authorities on the subject (=he or she knows more about it than anyone). | Gandhi **played a leading role** in India's struggle for independence.

influential

figure | **member** | **writer** | **artist** | **newspaper** | **magazine** | **journal**

important and having a lot of influence:

She worked with some of Hollywood's most influential figures (=influential people). | Another influential writer of the period was William Faulkner. | Stieglitz was the editor of the **highly influential** journal 'Camera Work'.

prominent

figure | **member** | **businessman** | **businesswoman** | **activist**

important and well known:

The letter was signed by 34 prominent figures from the US entertainment industry. | Cox was a prominent member of the Campaign for Nuclear Disarmament.

valued

member | **customer**

very important to a company, team, or organization:

Her pleasant personality and hard work made her a valued member of staff. | As one of our most valued customers, we would be delighted to offer you our Gold Credit Card.

imposing *adj* **THESAURUS** → **impressive**

impossible *adj*

something that is impossible cannot happen or be done

ADVERBS

absolutely impossible It is absolutely impossible to predict the outcome of the election.

almost/nearly impossible He thought that winning would be almost impossible.

virtually/practically impossible (=almost impossible) Getting tickets for the concert is practically impossible.

well-nigh impossible *formal* (=almost impossible) *It would be well-nigh impossible to police the whole coastline.*

physically impossible *It was physically impossible for him to climb over the wall.*

VERBS

seem impossible *Finding time to exercise can seem impossible when you have a demanding job.*

prove impossible (=be impossible because you have tried but not succeeded) *It proved impossible for the two sides to reach an agreement.*

become impossible *As it became darker, it became impossible for players to see the ball.*

find sth impossible *He found it impossible to sleep because of the heat.*

make sth impossible (also **render sth impossible** *formal*): *The loud music made conversation impossible.*

NOUNS

an impossible job/task *He faced the near impossible task of paying back huge debts.*

an impossible feat (=something that is impossible to do) *She achieved the seemingly impossible feat of breaking the world record.*

an impossible dream (=something you want, but will never happen) *For a small club, winning the cup final will always be an impossible dream.*

PREPOSITIONS

impossible for sb *Lifting such a heavy object would be impossible for anyone.*

PHRASES

it is impossible to do sth *It is impossible to know if this story is true.*

ANTONYMS

impossible → **possible**

impression *n*

the opinion or feeling you have about someone or something because of the way they seem

ADJECTIVES

a good/favourable/positive impression *She wanted to make a good impression on her first day at college.*

the right impression *It is important to create the right impression for customers.*

a bad/unfavourable/negative impression *They say that the film gives people a negative impression of their religion.*

the wrong impression/a misleading impression *The advertisement gives a misleading impression of the product.*

a false/mistaken impression *He had the mistaken impression that Julia was married.*

sb's first/initial/immediate impression *My first impression was that he was rather arrogant.*

the overall/general impression *The general impression was of a well-run company.*

a strong/deep/big/great impression (=one that someone feels very strongly) *Vanessa made a strong impression on me the first time I met her.*

a clear/vivid impression *He had the clear impression that most people were in favour of the idea.*

the distinct impression (=used when something seems very clear to you) *We were left with the distinct impression that the contract was ours if we wanted it.*

the overwhelming/overriding impression (=an impression that is stronger than all others) *The overwhelming impression after the meeting was one of optimism.*

a lasting impression (=one that someone remembers for a long time) *Christina's performance had made a lasting impression on the audience.*

an indelible impression *formal* (=lasting forever and impossible to change) *Alan's wartime experiences had left an indelible impression on him.*

a vague impression (=not very clear) *Dave only had a vague impression of the man who had attacked him.*

sb's personal impression *My personal impression is that the new government has done a good job.*

VERBS

make an impression on sb *His father made a big impression on him when he was young.*

have/leave an impression on sb (=make an impression on someone) *The film left a lasting impression on me.*

give sb an impression/leave sb with an impression *The company gave the impression that they were interested in publishing her work.*

create an impression *Arriving late won't create a very good impression at an interview.*

get an impression (also **gain an impression** *formal*): *What sort of impression did you get of the city?*

form an impression *The coach had formed a very favourable impression of him.*

correct an impression *I'd like to correct a false impression I may have given.*

PHRASES

be under the impression (that)... (=believe that something is true when it is not) *I was under the impression that the museum opened at 9.30.*

first impressions count (=the impression you make when you first meet someone is important) *Always remember that first impressions count, so don't be late.*

impressive adj

something that is impressive makes you admire it because it is very good, large, important etc

NOUNS

an impressive achievement/feat *Winning the award at her age is an impressive achievement.*

impressive performance/display/results *The team gave an impressive performance.*

an impressive sight *The huge bridge is an impressive sight.*

an impressive victory/win *He won an impressive victory over his opponent.*

an impressive start/debut *The team have made an impressive start to the season.*

an impressive record *He has an impressive record of 21 goals in 27 games.*

an impressive list *The conference includes an impressive list of speakers.*

an impressive array of sb/sth formal (=an impressive group) *Among the guests was an impressive array of authors and critics.*

ADVERBS

pretty impressive informal (=rather impressive) *The results are pretty impressive.*

particularly impressive *The museum has a particularly impressive collection of modern art.*

highly impressive (=very impressive) *This is a highly impressive piece of work.*

hugely/tremendously/mightily impressive *It was a tremendously impressive performance.*

VERBS

look/sound/seem impressive *The figures certainly look impressive.*

PHRASES

far from impressive (=not impressive at all) *The results of the experiment were far from impressive.*

THESAURUS: impressive

spectacular

view | sight | display | success | result | goal | fashion | example

very impressive and exciting to look at or watch:

There are spectacular views of the ocean. | The book was a spectacular success. | Rooney scored a spectacular goal near the end of the match. | Bolt won the race in spectacular fashion (=in a spectacular way).

majestic

mountain | river | castle | scenery | view | sight | animal | bird

very impressive because of being big and beautiful:

The village is surrounded by majestic mountains. | The golden eagle is one of the most majestic of all birds.

imposing

building | figure | structure | entrance | door | edifice

big and impressive. **Imposing** sounds rather formal and is mainly used in written descriptions:

Delhi is full of wide avenues, beautiful gardens, and imposing buildings. | He looked an imposing figure in his official blue and gold uniform (=an imposing person).

brehtaking

view | scenery | sight | image | beauty | pace | speed

extremely impressive - used especially when something is very beautiful, very big, or very fast:

The hotel has a breathtaking view across the Bay of Naples. | Nepal is known for the breathtaking beauty of its mountains. | Everything seemed to be happening at a breathtaking speed.

awe-inspiring

sight | display | masterpiece

so impressive that you feel great respect and admiration, or you feel rather frightened:

The volcano was an awe-inspiring sight. | Michelangelo's masterpiece is awe-inspiring.

dazzling

smile | performance | sight | success | range

extremely impressive - used especially when someone does something very well or looks very beautiful:

She gave me a dazzling smile. | Uma Thurman gives a dazzling performance as Charlotte. | The show was a dazzling success.

glittering

career | success | prize

extremely impressive - used when someone is greatly admired for their achievements:

Hoffman has had a glittering career as an actor. | The record was a glittering success.

improve v

to become better, or to make something better

ADVERBS

a lot *The town has improved a lot since I was young.*

considerably/significantly/greatly *Doctors said yesterday his condition had improved significantly.*

dramatically *With regular exercise, your energy levels will improve dramatically.*

really improve (sth) *Your spelling has really improved.*

radically *The system needs to be radically improved.*

slightly/marginally *In the afternoon the weather improved slightly and we were able to go out.*

steadily/gradually/slowly *He believes the economic climate will gradually improve.*

rapidly *The quality of education is rapidly improving.*

PHRASES

improve with age/time/practice *The singer's voice has improved with age.*

new and improved *They produce a new and improved version of the software every eighteen months.*

improvement ⁿ

the act of improving something, or the state of being improved

ADJECTIVES

a big improvement *There's been a big improvement in the children's behaviour.*

a great/vast/major/massive improvement (=very big) *The new computer system was a vast improvement.*

a dramatic improvement (=very big and happening suddenly) *With the new treatment we saw a dramatic improvement in his condition.*

a significant/substantial/considerable improvement (=quite big) *There has been a considerable improvement in trading conditions.*

a marked/noticeable/distinct improvement (=easy to notice) *Joanna's work showed a marked improvement.*

a slight/modest improvement *Sales figures have shown a slight improvement this month.*

a gradual/steady improvement *There has been a gradual improvement in educational standards.*

a continuous improvement *The company is committed to continuous improvement of its service.*

a general improvement *The 1960s brought a general improvement in the standard of living.*

VERBS

carry out/make improvements *We need to carry out some improvements to the system.*

see/notice an improvement *Despite the changes, I hadn't noticed any improvement in the service.*

show an improvement *Patients showed significant improvement after taking the new drug.*

represent an improvement (=be an improvement) *A profit of £4.3 million represents a 15% improvement on last year.*

need improvement *The payment process needs improvement.*

bring (about)/produce an improvement *This policy has brought substantial improvements in some schools.*

PREPOSITIONS

an improvement in sth *Reducing car usage will result in significant improvements in air quality.*

an improvement on sth (=something that is better than something that existed before) *This version of the software is a big improvement on its predecessor.*

PHRASES

show signs of improvement *The patient is showing signs of improvement.*

there is room for (further) improvement (=something could be done better) *There's room for improvement in the way we run our business.*

impulse ⁿ

a sudden strong desire to do something without thinking about whether it is sensible

ADJECTIVES

a strong impulse *Harry often felt a strong impulse to stop and talk to her.*

an irresistible impulse (=very strong, so you cannot control it) *I felt an irresistible impulse to laugh.*

a sudden impulse *On a sudden impulse, he threw the book into the fire.*

sb's first/initial impulse *Her first impulse was to turn and walk away.*

a natural impulse *My natural impulse was to shout for help.*

VERBS

have/feel an impulse to do sth *Rosa had an impulse to tell Henry the truth.*

resist/control an impulse *Gerry couldn't resist the impulse to kiss her.*

do sth on impulse (=do something without having planned it) *Many people buy clothes on impulse and then find they never wear them.*

act on an impulse (also **obey an impulse** formal) (=do something because of a sudden desire to) *Acting on an impulse, he decided to visit his sister.*

impulse + NOUNS

an impulse buy (=something you buy because you see it and not because you planned to buy it) *She admitted that the shoes had been an impulse buy.*

inaccurate ^{adj}

not accurate or correct

ADVERBS

totally/completely/wholly inaccurate *A lot of what has been written about him is totally inaccurate.*

grossly/wildly inaccurate *The report in 'The Times' was criticized for being wildly inaccurate.*

hopelessly inaccurate *In the 16th century, maps were often hopelessly inaccurate.*

slightly/somewhat inaccurate *The statement he gave to the police was somewhat inaccurate.*

historically inaccurate *Some of the events shown in the film are historically inaccurate.*

factually inaccurate *He complained that the article was factually inaccurate.*

notoriously inaccurate (=known by many people for being inaccurate) *Tabloid stories about celebrities are notoriously inaccurate.*

NOUNS

inaccurate information/data/figures/results

The report was based upon inaccurate information.

an inaccurate claim/statement An advertisement can be banned if it makes inaccurate claims about a product.

an inaccurate picture/portrayal/representation of sth The report paints an inaccurate picture of events.

VERBS

prove inaccurate formal (=be inaccurate) The original estimate of the cost proved inaccurate.

THESAURUS: inaccurate

incorrect, inaccurate, false, untrue, misleading, misguided, mistaken → **wrong (1)**

inappropriate adj not suitable

ADVERBS

totally/completely/wholly inappropriate His comments were wholly inappropriate on such a solemn occasion.

highly inappropriate He lost his job after making a series of highly inappropriate remarks about his female colleagues.

particularly inappropriate (also **singularly inappropriate** formal): Wearing red at a funeral is considered particularly inappropriate as it is a joyful color.

clearly/obviously inappropriate This is clearly inappropriate and unacceptable behaviour.

somewhat/rather inappropriate His somewhat inappropriate jokes managed to offend quite a few people.

VERBS

seem/appear inappropriate It seems inappropriate to ask her how old she is.

be considered/judged inappropriate This story contains language which may be considered inappropriate for more sensitive readers.

be regarded as inappropriate (also **be deemed inappropriate** formal): The college rules make clear what is regarded as inappropriate behaviour.

make sth inappropriate The violent scenes in the film make it inappropriate viewing for young children.

PREPOSITIONS

inappropriate for sb/sth It would be inappropriate for me to comment until we know more of the facts.

THESAURUS: inappropriate

inappropriate, the wrong..., out of place, incompatible, incongruous, inconvenient, unfit → **unsuitable**

incentive Ac n

something that encourages you to work harder, start a new activity etc

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + incentive

a strong/powerful incentive Competition with others acts as a strong incentive for many people.

a significant incentive The high financial rewards are a significant incentive.

a greater incentive The scheme gives industry a greater incentive to tackle pollution.

the main/biggest incentive The main incentive is the high salary.

an extra/added incentive As an added incentive, there's a bottle of champagne for the best team.

a financial/economic incentive (=money offered as an incentive) Doctors are encouraged through financial incentives to work in poor areas.

cash incentives The scheme gives farmers cash incentives to manage the countryside for wildlife.

tax incentives (=a reduction in tax, offered as an incentive) Tax incentives are provided for employees to buy shares in their own companies.

VERBS

give/offer sb an incentive If you want people to change their behaviour, it's good to offer them some kind of incentive.

provide (sb with) an incentive Good teachers provide their students with incentives to learn.

create an incentive We need to create an incentive for people to recycle their rubbish.

act as an incentive (=be an incentive) The chance of promotion acts as an incentive for many employees.

have an incentive Companies have an incentive to cut their energy use.

remove/take away an incentive Some people believe that welfare benefits remove the incentive to work.

lack an incentive He lacked any incentive to try harder.

incentive + NOUNS

an incentive scheme/system The incentive scheme was introduced to promote renewable energy.

PREPOSITIONS

an incentive for sb Awards provide an incentive for young people to improve their skills.

PHRASES

have little/no incentive to do sth Poor farmers have little incentive to grow crops for export.

incessant adj THESAURUS continuous

incident Ac n

an event, especially one that is unusual, important, or violent

ADJECTIVES

a major incident (=very serious) The most

recent major incident was an explosion at an oil refinery.

a small/minor incident An apparently minor incident sparked off rioting.

a serious incident The road is closed following a serious incident earlier today.

a dramatic incident (=unexpected and exciting) Viewers watched the dramatic incident on the television news.

the whole incident The whole incident was caught on camera.

a separate incident Young men were killed in two separate incidents on the same day.

an isolated incident (=one that happens on its own, not connected with others) Luckily the attack turned out to be an isolated incident.

a related incident (=connected to another incident) The report describes a number of related incidents.

the latest incident (=the most recent in a series) In the latest incident two men were seriously hurt.

an unfortunate incident There was an unfortunate incident when someone dropped their wedding ring down the toilet.

a strange/unusual/curious incident Any unusual incidents should be reported to the police.

VERBS

an incident happens/takes place/occurs The incident happened as Mrs Edwards was walking her dog.

cause an incident His carelessness caused a major incident.

be involved in an incident All those involved in the incident were sacked.

witness an incident (=see it) Anyone who witnessed the incident should contact police.

investigate an incident Hospital officials are investigating the incident.

PREPOSITIONS

without incident (=without anything unusual happening) The plane landed without incident.

income_n

the money that you receive, for example as payment for working

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + income

a high/large income He has a relatively high income.

a low/small income Rent takes a large part of their small income.

a fixed income I'm retired and on a fixed income.

sb's annual income Brian's annual income is around £43,000.

the average income The report compares average incomes across different European countries.

family/household income She works in a shop to supplement the family income.

disposable income (=your income after tax

and necessary bills have been paid) People are spending more of their disposable income on things like mobile phones and computers.

gross income (=income before you have paid tax) The family's gross income has increased by 5% this year.

net income (=income after you have paid tax) He was left with a net income of just £80 per week.

sb's personal income Average personal incomes rose by about 5% last year.

a joint income (=that two or more people have) Between them they have a joint income of less than £20,000.

the national income (=the income of a country) A large proportion of the national income comes from food exports.

VERBS

have an income He has an income of \$80,000 a year.

receive an income The tax authorities need to know about any income you have received during the past year.

provide (sb with) an income The properties he rented out provided him with an income.

generate an income (=provide one) He decided to invest the money to generate an income for the future.

increase your income She took on extra work to increase her income.

supplement/add to your income (=increase your income, for example by doing an extra job) Ted supplemented his income by doing part-time work in the evenings.

sb's income rises/increases/goes up They saw their income rise considerably over the next few years.

sb's income falls/goes down Average income fell by one third during this period.

income + NOUNS

an income group/bracket (=a group of people with roughly the same income) In general, people in higher income brackets live longer.

an income level The tax rate rises with the individual's income level.

income tax (=tax that you pay on your income) The standard rate of income tax is to be cut by 0.5%.

PREPOSITIONS

on a high/low etc income People on low incomes will get help to pay their fuel bills.

income from sth Only 5% of this group had any income from paid employment.

PHRASES

a source of income His pension was his only source of income.

loss of income You can buy insurance to protect you against loss of income if you are ill.

THESAURUS: income
pay, wages, income, earnings, the money → salary

incompatible *adj* **THESAURUS** → unsuitable

incongruous *adj* **THESAURUS** → unsuitable

inconsiderate *adj* **THESAURUS** → unkind

inconvenient *adj* **THESAURUS** → unsuitable

incorrect *adj* **THESAURUS** → wrong (1)

increase¹ *v*

1 to become bigger in size, number, or amount

ADVERBS

greatly increase *The city has greatly increased in size.*

vastly increase (=by an extremely large amount or number) *The power of the state has vastly increased.*

increase significantly *The number of students is expected to increase significantly over the next few years.*

increase dramatically/sharply (=suddenly and by a large amount) *The population increased dramatically in the first half of the century.*

increase rapidly *Oil imports are increasing rapidly.*

increase gradually/slowly/steadily *After fourth grade, the amount of schoolwork continues to increase gradually.*

increase slightly *The prison population increased only slightly from 2,800 prisoners to 2,950.*

increase markedly (=enough to be easily noticed) *Violence in the city has increased markedly in recent days.*

increase exponentially *formal* (=used when something keeps increasing at a very fast rate) *Internet fraud has increased exponentially in the last few years.*

increase threefold/tenfold etc (=by three, ten etc times as many or as much as before) *Car production increased tenfold.*

NOUNS + increase

the number/rate/amount/level of sth increases *During this period, the number of car drivers increased by 8%.*

the price/value/cost of sth increases *The price of land continues to increase.*

crime/violence/unemployment increases *Crime has increased throughout the Western world during the past half century.*

sb's salary/income/pay increases *Doctors' salaries increased by 50 percent.*

sales increase/production increases *Sales have increased rapidly over the last few years.*

the population increases *The world's population is increasing at an alarming rate.*

the risk increases *The risk of getting the disease increases as you get older.*

sb's power/influence increases *The power of the unions increased.*

PREPOSITIONS

increase by 10%/£100/a large amount etc *Food prices increased by 10% in less than a year.*

increase to 1 million/£1,000/75% etc *The salary is £18,600 a year, increasing to £23,000.*

increase in value/size/importance etc *Investments are certain to increase in value.*

increase with age/time/speed etc *The risk of getting the disease increases with age.*

PHRASES

increase in real terms (=increase in amount when you consider all other things, especially when you include the rate of inflation) *Pensions have increased in real terms over the last twenty years.*

THESAURUS: increase

go up

price | cost | tax | rate | sales
to increase. **Go up** is less formal than **increase**, and is the usual verb to use in everyday English when talking about prices, taxes etc:
The price of coffee keeps going up. | Costs have gone up by 15%. | Taxes will go up dramatically. | Sales have gone up this year.

rise

level | rate | unemployment | crime | price | inflation | production | demand | temperature | living standards
to increase. **Rise** sounds a little formal and is often used when talking about the level of something increasing:
Income levels rose, as did prices. | Unemployment has been rising in most European countries. | Crime has risen faster than at any time in our history. | Oil production rose by 24% to almost 26 million tonnes. | Living standards have risen dramatically.

grow

number | population | economy | sales | trade | imports | exports
to increase, especially gradually over a period of time. **Grow** sounds a little formal and is used about numbers or amounts:
The number of people working from home has grown substantially. | The town's population grew from 3,000 to over 20,000. | Vietnam's economy has grown by an average of more than 7% a year. | Sales grew slightly during the first quarter. | Since 1990, US imports of foreign goods have grown at a rate of 7.7% per year.

escalate

violence | fighting | crime | cost | price

to increase to a high level – used about things that you do not want to increase:

Police statistics indicate that late-night violence has escalated. | The fighting has escalated in recent months. | The cost of the project has escalated from £457 million to £1.4 billion. | The price had escalated from \$30 to over \$60.

soar

price | profit | sales | temperature | unemployment | inflation | demand | confidence | popularity

to increase and reach a very high level – used about numbers and amounts, or about feelings:

Copper prices have soared due to strong demand from China's booming economy. | The company's operating profit soared by 150%. | The temperature soared to 36.6 degrees centigrade. | After winning the match his confidence soared. | The singer's popularity has soared.

shoot up

price | profit | sales | temperature | unemployment

to increase very quickly and suddenly:

Share prices shot up 30% over the last week. | Sales of their products have shot up by more than a third. | My body temperature shot up. | US workers have seen unemployment shoot up alarmingly in the past year.

ANTONYMS increase → decrease²

2 to make something become bigger in size, number, or amount

ADVERBS

greatly/substantially increase sth *Smoking greatly increases your risk of developing cancer.*

vastly increase sth (=by an extremely large amount or number) *Rapid economic development has vastly increased demand for water in recent years.*

dramatically/sharply increase sth (=suddenly and by a large amount) *The government was determined to dramatically increase the number of people going to university.*

significantly increase sth *The United States significantly increased the number of US military personnel in the area.*

increase sth threefold/tenfold etc (=by three, ten etc times as many or as much as before) *We have increased our online sales threefold since May.*

gradually/slowly/steadily increase sth *The union has steadily increased its membership, which now stands at over 5 million.*

increase sth slightly *There is a slightly increased risk of cancer.*

increase + NOUNS

increase the number/rate/amount/level of sth *The city authorities increased the number of police officers.*

increase the price/cost of sth *Businesses are expected to increase the price of their products.*

increase sales/production *The company changed their website in order to try to increase sales.*

increase the risk/chance/likelihood of sth (=make something more likely to happen) *Studying languages increases your chances of getting a good job.*

increase sb's power *The internet has increased the power of the people, because governments can no longer control the flow of information.*

increase production/demand *Saudi Arabia increased oil production to 1 million barrels a day.*

increase efficiency *Companies are always looking for ways of increasing efficiency.*

increase speed *He increased his speed to 50 miles an hour.*

PREPOSITIONS

increase sth by 10%/£100/a large amount etc *The bank increased its profits by 13.4%.*

THESAURUS: increase

put up

price | tax | rent | cost

to make prices, taxes etc increase. **Put up** is less formal than **increase**, and is the usual verb to use in everyday English when talking about prices, taxes etc:

They're always putting up gas prices. | Voters expect the government to put up taxes. | The landlord has put the rent up again.

raise

tax | rate | standard | level | awareness | tension

to increase something such as prices or taxes, or levels or standards. **Raise** is a little more formal than **increase**:

The Democrats want to raise taxes. | The bank has raised interest rates for the third time this year. | The new government wants to raise living standards. | The school aims to raise students' levels of achievement. | They are trying to raise awareness about the disease. | Recent events have raised tensions between different racial groups.

boost

sales | profits | output | revenue | imports | exports | hopes | confidence

to make something increase to a higher level:

The hot weather has boosted sales of ice cream. | Cost-cutting helped boost operating profits. | Expanding world trade will boost German exports. | The news boosted the party's hopes of winning the election. | The team's victory had boosted their confidence.

expand

business | operations | trade | range | scope

to increase something, especially the amount of business, or the range of something:

The South Korean firm has been expanding its business in the US. | They want to expand trade with China. | We have expanded the range of products and services we offer to customers.

grow

business | company | economy

to increase the size of a company or economy – used in business English:

He helped grow the business from three hotels to 63. | Cutting taxes would help to grow the economy and create new jobs.

extend

influence | power | dominance | role | range | scope | life

to increase something such as your power or influence, the range of something, or the time that something lasts:

China hopes to extend its influence in the region. | The company plans to extend the range of services that they offer. | The scientists extended the scope of the research. | One day we may be able to extend human life to up to 150 years.

step up

efforts | pressure | campaign | attacks | security | pace

to increase your efforts or activities:

All governments need to step up their efforts to fight global warming. | Congress stepped up pressure on the president to change his decision. | Local people have stepped up their campaign to prevent the airport being built in their neighbourhood. | Rebel forces stepped up their attacks against the government. | Security has been stepped up following the bombing. | The government has agreed to step up the pace of political reform.

heighten

tension | awareness | fears | worries | concerns | effect | interest | excitement

to increase a feeling or effect:

The presence of foreign troops has heightened tensions between the different groups. | The campaign is aimed at heightening awareness about the disease. | Unemployment rose, heightening fears of a slowdown in the US economy. | The attack has heightened concerns about gun crime. | Hunger can heighten the effect that alcohol has on you.

maximize (also **maximise** BrE)

profit | return | chance | benefit | impact | efficiency | savings

to increase something as much as possible:

Companies are always looking for ways to maximize profits. | He studied hard to maximise his chances of passing his exam. | You need to eat healthily in order to maximize the benefits of exercise. | TV advertising was used in order to

maximize the impact of the campaign. | The organization is trying to maximize efficiency and cut costs.

ANTONYMS increase → decrease²

increase² _n

a rise in amount, number, or degree

ADJECTIVES

a big/large/great increase *The company has announced a big increase in profits.*

a huge/massive increase *There was a huge increase in house-building after the war.*

a substantial/considerable increase *formal (=big) He negotiated a substantial increase in pay for the workers.*

a significant/marked increase *(=definite and noticeable) There has been a significant increase in violent crime over the past year.*

a dramatic/sharp increase *(=large and sudden) We have seen a sharp increase in the number of vehicle thefts in the area.*

a slight/small increase *The temperature increase was quite small.*

a modest increase *(=small) The figures reveal a modest increase in the birth rate.*

a rapid increase *Recently there has been a rapid increase in fish farming.*

a gradual increase *There was a gradual increase in the severity of her symptoms.*

a steady increase *(=happening slowly but continuously) The university has benefited from a steady increase in student numbers.*

a threefold/fourfold/fivefold etc increase *(=by three, four etc times) The figures show a threefold increase in passenger numbers.*

a 10%/50% etc increase *A 15% increase in oil prices is predicted.*

an annual increase *This is the smallest annual increase in wages since 1995.*

VERBS

lead to an increase *Government policies have led to an increase in unemployment.*

cause/bring about an increase *The heatwave brought about a massive increase in water consumption.*

see an increase *We've seen a huge increase in the number of insurance claims.*

NOUNS + increase

a price/fare/tax increase *The airline introduced a 10% fare increase.*

a wage/pay/salary increase *Canadian workers received a 5.4% wage increase.*

PREPOSITIONS

an increase in sth *School reforms were accompanied by an increase in funding.*

an increase of 10%/£500 etc *The proposed charge represents an increase of £45.*

an increase over/on sth This is a 10% increase over last year's figure.

PHRASES

the rate of increase The rate of increase in the world population is worrying.

sth is on the increase (=it is increasing) Knife attacks are on the increase.

THESAURUS: increase

growth

an increase in the number, size, or importance of something. **Growth** is also used when saying that a company or a country's economy becomes more successful:

Japan experienced a period of rapid **economic growth**. | Many people are concerned about the **exponential growth** in the world's population (=used when something increases at an extremely fast rate). | The astonishing **growth** of the internet has had a dramatic effect on people's lives.

rise

an increase in the amount of something, or in the standard or level of something:

The latest figures show a sharp **rise in unemployment** in the region (=a sudden big rise). | There was a big **rise in the number of** armed robberies. | The company reported a small **rise in profits**. | The majority of families experienced a **rise in living standards**.

surge

a sudden increase in something such as profits, demand, or interest:

There was a huge **surge in demand** for organically grown food. | The sudden **surge in gas prices** came at the worst possible time. | We have seen a tremendous **surge of interest** in Chinese medicine. | There has been a **surge in popularity** of this type of dancing.

gain

an increase in the amount or level of something - used especially in business or political contexts, or when talking about an increase in someone's weight:

The party has experienced a significant **gain in popularity**. | There was a big **gain in productivity** after the new system was introduced. | The December job figures show a **net gain** of 81,000 jobs (=a gain after other numbers or amounts have been taken away). | The amount of **weight gain** during pregnancy varies.

hike informal especially AmE

a large or sudden increase in prices, taxes etc - often used in newspaper reports:

Further **price hikes** are expected. | The government is planning to introduce **tax hikes**. | Further **wage hikes** could affect the company's ability to compete with foreign companies. |

Despite a 25% **hike in** fuel costs, the airline made a profit last year.

a very big increase

explosion

a sudden very large increase in the amount or number of something:

The country experienced a **population explosion**. | The book caused an **explosion of interest** in Renaissance Italy. | There has been an **explosion in the number of** fast food restaurants.

boom

a sudden large increase in trade, profits or sales, with the result that a country, company, or industry becomes very successful. **Boom** is also used about a sudden increase in interest in something, with the result that it becomes very popular:

Japan experienced an **economic boom** in the 1980s. | There has been a **boom in sales** of diet books and videos. | The **boom years** are over for construction companies.

ANTONYMS increase → decrease¹

independence ⁿ

political freedom from control by the government of another country

ADJECTIVES

full/complete independence The country gained complete independence from Britain in the 1960s.

political/economic independence Zambia achieved political independence without a prolonged conflict.

national independence The struggle for national independence lasted over 20 years.

local independence The new constitution aims to strengthen local independence.

VERBS

get independence The country eventually got its independence in 1960.

gain/achieve/win independence (=get independence) Our aim was to achieve full independence.

declare independence Estonia declared independence on August 20th.

grant sth independence (=allow a country to become independent) It was General de Gaulle who granted Algeria independence.

bring independence to sth The rebels fought to bring independence to East Africa.

move towards independence (=gradually achieve it over a period of time) The country was slowly moving towards independence.

independence + NOUNS

Independence Day (=a day on which a country's independence is celebrated) The president was on television giving his Independence Day speech.

independence celebrations *The region is preparing for Monday's independence celebrations.*

PHRASES

the struggle for independence *The struggle for independence continued for three decades.*

independent adj

1 able to do things by yourself, without needing help or advice from other people

ADVERBS

very independent *He is a very independent child and gets himself ready for school every morning.*

fiercely independent (=very determined to be independent) *She had worked hard all her life and was fiercely independent.*

financially/economically independent *His inheritance from his father left him financially independent.*

PREPOSITIONS

independent of sb *Almost every child eventually becomes independent of its parents.*

2 an independent country or organization is not controlled, owned, or paid for by another one

ADVERBS

fully independent *Bahrain became fully independent in 1971.*

newly independent *A trade agreement was signed with the newly independent state of Ukraine in late December.*

politically independent *It is important that our police service remains politically independent.*

VERBS

become independent (from France/the UK etc) *Mozambique became independent from Portugal in 1975.*

PREPOSITIONS

independent of sth *In some countries, central banks are completely independent of the government.*

index [Ac] n

an alphabetical list of names, subjects etc at the back of a book, with the numbers of the pages where they can be found

VERBS

look (sth up) in the index *She couldn't resist looking her name up in the index.*

appear in the index *The name 'Shakespeare' does not appear in the index.*

the index lists sth *At the back, an index lists all the artist's paintings.*

indication [Ac] n

a sign that something exists or is happening

ADJECTIVES

a good/fair indication *The presence or absence*

of wildlife gives a good indication of pollution levels.

a clear indication *The heavy police presence was a clear indication that security concerns remained high.*

a strong indication *There were strong indications that the economy was recovering.*

an accurate/true indication *These figures do not give an accurate indication of the rate of volcanic activity.*

a general/rough/broad indication *These responses give us a rough indication of how many people to expect.*

an important indication *Her decision is an important indication of the minister's influence on her.*

a useful indication *This test will provide a useful indication of the child's linguistic ability.*

the first indication *The first indication of the disease is brown spots on the plant's leaves.*

an early indication (=a sign of something that comes some time before it happens) *This was an early indication of what the government would decide.*

every indication (=very clear signs) *There is every indication that the problem will get worse.*

VERBS

sb/sth gives an indication *He didn't give any indication that he knew she was there.*

sth provides an indication *The research provides an indication of what may happen if British summers get warmer.*

show no indication (also not show any indication) *None of them showed any indication of illness.*

be seen as an indication *A guilty plea is seen as an indication of remorse.*

PHRASES

(the) indications are that... *The indications are that people are becoming more cautious in their spending.*

PREPOSITIONS

an indication of sth *Strange behaviour can be an indication of stress.*

an indication from sb *They were anxious to get a clear indication from the player regarding his future.*

indifference n lack of interest or concern

ADJECTIVES

total/complete indifference (also supreme indifference especially literary): *They showed a total indifference to local cultural traditions.*

apparent/seeming indifference *Her apparent indifference to the situation was annoying.*

studied indifference (=deliberately seeming or pretending to be indifferent) *The girls, with studied indifference, avoided the eyes of the boys as they walked past.*

casual indifference *He treated his guests with*

casual indifference and they thought he was very rude.

public indifference There was widespread public indifference to the president's visit.

VERBS

show indifference He has shown nothing but indifference towards his own children.

express indifference Thirty-one per cent of those polled liked the statue, while twenty-five per cent expressed indifference.

PREPOSITIONS

indifference to/towards sth/sb In spite of his indifference to her needs, Amy loved him.

with indifference All too often, elderly patients are treated with indifference.

PHRASES

a matter of indifference (to sb) (=something that does not matter to someone) It is a matter of complete indifference to me whether he comes or not.

indignant *adj* **THESAURUS** → angry

individual *n* **Ac**

a person, considered separately from the rest of the group or society that he or she lives in

ADJECTIVES

a private individual (=a person, not a government or company) Most churches were built with donations from private individuals.

a particular individual The writer is addressing a general reader rather than a particular individual.

a single individual (=one person on their own) Equipment of this kind is not something a single individual could afford.

an ordinary individual Ordinary individuals need no more than 3–5 grams of salt per day.

a talented/gifted individual He had taken a group of talented individuals and built a superb team.

an outstanding individual (=with unusually good qualities) We need a few outstanding individuals to act as leaders.

a wealthy individual (=rich person) Large ranches are often owned by corporations or wealthy individuals.

selected individuals (=ones who are specially chosen for something) Selected individuals were invited to the dinner.

VERBS

treat sb as an individual Each student must be treated as an individual.

individuals vary (=everyone is different) Individuals vary in their ability to adapt to change.

PHRASES

the rights of the individual The rights of the individual must be protected.

freedom of the individual We live in a society which prizes the freedom of the individual.

a group of individuals We need to perform as a team rather than a group of individuals.

the needs of the individual The fitness program is adapted to the needs of the individual.

industry *n*

the production of a particular type of goods or services

ADJECTIVES

an important/major industry Whisky making is a major industry in Scotland.

a thriving/booming industry (=very successful) Software development soon became a thriving industry in the area.

a growing industry The company is part of a small but growing industry.

a declining industry (=one that is less and less successful) Coal and steel are declining industries in Britain.

heavy industry (=industries that involve the production of large goods) Shipbuilding and other heavy industry developed in the north of the country.

light industry (=industries that involve the production of small goods) Jobs in light industry are increasing.

a global/international industry Market research is becoming a global industry.

local industry Most of the people are employed in local industry.

a traditional industry (=one that has been in a particular area for a long time) The shipyards, the traditional industry in the Northeast, had closed.

NOUNS + industry

the car/oil/food etc industry He works in the car industry.

the manufacturing/banking/advertising etc industry The last twenty years have seen a decline in manufacturing industry.

a service industry (=businesses that provide a service, such as banking and tourism) Most of the new jobs are in service industries.

the film/music/entertainment industry She would really like to work in the music industry.

the tourist/tourism/travel industry The tourist industry earns billions of dollars per year.

industry + VERBS

an industry grows/expands The clothing industry grew rapidly during the 1960s.

an industry declines (=becomes less successful) The shipping industry declined after World War II.

an industry employs sb The industry currently employs 2.2 million people.

inevitable *adj*

certain to happen and impossible to avoid

VERBS

seem/look inevitable Defeat now seems inevitable.

become inevitable *War was becoming inevitable.*

make sth inevitable *The country's huge debts made financial collapse almost inevitable.*

consider sth inevitable (also **see/regard sth as inevitable**) *An increase in oil prices is now considered inevitable.*

ADVERBS

almost/virtually inevitable *It was almost inevitable that he would resign from his job.*

perhaps inevitable *It was perhaps inevitable that she should see the accident as some kind of punishment.*

NOUNS

an inevitable consequence/result of sth *Disease was an inevitable consequence of poor living conditions.*

an inevitable part of sth *Leaving home is an inevitable part of growing up.*

the inevitable conclusion *The inevitable conclusion is that someone must have been lying about what happened.*

the inevitable question *There is always the inevitable question – how did he achieve his success?*

inevitable problems/delays *Heavy snowfall means that there will be inevitable delays for air passengers.*

inevitable decline *Lack of investment in new players led to the inevitable decline of the club.*

infamous *adj* **THESAURUS** **famous**

infant *n* *formal* a baby or very young child

ADJECTIVES

a young infant *The never-ending demands of a young infant can be very stressful for parents.*

a newborn infant *Newborn infants only a few hours old can distinguish between different voices.*

an unborn infant *Unborn infants can hear some sounds while still in the mother's womb.*

a healthy infant *Healthy mothers are more likely to produce healthy infants.*

infant + NOUNS

infant mortality (=the number of infants who die) *The infant mortality rate doubled during the 1990s.*

infection *n*

a disease that affects a particular part of your body and is caused by bacteria or a virus

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + infection

a chest/throat/eye etc infection *The doctor said he had a chest infection.*

a serious/severe infection *He was admitted to hospital with a serious infection.*

a slight/minor infection (=not serious) *Alice is suffering from a slight infection.*

a nasty infection *informal* (=serious) *He's got a really nasty infection.*

an acute infection (=one that is serious and develops quickly) *The disease usually occurs as an acute infection of the throat.*

a secondary infection (=an additional infection that happens as a result of the main illness) *He developed a secondary infection and had to go back to the hospital for treatment.*

VERBS + infection

have an infection *Your temperature is often high when you have an infection.*

suffer from an infection *He was suffering from an infection of the lungs.*

get/develop/catch an infection *She got a nasty throat infection which meant she couldn't sing.*

contract/acquire an infection *formal* (=get an infection) *They had contracted the infection through contaminated water.*

treat an infection *Antibiotics are used to treat the infection.*

fight/combat an infection *Your body is trying to fight the infection.*

spread an infection (also **transmit an infection** *formal*): *Pregnant women can transmit the infection to their unborn child.*

be exposed to an infection *He was exposed to the infection while he was travelling in India.*

infection + VERBS

an infection causes sth *The infection causes vomiting and diarrhoea.*

an infection spreads *The infection spread to her chest.*

an infection clears up (=goes away) *Usually the infection clears up in a few days.*

PHRASES

the source of an infection *Doctors are trying to locate the source of the infection.*

infectious *adj*

an infectious disease can be passed from one person to another, especially through the air you breathe

ADVERBS

highly/very infectious *The virus is highly infectious.*

NOUNS

an infectious disease *How can we prevent the spread of infectious diseases?*

inferior *adj*

not good, or not as good as someone or something else

ADVERBS

greatly inferior *Iron is greatly inferior to steel in many ways.*

far inferior (=greatly inferior) *He easily defeated a far inferior opponent.*

vastly inferior (=by a very great amount) *The*

original software was vastly inferior to the latest version.

considerably inferior (=by quite a large amount) The product was replaced by one of a considerably inferior quality.

slightly/somewhat inferior I always felt slightly inferior to her.

markedly inferior (=in a way that is easy to notice) Our equipment was markedly inferior to that of the enemy forces.

VERBS

feel inferior She knows so much, she always makes me feel inferior.

consider sb/sth inferior Women were considered to be socially inferior to men.

NOUNS

inferior quality The poor soil produces wine of inferior quality.

an inferior position/status She refused to accept an inferior position in society.

PREPOSITIONS

inferior to sb/sth A fake diamond is inferior to the real thing.

inflation ⁿ

a situation in which prices of goods in a country increase

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + inflation

low inflation France had achieved low inflation and steady growth.

high inflation Inflation remained high throughout this period.

double-digit inflation (=over 10%) There was a period of recession, with double-digit inflation.

zero inflation The government is committed to achieving zero inflation.

rising inflation The country was hit by rising inflation.

soaring/spiralling inflation (=inflation that is increasing quickly and out of control) Argentina was suffering from spiralling inflation.

annual inflation Annual inflation in 1990 was 8.1%.

price/wage inflation (=increasing prices or wages) Price inflation was running at about twelve percent last summer.

inflation + NOUNS

the inflation rate (also **the rate of inflation**) The current inflation rate stands at 4.1%.

the inflation figures April's inflation figures are likely to show a further fall.

VERBS + inflation

cause/lead to inflation Too much government borrowing can lead to inflation.

fuel/push up/increase inflation (=make inflation worse) The increase in food prices is fuelling inflation.

control/curb inflation These measures are designed to curb inflation.

fight/combat/tackle inflation An economic plan to combat inflation was drawn up.

reduce inflation/get inflation down The government has promised to reduce inflation to 3%.

keep inflation down (=keep it at a low level) These policies will help to keep inflation down.

inflation + VERBS

inflation rises Inflation rose steadily from the mid-1960s.

inflation falls Inflation fell by 0.5% last month.

PHRASES

a rise/increase in inflation There was a slight rise in inflation due to an increase in petrol prices.

a fall/drop in inflation They welcomed the fall in inflation.

bring/keep inflation under control They have made great progress in bringing inflation under control.

influence ⁿ

the ability to change what someone does or thinks, or how something develops, or a person or thing with this ability

VERBS + influence

have an influence His works have had an influence on many modern writers.

use your influence She wasn't afraid to use her influence to get what she wanted.

exercise/exert/wield influence formal (=have it or use it) The Catholic Church still wields considerable influence. | He urged Mr Lang to exercise his influence on the government.

gain influence The movement grew and gained political influence.

extend your influence (=make your influence affect more people or things) Syria had the opportunity to extend its influence in the region.

increase/strengthen sb's influence Britain tries to increase its influence by placing its representatives in key posts.

reduce/weaken sb's influence The influence of priests has been reduced.

come/fall under the influence of sb/sth (=be influenced by someone or something) At university, he came under the influence of Professor Green.

influence + VERBS

sb's/sth's influence grows/increases His wealth and his influence grew.

sb's/sth's influence wanes/dwindles/declines (=becomes less) The unions are still important, but their influence has waned.

sb's/sth's influence spreads Martin Luther's influence spread beyond Germany.

ADJECTIVES

a good/positive influence Television can have a positive influence on young people.

a bad/negative influence *He thought her friends were a bad influence.*

a big influence *The goalkeeper's injury had a big influence on the match.*

great/considerable/enormous/tremendous influence *He had great influence in the region.*

an important/significant/major influence *Parents have an important influence on children's development.*

a strong/powerful influence *The press can have a powerful influence on the way people vote.*

a deep/profound influence *His writings had a profound influence on the Romantic poets.*

the growing/increasing influence of sb/sth *Many people are worried about the growing influence of these websites.*

a lasting influence (=continuing for a long time) *His travels in Africa had a lasting influence on his work.*

a direct/indirect influence *The cubist painters had a direct influence on his work.*

a calming/soothing influence *The music seemed to have a calming influence.*

sb's personal influence *Frank used his personal influence to get his son a job at the newspaper.*

political/cultural/economic influence *French political influence began to dominate the country.*

PREPOSITIONS

influence over sb/sth *These newspapers have considerable influence over their readers.*

influence with sb *They used their influence with local officials to get the water supply reconnected.*

influence² *v*

to affect someone's thoughts or behaviour, or to affect a situation

ADVERBS

greatly influence sth *Living conditions greatly influence the spread of disease.*

deeply influence sb/sth (also **profoundly influence sb/sth** formal): *His writings deeply influenced many later scientists.*

strongly/heavily influence sb/sth *Marx was strongly influenced by the historian Niebuhr.*

significantly influence sth *His work significantly influenced modern educational theory.*

directly influence sb/sth *The environment a child lives in has been shown to directly influence its behaviour.*

unduly influence sb/sth (=influence them too much) *Critics say the president has been unduly influenced by his advisers.*

VERBS

try/attempt to influence sth/sb (also **seek to influence sb/sth** formal): *No one should attempt to influence the competition judges.*

influential *adj*

having a big effect on people's opinions and behaviour

ADVERBS

highly/extremely influential *He is a highly influential member of Hong Kong's banking community.*

immensely/hugely/enormously/profoundly influential *Aristotle was an immensely influential ancient Greek philosopher.*

widely influential (=in many places) *His research has been widely influential.*

particularly influential *Within political theory the work of John Dewey has been particularly influential.*

increasingly influential *Political advertisements have become increasingly influential in determining voters' decisions at the polls.*

politically influential *She was born into one of India's most politically influential families.*

NOUNS

an influential writer/artist/politician/member *He painted with a group of influential artists that became known as the New York School.*

an influential figure/voice formal (=an influential person) *He became an influential figure in world politics.*

an influential group/organization/body *An influential group of scientists has concluded that global warming is very likely to have a human cause.*

an influential book/magazine/paper/report *'Vogue' is a highly influential fashion magazine.*

an influential role/position *She has always had an extremely influential position within the party.*

an influential factor *According to the study, price is the most influential factor when deciding on which airline to use.*

PREPOSITIONS

influential on sb/sth *Picasso's work was influential on many other painters.*

influential in doing sth *Although she was not a professional politician, her views were influential in shaping government policy.*

THESAURUS: influential

top, key, leading, influential, prominent, valued → **important (2)**

influential, dominant, strong, great → **powerful (1)**

inform *v* formal

to officially tell someone about something or give them information

ADVERBS

officially inform sb *The school had been officially informed of this change.*

NOUNS

inform the police *He saw a man behaving suspiciously and informed the police.*

inform the authorities *Barker was released from prison on condition that he did not change his address without informing the authorities.*

inform the public *The public needs to be informed of the risk.*

VERBS

keep sb informed (=give them the latest information) *Keep the school informed of any change in circumstances.*

fail to inform sb *The bank had failed to inform customers of the change in interest rates.*

be required to inform sb *The head teacher is required to inform the parents of any child who will be excluded.*

PREPOSITIONS

inform sb of/about sth *Please inform us of any change of address as soon as possible.*

PHRASES

inform sb in writing *You must inform us in writing if you wish to close your account.*

I/we regret to inform you that... (=used in formal letters when rejecting or refusing someone) *We regret to inform you that your application has been unsuccessful.*

I am/we are pleased to inform you that... (=used in formal letters when giving someone good news) *We are pleased to inform you that you have been selected for interview.*

informal *adj*

1 relaxed and friendly, rather than following strict rules of correct behaviour

ADVERBS

relatively informal (=informal compared to similar things) *The meetings are usually relatively informal.*

fairly informal (also **pretty informal** spoken): *The atmosphere at work is fairly informal.*

NOUNS

an informal meeting/discussion *The chancellor had informal discussions with other European finance ministers.*

an informal chat/conversation *I managed to have an informal chat with some of the players after the game.*

informal talks *The two leaders held informal talks.*

an informal agreement/arrangement *We reached an informal agreement, but haven't yet signed a contract.*

an informal atmosphere *The hotel's relaxed and informal atmosphere makes it the perfect place for a weekend break.*

ANTONYMS informal → formal

2 informal language is language that you use when you are speaking to friends and people you know well

NOUNS

informal language/word *It's best not to use informal language in essays.*

ANTONYMS informal → formal**information** *n*

facts about someone or something

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + information

useful/valuable information *The information he gave me was very useful.*

correct/accurate information *Are you sure this information is correct?*

wrong/false information *He was jailed for providing false information to the police.*

relevant information (=about the subject you are interested in) *Some of the information in the article is not particularly relevant.*

important information *He said he had some important information for me.*

confidential/secret information *That information was confidential and should not have been passed on.*

more/further/additional information *For more information, visit our website.*

new information *The police have received new information about the case.*

the latest information (=information that has been discovered very recently) *We have access to all the latest information.*

the necessary information *This leaflet should provide you with all the necessary information.*

detailed information *More detailed information is available free on request.*

personal information (=information about yourself) *Be careful about putting personal information on the internet.*

financial/economic information *The financial information contained in the report is based on the company's accounts.*

background information (=information explaining what happened before the present situation) *He gave us some background information about the trial.*

VERBS

have information *Do you have any information about coach trips to Oxford?*

contain information *The documents contained top secret information.*

store information *The information is stored on computer.*

get/find/obtain information *She tried to get information about her husband's death.*

get/receive information (=be given it) *It is vital that people receive the information they need.*

collect/gather information *The job consisted of gathering information about consumer needs.*

look for information (also **seek information** formal): *Journalists going to the building to seek information were denied entry.*

ask for information (also **request information** formal): *I had written to them requesting further information.*

give/provide/offer information *The booklet gives information about local education services.*

△ Don't say 'tell someone information'. Say **give someone information** or **tell someone about something**.

exchange information (=give information to each other) *The meetings provided an opportunity to exchange information.*

reveal/disclose/divulge information (=give it to someone, rather than keeping it secret) *They didn't want to reveal too much information about the project.*

pass on information to sb (=give it to someone else) *He had passed that information on to the authorities.*

leak information (=deliberately give secret information to a newspaper, TV company etc) *A government official had leaked information to the press.*

withhold information (=not give it to someone) *Why did the banks withhold this information from the public?*

PREPOSITIONS

information about/on sth (also **information regarding sth** formal): *They gathered information about the firm.*

PHRASES

a piece/bit of information (also **an item of information** formal): *He provided me with several useful pieces of information.*

a source of information *Newspapers are valuable sources of information.*

ingenious adj **THESAURUS** clever (2)

inhabitant n
one of the people who live in a particular place

ADJECTIVES

a local inhabitant *Most of the local inhabitants worked down the mine.*

the early/original inhabitants *How did the early inhabitants of this area live?*

the indigenous/native inhabitants (=people who lived in a place before other people came there) *What effect will the project have on the forest's indigenous inhabitants?*

the present inhabitants *The village includes many writers and artists among its present inhabitants.*

rural inhabitants *The country's politicians have neglected the needs of rural inhabitants.*

the oldest inhabitant *At 98, he is the town's oldest inhabitant.*

PREPOSITIONS

an inhabitant of a place *Most of the inhabitants of the island were related to each other.*

a city/town/village of 1,500/60,000

inhabitants *The road will bring you to Weinfelden, a town of about 9,000 inhabitants.*

inherit v **THESAURUS** get (1)

inhumane adj **THESAURUS** cruel (1)

initial adj **THESAURUS** first¹

injection n
an act of putting a drug into someone's body using a special needle

VERBS

give sb an injection *The nurse gave him an injection to relieve the pain.*

have an injection *I had an injection so that I wouldn't feel any pain.*

ADJECTIVES

a painkilling injection *I needed a painkilling injection in my elbow.*

an intravenous injection (=into a vein) *He had given the patient an intravenous injection to calm her down.*

PREPOSITIONS

an injection against sth *You may need to be given an injection against tetanus.*

injure [Ac] v
to hurt yourself or someone else, for example in an accident or attack

ADVERBS

be seriously/badly/severely injured *Fortunately, no one was seriously injured.*

be critically injured (=be very badly injured) *She was critically injured in a car crash two months ago and is still in hospital.*

be fatally injured (=when someone is so badly injured they die) *Three workers were hurt, one of them fatally injured.*

be slightly injured *The car turned over but, amazingly, he was only slightly injured.*

Grammar

These adverbs are usually used with **injure** in the passive.

NOUNS

injure your knee/ankle/back etc *I injured my knee playing football.*

injure yourself *You might fall and injure yourself.*

PREPOSITIONS

be injured in an accident/crash/fire etc *Her husband was injured in an accident at work.*

injury [Ac] n
a wound or damage to part of your body caused by an accident or attack

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + injury

a serious/severe injury *Bella suffered serious leg injuries in the accident.*

a minor injury *A man was treated in hospital for minor injuries.*

a head/leg/shoulder etc injury *Thomas suffered a shoulder injury while playing rugby.*

a terrible/horrific injury (=very bad and shocking) *Some of the victims had terrible injuries.*

a nasty injury *The player is recovering from a nasty knee injury.*

a fatal injury (=that kills someone) *Fortunately, her injuries weren't fatal.*

a life-threatening injury (=that may kill someone) *He remains in hospital although his injuries are not life-threatening.*

permanent injury *Even a minor blow to the head can cause permanent injury.*

internal injuries (=injuries inside your body) *He was coughing blood, a sign that he had internal injuries.*

multiple injuries (=many different injuries) *The man was hit by a train, and died of multiple injuries.*

a sports injury (=one you get while doing sport) *She has vast knowledge of treating sports injuries.*

an industrial injury (=one that happens at work) *Victims of an industrial injury can claim compensation.*

VERBS + injury

have an injury *Tom had just a few minor injuries.*

suffer an injury (also **receive/sustain an injury** formal) (=get an injury) *Her brother suffered a serious leg injury in a motorcycle accident.*

treat an injury *The injury was treated at the local hospital.*

cause an injury *The injury was caused by flying glass.*

recover from an injury *It took her six months to recover from the injury.*

escape/avoid injury *Two workers narrowly escaped injury when a wall collapsed.*

injury + NOUNS

injury problems BrE (=when a sports player has injuries) *He suffered injury problems throughout his career as a footballer.*

PREPOSITIONS

an injury to sth *He gave up skiing after an injury to his leg.*

through injury (=because of injury) *Beckham has missed several games through injury.*

PHRASES

do yourself an injury BrE informal (=accidentally hurt yourself) *Be careful with that knife or you'll do yourself an injury.*

innocence *n*

1 the fact that someone is not guilty of a crime

VERBS

prove sb's innocence *I am determined to prove my innocence.*

protest your innocence (=say firmly that you are innocent) *When the police interviewed her, she protested her innocence.*

maintain your innocence (=keep saying that you are innocent) *He has maintained his innocence and is appealing against his conviction.*

establish sb's innocence (=prove it) *Doesn't the man deserve a chance to establish his innocence?*

be convinced of sb's innocence (=be sure that someone is innocent) *I am convinced of her innocence – she isn't capable of such a thing.*

PHRASES

proof/evidence of sb's innocence *After her execution, proof of her innocence was found.*

ANTONYMS **innocence** → **guilt** (2)

2 lack of experience of life, or of knowledge of the bad things in the world

VERBS

lose your innocence (=used when you become aware of what the world is really like) *We've lost our innocence, but not our hope.*

ADJECTIVES

childlike/childish innocence (=which is typical of a child) *Jackson had a childlike innocence about him which was appealing to his fans.*

wide-eyed innocence (=used to emphasize how innocent someone seems) *I'm not sure the character's wide-eyed innocence is convincing.*

PREPOSITIONS

in my/his etc innocence (=used when someone did not realize the truth about a situation) *In my innocence, I assumed that everyone obeyed the rules.*

PHRASES

an air/look of innocence (=an innocent appearance) *The boy had a touching air of innocence.*

the innocence of childhood *There is no return to the innocence of childhood.*

innocent *adj* not guilty of a crime

VERBS

find sb innocent (=decide that someone is innocent) *He was found innocent of all the charges against him.*

declare sb innocent (=say that someone is innocent) *The jury declared him innocent and he was allowed to go free.*

prove sb innocent *Even if I'm proved innocent, my reputation will be ruined.*

plead innocent AmE (=say in court that you

did not commit a crime) *He pleaded innocent to the charge of theft.*

be presumed innocent *formal* (=be considered to be innocent) *A person is presumed innocent until proven guilty.*

In Britain, a person does not **plead innocent**. They **plead not guilty**.

ADVERBS

completely/totally innocent *She claims her son is completely innocent.*

PREPOSITIONS

innocent of sth *She was innocent of the crime with which she was charged.*

ANTONYMS **innocent** → **guilty**

innovative *adj* **THESAURUS** **new** (1)

inquiring *adj* **THESAURUS** **curious** (1)

inquiry (also **enquiry** *BrE*) *n*

1 an official process designed to find out about something

VERBS

have/hold/conduct an inquiry *The government is planning to hold an inquiry into the incident.*

launch/set up an inquiry (=start one) *Police launched an inquiry yesterday after a man was hit by a patrol car.*

ask/call for/demand an inquiry *Members of both political parties are calling for an inquiry.*

announce an inquiry *The committee is expected to announce an inquiry into deaths at the hospital.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + inquiry

an official/government inquiry *There will be an official inquiry into the causes of the riots.*

a public inquiry *MPs are demanding a public inquiry into the accident.*

an independent inquiry *The Labour Party is calling for an independent inquiry into the conduct of the police.*

a police inquiry *The case has been reopened with a police inquiry.*

a judicial inquiry (=led by a judge) *Some politicians are calling for a judicial inquiry into the affair.*

an accident/murder inquiry *The accident inquiry revealed that the accident had been caused by human error.*

PREPOSITIONS

an inquiry into sth *Will there be an inquiry into the plane crash?*

2 a question you ask in order to get information

VERBS

make an inquiry *The police are making inquiries in the area to see if anyone witnessed the incident.*

get/have/receive an inquiry *We've already had a lot of inquiries about the course.*

deal with/handle an inquiry *Staff will be available to deal with inquiries.*

answer an inquiry (also **respond to an inquiry** *formal*): *The company has not yet answered our inquiry.*

ADJECTIVES

a general inquiry *Reception staff can answer general inquiries only.*

a written inquiry *I made a written inquiry to the local council.*

PREPOSITIONS

inquiries about sth *We've received hundreds of inquiries about the new tax.*

inquiries from sb *Phone inquiries from members of the public come to this office.*

PHRASES

a flood/stream of inquiries *The special offer has produced a flood of inquiries from interested customers.*

inquisitive *adj* **THESAURUS** **curious** (1)

insane *adj* **THESAURUS** **crazy**

insect *n*

a small creature with six legs, such as a fly or an ant

ADJECTIVES

a small/tiny insect *The bird's natural diet mainly consists of small insects.*

a flying/winged insect *The air was filled with thousands of flying insects.*

VERBS

an insect flies *Insects were flying around the food on the counter.*

an insect crawls (=moves along the ground) *A tiny insect was crawling up his arm.*

an insect buzzes (=makes a continuous sound, like a bee) *In the forest, insects buzzed around our heads.*

insect + NOUNS

an insect bite/sting *He had a large red insect bite on his back.*

insect repellent (=a chemical to keep insects away) *If you go camping, you should take some insect repellent.*

inspection **Ac** *n*

an examination of something, usually to check that it is satisfactory

ADJECTIVES

a careful/detailed/thorough inspection *An architect will make a detailed inspection of the building.*

an official inspection *The school was preparing for an official inspection.*

an annual inspection *The building is due for its annual safety inspection.*

a routine inspection (=an ordinary one that happens regularly) *A routine inspection revealed that the machine was not functioning correctly.*

regular/frequent inspections *Restaurants are subject to regular health inspections.*

a full inspection *A full inspection of the site has been conducted.*

a brief inspection (also **a cursory inspection** formal) (=very quick and not very careful) *He gave the truck only a cursory inspection.*

a random inspection (=not done regularly, but at any time) *Random inspections are carried out on restaurants to ensure that they meet food hygiene standards.*

VERBS

do/make/carry out an inspection *Engineers had carried out an inspection on the plane.*

conduct/perform/undertake an inspection formal (=make an inspection) *Experts conducted a thorough inspection of the site of the crash.*

arrange/organize an inspection *The head teacher has arranged a uniform inspection.*

have an inspection (also **undergo an inspection** formal): *Boats carrying more than 12 passengers on international voyages must undergo an inspection each year.*

pass/fail an inspection *The shop will have to pass a hygiene inspection.*

complete/finish an inspection *When the inspection is finished, these forms must be filled in.*

an inspection shows/reveals sth *The inspection revealed several safety problems at the factory.*

NOUNS + inspection

a safety/health inspection *A safety inspection was carried out on the boiler system.*

inspection + NOUNS

an inspection visit *An inspection visit will be made by officials from the education department.*

an inspection team *The inspection team described the school as 'outstanding'.*

PHRASES

on close/closer/further inspection (=after examining something carefully) *On closer inspection, the painting turned out to be a fake.*

a tour of inspection (=an official visit to inspect something) *Building control officers arrived on the site for a tour of inspection.*

be available/ready for inspection *The troops are ready for inspection.*

inspiration ⁿ

a sudden good idea, or someone or something that gives you the idea

VERBS

get inspiration from sth *I got the inspiration for this dish from my holiday in Thailand.*

take/draw inspiration from sth (also **derive inspiration from sth** formal) (=get inspiration) *Many writers draw inspiration from old folk tales.*

find inspiration in sth *She often finds inspiration in nature.*

look for inspiration (also **seek inspiration** formal): *The artist sought inspiration in the medieval carvings in this cathedral.*

have an inspiration (=suddenly have an idea) *She had an inspiration while she was taking a walk.*

lack inspiration (=not have any good or interesting ideas) *He sat down to plan the party, but lacked inspiration.*

provide inspiration for sth *This landscape provided the inspiration for a famous children's book.*

sb's inspiration comes from sb/sth *Where did your inspiration for this design come from?*

ADJECTIVES

artistic/creative/poetic etc inspiration *Where do you get your artistic inspiration?*

a great inspiration *My mother was a great inspiration to me.*

a sudden inspiration *I had a sudden inspiration.*

fresh inspiration (=new inspiration) *Her travels provided fresh inspiration for her painting.*

direct inspiration (=in which someone takes an idea directly from a person or thing) *She took direct inspiration from the films of John Ford.*

divine inspiration (=inspiration from God) *He prayed for divine inspiration.*

PREPOSITIONS

inspiration for sth *Inspiration for the paintings came from a recent trip to New York.*

inspiration behind sth *Daniel Marks was the inspiration behind the show.*

an inspiration to sb (=giving someone ideas, confidence, or enthusiasm) *She's a wonderful teacher who has been an inspiration to many students.*

PHRASES

a flash/moment of inspiration (=a sudden good idea) *A sudden flash of inspiration came to him.*

a source of inspiration for/to sb *His success was a source of inspiration for many Africans.*

instance ⁿ

an example of a particular type of situation

ADJECTIVES

many/several instances (also **a number of instances**) *Several instances of theft from college buildings have been reported recently.*

countless/numerous/innumerable instances (=a very large number) *Countless instances of human rights abuses have occurred.*

a few instances *There have only been a few instances of students being caught cheating in exams.*

a rare/occasional instance (also **an isolated instance** *formal*): The floods this month are unlikely to be an isolated instance.

the only instance/a single instance

Fortunately that was the only instance of racism I came across.

a particular/specific/certain instance He couldn't think of any specific instances when she had been behaving strangely.

VERBS

give/provide an instance of sth History has provided many instances where technology has changed the way we communicate.

remember/recall an instance I remember an instance when he turned up two hours late for work.

an instance occurs *formal*: Whenever an instance of bullying occurs, it is taken very seriously by the college authorities.

PHRASES

for instance (=used when giving an example) We need to rethink the way we consume energy. Take, for instance, our approach to transport.

in this instance In this instance I think she was mistaken.

in one instance In one instance, a man was arrested for the theft of a bottle of whiskey from a liquor shop.

instinct ⁿ

a natural tendency to behave in a particular way or a natural ability to know something

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + instinct

a basic instinct The will to survive is the most basic instinct that we have.

sb's gut instinct (=one that you feel sure is right, although you have no reason for this) Her gut instinct about Jimmy had been right – he was a liar.

sb's first/initial instinct His first instinct was to run away.

a natural instinct I thought I could find my way back using my natural instinct.

a deep/strong/powerful instinct A deep instinct told me not to trust him.

human/animal instinct It's a natural human instinct to comfort someone who is unhappy.

the maternal instinct (=the instinct of a mother) Your maternal instinct makes you want to care for a baby.

VERBS

trust/rely on your instinct(s) I've trusted my instincts in the past and they've usually been right.

follow/obey your instinct(s) (also **go on your instincts** *informal*): You should follow your instincts when dealing with strangers.

have an instinct She has a good instinct for business.

your instinct tells you sth Every instinct told her that he was not to be trusted.

institution ^{[Ac] n}

a large organization such as a bank, university, or church

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + institution

a national/international institution Many national institutions and private galleries organize exhibitions of foreign works of art.

a financial/economic/banking institution They had received loans from several financial institutions.

a government/state institution Once in power, the armed forces immediately abolished all state institutions.

a large/major/important institution He has held key roles at major banking institutions.

a powerful institution The Catholic Church is the most powerful institution in the country.

a prestigious/venerable institution (=a respected institution) Its students were routinely accepted at Harvard and other prestigious institutions.

an academic/educational institution It was the first academic institution in Britain to offer a degree course in golf.

a scientific/research institution One of the UK's major scientific institutions, the Royal Society, was founded in 1660.

a political/cultural institution Each state has its own political institutions.

a religious institution Religious institutions such as monasteries were extremely powerful at that time.

a public/private institution Public institutions are suffering cutbacks.

VERBS

found/set up an institution The institution was founded in 1919 by Henry Huntington.

fund an institution (=provide the money for it) The College is a publicly funded institution.

instruction ^{[Ac] n}

1 written information that tells you how to do or use something

Grammar

Usually plural in this meaning, except when used before another noun.

VERBS

follow the instructions (=do what they tell you to do) You should follow the instructions on the packet.

read the instructions Always read the instructions before switching on the machine.

come with instructions The tent comes with instructions on how to put it up.

the instructions say sth (also **the instructions tell you to do sth**) *The instructions say that you should take the tablets after meals.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + instruction

clear instructions *The instructions that I got with the phone weren't very clear.*

detailed instructions *There are detailed instructions on the back of the box.*

written instructions *Each member of the team was issued with written instructions.*

full/comprehensive instructions (=very detailed) *There are comprehensive instructions for completing the new tax form.*

step-by-step instructions (=giving details of each thing you should do in order) *This book gives step-by-step instructions for making curtains.*

the manufacturer's instructions (=given by the company that made something) *Make up the mixture according to the manufacturer's instructions.*

the operating instructions *The operating instructions have been simplified so that they are easier to follow.*

instruction + NOUNS

an instruction book/manual *The instruction manual for the camera is over 150 pages long.*

an instruction booklet/leaflet/sheet *The washing machine comes with an instruction leaflet.*

PREPOSITIONS

instructions on (doing) sth *He gave us clear instructions on opening the parachute.*

instructions for (doing) sth *Where are the instructions for the printer?*

2 a statement telling someone what they must do

Grammar

Usually plural in this meaning.

VERBS

give sb instructions/issue sb with instructions *I gave him clear instructions not to spend any more money.*

follow/obey instructions (also **act on instructions**) (=do what someone tells you to do) *It was not my decision; I was simply following instructions.*

disobey/disregard sb's instructions *I was angry because she had deliberately disobeyed my instructions.*

leave instructions *He left strict instructions saying that he was not to be disturbed.*

receive instructions *The lawyer has received no instructions from his client.*

await instructions formal (=wait for someone to give you instructions) *The staff are awaiting instructions from the manager.*

ADJECTIVES

specific/explicit instructions (=clear and giving details) *I gave you explicit instructions about where to leave the package.*

strict instructions (=which must be followed) *Workers have received strict instructions not to speak to journalists.*

further instructions (=more instructions) *We were told to go home and await further instructions.*

PREPOSITIONS

instructions from sb *Military leaders have received no instructions from the president.*

be under instructions to do sth (=someone has told you that you must do something) *The players are under instructions to drink no alcohol for the next two weeks.*

instructor Ac n

someone who teaches a sport or practical skill

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + instructor

a qualified instructor *She is a qualified aerobics instructor.*

a driving/riding/swimming/flying etc instructor *Her driving instructor told her she was driving too fast.*

a ski instructor *The ski instructor showed them how to go down the ski slope.*

an aerobics/yoga/fitness instructor *She now has her own personal fitness instructor.*

instrument n

an object used for producing music, such as a piano or violin

VERBS

play an instrument *Can you play a musical instrument?*

learn to play an instrument (also **learn an instrument**) *All students at the school have the opportunity to learn an instrument.*

tune an instrument (=make small changes so that it plays exactly the right notes) *The members of the orchestra were tuning their instruments before the concert.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + instrument

a musical instrument *She owns a shop that sells musical instruments.*

a wind/woodwind instrument (=such as a flute or saxophone) *I like the sound of flutes and other wind instruments.*

a brass instrument (=such as a trumpet or trombone) *The tuba is the deepest of the brass instruments.*

a string/stringed instrument *He plays the violin and some other string instruments.*

an electronic instrument *An electronic instrument requires no tuning.*

THESAURUS: instrument

implement, instrument, utensil, gadget →
tool (1)

insult *n*

a remark or action that is offensive or deliberately rude

VERBS

shout/hurl insults at sb He was drunk and started shouting insults at us.

take sth as an insult (=think it is an insult) He took the comparison to the older writer as an insult.

mean sth as an insult I didn't mean it as an insult.

people trade/exchange insults (=insult each other) Supporters of both sides traded insults.

ADJECTIVES

a personal insult He took my remark as a personal insult.

a great/terrible insult In their culture, it is a great insult to refuse food that is offered to you.

the ultimate/worst/greatest insult Being called weak was the ultimate insult.

a deliberate/calculated insult It was a deliberate insult, and I will never forgive him for it.

a racial/racist insult Racial insults in sport will not be tolerated.

PREPOSITIONS

an insult to sb/sth Not preparing properly is an insult to your audience.

PHRASES

an exchange of insults The fight between the two men began with an exchange of insults.

The final insult

You use this phrase about the last and most annoying of a series of things that happened to you: **The final insult** was that they later claimed they had never received my complaint.

insurance *n*

an arrangement in which a company pays you money if something bad happens

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + insurance

health/medical insurance Many families cannot afford private health insurance.

life insurance (=paid to someone's family when they die) When her husband died, she discovered that he had no life insurance.

travel insurance The bank can also arrange travel insurance.

car/motor insurance He was fined for driving without motor insurance.

house/home insurance The damage may be covered by your house insurance.

VERBS

have insurance Do you have insurance for your boat?

get/take out insurance (=buy insurance) It is wise to take out insurance on your house and its contents.

claim on your insurance (=ask an insurance company to pay for something) She has never claimed on her car insurance.

insurance covers sth (=it includes something) Flood damage isn't covered by the insurance.

insurance pays for sth His insurance paid for the damage to the car.

insurance + NOUNS

an insurance policy (=an insurance agreement) Check if your insurance policy covers damage to cameras.

an insurance claim She filed an insurance claim for the missing jewellery.

insurance cover (=protection by insurance in case something happens) The scheme provides full insurance cover for medical conditions.

an insurance company They are one of the biggest insurance companies in the country.

an insurance scheme An insurance scheme is available in case you lose your job.

an insurance premium/payment (=money that you pay regularly to an insurance company) Your insurance premium must be paid when you book your holiday.

an insurance broker (=a person or firm that sells insurance to people on behalf of insurance companies) Speak to an insurance broker about the right policy for you.

intellectual ¹ *adj*

relating to the ability to understand things and think intelligently

NOUNS

intellectual ability Women were considered inferior in intellectual ability to men.

sb's intellectual development What factors influence children's intellectual development?

intellectual curiosity Learning by rote can kill students' intellectual curiosity.

intellectual activity/work All forms of intellectual activity were tightly controlled by the state.

intellectual freedom The universities were determined to defend their intellectual freedom.

intellectual life His work had a great influence on the intellectual life of Spain.

an intellectual level I knew I was not on the same intellectual level as her.

an intellectual challenge He enjoys the intellectual challenge of research.

intellectual effort Solving this puzzle requires a lot of intellectual effort.

intellectual² *n*

a well-educated person who is interested in art, science, philosophy etc at a very high level

ADJECTIVES

a leading/prominent intellectual (=important and well known) *The plan was supported by leading intellectuals and religious figures.*

a dissident intellectual (=who disagrees with government policies) *Odinga was among six dissident intellectuals who were arrested by the police.*

a left-wing/right-wing intellectual *A group of 150 left-wing intellectuals announced plans to form a Marxist party.*

intelligence **Ac** *n*

the ability to learn, understand, and think about things

ADJECTIVES

great/considerable intelligence *His mother was a woman of great intelligence.*

high intelligence *He was of high intelligence and did well at school.*

average/normal intelligence *The forms should be able to be understood by a person of average intelligence.*

low/limited intelligence *He claimed that most criminals were of low intelligence.*

quick intelligence *Miller was impressed by his quick intelligence.*

native/natural intelligence (=that someone has naturally, not as a result of education or training) *He had arrived in California with nothing but his native intelligence and capacity for hard work.*

VERBS

use your intelligence *People had to use their intelligence in order to survive.*

have the intelligence to do sth *He had the intelligence to wait to see what their reaction would be.*

show intelligence *The fact that the animal is using a rock as a tool to break the nuts shows intelligence.*

intelligence + NOUNS

an intelligence test *He achieved high scores on intelligence tests.*

PHRASES

be a sign of intelligence *Asking lots of questions is a sign of intelligence in a child.*

a man/woman of intelligence (=an intelligent person) *He was obviously a man of intelligence.*

intelligent **Ac** *adj*

having a high level of mental ability and good at understanding difficult ideas

NOUNS

an intelligent man/woman/boy/girl/person *He was a well-educated and intelligent man with a sharp sense of humor.*

an intelligent animal/creature *Pigs are very intelligent animals.*

intelligent life/beings (=from another planet or universe) *Do you think there is intelligent life elsewhere in the universe?*

an intelligent question/conversation/comment (=which shows you understand something well) *The students asked some intelligent questions.*

ADVERBS

highly/extremely intelligent *People who are highly intelligent are not always good team workers.*

THESAURUS: intelligent

clever especially BrE

man | woman | boy | girl | child | idea | way | trick | lawyer | politician

good at learning and understanding things quickly, and using your intelligence to do things. You also use **clever** about ideas and ways of doing something that seem effective and good:

"He's a very clever man, and a dangerous enemy," said Holmes. | The book is full of clever ways of saving money. | She had a clever lawyer at her trial, and was never punished for the murder.

Intelligent or clever?

Intelligent sounds more neutral and is used when talking about someone's level of mental ability. You say *Chimpanzees are highly intelligent animals* (not 'clever' ones).

You use **clever** about someone who is good at using their intelligence to do things. **Clever** is often used about someone who is also slightly dishonest. You say *a clever lawyer/politician* (not an 'intelligent' one).

You use **clever** about ideas and methods. You say *What a clever idea!* (not an 'intelligent' one).

smart especially AmE

guy | kid | move | idea

smart means the same as **clever**:

My boss is a pretty smart guy. | He's a smart kid who works hard. | Selling the shares was a smart move (=a clever thing to do). | Monroe was a smart cookie, even though she pretended to be dumb (=a clever person - an informal use).

Smart or clever?

These words mean the same. **Clever** is more common in British English. In American English, people usually say **smart**.

bright

student | **pupil** | **young man** | **young woman** | **boy** | **girl** | **child** | **kid**

intelligent. **Bright** is more informal than **intelligent** and is used especially about young people:

Helen was the brightest student in her year. | He is a bright young man with a great future. | Universities want to attract the best and the brightest.

You can also say a **bright idea**. This means a **clever idea**, but it is also often used ironically in the opposite meaning: *Whose bright idea was this?* (=this idea seems stupid)

brilliant

scientist | **scholar** | **mathematician** | **student** | **engineer** | **linguist** | **mind**

extremely intelligent and good at the work you do:

The research team is led by one of the world's most brilliant scientists. | He is a great writer, with a brilliant mind.

gifted

child | **student**

a gifted child or student has a high level of intelligence or natural ability:

Her son goes to a special school for gifted children. | Academically gifted students sometimes find it difficult to form relationships with people of their own age.

wise

man | **woman** | **decision** | **choice** | **move** | **precaution**

able to make good decisions and give sensible advice, especially because you have a lot of experience. You also use **wise** about decisions that seem sensible:

A wise man once said that all political careers end in failure. | I think you've made a wise decision. | Putting him in prison was not a wise move (=was not a sensible thing to do).

cunning

plan | **strategy** | **way** | **politician**

good at using your intelligence to get what you want, often by making secret plans or tricking people:

It was just a cunning plan to make people feel sorry for him. | Palin is a cunning politician. Even her enemies admit that. | He's a cunning old devil! (=a cunning person - an informal use)

brainy informal

intelligent and good at studying:

I wish I was as brainy as he is. | My sister is the brainy one in our family.

intend v

to have something in your mind as a plan or purpose

Grammar

Intend is usually followed by an infinitive: *He intends to stay there for a year.* In more formal English, people say **It is intended that...** *It is intended that these meetings will become a regular event.*

ADVERBS

fully intend to do sth (=definitely intend)

I fully intend to return home next year.

originally intend to do sth *We spent much more than we originally intended.*

clearly intend to do sth *The bomb was clearly intended to cause as much damage as possible.*

sb never intended to do sth *I'm sure that she never intended to hurt anyone.*

In more informal English, you often use **mean to**, especially when saying that something was not what you intended: *I'm sorry - I didn't mean to hurt your feelings.* When talking about your plans, you often use **going to** instead of **intend to**: *We're going to come back again next year.*

intense Ac adj

having a very strong effect or felt very strongly

NOUNS

intense pressure *The prime minister is under intense pressure to resign.*

intense competition *There is intense competition for places on the course.*

intense heat/cold *He could feel the intense heat of the desert sun.*

intense pain *She felt an intense pain in her right shoulder.*

intense feelings/emotion *Her lips trembled with intense emotion.*

intense dislike *I have an intense dislike of snakes.*

intense interest in sth *The police are aware of the intense media interest in the case.*

intense activity *There was a period of intense activity before the restaurant's opening night.*

intense debate/discussion *The war has become the subject of intense debate.*

intense scrutiny (=being examined very carefully) *The mining industry is coming under intense scrutiny over its environmental record.*

VERBS

become/grow intense *Fighting has become very intense in the south of the country.*

THESAURUS: intense

deep, powerful, intense → **strong (3)**

intention *n* what you are intending to do**ADJECTIVES**

sb's real/true intention *He had made the mistake of revealing his true intentions.*

sb's only/sole intention *Their sole intention was to make a profit.*

good intentions (*also the best of intentions*) (=intentions to do something good or kind, especially when the result is not good) *I'm sure you acted with good intentions.*

sb's original intention *My original intention was to write four books, but I ended up writing seven.*

sb's stated/declared/avowed intention (=that someone has stated openly) *Their avowed intention is to get rid of the government.*

the firm intention of doing sth *He returned home to Yorkshire with the firm intention of becoming a farmer.*

VERBS

state/express your intention (=say what you intend to do) *They expressed their intention to work together.*

announce/declare your intention *The actor has announced his intention to do more comedy.*

indicate/signal your intention *formal* (=show it) *Several celebrities have already indicated their intention of taking part.*

PREPOSITIONS

with the intention of doing sth *They bought the building two years ago with the intention of turning it into an art gallery.*

the intention behind sth *The intention behind this policy is to reach a wider audience.*

PHRASES

sb's intention is to do sth *Her intention was to start her own business.*

have no intention of doing sth (*also not have the slightest intention of doing sth*) *I have no intention of leaving my job.*

have every intention of doing sth (=definitely intend to do something) *He had every intention of marrying Maria.*

make clear your intention *The education minister has made his intentions quite clear.*

THESAURUS: intention

aim, goal, objective, the object of sth, the point, intention, ends → **purpose**

intentional *adj* **THESAURUS** deliberate**interest** *n*

1 if you have an interest in something or someone, you want to know or learn more about them

ADJECTIVES

great interest *The government has shown great interest in the idea.*

enormous/intense interest (=very great) *This tournament has created enormous interest.*

considerable/strong/keen interest *The results of the tests will be of considerable interest.*

special/particular interest *Natural history was a special interest of his.*

a personal interest in sth *He took a personal interest in the lives of his workers.*

renewed interest (=starting again after it had stopped) *There has been a renewed interest in the artist's work since her death.*

VERBS

have an interest in sth *Steve has a keen interest in birds.*

show an interest in sth *The child shows no interest in school.*

express an interest in sth (=say that you are interested) *Several film directors have expressed interest in the script.*

take an interest in sth (=be interested in something) *He first took an interest in golf when he was only six.*

arouse/generate/attract interest (=make people interested) *She is a young actor who has aroused great interest in Hollywood.*

lose interest in sth (=stop being interested) *I could see that she had lost interest in our conversation.*

maintain/keep up an interest in sth *After his retirement from the army, he maintained an interest in military affairs.*

feign interest *formal* (=pretend to be interested) *He feigned interest in her work just so he could spend time with her.*

interest grows *Interest in the show has steadily grown.*

interest wanes *formal* (=it becomes less) *After six months in the job, his interest waned.*

PREPOSITIONS

interest in sth *His interest in electronics helped him to get the job.*

out of interest (=because you want to know something, not because you need to know) *Just out of interest, what time did you leave the party?*

PHRASES

a lot of/a great deal of interest *There has been a lot of interest in the story.*

(a) lack of interest *The show was cancelled due to lack of interest from the public.*

2 things about something that make it seem good or interesting to someone

Grammar

In this meaning, you often say **of interest**.

PHRASES

sth is of great/considerable/huge interest *The book is of considerable interest to students of Indian culture.*

something/nothing/anything of interest

There was nothing of interest in the magazine.

much/little of interest *There is much of interest on the island if you like wild flowers.*

of special/particular interest *There is one item of news of particular interest to me.*

of scientific/historical interest *The discovery is of huge scientific interest.*

VERBS

hold no/any interest *Does the movie hold any interest for lovers of sport?*

add interest to sth *A few more flowering plants would add interest to the garden.*

lack interest *This is an important historical document but it lacks interest as a human story.*

3 the things that bring advantages or benefits to someone or something

Grammar

Often plural in this meaning.

ADJECTIVES

sb's own interests *All they are interested in doing is looking after their own interests.*

sb's personal/private interests *Wasn't he allowing his personal interests and prejudices to cloud his judgement?*

political/economic interests *Her political interests may have influenced her decision.*

sb's selfish interests *disapproving: He had put his own selfish interests before those of the group.*

VERBS

look after/protect/safeguard sb's interests *We need to look after our own interests first.*

consider sb's interests *The company didn't seem to want to consider the interests of the local community.*

PREPOSITIONS

against sb's interests (also **contrary to sb's interests**) *He would never do anything that was against the interests of his family.*

PHRASES

be in sb's (best) interests (=bring an advantage or benefit to someone) *It would be in your best interests to accept the offer.*

have sb's (best) interests at heart (=try to do things that are best for someone) *As parents, we have our children's best interests at heart.*

in the interest(s) of sth (=in order to protect something or make something happen) *In the interest of safety, smoking is not allowed in the building.*

sth is in the national/public interest *The government will only reveal the information if it is in the public interest.*

interested

adj

giving a lot of attention to something because

you want to find out more about it or because you enjoy it

ADVERBS

very/really interested *My friends are all really interested in music.*

deeply interested *Herschel was also deeply interested in chemistry and other scientific subjects.*

particularly interested *Scientists are particularly interested in observing changes in sea level.*

genuinely interested *A good teacher is genuinely interested in his or her students.*

keenly/passionately interested *The whole family are passionately interested in sport.*

mainly/mostly/primarily interested *He was mainly interested in modern art.*

only interested *Adam is only interested in one thing – making money.*

not (even) remotely interested (=not at all) *I was never remotely interested in listening to their problems.*

VERBS

seem/look/sound/appear interested *The doctor seemed interested – he wasn't just being polite.*

become/get interested *She got interested in flying when she took a ride in a small plane for her sixth birthday.*

get sb interested (=make someone interested) *My dad got me interested in golf.*

keep sb interested *It is difficult to keep students interested for two hours.*

PREPOSITIONS

interested in sb/sth *She became interested in the work of Dr Ludwig Schmitt.*

ANTONYMS interested → bored**interesting** adj

if something or someone is interesting, you give them your attention because they seem unusual or exciting, or provide information that you did not know about

NOUNS

an interesting book/film/programme *I saw an interesting programme about bees.*

an interesting story/article *There's an interesting article in today's paper.*

an interesting person/man/woman *He is one of the most interesting people I've ever met.*

an interesting question *The students asked some interesting questions.*

an interesting point/idea *You've raised an interesting point.*

an interesting example/case *This is a particularly interesting example of her work.*

an interesting experience *Travelling around India was an interesting experience for me.*

interesting results/findings *The report contained some interesting findings.*

an interesting feature/aspect *An interesting feature of the room is its circular window.*

ADVERBS

very/really interesting *The book sounds really interesting.*

particularly/especially interesting *This last statement is particularly interesting.*

quite interesting *His story is quite interesting.*

historically/geologically/architecturally etc interesting *The building is architecturally interesting because of the material it is built from.*

VERBS

find sth interesting *I found her talk really interesting.*

look/sound/seem interesting *Leigh's new movie sounds quite interesting.*

make sth interesting *Teachers need to make lessons interesting for students.*

PREPOSITIONS

interesting for sb *The film was interesting for me because I used to live in Japan.*

PHRASES

something/anything interesting *Is there anything interesting on television?*

sth makes interesting reading (=something is interesting to read) *The report makes interesting reading.*

the interesting thing is... *The interesting thing is that he wrote most of his poems before he was 20.*

nothing remotely interesting (=nothing interesting at all) *He had nothing remotely interesting to say.*

THESAURUS: interesting

fascinating

story | book | film | account | subject | place | history | collection | insight
extremely interesting:

The film is the fascinating story of Mary Shelley, the woman who wrote Frankenstein when she was only 18 years old. | The origin of words is an endlessly fascinating subject. | New York is a fascinating place to visit. | The book gives some fascinating insights into Picasso's life (=pieces of information that you did not know about).

intriguing

question | possibility | idea | story | aspect | results | mixture
interesting because of being unusual, mysterious, or unexpected, so that you want to find out more:

It's an intriguing question, but I'm not sure what the answer is. | This discovery raises the intriguing possibility that there may be life on other planets. | The book tells the intriguing story of a boy who was found in the desert. |

Their research has produced some intriguing results. | The buildings were an intriguing mixture of old and new.

stimulating

debate | argument | conversation | ideas | book | experience | environment
giving you new ideas or experiences in a way that is interesting and enjoyable:

The programme provided the basis for a stimulating debate. | Frude's book brings together a range of stimulating ideas. | I found the trip an enjoyable and stimulating experience. | Children need a happy and stimulating environment.

absorbing/engrossing

hobby | book | account | contest | game | task
interesting in a way that keeps your attention completely or for a long time. **Engrossing** is more formal than **absorbing**:

Cooking can be an absorbing hobby. | It's an engrossing account of his time in India. | He defeated Jones in an absorbing contest.

gripping/riveting/compelling

story | account | tale | drama | book | film | performance | contest
used about a very interesting story, film etc that you feel you must keep reading or watching. **Compelling** is more formal than **gripping** and **riveting**:

The book is a riveting story of love and power. | There's a gripping account of how the climbers got down from the mountain. | I couldn't put the book down - it was absolutely riveting. | The programme makes compelling viewing (=you cannot stop watching it).

enthralling

match | game | contest | experience | climax
very interesting and exciting - used especially about a performance you are watching or listening to:
Germany won an enthralling match by three goals to two. | Visitors to the show will find it an enthralling experience.

spellbinding

tale | story | description | performance
very interesting because of being so strange, unusual, or wonderful:
The book is a spellbinding tale of her life in China. | The actor gives a spellbinding performance.

Collocations with words meaning interesting

You can use the verb **find** with all of these words, when talking about your personal opinion about something: *I found it fascinating/intriguing/stimulating/absorbing etc.*

ANTONYMS interesting → boring

interference n

an act of getting involved in a situation where you are not wanted or needed

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + interference

outside/external interference (=from outside an organization, group, country etc) Most governments resist outside interference in their internal affairs.

foreign interference They should be allowed to choose their own government without foreign interference.

political/government interference We cannot tolerate political interference with the workings of the law courts.

unwarranted interference (=for no good reason) They should be free to do their jobs without unwarranted interference from the head office.

VERBS

resent sb's interference It was her case and she resented Baxter's interference.

not tolerate interference He has made it clear that he will not tolerate any interference in the way he runs the team.

PREPOSITIONS

interference in sth (=getting involved in something) He thinks there is too much government interference in people's personal lives.

interference from/by sb He blamed interference from neighbouring states for his country's problems.

without interference Journalists should be allowed to report without interference.

PHRASES

free from/of interference Such organisations must be free from government interference or control.

interminable adj THESAURUS long (2)

internet n

a system that allows millions of computer users around the world to exchange information

Punctuation

You can spell **internet** with or without a capital letter.

Grammar

You usually say **the internet**: I bought it on **the internet**. Don't say 'I bought it on internet.'

The exception to this is when **internet** is used before another noun: internet users | internet shopping

VERBS

use the internet He uses the internet for his work.

go on the internet I went on the internet to find some information for my assignment.

access the internet/connect to the internet You can access the internet from your mobile phone.

surf the internet (=look at different websites) She spends hours surfing the internet every evening.

search/rawl/scour the internet She immediately searched the internet for relevant information.

download sth from the internet I downloaded the file from the internet.

buy sth on the internet He bought the chairs on the internet.

internet + NOUNS

an internet connection You need a high-speed internet connection to play this game.

internet access (also **access to the internet**) Not everyone has internet access at home.

an internet address The company charges \$100 to register a new internet address.

internet shopping/banking Internet banking saves customers a lot of time.

an internet service provider Your internet service provider should be able to solve the problem.

an internet café The message had been sent from an internet café in Leeds.

PREPOSITIONS

on the internet You can find this information on the internet.

over/via the internet (=using the internet) A lot of business is now done over the internet.

⚠ Don't say 'You can pay bills by internet.' Say **You can pay bills online**.

The internet is often shortened to **the net**, especially in informal English. You can get the information off **the net**.

Instead of saying 'using the internet', you can say **online**: We do most of our shopping **online**.

interruption n

something that prevents someone from continuing to talk, or that prevents something from continuing to happen, usually for a short time

ADJECTIVES

constant/frequent interruptions She was distracted from her studies by constant interruptions.

numerous interruptions His speech was marked by numerous interruptions from members of the opposition party.

a brief/short interruption An electrical failure caused a brief interruption to production at the factory.

a temporary interruption There will be a temporary interruption to the email service as necessary maintenance work is carried out.

occasional interruptions The radio station plays music continuously with only occasional interruptions by an announcer.

further interruption(s) She hoped that she would be able to finish her work without any further interruptions.

a rude interruption He switched off his mobile phone to avoid any rude interruptions during the meeting.

an unwelcome interruption The impression she gave was that she had better things to do and that our presence was an unwelcome interruption.

VERBS

experience/suffer interruptions The airport has been experiencing interruptions in operations due to the bad weather.

avoid/prevent/reduce any interruption The police were determined to prevent any interruption to the president's visit by protesters.

ignore an interruption She decided to ignore the interruption and carried on speaking.

PREPOSITIONS

an interruption to sth What should I do if there is an interruption to my electricity supply?

without interruption She let him speak without interruption.

interval ^{Ac} n

the period of time between two events or activities

ADJECTIVES

at weekly/monthly/10-minute etc intervals The treatment may have to be repeated at monthly intervals.

at regular intervals Feed your dog small quantities at regular intervals.

at irregular/random intervals The banging continued at irregular intervals.

at frequent intervals (=often) The patients were checked at frequent intervals.

at fixed intervals In some countries, elections are held at fixed intervals.

a short/brief interval After a short interval, the woman returned carrying a box.

a long interval There was a long interval before the next course.

a decent interval (=a suitably long interval) He waited for a decent interval before asking her friend out on a date.

PREPOSITIONS

an interval of 4 weeks/6 years etc There was an interval of eight years before I had another exhibition.

an interval of time Memory of an event can

often improve after an interval of time has passed.

the interval between sth and sth The interval between taking and freezing the specimens was less than 30 minutes.

at intervals (=sometimes, not continuously) At intervals throughout the next months he worked on this material.

at intervals of 10 minutes/20 years etc Meetings were held at intervals of three months.

in an interval In that short interval, he had changed completely.

interview ⁿ

1 a meeting at which someone is asked questions in order to find out whether they are suitable for a job, course of study etc

VERBS

have an interview She has an interview next week for a teaching job in Paris.

go for an interview (also **attend an interview** formal): I went for an interview at a software company yesterday.

get an interview Only 5% of the applicants will get an interview.

be called/invited for (an) interview Applicants who are called for interview may be asked to have a medical exam.

carry out/do an interview (also **conduct an interview** formal) (=ask questions) The interview was conducted in French.

give sb an interview (=ask someone questions) We gave her an interview, but decided not to offer her the job.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + interview

a job interview Try to predict the questions you might get in your job interview.

an informal/formal interview Applicants will normally have an informal interview with the manager.

a mock interview (=one that you do for practice, rather than a real interview) Mock interviews are one way in which students can improve their job-seeking skills.

a telephone interview The first stage is a telephone interview.

interview + NOUNS

the interview panel (=the group of people interviewing someone) The interview panel were very impressed with her enthusiasm.

interview technique The book gives some useful advice on interview technique.

PREPOSITIONS

an interview for a job/post etc I have an interview for a job tomorrow.

at (an) interview She felt quite confident at the interview.

2 an occasion when someone is asked questions for a newspaper, magazine, television programme etc

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + interview

a newspaper/radio/television interview *She said in a recent television interview that she was enjoying life.*

an exclusive interview (=one that is given to only one newspaper, programme etc) *He gave the paper an exclusive interview.*

an in-depth interview (=one that finds out a lot of information) *This is his first in-depth interview since the death of his son.*

VERBS

do an interview *I have to do an interview with the principal for the school magazine* (=ask him or her questions in an interview). | *He's a very private person and rarely does interviews* (=answers questions in an interview).

give an interview (=answer someone's questions) *The minister agreed to give them an interview.*

carry out an interview (also **conduct an interview** formal) (=ask questions) *She had done her research before carrying out the interview.*

PREPOSITIONS

an interview with sb *He managed to get an interview with Madonna.* | *In an interview with reporters yesterday, he said he regretted his action.*

an interview for/with a newspaper/programme etc *He made the remarks in an interview for 'The Times'.*

intimidating *adj* **THESAURUS** → **frightening**

intolerance *n* **THESAURUS** → **prejudice**

intoxicated *adj* **THESAURUS** → **drunk**

intrepid *adj* **THESAURUS** → **brave**

intricate *adj* **THESAURUS** → **complicated**

intriguing *adj* **THESAURUS** → **interesting**

introduce *v*

to bring something into use or into a place for the first time

ADVERBS

sth was first/originally introduced *The programme was first introduced in 2004.*

gradually introduce sth *Try gradually introducing more healthy foods into their diets.*

quickly/rapidly introduce sth *Technical improvements are rapidly introduced.*

successfully introduce sth *Similar arrangements were successfully introduced in other prisons.*

PREPOSITIONS

introduce sth into/to/in sth *They are about to introduce the scheme into schools.*

introduction *n*

1 the first part of a book, essay, or talk

ADJECTIVES

a brief/short introduction *Each chapter begins with a brief introduction.*

PREPOSITIONS

in the introduction *Set out your intentions in the introduction.*

sb's introduction to sth *"It is the language that is the most important thing," says Anthony Burgess in his introduction to the book.*

2 something that gives general basic information about a subject

ADJECTIVES

a general introduction *'History of Music 1' is a general introduction to the subject.*

a good/useful/excellent introduction *He gives a useful introduction to business practice.*

PREPOSITIONS

an introduction to sth *This colourful book is an introduction to the geography and history of Russia.*

3 the act of bringing something into use for the first time

ADJECTIVES

the gradual introduction of sth *The government is planning the gradual introduction of tax increases.*

the recent introduction of sth *The recent introduction of wireless networks will mean easier access to information.*

the widespread introduction of sth *The widespread introduction of electric cars may simply transfer the problem of pollution somewhere else.*

PREPOSITIONS

with the introduction of sth *With the introduction of better street lighting, the number of accidents went down by 25%.*

introductory *adj* **THESAURUS** → **first¹**

invasion *n*

a situation in which the army of one country enters another country by force, in order to take control of it

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + invasion

a foreign invasion *The role of the military is to protect the country from foreign invasion.*

a military invasion *He warned the US against any military invasion of Cuba.*

a full-scale invasion *The operation became a full-scale invasion.*

a land/ground invasion *Some called for air strikes followed by a land invasion.*

an alien invasion (=by creatures from another planet) *a science fiction movie about an alien invasion*

VERBS

launch/mount an invasion *He feared that the Spanish king might launch an invasion.*
resist/repel an invasion *Could they successfully resist an invasion?*

invent ^v

to think of a new type of thing, or think of an excuse

NOUNS

invent the telephone/the wheel/the motor car etc *Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone in 1876.*
invent an idea/concept/theory *Newton was the man who invented the idea of gravity.*
invent a word/term/phrase/language *The word 'robot' was invented by a Czech writer.*
invent a game/sport *James Naismith invented the game of basketball.*
invent an excuse/reason *She didn't want to go to the party, so she decided to invent some kind of excuse.*

ADVERBS

newly invented *The first words ever spoken on the newly invented telephone were "Come here Watson, I want you."*

THESAURUS: invent

create
design | style | character | story | work of art | game | dish | product | look | world
to make or design something new and original:
Jacquie creates imaginative carpet designs in her London studio. | Picasso and Braque created a new style of painting, which became known as 'cubism'. | The character of Winnie-the-Pooh was originally created by A. A. Milne.

devise
way | method | system | strategy | scheme | technique | plan | test | program | solution
to invent a way of doing something:
Scientists devised a way of making energy from water. | They are hoping to devise a system that is fair for everyone. | He devised a simple solution to the problem.

come up with sth
idea | way | solution | plan | name | system | theory
to think of something, especially an idea or solution. **Come up with** is more informal than **devise** or **invent**:
It was Tony who first came up with the idea. | Scientists think they may have come up with a solution to the problem.

make sth up
excuse | story | song
to invent something, especially something that is not true, or is about imaginary things:

I made up an excuse and said that I had a cold. | The press are always making up stories about famous people. | He liked to make up songs for the children.

coin
term | word | name | phrase | expression | slogan
to invent a new word or phrase:
Apollinaire coined the word 'surrealism'. | William Gibson coined the phrase 'cyberspace' in his novel 'Neuromancer'.

fabricate
evidence | charges | allegations | confession | case | data
to invent things that are not true, in order to try to prove something:
Police officers later admitted fabricating evidence which was presented to the court. | The scientists were accused of fabricating their data about global warming.

dream sth up
idea | way | scheme
to think of an idea or plan that seems unusual or annoying. **Dream up** sounds rather informal:
Carrot ice cream? I wonder who dreamt up that idea! | Companies are constantly dreaming up new ways to sell us things we don't need.

invention ⁿ

a useful machine, tool etc that has been invented

ADJECTIVES

a new/recent/modern invention *The telephone was a recent invention then.*
a great invention *The internet is one of the world's greatest inventions.*
a wonderful/brilliant invention *The computer is a wonderful invention.*
an ingenious invention (=very clever) *No one knows who first made this ingenious invention.*
a technical/technological invention *In the textile industry, technical inventions produced an increase in output.*

VERBS

make an invention *Edison made a number of other important inventions.*
patent an invention (=get a special document which says that only you can use it) *He never thought of patenting his invention or trying to make any money out of it.*

PREPOSITIONS

an invention for doing sth *Thomas Edison's 1877 invention for recording sound was very simple.*

invest ^{Ac} ^v

to buy shares, property, or goods because you hope that the value will increase and you can make a profit

ADVERBS

invest heavily in sth (=invest a lot of money)
He had invested heavily in the bond market.

PREPOSITIONS

invest (money) in sth *Oliver made a fortune by investing in antique furniture.*

investigation ^{Ac} n

an official attempt to find out about something

ADJECTIVES

an official/formal investigation *Federal agents have begun a formal investigation of the company.*

a full/full-scale investigation *A full investigation of the incident was continuing yesterday.*

a thorough/detailed investigation *There will be a thorough investigation into why, and how, this accident happened.*

a criminal/police investigation *The bank faces a criminal investigation by the Department of Justice.*

an internal investigation (=by other members of the same organization) *An internal investigation revealed that executives received £19 million in unauthorized payments.*

a preliminary investigation (=the first investigation, when more work will be done later) *A preliminary investigation showed the man was hit by two bullets fired at close range.*

an ongoing investigation (=one that is continuing) *He will continue to assist the police in their ongoing investigation.*

further investigation *Further investigation revealed that the brake cables had been cut.*

VERBS

carry out an investigation (=do one) *The Health and Safety Authority carried out an investigation into the accident.*

conduct/perform/undertake an investigation formal (=carry out an investigation) *I am sure the police will conduct a thorough investigation and bring him to justice.*

launch/open an investigation (=start an investigation) *An investigation has been launched into the fire.*

reopen an investigation (=start it again, usually after a long time) *Detectives have reopened an investigation into the disappearance of the two men.*

order/demand/call for an investigation *Congress has recently called for an investigation of the use of these chemicals.*

close an investigation *Police said on Friday they have closed their investigation into the matter.*

PREPOSITIONS

an investigation into sth *The army are carrying out an investigation into the shooting.*

be under investigation (=being investigated) *Several politicians are under investigation.*

PHRASES

the outcome of an investigation (=the final result) *We are pleased with the outcome of this investigation.*

investment ^{Ac} n

the use of money in order to make a profit, or to get benefits in the future

ADJECTIVES

a good investment *Property is usually a good investment.*

a bad/poor investment *The shares turned out to be a poor investment.*

a big/major/massive/huge investment *Developing a new computer system is always a big investment for an organisation.*

a safe investment (=in which you are unlikely to lose money) *Electricity shares are still a safe investment.*

a wise investment (=very sensible) *A pension might be a wise investment.*

a risky investment (=in which you are likely to lose money) *If you cannot afford to lose any money, choose less risky investments.*

a long-term/short-term investment (=one that will give you profit after a long time or a short time) *Buying a house is a long-term investment.*

foreign/overseas investment *The government is eager to attract foreign investment to fund building projects.*

private investment (=investment by companies or people, not the government) *The government is hoping to attract private investment for the project.*

VERBS

make an investment (in sth) *We have made a huge investment in our website.*

attract investment *The company is trying to attract investment from overseas.*

stimulate/encourage investment *The government has cut taxes in order to stimulate investment.*

protect your investment *A company will want to protect its investment in training, and discourage employees from leaving.*

investment + NOUNS

an investment opportunity *The salesman said it was a unique investment opportunity.*

PREPOSITIONS

investment in sth *We need increased investment in public services.*

as an investment *He bought the painting as an investment.*

PHRASES

the (rate of) return on an investment (=how much profit you will get) *We expect a high return on our investment.*

invisible Ac *adj*

something that is invisible cannot be seen

ADVERBS

almost/nearly invisible *The thread is so thin that it is almost invisible.*

virtually/practically invisible (=almost invisible) *Tigers are virtually invisible in the thick jungle.*

totally/completely invisible *The pipes are laid inside the wall, making them totally invisible.*

VERBS

become invisible *As morning approached, the stars faded and became invisible.*

PREPOSITIONS

invisible to sth *The plane is invisible to radar.*

invisible from sth *Because the house was surrounded by trees, it was almost invisible from the road.*

PHRASES

invisible to the naked/human eye *Using a telescope, Galileo discovered stars that were invisible to the naked eye.*

invitation *n*

a written or spoken request to someone, inviting them to go somewhere or do something

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + invitation

a party/wedding invitation *He had a wedding invitation from Rob and Jen.*

a dinner/lunch invitation *Fred's wife has accepted the dinner invitation.*

a formal/official invitation *The president received a formal invitation to visit Nigeria.*

a personal invitation *Each parent was sent a personal invitation for the school's open day.*

a special invitation *We received a special invitation to attend a reception at the embassy.*

an open/standing invitation (=an invitation to do something at any time you like) *Phillip kindly gave me an open invitation to stay at his villa in Tuscany.*

VERBS

get/receive an invitation *Did you get an invitation to Janet's party?*

have an invitation *The following week, I had an invitation to give a talk in Cambridge.*

send (sb) an invitation (also **send out invitations**) *They must have forgotten to send me an invitation.*

give sb an invitation (also **issue/extend an invitation** formal): *He has issued an invitation to the Chinese president to come to Washington.*

accept an invitation *She accepted his invitation to dinner.*

take up sb's invitation/take sb up on their invitation (=accept someone's invitation) *I decided to take up Teresa's invitation and visit her.*

refuse/turn down an invitation (also **decline an invitation** formal): *She turned down an invitation to take part in a televised debate.*

thank sb for an invitation *I'll have to write a letter thanking Martha for the invitation to her wedding.*

invitation + NOUNS

an invitation card (=a card with an invitation printed on it) *Everyone entering will have to show an invitation card.*

PREPOSITIONS

an invitation to sth *She had an invitation to a party that Sunday.*

an invitation from sb *I received an invitation from my German pen friend to spend a week with her.*

at sb's invitation (=because someone has invited you) *He paid a visit to China at the invitation of the Chinese government.*

by invitation formal (=because someone has invited you) *We are here by invitation.*

PHRASES

a flood of invitations (=a lot of invitations) *He got a flood of invitations to appear on TV and radio shows.*

invite *v*

to ask someone to come to a party, wedding, meal etc

ADVERBS

formally/officially invite sb *The Pope has been formally invited to visit Ireland by the Irish bishops.*

kindly invite sb *She kindly invited me to come for the weekend.*

cordially invite sb formal (=in a friendly but polite and formal way) *Members are cordially invited to a special screening of the film on Monday evening.*

invite sb in (=ask someone to come into your home) *Mrs West invited her in for a cup of tea.*

invite sb over (also **invite sb round** BrE) (=ask someone to come to your house for a meal or a drink) *I rang a few friends and invited them over.*

invite someone out (=ask someone to go on a date with you) *He phoned to invite me out for dinner.*

invite sb along (=ask someone if they would like to go somewhere with you) *I invited Susie along to meet the director.*

invite sb back (=ask someone to come to your home after you have been out somewhere together) *I'd like to invite you back for coffee, but I have to be up early tomorrow.*

PREPOSITIONS

invite sb to a party/wedding/show etc *Are you inviting him to your birthday party?*

invite sb for dinner/a meal/a drink etc *Why don't you invite her for a drink at the club one evening?*

invoice *n*

a list of goods that have been supplied or work that has been done, showing how much is owed for them

VERBS

get/receive an invoice *After a month, he called to make sure they had received his invoice.*

send an invoice *Please send the invoice to me at our office in London.*

issue an invoice *When you issue the first invoice to a new customer, check that the name is correct.*

put in/submit an invoice (=give them to a company or organization, asking them to pay you money) *He submitted fake invoices and stole a total of £12,448.*

pay/settle an invoice *All invoices must be paid within a month.*

ADJECTIVES

an unpaid/outstanding invoice *They are taking him to court over an unpaid invoice.*

PREPOSITIONS

an invoice for sth *An invoice for the fees will be sent to you.*

involved *adj* **THESAURUS** complicated

irate *adj* **THESAURUS** angry

ironic (also ironical) *adj*

funny or sad because something happens that is the opposite of what you expect

ADVERBS

how ironic *"It was freezing cold in the desert." "How ironic!"*

somewhat/rather/a little ironic *The fact that he is seen as so typically English is somewhat ironic when you consider that he was actually born in the US.*

deeply ironic *Her colleagues find it deeply ironic that she should complain about other people's incompetence.*

particularly/especially ironic *Burning wood causes pollution, which is particularly ironic considering its natural origin.*

NOUNS

the ironic thing *The ironic thing is that I didn't really want to go to the party anyway.*

an ironic twist *In an ironic twist, the book he wrote about his job made so much money he was able to quit.*

irony *n*

the use of words that are the opposite of what you really mean, often in order to be amusing

ADJECTIVES

heavy irony *BrE* (=a lot of irony) *"Take your time. There's no hurry," he said with heavy irony.*

gentle irony *She pointed out with gentle irony that he was not in a position to criticize her.*

PREPOSITIONS

with irony *"Any more brilliant ideas?" he said with unpleasant irony.*

without irony *He told me, without irony, that everyone agreed with him.*

PHRASES

a trace/hint/touch of irony *Without a trace of irony, she told me she had done most of the work.*

irrational *Ac adj*

not based on a good reason

NOUNS

an irrational fear *She has an irrational fear of birds.*

an irrational hatred/prejudice *He had developed an irrational hatred of teenagers.*

irrational behaviour *BrE, irrational behavior* *AmE: His parents were becoming concerned about his increasingly irrational behaviour.*

an irrational belief/thought *Anxious people may have irrational beliefs about situations they fear.*

an irrational feeling *He had an irrational feeling that everything was about to go wrong.*

ADVERBS

completely/totally/quite irrational *These actions seem to me to be completely irrational.*

seemingly/apparently irrational *I finally understood the reason for his seemingly irrational behaviour.*

irrelevant *Ac adj*

not useful or not relating to a particular situation, and therefore not important

ADVERBS

completely/totally/entirely/utterly irrelevant (also **quite irrelevant** *BrE*): *His age is completely irrelevant. What matters is his ability to do the job.*

increasingly irrelevant *The country where a company is based is becoming increasingly irrelevant.*

largely irrelevant (=mostly irrelevant) *The precise timing of the meeting is largely irrelevant.*

VERBS

become irrelevant *People's social class is becoming irrelevant.*

seem irrelevant *The subject of pensions seems irrelevant to most teenagers.*

dismiss sth as irrelevant (=say that it is not worth considering something, because you think it is irrelevant) *The report's findings were dismissed as irrelevant at the time.*

consider sth irrelevant/regard sth as irrelevant *Nobody's feelings should be considered irrelevant.*

PREPOSITIONS

irrelevant to sb/sth *Politics is irrelevant to many young people.*

In spoken English, people often say that something **has (got) nothing to do with** what you are talking about: "What about the money?" "That **has got nothing to do with it!**" This use sounds a little informal and very strong.

In more formal English, people say that something **has no bearing on** another thing: *The court decided that the evidence **had no bearing on** the case* (=it had no effect on the case and should not be considered).

ANTONYMS **irrelevant** → **relevant**

irreplaceable *adj* **THESAURUS**
valuable (2)

irresponsible *adj*

careless in a way that might affect other people, especially when this could cause accidents or serious problems

ADVERBS

highly irresponsible (=very irresponsible)
Driving with tyres in this condition is highly irresponsible.

totally/completely/utterly irresponsible *The judge said that the company's behaviour was totally irresponsible.*

downright irresponsible *especially spoken*
(=extremely irresponsible - used when you feel very strongly about this) *Selling cheap alcohol to teenagers is downright irresponsible.*

grossly irresponsible (=extremely irresponsible - used when you think something will have a very bad effect) *It would be grossly irresponsible for any government to cut taxes, when the economy is in such a bad state.*

THESAURUS: irresponsible

clumsy, sloppy, reckless, irresponsible, thoughtless, tactless, casual, negligent → **careless**

irritated *adj* **THESAURUS** → **angry**

irritating *adj* **THESAURUS** → **annoying**

island *n*

a piece of land completely surrounded by water

ADJECTIVES

a tropical island *They had their wedding on a tropical island.*

a desert island (=a tropical island that is far away and where nobody lives) *It is a story about a man shipwrecked on a desert island.*

a remote island (=far away) *The islands were so remote that they could only be reached at certain times of the year.*

an uninhabited island (=one where nobody lives) *There are over a thousand uninhabited islands in the seas around Greece.*

island + NOUNS

an island nation (=a country that is an island)
An island nation such as Britain needed a powerful navy.

PREPOSITIONS

on an island *There are no motor vehicles allowed on the island.*

PHRASES

a chain/group of islands *Our destination was a chain of islands 60 miles east of Taiwan.*

issue *n*

a subject or problem that people discuss or argue about

ADJECTIVES

an important issue *The committee will meet this week to discuss the important issue of childcare.*

a key/major/big issue (=very important) *For most families, the big issue is cost.*

a fundamental issue (=basic and important)
Decisions still need to be made about some fundamental issues.

a political/social/economic etc issue *Students hold regular meetings to discuss a range of political issues.*

a difficult/complex issue *He was able to grasp complex issues quickly.*

a controversial/sensitive issue (=causing strong feelings and arguments) *They discussed the controversial issue of abortion.*

a thorny issue (also **a vexed issue** *formal*)
(=causing a lot of disagreement) *Immigration is always a thorny issue.*

a burning issue (=very important and urgent)
Transport is a burning issue for people in rural areas.

wider/broader issues (=more general) *This is a question that raises much wider issues.*

the underlying issue (=the cause of something) *This research explores some of the underlying issues related to high unemployment.*

an unresolved issue (=not yet dealt with) *A number of unresolved issues are preventing the groups from reaching an agreement.*

a topical issue (=important at the present time) *The magazine discusses topical issues in science.*

VERBS + issue

discuss/debate an issue *They met to discuss the issue of working conditions at the factory.*

raise an issue (also **bring up an issue**) (=mention it) Some important issues were raised at the meeting.

deal with an issue The school made a serious attempt to deal with the bullying issue.

address/tackle an issue The government must tackle the issue of knife crime.

decide/settle/resolve an issue The issue was settled after some tough negotiations.

face an issue (=accept that it exists and deal with it) Politicians seem reluctant to face the issue of child poverty.

avoid/evoke an issue (also **dodge an issue** informal) (=avoid discussing or dealing with it) There is no point in evading the issue.

issue + VERBS

an issue comes up (also **an issue arises** formal) (=people start to discuss it) The issue arose during a meeting of the Budget Committee.

an issue faces/confronts sb The high cost of education is just one of many issues facing students today.

an issue affects sb Fuel prices are an issue that affects private individuals and companies alike.

PHRASES

the issues surrounding sth This chapter discusses the ethical issues surrounding genetically modified foods.

a range of issues A range of issues were debated at the meeting.

sth is not the issue spoken (=something is not the most important problem or part) The price of the service is not the issue.

item [Ac] n

a single thing, especially one thing in a list, group, or set of things

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + item

a particular item The shop assistant can show you any particular item you are interested in.

a single/individual item This is the highest price ever paid for a single item of jewellery.

an essential/important item Salt was an important item in the Roman economy.

a household item (=something that you often use in your home) The shop stocks a wide variety of household items.

a consumer item (=something that people often buy) The government controls the import of hundreds of consumer items.

a luxury item Tea and coffee, once luxury items, began to be drunk by everyone.

the offending item humorous (=something that is causing a problem) I removed the offending item from my soup.

a collector's item (=something interesting or valuable that a collector would want to own) This record is so rare that it has become a collector's item.

stolen items The police have recovered most of the stolen items.

miscellaneous items (=of lots of different types) The cardboard box contained a number of miscellaneous items.

PHRASES

an item of clothing/equipment/furniture She still needs a few items of clothing for her trip.

an item of food (also **a food item**) The cupboard contained a few items of food.

an item of jewellery BrE, **an item of jewelry** AmE: Expensive items of jewellery should be insured.

an item on a list What's the next item on the list?

an item on an agenda (=one of a list of things to be discussed at a meeting) The next item on the agenda is the sales conference.

a range of items (=different types of items) Clay was used to make a wide range of items.

Jj

jail (also **gaol** BrE) *n*

a building where people are kept as a punishment for a crime, or while they are waiting for their trial

VERBS

go to jail *They're going to jail for a long time.*

send sb to jail *The judge sent Meyer to jail for six years.*

put sb in jail *The government would put him in jail if he stayed in the country.*

throw sb in jail (=put someone in jail) *Drunks were thrown in jail for a few days.*

get out of/leave jail *He got out of jail after five years for armed robbery.*

release sb from jail *More than 30 of those arrested were released from jail for lack of evidence.*

escape from jail *The killer has escaped from jail.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + jail

the local jail *The suspects were taken to the local jail.*

the town/city/county jail *He was held for 30 days in the county jail.*

a high-/top-/maximum-security jail *Some inmates at the high-security jail had been wrongfully imprisoned.*

jail + NOUNS

a jail sentence *He's serving a seven-year jail sentence.*

a jail term (=a period of time in jail) *He served only half of his three-month jail term.*

a jail cell *The suspect was found dead in his jail cell.*

PREPOSITIONS

in jail *He has been in jail for 14 years.*

out of jail *He has been trying to stay out of jail.*

PHRASES

spend time/six years etc in jail *Griffiths spent three days in jail after pushing a policeman.*

serve time/five years etc in jail (=spend time in jail) *He was finally released after serving 27 years in jail.*

jargon *n*

words used in a particular profession or by a particular group, which are difficult for others to understand

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + jargon

technical jargon *We try to avoid using technical jargon in our instruction manuals.*

computer jargon *In computer jargon, a SAN is a 'storage area network'.*

legal/academic/scientific/medical/military jargon *The letter was full of legal jargon that I didn't understand.*

incomprehensible jargon (=jargon that is impossible to understand) *Their conversation was just incomprehensible jargon to everyone else.*

PHRASES

be full of jargon *The instructions are full of technical jargon.*

jealous *adj*

1 feeling unhappy because someone has something that you wish you had

VERBS

be/feel jealous *Fathers sometimes feel jealous of the attention given to a new child.*

get jealous *Parents get jealous of their children.*

ADVERBS

really jealous *"I wish I could have a house like that," he said. "I'm really jealous."*

a little jealous/rather jealous *I was always a little jealous of my older sister.*

bitterly jealous (=extremely jealous) *They were all bitterly jealous of her because she had a face like a film star.*

sb is just jealous *spoken: He's just jealous because each time the telephone rings it's for me and not for him.*

PREPOSITIONS

jealous of sb/sth *His wife was jealous of his success.*

2 feeling unhappy because someone you love is attracted to another person

VERBS

get jealous *He gets very jealous of other men looking at me.*

make sb jealous *I let you think she was my girlfriend, because I wanted to make you jealous.*

NOUNS

a jealous husband/wife/lover *A jealous husband tried to kill his wife and her new lover.*

ADVERBS

insanely jealous (=extremely jealous in a way that seems crazy) *When he heard of her wedding, he was insanely jealous.*

Jealous or envious?

You can use either **jealous** or **envious** when saying that you wish you had something that someone else has. **Jealous** sounds a little more informal.

You only use **jealous** when saying that someone is unhappy because the person they love is attracted to another person. You say a **jealous** husband (not an 'envious' one).

jealousy *n* a feeling of being jealous

ADJECTIVES

pure jealousy *The remark was motivated by pure jealousy.*

petty jealousy *disapproving* (=about unimportant things) *He quickly discovered the petty jealousy of village life.*

bitter jealousy (=strong and angry) *She felt nothing but bitter jealousy for her rival.*

VERBS

feel jealousy *I didn't feel any jealousy when I met her ex-husband.*

cause/provoke/arouse jealousy *A partner's close friendship with a colleague can cause jealousy.*

PHRASES

feelings of jealousy *Children may have strong feelings of jealousy about a new baby.*

in a fit of jealousy (=because of sudden strong feelings of jealousy) *In a fit of jealousy, he broke off their engagement.*

jewellery *BrE, jewelry* *AmE* *n*

small things that you wear as a decoration, such as rings or necklaces

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + jewellery

gold/silver/diamond jewellery *She looked very elegant in her black dress and silver jewellery.*

handmade jewellery *The shop sells beautiful handmade jewelry.*

expensive/cheap jewellery *The star always wears expensive jewellery.*

costume jewellery (=jewellery that is not valuable but looks expensive) *The company sells costume jewelry for teenagers.*

antique jewellery *The thieves stole antique jewellery worth thousands of pounds.*

VERBS

wear jewellery *She likes to wear a lot of jewelry.*

make/produce jewellery *Sarah makes her own jewelry.*

design jewellery *The jewelry is beautifully designed.*

jewellery + NOUNS

a jewellery box *I keep all my rings and necklaces in a jewelry box.*

a jewellery designer *The brooch was made by a famous jewelry designer.*

a jewellery store (also **a jewellery shop** *BrE*): *The jewelry shop was robbed.*

PHRASES

a piece of jewellery (also **an item of jewellery** *formal*): *This necklace is a very unusual piece of jewelry.*

⚠ Don't say 'jewelleries'. **Jewellery** is an uncountable noun and is not used in the plural.

jigsaw *n*

a picture that consists of many pieces that you try to fit together, as a game

jigsaw + NOUNS

a jigsaw puzzle *She's very good at doing jigsaw puzzles.*

a jigsaw piece *One of the jigsaw pieces was missing.*

VERBS

do a jigsaw *I like doing jigsaws in the evenings.*

complete a jigsaw *He completed a 5,000-piece jigsaw.*

job [Ac] *n*

1 the regular paid work that you do for an employer

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + job

a part-time/full-time job *He had a part-time job in a restaurant.*

a temporary/permanent job *The job is only temporary, but I'm hoping it will be made permanent.*

a teaching/cleaning/engineering etc job *She was offered a teaching job at the local college.*

a well-paid/low-paid job *I used to have a well-paid job and a nice apartment.*

a steady job (=a job that is likely to continue) *I haven't had a steady job since last March.*

a good/decent job *If you work hard at school, you'll get a good job.*

a proper job *BrE* (=a good job that is likely to continue) *His parents wanted him to settle down and get a proper job.*

a high-powered job (=well paid and of high rank) *She had a high-powered job as a banker in London.*

a dead-end job (=low paid and with no chance of progress) *He had a series of dead-end jobs.*

a rewarding job (=one that makes you feel happy because you feel you are achieving something good) *She thinks that being a nurse is the most rewarding job in the world.*

an office job *She was fed up with her boring office job.*

a holiday job *BrE* (=done by a student during a holiday from school or university) *I once had a holiday job in a chocolate factory.*

VERBS

have a job *Mark doesn't have a job right now.*

look for a job *He left school and started looking for a job.*

apply for a job *I've applied for a job at the university.*

offer/give sb a job *After the interview, they offered me the job.*

get/find a job *Eventually, Mary got a job as a waitress.*

take a job (=accept a job you are offered)

I was so desperate that I took the first job that came along.

start a job *She will start her new job next week.*

do/carry out your job *The police officer said he was just doing his job.*

hold down a job (=keep a job) *He had never been able to hold down a job.*

leave/give up/quit your job *He gave up his job to look after his sick wife.*

lose your job *At least there's no danger of you losing your job.*

be fired/sacked/dismissed from your job (=lose your job, usually as a punishment) *He was fired from his job because of his drinking problem.*

create jobs *The government should encourage industry and create jobs.*

job + NOUNS

job losses/cuts *The factory is closing, with 600 job losses.*

job satisfaction (=the enjoyment you get from your job) *Levels of job satisfaction vary between departments.*

a job offer *He turned down a job offer from an American company.*

PREPOSITIONS

a job as sth *Wendy got a job as a receptionist in a dental surgery.*

in a job *He has been in the job for three years.*

out of a job (=without a job) *If the project fails, we're all out of a job.*

learn/be trained on the job (=learn skills by doing a job) *He doesn't have any cooking qualifications – he learned on the job.*

2 a particular thing that has to be done

ADJECTIVES

a hard/tough/tricky job *Bringing up a child is a tough job.*

an easy job *They had thought that building a shelter would be an easy job.*

a big job *It was a big job, and we only had three days to do it.*

a small/little job *I had some small jobs to do around the house.*

VERBS

have the job of doing sth *She has the job of carrying water home for her family.*

give sb the job of doing sth *I was given the job of dealing with customers' complaints.*

take on a job (=agree to do it) *He took on the job of looking after his little sister.*

do a job *They haven't got the tools they need to do the job.*

get on with a job (=continue doing it) *He quietly got on with the job.*

finish/complete a job *I am sure we can finish the job this week.*

PHRASES

do a good/great/fine etc job (=do something well) *I think our troops are doing a great job.*

make a good job of sth (=do something well) *He offered to cut our hedge, and made a good job of it.*

joke

something that you say or do to make people laugh, especially a funny story or trick

ADJECTIVES

a good/funny joke *I heard a really good joke the other day.*

a bad/terrible/feeble/lame joke (=not funny) *Dad was known for his bad jokes.*

a cruel/sick joke (=very unkind) *When I heard he had cancer, at first I thought it was some kind of sick joke.*

an old joke *It reminded me of the old joke about the chicken crossing the road.*

a dirty joke (=about sex) *A bunch of boys were telling dirty jokes.*

a practical joke (=that involves tricking someone) *He set off the fire alarm as a practical joke.*

an inside/private joke (=that only a few people who are involved in something will understand) *After I'd worked there a while, I started to understand some of the inside jokes.*

a running joke (=in which people always laugh when the same situation happens, or when someone says something) *It's a running joke in our house that my husband can never find his keys.*

VERBS

tell a joke (=repeat a funny story) *He was always telling jokes and making people laugh.*

⚠ Don't say 'say a joke'. Say **tell a joke**.

make a joke (also **crack a joke**) (=say something intended to be funny) *He was cracking jokes and seemed relaxed and happy.*

get a joke (=understand a joke and find it funny) *She never gets my jokes.*

laugh at sb's jokes *A few people laughed at his jokes, but some didn't find them funny.*

play a joke on sb (=trick someone to make people laugh) *John's always playing jokes on his brothers.*

share a joke (with sb) (=laugh at a joke with someone else) *They seemed to be sharing a private joke.*

swap jokes (=tell each other jokes) *They spent the evening swapping jokes and stories.*

PREPOSITIONS

a joke about sb/sth *She made a joke about his unusual name.*

as/for a joke *He pretended to be choking, as a joke.*

PHRASES

a joke falls flat (=people don't find a joke funny) *His practical jokes usually fell flat.*

sb can take a joke (=someone can laugh at jokes about themselves and not get upset) *Luckily he can take a joke.*

mean sth as a joke *I meant it as a joke, but she thought I was being serious.*

be the butt of a joke (=be the person a joke is made about, so that people laugh at you) *Somehow he'd become the butt of all his classmates' jokes.*

make jokes at sb's expense (=make jokes about them in a way that makes them seem silly) *He had the unpleasant habit of making jokes at his wife's expense.*

journal ^{Ac} n

1 a magazine for professional people or for people who have a particular interest

ADJECTIVES

a scientific/medical/technical journal *The results were published in the medical journal 'The Lancet'.*

an academic journal *She often writes articles for academic journals.*

a specialist journal *The paper was published in a specialist journal for engineers.*

a professional journal *The 'Nursing Standard' is a professional journal for nurses.*

a leading/major journal (=an important journal) *The study first appeared in a leading academic journal.*

a prestigious journal (=one that is very well respected) *Prestigious journals such as 'Scientific American' reported on the importance of this research.*

an international journal *They produce an international journal called 'Waste and Environment Today'.*

an electronic/online journal *The company publishes a free online journal.*

NOUNS + journal

a trade journal (=for people involved in a particular profession or business) *'The Bookseller' is a trade journal for people who are involved in selling books.*

a science/law journal *The article appeared in a Dutch law journal.*

a research journal *The department publishes its own research journal.*

VERBS

publish/produce a journal *The journal is published monthly.*

appear in/be published in a journal *The research has appeared in specialist journals.*

write (sth) for a journal *He's writing an article for a scientific journal.*

subscribe to a journal (=pay to have copies of a journal sent to you regularly) *The college library subscribes to several journals.*

journal + NOUNS

a journal article/report *I read a journal article about this study.*

THESAURUS: journal

journal, periodical, supplement, comic/comic book, fanzine → **magazine**

2 a written record that you make of the things that happen to you each day

VERBS

keep a journal *Darwin kept a journal of his voyage.*

write sth in your journal *"Another dramatic day", she wrote in her journal.*

ADJECTIVES

an online journal *Blogs are a kind of online journal.*

journal + NOUNS

a journal entry *He quoted a journal entry by Victor Hugo for December 1847.*

Journal or diary?

A **journal** is often written by a famous or important person.

journey n a trip

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + journey

a car/plane/bus etc journey *I often feel sick on car journeys.*

a long/short journey *They arrived tired from their long journey.*

a two-hour/forty-minute etc journey *It's a six-hour train journey from here to London.*

a six-mile/hundred-mile etc journey *The seven-mile journey down the river is an experience not to be missed.*

a difficult journey *It was a difficult journey, especially in the winter months.*

a dangerous/hazardous/perilous journey *They set off on the dangerous journey down the river.*

a safe journey (=used especially to wish someone a good journey) *Have a safe journey.*

a wasted journey (=not achieving the result you wanted) *To avoid a wasted journey, call first to check that the event is still on.*

an epic journey (=very long and eventful) *Lewis and Clark made their epic journey across the continental United States in the early 1800s.*

the outward journey/the journey there (=the journey to a place) *The outward journey seemed long and slow.*

the return journey/the journey back (=the journey back from a place) *The return journey was uneventful.*

VERBS

go on a journey (=travel somewhere, especially somewhere far away) *She doesn't like going on long journeys.*

make a journey (=go on a journey – used about a complete journey) *I still use my car, but now I make fewer journeys.*

begin/start a journey *He began the journey home across London.*

set off on a journey (also **embark on a journey** formal) (=start a long journey) *Before setting off on a journey, look at maps and guidebooks.*

break your journey (=make a short stop on a journey) *We broke our journey to have a picnic.*

continue your journey *We stopped for breakfast, then continued our journey.*

PREPOSITIONS

a journey to sth *The journey to work takes about an hour.*

a journey from sth *We started our journey from New York on May 1st.*

a journey across/along/around etc sth *The journey across Europe was long and hard.*

on a journey *We made many friends on our journey.*

PHRASES

a leg/stage of a journey (=one part of a journey) *We set off on the final leg of our journey.*

joy *n* great happiness and pleasure

PHRASES

be filled with joy (also **be full of joy**) *I was filled with joy at the thought of seeing her again.*

be jumping for joy (=be very pleased about something) *She tried to appear calm, but she was secretly jumping for joy.*

tears of joy *She began to cry again, but they were tears of joy.*

a feeling/sense of joy *A feeling of total joy swept over him.*

a look of joy *There was a look of joy on their faces.*

shouts/cries of joy *They greeted each other with cries of joy.*

ADJECTIVES

great joy *There was great joy in the town that day.*

pure/sheer/complete joy *The victory was a moment of pure joy.*

overwhelming joy formal (=very great joy) *He felt overwhelming joy at seeing her again.*

true/real joy *She is still trying to find true joy in her life.*

VERBS

give (sb) joy *His music has given people a lot of joy over the years.*

bring joy to sb (=make someone feel joy) *Her children have brought her great joy.*

feel/experience joy *I had never experienced such joy before.*

express your joy *It was nice to see the children express their joy so openly.*

PREPOSITIONS

joy at sth *The book describes the joy she felt at her children's happiness.*

to sb's joy (=used for saying that something makes someone very happy) *To my great joy, she agreed to marry me.*

judge¹ *n*

1 an important public official, whose job is to make decisions in a court

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + judge

a high court judge *A high court judge ordered that the men should be released.*

a federal judge AmE (=a judge in a federal court) *A federal judge ruled that the land belonged to them.*

a trial judge *The trial judge instructed the jury to ignore what the witness had just said.*

a senior judge *He is Scotland's most senior judge.*

the presiding judge (=the most important judge in charge of the trial) *The presiding judge refused to accept his claim.*

VERBS

a judge orders sth *The judge ordered that she should pay a fine.*

a judge rules (that)... (=says that this is what he or she has decided) *The judge ruled that there was not enough evidence to prove him guilty.*

a judge finds sb innocent/guilty (=decide that someone is innocent or guilty) *The judges found her innocent of all charges.*

a judge sentences sb to 6 months/5 years etc in prison (=says that someone must go to prison as a punishment) *The judge sentenced the men to three years in prison.*

a judge imposes a fine/penalty/prison sentence (=gives someone a fine or punishment) *The judge can impose a fine of up to \$1 million.*

a judge awards/grants sth *The judge awarded him £20,000 compensation.*

a judge hears a case/evidence/testimony (=considers it, in order to make a decision) *Three judges will hear the case.*

a judge throws out a case/the charges (=decides that there should not be a trial) *The judge threw out all the charges against him.*

a judge overturns/overrules sb/sth (=changes an earlier legal decision) *Two senior judges overturned the ruling.*

a judge dismisses/rejects sth (=refuses to accept something) *The judge rejected this argument.*

a judge instructs a jury (=advises the jury to do something) *The judge instructed the jury about the main legal points in the case.*

2 someone who decides who has won a competition

ADJECTIVES

an independent judge *The winner will be decided by a panel of independent judges.*

NOUNS + judge

a competition judge *The competition judges were impressed by her singing.*

VERBS

a judge awards (sb) a prize *The judges awarded him first prize.*

a judge decides sth *The judges decided that there were two winners.*

PHRASES

a panel of judges (=a group of judges) *Each competitor will cook their dish in front of a panel of judges.*

judge² v

to form or give an opinion after thinking carefully

PHRASES

sth is difficult/hard/impossible to judge *It is difficult to judge the size of the problem.*

judge sth a success/failure *The concert was judged a success.*

judge sth on its merits (=according to how good it is and nothing else) *The ideas should be judged on their merits, regardless of who suggested them.*

judge sth on the basis of sth (=using a particular thing to make your decision) *You can't judge someone's progress on the basis of a single exam.*

judge it best/better to do sth *The animal looked fierce, so I judged it best not to approach it.*

judge whether/if/how etc *It is impossible, at this early stage, to judge whether the experiment will work.*

judging by sth (=used for giving a reason for your opinion) *Judging by the smile on his face, I'd say he's had some good news.*

ADVERBS

judge sth objectively/fairly/impartially (=in a fair way, without being affected by your own personal feelings or interests) *Local people are worried that their protests will not be judged objectively.*

judge sb harshly (=in a severe or unkind way)

Do not judge her too harshly; she was very young at the time.

judge sth correctly *It takes a lot of experience to judge correctly how hard to hit the ball.*

PREPOSITIONS

judge sb/sth on/according to sth (=by considering something) *Candidates are judged on their performance on the day.*

judge sth against sth (=by comparing one thing with another) *Readers will inevitably judge this new book against her earlier novels.*

judgment (also judgement) n

1 an opinion that you form, especially after thinking carefully about something

VERBS

make/form a judgment *I prefer to form my own judgments, rather than relying on other people's opinions.*

come to/reach a judgment (=make a judgment after considering all the facts) *The tribunal will examine all the evidence before coming to a judgment.*

pass judgment (on sth) (=give your opinion, especially a negative one) *Our aim is to help him, not to pass judgment on what he has done.*

base your judgment on sth *His judgment was based on the information available to him at the time.*

reserve judgment (=wait to decide until you have all the facts) *Why don't you reserve judgment until you have finished the book?*

ADJECTIVES

a moral judgment *You should always be careful when making moral judgments about other people's behaviour.*

a snap judgment (=made very quickly) *In business, you often have to make snap judgments.*

a balanced judgment *He interviewed as many people as possible so that he could form a balanced judgment.*

PREPOSITIONS

in sb's judgment *In my judgment, we should accept his offer.*

a judgment about/on sth *We won't make a judgment about the treatment until we have seen the full results.*

PHRASES

against sb's better judgment (=even though you think your action may be wrong) *I lent him the money, against my better judgment.*

2 the ability to make sensible decisions

VERBS

use your judgment *Officers have to use their professional judgment when handling a violent situation.*

trust/respect sb's judgment *I trusted Ben's judgment, so I asked his opinion.*

question sb's judgment (=have or express doubts about someone's decision) *She's the doctor – why should I question her judgment?*

affect/influence sb's judgment *Hill sometimes allowed his personal feelings to affect his judgment.*

cloud sb's judgment (=make someone less able to make good decisions) *Don't let your friends' comments cloud your judgment.*

impair your judgment (=stop it being as good as it should be) *Alcohol impairs your judgment, making you take risks you would not normally take.*

show good/bad etc judgment *I think his decision to sue the newspaper showed really poor judgment.*

rely on/upon sb's judgment *Business people are used to relying on their own judgment when making decisions.*

ADJECTIVES

good/sound judgment *They demonstrated good judgment in their choice of captain.*

bad/poor judgment *He showed poor judgment in discussing the affair with the press.*

sb's political judgment *Her handling of the matter has led people to question her political judgment.*

sb's personal judgment *Sometimes you have to rely on your own personal judgment.*

PHRASES

an error of judgment *In trusting him, Ellie had made a serious error of judgment.*

a lack of judgment *Doesn't that show a lack of judgment on your part? (=show a lack of judgment by you)*

sth is a matter/question of judgment *How you decide to proceed is very much a matter of personal judgment.*

juicy *adj* **THESAURUS** *delicious*

jungle *n*

a thick tropical forest with many large plants growing very close together

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + jungle

dense jungle (=where trees grow close together) *The explorers walked through miles of dense jungle.*

remote jungle (=far from other places) *A new species of rat has been discovered in a remote jungle in Indonesia.*

tropical jungle *On the island of Timor there are large areas of tropical jungle.*

the Amazon/African etc jungle *The plane crashed in the Amazon jungle.*

PHRASES

deep in the jungle *They discovered a lost city deep in the jungle.*

junk *n*

unwanted objects that have no use or value

ADJECTIVES

old junk *The garage was full of old junk.*

useless/unwanted junk *I need to tidy the house and get rid of a lot of useless junk.*

household junk *Almost all your household junk can be re-used or recycled.*

PHRASES

a heap/pile of junk *There was a large pile of junk in the front garden that included an old cooker.*

a bit/piece of junk *The artist creates sculptures out of pieces of junk.*

jury *n*

a group of people in a court who decide whether someone is guilty or not

PHRASES

a member of the jury *Only three members of the jury were women.*

the foreman of the jury (=its leader, who announces its decision) *The foreman of the jury announced a guilty verdict.*

trial by jury *Defendants have a right to trial by jury.*

the jury finds sb guilty/not guilty (=says officially whether someone is guilty or not) *The jury found her not guilty of her husband's murder.*

the jury reaches a verdict (also the jury arrives at a verdict) (=decides if someone is guilty or not guilty) *The judge asked if the jury had reached its verdict.*

VERBS + jury

sit/serve on a jury (=be a member of a jury) *I've never served on a jury before.*

just *adj* **THESAURUS** *fair*

justice *n*

1 the system of judging people in courts of law and punishing criminals

VERBS

face justice *It is important that he faces justice for his crimes.*

escape justice (=escape being punished) *The thieves managed to escape justice.*

demand justice *The families of the murder victims are demanding justice.*

bring sb to justice (=catch and punish someone) *No one has been brought to justice for any of these killings.*

justice is done (=a case is judged fairly in a court of law, especially with the result that the person who committed a crime is punished) *We want to see that justice is done.*

administer/dispense justice *formal* (=to judge cases and decide if someone should be punished) *In wartime, the courts were closed and*

it was impossible to administer justice in the normal way.

obstruct justice (=prevent a case from being judged fairly, usually by lying or hiding evidence) *She was charged with obstructing justice by lying to the police.*

justice + NOUNS

the justice system *The criminal justice system is in need of reform.*

the justice minister *The justice minister confirmed that a total of 5,200 prisoners had been released.*

the justice department *The Justice Department believes that it has now caught everybody involved in the fraud.*

PHRASES

a miscarriage of justice *formal* (=an occasion when justice is not done and someone is unfairly punished) *His lawyer claims that he is the victim of a miscarriage of justice and he was denied a fair trial.*

pervert the course of justice *formal* (=prevent justice from being done by lying, hiding evidence etc) *The men are accused of attempting to pervert the course of justice by threatening witnesses.*

2 fairness in the way people are treated

ADJECTIVES

social justice (=fair treatment for everyone in society, both rich and poor) *The government aims to improve social justice by providing better schools in poor neighbourhoods.*

rough justice (=punishment that is not decided in court in the usual legal way, and that is often severe or unfair) *Gangs practise a kind of rough justice on their members.*

poetic justice (=a situation in which something bad happens to someone, but they deserve it because they have done something bad) *After the way he treated her, it's poetic justice that she left him.*

PHRASES

a sense of justice *He has a strong sense of justice, and feels that people who work hard should be rewarded for their efforts.*

justification [Ac] n

a good and acceptable reason for doing something

PHRASES

there is no/little justification for doing sth *There is no justification for holding her in jail.*

use sth as a justification *The terrorists try to use religion as a justification for their crimes.*

with some justification *Hoggart felt, with some justification, that his friends had let him down.*

VERBS

provide/give/offer a justification *The company failed to provide a justification for its actions.*

see/find justification *I can see little justification for most of the changes.*

need justification (also **require justification formal**): *Spending money on such a project will require justification.*

ADJECTIVES

sufficient justification (=a good enough reason) *You can't put someone in prison without sufficient justification.*

ample justification (=more than enough good reasons) *If she was angry, she had ample justification.*

a reasonable/rational justification *He could provide no rational justification for his change of mind.*

legal/economic/scientific justification *I see no economic justification for investing in new equipment.*

moral justification *There was no moral justification for the war.*

theoretical justification (=theories that give a reason) *The article examines theoretical justifications for capital punishment.*

the main justification *The main justification for this policy is that it will save money.*

the only justification *He believed that profit was the only justification for being in business.*

further justification *He doesn't need to give any further justification of his decision.*

a possible justification *What possible justification can there be for sacking her?*

PREPOSITIONS

without justification *Police officers cannot stop and search people without justification.*

justification for sth *There is no justification for this belief.*

justification of sth *This gives a justification of the method used.*

juvenile adj **THESAURUS** young

Kk

keen *adj* **THESAURUS** **enthusiastic**

keep (on) doing sth *v* **THESAURUS**
continue (1)

key¹ *n*

1 a shaped piece of metal that fits into a lock to open a door etc

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + key

a door/house key *I can't find my house keys.*

car keys *She left her car keys on the hall table.*

the ignition key (=the key that starts an engine) *She turned the ignition key and drove slowly away.*

a spare key *She hides her spare key under the doormat.*

VERBS

put the key in a lock/door (also **insert the key** formal): *I put the key in the lock and opened the door.*

turn the key *He climbed into his car and turned the key.*

PHRASES

a bunch/set of keys (=a group of keys kept together) *He had a huge bunch of keys hanging from his belt.*

get a key cut (=have a key made) *I got another key cut for my brother.*

2 a button that you press on a computer keyboard

NOUNS + key

the return/shift/control etc key *Use the Return key to move the cursor down to the next line.*

VERBS

press/hit a key *Press the Delete key to get rid of a word you have typed.*

hold down a key *Hold down the Control key while you press the Function key.*

3 the thing that makes something possible or successful

VERBS

hold/have the key (=be the person or thing that brings success) *He's the player who holds the key to victory in the World Cup.*

PREPOSITIONS

the key to sth *Money still seems to be the key to success in American politics.*

key² *adj* very important

NOUNS

a key factor *The weather could be a key factor in tomorrow's game.*

a key element/feature/component *Advertising is a key element in the success of a product.*

a key role/part *The captain played a key role in the team's winning season.*

a key area *What are the key areas of the government's economic policy?*

a key issue/question/point *The environment became a key issue during the election.*

a key figure (=person) *Adams was a key figure in the company's success.*

a key player (=a person, organization etc that has a very important role in a situation, or an important player in a team) *Germany is a key player within the EU.*

a key witness (=someone who can give important information about a crime) *She will be a key witness in the murder trial.*

a key decision *Women made most of the key decisions about money in these families.*

ADVERBS

absolutely key *For any business to succeed, timing is absolutely key.*

clearly/obviously key *His good looks have obviously been key to his success.*

PREPOSITIONS

key to sth *Finding a safe place to live is key to survival for these animals.*

THESAURUS: key

big, significant, major, notable, key, essential, vital, crucial/critical, paramount, historic, landmark, momentous → **important (1)**

top, key, leading, influential, prominent, valued → **important (2)**

kick¹ *v*

to hit something or someone with your foot

ADVERBS

kick sb/sth hard *Her brother kicked her leg hard under the table.*

kick sb/sth repeatedly *He had been repeatedly kicked as he lay on the ground.*

NOUNS

kick a ball/football *Billy was kicking a ball around the yard.*

kick the door down/open (=force it to open by kicking) *The police had to kick the door down.*

kick off your shoes *She kicked off her shoes and sat down.*

kick² *n*

an act of hitting something with your foot, or a movement of your leg that is like that

ADJECTIVES

- a good/hard kick** (=with a lot of force) *The machine only works if you give it a good kick.*
- a swift kick** (=done quickly and with force) *She gave me a swift kick on the shins.*
- a well-aimed kick** *He was knocked over by a well-aimed kick to his chest.*

VERBS

- give sth a kick** *He gave the door a kick.*
- get a kick** *While trying to get the ball, he got a kick on the ankle.*

kid *n* informal a child

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + kid

- a young kid** *She has two young kids.*
- a little kid** (=a very young child) *He lived in Los Angeles when he was a little kid.*
- a school kid** *A group of school kids were being shown around the museum.*
- a four-year-old/a five-year-old etc kid** *Even a four-year-old kid knows that.*

VERBS

- raise a kid** (=look after a child) *After his wife died, he had to raise the kids on his own.*

PHRASES

- a wife and kids** *He had a wife and kids to support.*
- be just a kid** *She was just a kid and didn't know that she was doing anything wrong.*

kill *v* to make someone die

NOUNS

- kill a man/woman/person** *Police officers shot and killed a man in Los Angeles.*
- kill an animal/insect/plant** *I believe it is wrong to kill any animal.*
- kill germs/bacteria/cancer cells** *If you boil the water it will kill all the bacteria.*
- kill yourself** *She tried to kill herself by taking an overdose of sleeping tablets.*

ADVERBS

- deliberately/accidentally kill sb** *He accidentally killed one of his patients by giving them the wrong medicine.*
- slowly kill sb** *The disease was slowly killing him.*
- kill sb/sth humanely** (=in a way that does not cause unnecessary suffering) *Does it matter if a murderer is killed humanely?*
- kill sb unlawfully** formal (=illegally) *The journalist was unlawfully killed by US troops.*
- be tragically killed** (=used when this is very sad) *His son was tragically killed in a plane crash.*
- be killed instantly** (=immediately) *The driver of the car was killed instantly.*
- be needlessly killed** (=in a way that is unnecessary) *Our soldiers are being needlessly killed, in a war which cannot be won.*

kill (sb) indiscriminately formal (=without caring which person dies) *The terrorists kill indiscriminately.*

Be killed

Kill is often used in the passive, when saying that someone dies: *One **soldier** was **killed** and another seriously injured.*

THESAURUS: kill

murder

to deliberately kill someone – used when talking about this as a crime:
He was found guilty of murdering his wife. | Watson was brutally murdered by robbers in his own home.

assassinate

president | prime minister | king | leader | politician | judge
to deliberately kill an important person:
The president was assassinated on 22nd November 1963 in Dallas. | He was part of a plot to assassinate Hitler.

execute (also put sb to death)

prisoner | criminal | murderer | killer
to kill someone as a punishment for a crime:
85 prisoners were executed in the US in 2000. | McVeigh, who killed 168 people in a bombing attack, was executed by lethal injection.

slay

to kill someone or something in a violent way. **Slay** is an old-fashioned word which is used in old stories and in news reports:
The king was slain at the Battle of Hastings. | St George slew the dragon. | The victims were slain in their beds.

to kill a large number of people

massacre

to kill a large number of people in a violent way:
Hundreds of demonstrators were massacred in the city's main square. | The soldiers massacred men, women, and children.

slaughter

to kill animals for food, or to kill a large number of people in a cruel and violent way:
The pigs are slaughtered on the farm. | It is estimated that half a million people were slaughtered.

exterminate

to kill large numbers of a particular group of people or animals, so that they no longer exist:
The Nazis exterminated six million Jews. | They want to exterminate all the rats from the building.

wipe out

to kill all of a group of people, animals, or plants. **Wipe out** is more informal than **exterminate**.
Whole villages were wiped out. | It was not long before the species was wiped out.

to kill yourself

commit suicide

to kill yourself:
He tried to commit suicide after the death of his girlfriend.

take your own life

to kill yourself:
Ian Curtis tragically took his own life in 1980, after recording the song 'Love will tear us apart'. | Some people believe that it is a sin to take your own life.

Take your own life or commit suicide?

Take your own life sounds rather formal, and shows a feeling of sympathy for the person who died. **Commit suicide** sounds more neutral. **Take your own life** is also often used in moral discussions.

kind¹ n

one of the different types of a person or thing that belong to the same group

ADJECTIVES

- all kinds/every kind of** *You can buy all kinds of fruit at the market.*
- different kinds of** *The flowers attract many different kinds of insects.*
- the same kind of** *We both have the same kind of car.*
- some kind of** *Carved into the stone was some kind of design.*
- (of) any kind** *There was no television, no radio – no technology of any kind.*
- the right/wrong kind of** *It isn't the right kind of course for me.*
- the best/worst kind of** *The best kind of teaching is when the teacher also gets to learn from her students.*
- a certain/particular/specific kind of** *Certain kinds of cancer can be treated with drugs.*
- various kinds** *Students have to read various kinds of literature, including novels, plays, and poetry.*

ADVERBS

precisely/exactly the kind of *This was precisely the kind of advice she needed.*

PREPOSITIONS

a kind of sth *A vihuela is a kind of small guitar.*

PHRASES

what kind of *What kind of sandwich would you like?*

- of its kind** *It is the biggest shopping centre of its kind in the country.*
- of this kind** *How can we be sure a disaster of this kind will not happen again?*
- of the worst/best etc kind** *This is hypocrisy of the worst kind.*
- that kind of thing** *She usually wears trainers and jeans, that kind of thing.*

kind² adj

saying or doing things that show that you care about other people and want to help them or make them happy

NOUNS

- a kind man/woman/person** *The priest was a kind man and he took the trouble to sit and talk to her.*
- a kind face/smile** *The old lady had a kind face and gentle blue eyes.*
- kind words** *Thank you for your kind words about the magazine – I'm glad you like it.*
- a kind offer/invitation/gift** *Jenny wrote to say that she would be delighted to accept their kind offer.*
- a kind thing** *It was a kind thing to say.*
- a kind letter** *We cannot thank you all enough for the kind letters of support.*

ADVERBS

- extremely/incredibly/really kind** *The staff were really kind to me and they made me feel that they genuinely cared.*
- most kind** (=very kind – used when thanking someone politely) *Thank you for your help. You've been most kind.*

PREPOSITIONS

- kind to sb** *The local people were very kind to us.*
- it is kind of sb (to do sth)** *It was kind of him to offer to lend the money.*

THESAURUS: kind

generous
person | offer | gift | present | donation
kind because you give people money, presents etc:
He's one of the most generous people I've ever met – he even offered me the use of his villa in Florida. | Dr Singer thanked the chairman for his generous gift. | "I'll pay for the meal." "That's very generous of you." | He was always very generous with his money.

considerate
person | neighbour
thinking about other people's feelings, and careful not to do anything that will upset them:
Our neighbours are very considerate and always keep their TV turned down. | He's always very polite and considerate to his guests. | "I didn't want to interrupt your conversation." "That was very considerate of you!"

thoughtful
person | gift | present
thinking of things you can do to make other people happy or feel good – used especially when someone does something such as giving someone a present or helping someone:
*Some thoughtful person had taken her bag to the lost property office. | I thanked him for his thoughtful gift. | It was **thoughtful of** you to send him a card.*

caring
person | man | woman | husband | family | attitude | approach | society | environment
kind and wanting to help and look after people:
She's lucky to have such a loving and caring husband. | The British are well known for their caring attitude toward animals.

sympathetic
smile | look | listener | audience | attitude | manner
someone who is sympathetic cares about a person who has problems, and shows this by their behaviour:
*She gave me a sympathetic smile and said "I know just how you feel!" | Her boss was very **sympathetic towards** her and said she should take some time off work. | He was always ready to **lend a sympathetic ear** (=listen to someone talk about their problems).*

compassionate
person | man | woman | look
someone who is compassionate wants to help people who are suffering or having problems, and does not want to punish them or treat them badly:
*Instead of getting angry, she gave her young friend a compassionate look. | The man was released from prison **on compassionate grounds** (=for compassionate reasons, for example because he was very ill).*

warm-hearted/kind-hearted
person | man | woman
having a kind and friendly character, which makes other people like you:
She was a warm-hearted affectionate person and I shall always remain grateful to her.

benevolent *formal*
despot | dictator | ruler | dictatorship | God | uncle
kind and wanting to help people – used about someone who is important or well respected:
Ford was a benevolent despot who refused to allow labor unions, but paid his workers more than the national average (=a leader who had complete power, but who treated his or her people kindly). | They believe that the universe

was created by a wise and benevolent God. | He listened politely, like a benevolent uncle.

saying someone is kind in spoken English

nice *especially spoken*
man | woman | thing
friendly and kind. **Nice** is very common in everyday spoken English and is often used instead of **kind**:
*He seems such a nice man. | They said lots of nice things about you. | Everyone has been so **nice to** me. | **It's nice of** you to invite me here.*

good *especially spoken*
man | woman | friend
kind and showing that you want to help:
*He had been a good friend to her in the past. | **It was good of you to** come and see me. | She's always been very **good to** us. | They were very **good about it** and gave me a new phone.*

sweet *especially spoken*
man | woman | lady | child | thing
very kind – used especially when you like someone very much, or you are very pleased because of something they have done:
*I was given the flowers by a **sweet little** old lady who lived next door. | What a sweet thing to say! | **It's sweet of** you to ask.*

ANTONYMS **kind** → **unkind**

kindness *n*
kind behaviour towards someone

ADJECTIVES
great kindness *His aunt had shown him great kindness when he was ill.*
unexpected kindness *Lisa felt touched by the girl's unexpected kindness.*

VERBS
thank sb for their kindness *We thanked him for his kindness in lending us the money.*
treat sb with kindness *Guests should be treated with kindness and respect.*
show sb kindness *The neighbours showed her a lot of kindness when she first moved in.*
appreciate sb's kindness *Thank you very much. I appreciate your kindness.*
repay sb's kindness *He wondered how he would ever be able to repay her kindness.*

PREPOSITIONS
kindness to/towards sb *She greatly appreciated his kindness to her.*
out of kindness/out of the kindness of your heart (=because you want to help someone)
He visited her out of kindness.

PHRASES
an act of kindness *Paul remembered the many small acts of kindness she had done for him in the past.*



the kindness of strangers *If you get into trouble away from home, you often have to rely upon the kindness of strangers.*

kingⁿ

a man who is the royal ruler of a country

VERBS

become king *He will become king when the Queen dies.*

crown sb king (=officially give someone the position of king) *George was crowned king following the death of his father.*

depose/overthrow a king *formal* (=remove a king from power) *The Spanish king was deposed in 1931.*

a king rules/reigns *He was the king who reigned during the Second World War.*

a king abdicates (=gives up the position of being king) *It shocked the nation when King Edward VIII abdicated.*

ADJECTIVES

the future king *She married the future king of France, Philip Augustus.*

the rightful king (=the person who should be king) *The Duke of Gloucester claimed that he was the rightful king.*

PHRASES

a king's subjects (=the people he rules) *The new laws were very unpopular with the king's subjects.*

kiss¹_v

to touch someone or something with your lips, especially to show affection

ADVERBS

kiss sb gently/lightly *She smiled and kissed him gently on the cheek.*

kiss sb tenderly (=in way that shows you love someone) *He held her tightly against him, kissing her tenderly.*

kiss sb passionately *They looked at one another for a second and kissed passionately.*

PREPOSITIONS

kiss sb on the cheek/lips/mouth/hand *She kissed her husband on the cheek before leaving the house.*

You can also say **kiss sb's cheek/lips/mouth/hand**: *He leant forward and kissed her hand.*

PHRASES

kiss sb goodbye/goodnight *He kissed her goodbye and watched her get on the train.*

kiss²_n an act of kissing

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + kiss

a big/little kiss *She put her arms around him and gave him a big kiss.*

a quick kiss *He gave her a quick kiss before leaving for work.*

your first kiss *Do you remember your first kiss?*

a farewell/goodnight kiss *Don't go to bed without your goodnight kiss!*

a gentle kiss *He gave her a gentle kiss on her cheek.*

a passionate kiss *He gave her a passionate kiss.*

VERBS

give sb a kiss *Come and give me a kiss.*

blow sb a kiss (=kiss your hand and then blow across it towards someone) *Joe blew her a kiss and waved goodbye.*

PHRASES

love and kisses (=used at the end of a letter) *See you soon. Lots of love and kisses from Anna.*

knock¹_v

1 to hit a door or window with your closed hand to attract the attention of the people inside

ADVERBS

knock hard/loudly *I knocked as hard as I could.*

knock gently *He knocked gently on her bedroom door.*

PREPOSITIONS

knock at/on the door *We knocked at the door but there was no-one there.*

knock at/on the window *I thought I could hear someone knocking on the window.*

2 to hit someone or something hard

ADVERBS AND PHRASES

knock sb unconscious/senseless (=hit someone so hard that they become unconscious) *The stone hit his head and knocked him unconscious.*

knock sb flying (=hit them so they fall or almost fall) *Ben ran through the door and knocked me flying.*

knock sb to the ground *He was punched twice and knocked to the ground.*

knock sb off balance *The blow almost knocked me off balance.*

PREPOSITIONS

knock sb/sth off sth *I accidentally knocked the plate off the table onto the floor.*

knock²_n

the sound of someone hitting a door, window etc in order to ask to come into a house or room

ADJECTIVES

a loud/sharp knock *We heard a loud knock at the door.*

a gentle knock *I gave a gentle knock on the window.*

VERBS

hear a knock *When he heard a knock, he ran to the door.*

answer a knock *She answered a knock at the door and found a parcel on the doorstep.*

give a knock *He gave a knock, then walked in.*

PREPOSITIONS

a knock on/at the door/window *There was a knock at the window.*

knot ⁿ

a point where one or more pieces of string, rope, cloth etc have been tied or twisted together

VERBS

tie a knot *He taught me how to tie knots when I was a boy.*

untie/undo a knot *He managed to untie the knot and struggle free.*

loosen a knot (=make it less tight) *She loosened the knot in her shoelace.*

ADJECTIVES

a tight knot *The knot in my tie is really tight.*

a loose knot *She tied the scarf in a loose knot.*

PREPOSITIONS

a knot in sth *There's a knot in the string at one end.*

know ^v

to have information about something

ADVERBS

know how/why *Do you know how this works? I don't know why I'm always so tired.*

know when/where *Nobody knows when he'll be back.*

know if/whether *Do you know if John is coming to the party?*

know beforehand (=before something happens or is done) *They always seemed to know beforehand precisely where I would be.*

VERBS

let sb know (=tell them) *If you let me know what time your plane arrives, I'll pick you up.*

want to know *I thought you'd want to know immediately.*

PREPOSITIONS

know about sth *I need to know more about the job before I decide whether to apply for it.*

know of sth *Do you know of any good places to eat?*

PHRASES

as you/we know *"I'm divorced, as you know," she said.*

if you must know (=used when you are angry because someone wants to know something) *If you must know, I was with James last night.*

knowledge ⁿ

information, skills, and understanding you have gained through learning or experience

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + knowledge

considerable/extensive/vast knowledge *She had considerable knowledge of antiques.*

general knowledge (=about a lot of different subjects) *The questions are intended to test your general knowledge.*

scientific/technical knowledge *There have been great advances in scientific knowledge over the past 100 years.*

specialist/expert knowledge *Making profitable investments requires specialist knowledge.*

detailed knowledge *You need to have a detailed knowledge of criminal law.*

first-hand/personal knowledge (=from experiencing something yourself) *These soldiers have first-hand knowledge of war.*

basic knowledge (=of the basic aspects of something) *These things are obvious to anyone with even a basic knowledge of computers.*

in-depth/thorough knowledge (=detailed knowledge about all of a particular subject) *He demonstrated an in-depth knowledge of the subject matter.*

intimate knowledge (=knowledge about something because you are involved in it) *He seemed to have an intimate knowledge of prison life.*

inside knowledge (=that you have because you are part of a group) *His inside knowledge is gained from 20 years in the industry.*

background knowledge (=that you need before you can understand or do something) *The test will show what background knowledge a student brings to the course.*

VERBS

have some knowledge of sth *The book assumes that you already have some knowledge of physics.*

get knowledge (also **gain/acquire knowledge** formal): *He gets all his knowledge about politics from watching the television.*

⚠ Don't say 'learn knowledge'.

increase/improve your knowledge *If you want to improve your knowledge of the language, you should go and live in France.*

broaden/expand your knowledge (=increase your knowledge) *The course is designed to help students broaden their knowledge of modern American literature.*

show/demonstrate your knowledge *The test should be an opportunity for students to demonstrate their knowledge.*

use your knowledge (also **apply your knowledge** formal): *She decided to use her knowledge to set up her own business.*

test sb's knowledge *This quiz will test your knowledge of current events.*

PHRASES

a thirst for knowledge (=a desire to learn more) *She arrived at college with a thirst for knowledge.*
sb's breadth of knowledge (=knowledge about all the different parts of something) *They lack his breadth of knowledge about the industry.*
be common knowledge (=be known by most people) *It's common knowledge that he's gay.*

PREPOSITIONS

knowledge of/about sth *My knowledge of the subject is limited. | Young people's knowledge about the harmful effects of smoking is considerable.*

THESAURUS: knowledge

expertise
special knowledge about how to do something, that you get through experience, training, or study:
The technical expertise was provided by a Japanese company. | The country needs people with medical expertise (=doctors, nurses etc).

know-how
practical knowledge about how to do something. **Know-how** is more informal than **expertise**:
They don't have the technical know-how to build a nuclear weapon. | You don't need any special know-how to install the program.

grasp
the ability to understand a subject or situation:
She speaks French well and has a good grasp of the language. | He's been praised for his grasp of the country's economic problems.

wisdom
good sense and judgment, based on knowledge and experience:
In these societies, people respect the wisdom of older family members | The book is full of ancient wisdom. | Thank you for all your words of wisdom (=wise advice).

LI

label ^[Ac] n

a piece of paper or another material that is attached to something and gives information about it

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + label

a price label *The book still has the price label on it.*

a luggage label *It's a good idea to attach a luggage label to your suitcase in case it gets lost.*

a product label *According to the product label, the drink is full of vitamin C.*

a food label *Food labels should say exactly what's in the food.*

a warning label *Cigarette packets now have warning labels on them.*

a sticky label (=a label that has been glued onto something) *Each CD has a sticky label on the front.*

an address label *She stuck an address label on the envelope.*

VERBS

put/stick a label on sth *He put a label on each plastic container with a description of its contents.*

read/check the label *Always read the label on the bottle.*

have a label (also **carry/bear a label** formal): *The packet has a label with a picture of a happy cow on it.*

the label says *The label says that the jacket should be dry-cleaned.*

PREPOSITIONS

on the label *The country of origin is on the label.*

laboratory n

a special room or building used for research by scientists or engineers

laboratory + NOUNS

a laboratory experiment *Many people believe that animals should not be used in laboratory experiments.*

laboratory studies/research/analysis *Laboratory studies showed that the medicine was effective in 90% of cases.*

a laboratory technician/assistant *The laboratory technician set up the equipment.*

laboratory work *Students spend most of the course doing laboratory work.*

NOUNS + laboratory

a research laboratory *The company tests out its new products in a research laboratory.*

PHRASES

in the laboratory *The samples were tested in the laboratory.*

under laboratory conditions *The experiment was carried out under laboratory conditions.*

In informal English, people use the short form **lab**: *The samples were sent off to the lab for analysis.*

Lab is often used in compounds: **a lab coat**, **a lab technician**, **lab tests**, and **lab results**.

labour ^[Ac] BrE, labor ^[Ac] AmE n

1 all the people who work for a company or in a country

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + labour

skilled labour *There is a shortage of skilled labour in the country.*

unskilled labour *Wages for unskilled labor were the lowest.*

cheap labour (=workers who have low wages) *Women and children were used as cheap labour.*

casual labour (=workers who do jobs that are not permanent) *The industry makes use of a large supply of casual labor.*

child labour *The shoe company was accused of using child labour in its factory.*

slave labour *Cotton was grown using slave labor.*

migrant labour (=workers who move somewhere to work there) *Companies are relying on migrant labour rather than training domestic workers.*

labour + NOUNS

the labour force (=all the people who work in a country or for a company) *70% of the labor force are employed in agriculture.*

the labour supply (=all the people available to work) *What was the effect of the war on the labour supply?*

the labour market (=the people looking for work and the jobs available) *She had lost confidence after being out of the labour market for so long.*

a labour shortage *Immigrants came into the country to fill the labour shortage.*

labour costs *We need to reduce our labor costs.*

labour relations (=the relationship between employers and workers) *The company has fairly good labour relations.*

2 work, especially physical work

ADJECTIVES

manual labour (=work with your hands) *He's a builder, so he's used to manual labour.*

physical labour *Childhood was followed by hard physical labour in factories.*

hard labour (=hard physical work given as a punishment) *He was sentenced to 6 months hard labor.*

forced labour (=that prisoners or slaves are forced to do) *They were either executed or sentenced to long periods of forced labour.*

VERBS

withdraw your labour (=protest by stopping work) *Workers withdrew their labour for 24 hours.*

labour + NOUNS

a labour camp *Some were sent to prisons and some to labor camps.*

If something needs a lot of work by a lot of people, you say that it is **labour-intensive**: *Picking strawberries is very labour-intensive.*

lack¹ *v*

to not have something that you need, or not have enough of it

NOUNS

lack confidence *As a teenager I lacked confidence.*

lack experience *I found it hard to get a job after college because I lacked experience.*

lack the skills/knowledge/expertise *These children lack the language skills to communicate properly.*

lack resources/funds *The police lack the resources to tackle the problem.*

lack courage *He wanted to kiss her but lacked the courage to do so.*

lack ambition *My children all seem to lack ambition.*

lack imagination *His last novel lacked imagination.*

lack credibility (=be difficult to believe or trust) *The plot of the film lacks credibility.*

ADVERBS

be completely/totally/entirely lacking *The show is almost completely lacking in humour.*

be sorely lacking (=to a very great and serious degree) *I find his poetry sorely lacking in imagination.*

be sadly lacking (=be unfortunately lacking) *Marriage requires commitment, a quality sadly lacking in couples today.*

PREPOSITIONS

be lacking in sth *He is almost totally lacking in confidence.*

lack² *n*

a situation in which there is not enough or not much of something

ADJECTIVES

a complete/total lack of sth *I was amazed by his almost total lack of interest in music.*

a relative/comparative lack of sth (=when compared with other things) *The relative lack of progress in the peace talks is frustrating.*

a distinct/marked/conspicuous lack of sth (=very noticeable) *She showed a distinct lack of enthusiasm for his idea.*

a general lack of sth (=among most people) *There is a general lack of support for the war.*

a profound/serious/severe lack of sth (=very serious and bad) *His comments demonstrate a profound lack of understanding about the subject.*

an apparent lack of sth (=that seems to exist) *Adam's apparent lack of concern angered his brother.*

PREPOSITIONS

a lack of sth *Too often, teachers are treated with a lack of respect.*

for lack of sth (=because there is not enough) *The case against him was dropped for lack of evidence.*

PHRASES

there is no lack of sth (=there is plenty of it) *There was no lack of willing helpers.*

ladder *n*

a piece of equipment used for climbing, with bars for your feet

VERBS

climb/go up a ladder *He climbed the ladder up to the roof.*

go down a ladder (also **descend a ladder** formal): *It's important to go down the ladder slowly.*

fall off a ladder *One of the builders fell off a ladder and broke his leg.*

PHRASES

a rung/step of a ladder (=a bar that you put your foot on) *The first rung of the ladder was broken.*

the foot/bottom of a ladder *Get a friend to hold the bottom of the ladder for you.*

the top of a ladder *Tie the top of the ladder to something secure.*

lake *n*

a large area of water surrounded by land

PHRASES

the edge/shores/banks of a lake *The hotel is set on the shores of Lake Lugano.*

ADJECTIVES

a freshwater lake (=which does not contain salt water) *The crocodiles live in freshwater lakes in southern Pangaea.*

a man-made/artificial lake *There is a man-made lake where you can go fishing.*

a frozen lake *They skated with Edwin on the frozen lake.*

VERBS

go swimming/fishing in a lake *After breakfast, we went swimming in the lake.*

cross a lake *You can cross the lake by ferry.*

land

1 an area of ground

ADJECTIVES

- flat land** *The airport was built on an area of flat grassy land.*
- open land** (=with no buildings on it) *In the middle of the city are several hundred acres of open land.*
- agricultural land** *Farmers are always complaining about the price of agricultural land.*
- industrial land** (=for factories and industry) *Industrial land is often polluted and not necessarily suitable for building houses.*
- arable land** (=for growing crops) *The forest was cleared to create arable land.*
- fertile land** (=good for growing crops) *The land near the river is very fertile.*
- poor land** (=not good for growing crops) *The land on the hills is too poor for farming.*
- barren land** (=with nothing growing on it) *There was not a single tree to protect him on this barren land.*
- derelict land** BrE (=not used and in bad condition) *There are plans to transform an area of derelict land into a new sports stadium.*
- vacant land** BrE (=available for use) *There are very few areas of vacant land left.*

Farmland, parkland, wasteland, swampland, and marshland are usually written as one word.

PHRASES

- a piece of land** (=an area of land) *He built a house on a piece of land near the river.*
- a plot/parcel of land** (=a piece of land, especially one that someone buys or rents) *They bought a small plot of land next to their house.*
- a strip of land** (=a narrow piece of land) *They owned the strip of land between the forest and the sea.*
- a tract of land** (=a large area of land) *The Kalahari Desert is a vast tract of land.*
- an acre/hectare of land** *The family owned hundreds of acres of land.*

VERBS

- own land** *First, find out who owns the land.*
- land belongs to sb** (=they own it) *The land belonged to her cousin.*
- buy/sell land** *We're thinking of buying some land and building a house on it.*
- clear land** (=remove buildings, trees etc from it) *They cleared more land and made new villages.*
- develop land** (=build houses, factories etc on it) *Developing derelict land can only improve our cities.*
- work/farm the land** (=grow crops) *Many people were forced to give up working the land.*
- live off the land** (=grow or catch all the food

you need) *A third of the region's population lives off the land.*
contaminate/pollute land (=spoil it with chemicals or poison) *Pollution from the factory is contaminating agricultural land.*

2 the part of the Earth's surface that is not covered in water

ADJECTIVES

dry land *It was good to get off the ship onto dry land.*

VERBS

- reach land** *The captain expects to reach land in about two days.*
- see/sight land** *After 21 days at sea, we sighted land.*

land + NOUNS

- a land animal/bird** *The white stork is one of the biggest land birds of the region.*
- land forces** (=soldiers who fight on land, not at sea or in planes) *Action by air, sea, or land forces may be necessary.*

PREPOSITIONS

- on land** *The crocodile lays its eggs on land.*
- by land** *All supplies are transported by land.*

3 a country or region

ADJECTIVES

- a foreign land** *Their journey took them to many foreign lands.*
- a distant/far-off land** *He fled to a distant land.*
- sb's native land** (=the country where someone was born) *She misses the beauty of her native land.*
- the Holy Land** (=the place where most of the events in the Bible happened) *People visit the Holy Land to see the sacred sites.*

VERBS

- rule a land** *There once was a king who ruled the land.*
- conquer a land** *Many armies have tried to conquer our land.*

PREPOSITIONS

in a land *It is the most important court in the land.*

PHRASES

- a land of opportunity** *Australia represented a land of opportunity for thousands of people.*
- a land of freedom** *The United States of America was seen as a land of freedom and justice.*
- a land of plenty** (=where people have a lot of money, food etc) *To many Africans, South Africa is a land of plenty.*
- a land of milk and honey** (=where you can get everything that you want) *People seem to think the island is the land of milk and honey, but it really isn't.*

THESAURUS: land

nation, state, power, superpower, land → **country (1)**

landmark *n*

1 a building or other large object in a landscape that is easy to recognize

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + landmark

a famous/well-known landmark *The Eiffel Tower is probably the most famous landmark in Paris.*

an important/major/significant landmark *From Parliament Hill, you can see most of London's major landmarks.*

a historic landmark *Rome is crammed with historic landmarks such as the Colosseum.*

a prominent landmark (=one that is very noticeable) *The castle sits on a hill above the town and is a prominent landmark.*

a familiar landmark *It was so dark we could not see any familiar landmarks.*

a local landmark *This oddly shaped rock is a well-known local landmark.*

a London/New York/Paris etc landmark *Buckingham Palace is a major London landmark.*

landmark + NOUNS

a landmark building *The park is a lovely setting for this landmark building.*

2 an important event or item in the development of something

ADJECTIVES

an important/significant landmark *Mozart's first work is an important landmark in the history of opera.*

a historic landmark *The peace agreement was a historic landmark.*

landmark + NOUNS

a landmark case *The company was found guilty of fraud in a landmark case.*

a landmark decision/ruling *In a landmark ruling, the Supreme Court said that racially segregated schools were unconstitutional.*

a landmark agreement/truce *The USA and Russia signed a landmark agreement.*

landmark elections *Mandela became president following landmark elections in South Africa.*

PREPOSITIONS

a landmark in sth *The album is regarded as a landmark in the history of rock music.*

VERBS

be seen as a landmark *The Pope's visit was seen as a landmark.*

represent a landmark *President Obama's election represented a landmark in American history.*

THESAURUS: landmark

big, significant, major, notable, key, essential, vital, crucial/critical, paramount, historic, landmark, momentous → **important (1)**

landscape *n*

an area of countryside or land of a particular type

ADJECTIVES

beautiful landscape *The landscape around Siena is incredibly beautiful.*

dramatic landscape (=very impressive) *The picture shows a dramatic landscape of mountains and clear blue lakes.*

wild landscape *The Brontë sisters' books are set in the wild landscape of the Yorkshire moors.*

rugged landscape (=with a lot of rocks and hills or mountains) *The island's rugged landscape can only be crossed on foot.*

desolate/bleak landscape (=with no attractive features) *It is a desolate landscape, with no trees or signs of habitation.*

barren landscape (=with no plants, trees, or buildings) *Birds can be seen searching the barren landscape for food.*

natural landscape *The new buildings blend into the natural landscape.*

industrial landscape *The cotton mills are part of the familiar industrial landscape of this part of England.*

rural landscape (=in the countryside) *Wind farms will have a big effect on the rural landscape.*

urban landscape (=in a city) *Kuwait city is an urban landscape of huge modern buildings.*

desert landscape *The desert landscape is hot and dusty.*

lunar landscape (=on the moon, or looking like the surface of the moon) *The volcano is surrounded by a lunar landscape.*

VERBS

dominate the landscape (=be larger or more noticeable than any other thing) *The church dominates the landscape.*

conserve/preserve the landscape *We want to preserve this beautiful landscape so future generations can enjoy it.*

PHRASES

be/become part of the landscape *The mine has been here for 200 years and has become part of the landscape.*

be a feature of the landscape *The square fields have not always been a feature of this landscape.*

have an effect/impact on the landscape *Building hundreds of new homes will have a big impact on the landscape.*

be a blot on the landscape (=spoil a landscape by being ugly) *The protesters say the wind farms are a blot on the landscape.*

a landscape is dotted with sth (=it contains a lot of something) *The landscape is dotted with pretty villages.*

lane ⁿ

1 a narrow road in the countryside or away from the main streets in a town

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + lane

a country lane *There are no streetlights on country lanes.*

a narrow lane *A truck got stuck in the narrow lane.*

a winding lane (=one that curves in different directions) *We cycled along the winding lanes down to the sea.*

a quiet lane *Her house is at the end of a quiet lane.*

VERBS

a lane leads somewhere *The lane leads to a farm.*

turn into a lane *We turned into a lane with fields on either side.*

PREPOSITIONS

along a lane *A little way along the lane is a bridge.*

down/up a lane *They carried on down the lane towards the village.*

THESAURUS: lane

street, avenue, boulevard, lane, cul-de-sac, track, ring road, bypass, dual carriageway, freeway/expressway, motorway, interstate, toll road, turnpike → **road**

2 one of the parts that a large road is divided into

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + lane

the slow/fast lane (=for people driving slowly or quickly) *The driver pulled out into the fast lane and overtook us.*

the middle lane *Take the middle lane and go straight ahead at the roundabout.*

the left-hand/right-hand lane *The left-hand lane takes you towards Calais.*

the right/wrong lane *Make sure you are in the right lane as you approach the roundabout.*

a bus/cycle lane (=for buses/bicycles only) *Cars are not allowed to use the bus lane.*

VERBS

change lanes *Make sure you give a signal before you change lanes.*

take a lane (=go in a particular lane) *Take the left-hand lane for Cambridge.*

pull/move out into a lane *A big truck suddenly pulled out into my lane.*

language ⁿ

1 a system of words and grammar used by the people of a particular country or area

ADJECTIVES

a foreign language *He found learning a foreign language extremely difficult.*

sb's first/native language (=the language someone first learned as a child) *His first language was Polish.*

a second language (=a language you speak that is not your first language) *Most of the students learned English as their second language.*

modern languages (=ones that are spoken now) *The school has a good modern languages department.*

a dead language (=one that is no longer spoken) *She didn't see the point of learning a dead language.*

the official language (=the language used for official business in a country) *Canada has two official languages: English and French.*

a common language (=a language that more than one person or group speaks, so that they can understand each other) *Most of the countries of South America share a common language: Spanish.*

the local language *I had learned a few phrases of the local language.*

the indigenous language *formal* (=spoken by a group of people living in a country, before other people arrived there) *In Guatemala there are more than 20 indigenous languages.*

an international language *English has become an international language.*

VERBS

speak a language *Can you speak a foreign language?*

use a language *The children use their native language at home.*

learn a language *It is important to learn the local language when living abroad.*

master a language (=succeed in learning a language well) *She had had a long struggle to master the Russian language.*

know a language *He had lived in Japan, but did not know the language.*

language + NOUNS

the language barrier (=the problem of communicating with someone when you do not speak the same language) *Because of the language barrier, it was hard for doctors to give good advice to patients.*

a language student/learner *Language learners often have problems with tenses.*

a language teacher *She worked as a foreign language teacher in a secondary school.*

language teaching *The article is about recent developments in language teaching.*

PHRASES

sb's command of a language (=someone's ability to speak a language) *Does he have a good command of the language?*

2 words in general

ADJECTIVES

bad/foul/strong/obscene language (=rude words) *There is some bad language in the play.*

spoken/written language *There are some big differences between spoken and written language.*

formal/informal language *The word 'hitherto' is used in formal language.*

plain/simple/everyday language *The leaflet is written in simple everyday language.*

legal/technical language *Lawyers often use complicated legal language.*

suitable language/the right language *When you are writing an essay, you need to use the right language.*

poetic language *The author uses beautiful poetic language.*

VERBS

use language *Some people were offended by the language he used.*

learn language (also **acquire language** formal): *Children mainly acquire language from their mothers.*

mind/watch your language (=used when telling someone not to use rude words) *You'd better mind your language in front of the teacher.*

Body language

You use **body language** about communication using your body, rather than words: *If you study his body language, you can see that he is lying.*

large *adj* **THESAURUS** **big** (3)

last¹ *adj, determiner*

1 the last one of a series of things is the one at the end, with no others after

NOUNS

the last time *That was the last time we saw him.*

the last day/week/morning etc *Today is the last day of the competition.*

last chance *This may be our last chance to save our planet.*

the last train/bus/plane *The last train leaves just before midnight.*

the last game/race *This is the last game of the season.*

the last part/stage/section/chapter *He was born in the last part of the 19th century.*

last words/line/sentence *His last words were "Don't shoot!"*

the last thing *The last thing I do at night is lock the front door.*

the last one *Our house is the last one on the right.*

PHRASES

the very last (=used to emphasize that something is the last one) *This is the very last chocolate in the box.*

last but one (=the one before the last one) *This is my last assignment but one.*

the last remaining *The region's last remaining forest is now a national park.*

THESAURUS: last

final

day | week | year | stage | phase | round | part | chapter | version | game | race | exam | scene | report | result | score | outcome | decision | verdict | words | thoughts | advice

Final is used about the last one in a series of things. It is also used when talking about something such as a result, decision, or report, which comes at the end of an event or process:

On the final day of their visit, Melissa and her parents were invited to the White House. | Chan received the most votes in the final round of voting. | They kiss each other in the final scene of the film. | The final score was 4-3 to United. | The committee will give their final decision next month.

Final or last?

You use both **final** and **last** about the last one of a series of things. You can say *the last week* or *the final week*.

You usually say *the last train/bus/plane* (not the 'final' one).

You also use **final** about something important, that comes at the end of an event or process. You say: *the final decision/verdict* (not the 'last' one) | *the final result/score/outcome* (not the 'last' one) | *the final version* (not the 'last' one).

Final exams are usually the most important exams, which you take at the end of a course.

closing

date | stages | minutes | days | weeks | months | years | session | scene | lines | words happening at the end, or near the end:

The closing date for applications is June 30th. | We are now entering the closing stages of the competition. | The ship sinks in the closing scene of the film. | The closing words of her book are: "But enough about me".

concluding

section | remarks | chapter | paragraph | lines | sentence

happening at the end of something, especially a book, report, speech, or meeting:

In the concluding section, he considers the relationship between the artist and society. | The judge made his concluding remarks. | We will return to this issue in the concluding chapter.

penultimate

day | game | stage | round | chapter | paragraph | sentence

the one before the last one:

It rained on the penultimate day of the competition. | Tomorrow will be the penultimate game of the season.

Penultimate sounds rather formal. In everyday English you usually say **last ... but one**: Tomorrow will be the **last** game **but one**.

ANTONYMS last → first¹

2 most recent, or nearest to the present time

NOUNS

last year/month/week/night Did you see the game on TV last night?

last July/January etc The law was passed last August.

last summer/winter etc It was very cold last winter.

last game/race/meeting The team won their last game 3-0.

sb's last book/film/record etc She published her last book in 2010.

the last time (=the most recent occasion) The city has changed since the last time I was there.

When talking about the morning/afternoon/evening before today, you say **yesterday morning/afternoon/evening**: I spoke to her yesterday morning.

PHRASES

the last five years/six months etc The internet has grown rapidly in the last twenty years.

the last few minutes/hours/days etc The last few weeks have been very dry.

last² _v
to continue for a particular length of time

ADVERBS AND PHRASES

last forever She wanted the day to last forever.

last indefinitely (=for a period of time with no definite end) The money won't last indefinitely.

not last (for) long (=not last for a long time) The ceasefire didn't last long.

last (for) a lifetime The material is so strong, it will last a lifetime.

last (for) a long time The war lasted a very long time.

VERBS

be expected to last The trial is expected to last ten weeks.

be built/designed/made to last The houses weren't built to last this long.

PREPOSITIONS

last for an hour/a week/10 years etc Each lesson lasts for an hour.

last until Monday/next month/1950 etc The job only lasts until the summer.

last into the night/into January/into the next century etc The rain lasted into the night.

Grammar

The preposition **for** is often omitted. You can say that something **lasted for an hour/a week etc** or something **lasted an hour/a week etc**.

THESAURUS: last

last, go on, drag on, persist → **continue (2)**

lasting _{adj} **THESAURUS** → **long (2), permanent**

late _{adj, adv}

1 happening, arriving, or done after the usual or expected time

VERBS

arrive late/be late Helen arrived late for the meeting.

get home/come home late My dad always used to come home late.

get up/wake up/be up late We usually get up late on Saturdays.

go to bed late Did you go to bed late last night?

stay late/work late I have to work late this evening.

PREPOSITIONS

late for sth You don't want to be late for school.

late with sth (=not paying or giving someone something when you should) The family had very little money and they were often late with the rent.

PHRASES

five minutes/three hours etc late The plane was five hours late.

leave it too late (=be unable to do something because you did not do it soon enough) We couldn't buy tickets because we left it too late.

ANTONYMS late → early (1)

2 in the final part of a period of time, event, or process

NOUNS

late morning/afternoon/evening In the late afternoon, it started to get dark.

late spring/summer/autumn The plant continues flowering into late summer.

late August/January etc The school year ends in late June.

the late 1920s/1870s etc (=1927-29, 1877-79 etc) *He lived in London in the late 1980s.*

the late 17th/20th etc century *The pictures were painted in the late 19th century.*

a late stage *The negotiations are at a late stage.*

a late goal (=near the end of a game) *United won with a late goal.*

PREPOSITIONS

late in sth *They arrived late in the evening.*

in late May/June etc *School starts in late September.*

in late 1962/2004 etc *He left in late 2010.*

be in your late twenties/forties etc (=aged 27-29, 47-49 etc) *She had her first baby when she was in her late twenties.*

PHRASES

late in the day (=used when someone should have done something much earlier) *It's a bit late in the day to change your mind.*

ANTONYMS **late** → **early (2)**

3 used about someone who has died

THESAURUS: late

late, deceased, lifeless → **dead¹**

latest *adj* **THESAURUS** → **new (1)**

laugh¹ *v*

to make sounds with your voice when you think something is funny

VERBS

begin/start to laugh *The audience began to laugh as soon as they heard his voice.*

make sb laugh *I like her – she always makes me laugh.*

want to laugh *They all looked so serious that I wanted to laugh.*

try not to laugh *“Are you all right?” she said, trying not to laugh.*

ADVERBS

laugh out loud (=laugh loudly, so people can hear you) *The book was so funny that it made me laugh out loud.*

laugh hysterically (=laugh a lot in a loud uncontrolled way) *When his trousers fell down, everyone started laughing hysterically.*

laugh uncontrollably/helplessly (=laugh a lot and in a way that you cannot control) *Laughing helplessly, she tried to pull me out of the mud.*

laugh nervously *A few people laughed nervously, not sure whether he was really angry.*

PREPOSITIONS

laugh at sth *She never laughs at my jokes.*

laugh at sb (=in a way that is not kind) *When he got the answer wrong, the other children laughed at him.*

laugh about/over sth *I can laugh about it now, but at the time it was rather frightening.*

PHRASES

burst out laughing (=suddenly start laughing) *She looked at his silly hat and burst out laughing.*

laugh till you cry (also **laugh till the tears run down your face**) *He leaned back in his chair and laughed till the tears ran down his face.*

laugh your head off *informal* (=laugh a lot) *It was really funny – we were all laughing our heads off.*

fall about laughing *BrE* (=laugh a lot) *He saw the look on my face and he just fell about laughing.*

laugh² *n*

the act of laughing or the sound you make when you laugh

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + laugh

a loud laugh *There was a loud laugh from someone in the audience.*

a little/short/small laugh *When I asked her what happened, she let out a little laugh.*

a nervous laugh *“Don’t be silly,” she said with a nervous laugh.*

a big/huge laugh *The joke received the biggest laugh of the evening.*

a belly laugh (=a deep loud laugh) *It’s the kind of comedy that raises a smile rather than a belly laugh.*

VERBS

give a laugh/let out a laugh *She saw the picture and let out a loud laugh.*

burst into a laugh (=start laughing) *He burst into a laugh when I asked if they paid well.*

get a laugh (also **raise a laugh** *BrE*) (=make people laugh) *Most of his jokes didn’t even get a laugh.*

stifle/suppress a laugh (=stop yourself from laughing) *I had to stifle a laugh when I saw what she was wearing.*

have a (good) laugh about/at/over sth *The farmer had a good laugh at our attempts to catch the horse.*

get a laugh out of sb (=make someone laugh) *She will do anything to get a laugh out of her audience.*

PHRASES

be good for a laugh (=be enjoyable and amusing) *His films are always good for a laugh.*

laughter *n*

when people laugh, or the sound of people laughing

VERBS

burst into laughter (=suddenly start laughing) *She burst into laughter when I told her the joke.*

roar with laughter (=laugh very noisily) *The audience roared with laughter.*

shriek/scream with laughter (=laugh very noisily in a high voice) *The children shrieked with laughter as they watched the clown.*

shake with laughter *They were shaking with laughter and couldn't even speak.*

meet/greet sth with laughter (=react to something by laughing) *Her remarks were greeted with mocking laughter.*

stifle/suppress your laughter (=stop yourself from laughing) *When she almost fell over, I had to stifle my laughter.*

the laughter dies (down) (=it stops) *The laughter died instantly when the boss walked in.*

ADJECTIVES

hysterical/helpless laughter (=when you laugh a lot and for a long time) *The audience were in fits of helpless laughter.*

nervous laughter (=because someone is not sure how to react) *Nervous laughter greeted her remarks.*

raucous laughter (=very loud and rough-sounding) *His attempt to explain was greeted with raucous laughter.*

suppressed laughter (=when someone tries not to laugh) *He began to shake with suppressed laughter.*

PHRASES

a fit of laughter (=a period in which you laugh uncontrollably) *Her funny stories had us in fits of laughter.*

a burst of laughter (=a short period of loud laughter) *There was a loud burst of laughter behind me.*

hoots/peals of laughter (=a lot of loud laughter) *There were hoots of laughter from the audience.*

launch

1 to start something big or important

NOUNS

launch a campaign *The police have launched a campaign to reduce car crime.*

launch an appeal *We have raised \$150,000 since we launched the appeal.*

launch an attack/assault/offensive (=start attacking an area or group of people) *The army launched an assault on the eastern part of the country.*

launch a search/hunt *The police immediately launched a murder hunt.*

launch a project/initiative/scheme *The government has launched another initiative to help boost employment.*

launch a business/company *She launched her business in 2000.*

launch a product/range *They have launched a range of baby clothes made from organic cotton.*

ADVERBS

officially/formally launch sth *The scheme will be officially launched next month.*

successfully launch sth *Many graduates successfully launch their own businesses.*

launch sth nationally *When do they plan to launch the product nationally?*

PHRASES

plan/prepare to launch sth *We are planning to launch an exciting new range of products later in the year.*

THESAURUS: launch

begin, commence, set off, set out, get down to, take up, resume, launch, open, enter into, embark on → **start¹ (1)**

2 to send something into the sky, into space, or into the water

NOUNS

launch a rocket *The rocket was launched from Cape Canaveral.*

launch a missile *Two soldiers prepared to launch the missile.*

launch a satellite *The cost of launching a satellite is extremely high.*

launch a ship/boat *We watched as the ship was launched into the river.*

PREPOSITIONS

launch sth into sth *Hundreds of people gathered to watch the Space Shuttle be launched into space.*

laundry

clothes and similar things that need to be washed or have just been washed

VERBS

do the laundry (=wash dirty clothes) *I cleaned the kitchen and did the laundry.*

hang out/up the laundry (=put it outside on a line to dry) *My mother was hanging out the laundry in the sun.*

fold the laundry (=fold clothes after they have been washed and dried) *He was folding the laundry and watching TV.*

put away the laundry (=put away clean dry clothes) *There's a big pile of laundry to be put away.*

ADJECTIVES

dirty laundry *There was a bag of dirty laundry in the kitchen.*

clean laundry *The clean laundry goes in this basket, ready to be ironed.*

laundry + NOUNS

the laundry room *There's a washing machine in the laundry room.*

the laundry basket *He's teaching the children to put their dirty clothes in the laundry basket.*

a laundry service *Does the hotel provide a laundry service?*

laundry facilities (=equipment for washing

and drying laundry) *Each block of flats has its own laundry facilities.*

PHRASES

a bundle/pile of laundry *At the weekend I was faced with a huge pile of dirty laundry.*

a load of laundry (=an amount that fits in a washing machine) *I do at least one or two loads of laundry every day.*

law

n the system of legal rules, or a particular rule

VERBS + law

obey the law *Most people obey the law.*

break/disobey the law (=do something illegal) *Is the company breaking the law?*

flout the law (=deliberately disobey a law) *Employers who flout the law should be properly punished.*

stay/act within the law (=not do illegal things) *The security forces must act within the law.*

make a law *Part of the function of parliament is to make laws.*

pass a law (=agree to make a law by voting) *Parliament passed a law banning smoking in public places.*

introduce a law *In 1989, a new law was introduced to protect the Polish language.*

become law (=officially be made a law) *For a bill to become law, it must be approved by both houses of Parliament.*

enforce a law (=make people obey a law) *It is the job of the police to enforce the law.*

repeal a law (=officially end a law) *Many people want the law to be repealed.*

law + VERBS

the law says/states that *The law states that you can use reasonable force to defend yourself.*

the law allows/permits sth *The law does not allow us to sell alcohol to persons under 18 years of age.*

the law bans/prohibits sth (=says that it is not allowed) *The law prohibits possession of these animals.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + law

US/English/Chinese etc law *This is not an offence under English law.*

international law *Under international law, the countries must respect the treaty.*

federal law (=the law of the US, not a particular state) *Under federal law, it is illegal to discriminate against employees because of race or sex.*

state law (=the law in a US state) *Under state law, it was illegal for any public official to receive gifts worth more than \$100.*

criminal law (=laws concerning crimes) *Criminal law contains definitions of such crimes as murder, rape, and robbery.*

civil law (=laws concerning disagreements

between people, rather than crimes) *The punishment for breaking civil law is usually a fine.*

strict/tough laws *The country has strict anti-tobacco laws.*

tax/copyright/divorce etc law *You need an accountant who knows about tax law.*

PREPOSITIONS

by law (=according to a law) *By law, seat belts must be worn by all passengers.*

under American/international etc law (=according to the law in a country or area) *This is illegal under English law.*

the law(s) on sth *The laws on owning a gun are very strict.*

sth is against the law (=it is illegal) *Everyone knows that stealing is against the law.*

sth is within the law (=it is legal) *The court decided that the company's actions were within the law.*

sb is above the law (=they are too important to have to obey a law) *He seems to think he's above the law.*

lawful

adj **THESAURUS** legal (2)

lawyer

n someone whose job is giving advice about laws and representing people in court

VERBS + lawyer

get a lawyer *If you are charged with breaking the law, you will need to get a lawyer.*

hire a lawyer (also **engage a lawyer** formal): *He's rich enough to hire a good lawyer.*

see a lawyer (also **consult a lawyer** formal): *She has consulted a lawyer about taking her case to court.*

talk/speak to a lawyer (=for advice) *Have you spoken to a lawyer?*

lawyer + VERBS

a lawyer represents sb (also **a lawyer acts for sb**) *He is one of the lawyers who are representing the airline.*

a lawyer argues sth *His lawyers argued that the company had treated him unfairly.*

a lawyer advises sb to do sth *My lawyers have advised me not to speak to reporters.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + lawyer

a good/clever lawyer *A clever lawyer knows the answer to his question before he asks it.*

a hotshot lawyer informal (=very good, confident, and likely to succeed) *The company can afford to hire a whole team of hotshot lawyers.*

a defence lawyer (=who tries to prove in court that someone is not guilty) *Defence lawyers produced evidence to support their client's alibi.*

a prosecution lawyer (=who tries to prove in court that someone is guilty) *The prosecution lawyer summed up his case for the jury.*

a criminal lawyer *She is one of the country's leading criminal lawyers.*

layerⁿ

an area of something on top of a surface, or between two surfaces

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + layer

a thin layer *A thin layer of ice had formed on the windows.*

a fine layer (=very thin) *The copper wire is coated with a fine layer of gold.*

a thick layer *A thick layer of dust lay on the furniture.*

a protective layer *The cream forms a protective layer to stop the skin drying out.*

a single/double layer *It is very hot so you will only need a single layer of bed covers.*

the top/bottom layer *We've eaten all the chocolates in the top layer of the box.*

alternate layers *Put alternate layers of pasta and sauce in a dish.*

the outer layer *He took off the outer layers of the onion.*

the surface layer *Below the surface layer of the skin are several further layers of cells.*

the ozone layer (=a layer of gases in the sky that prevents the sun from damaging the Earth) *Scientists found a hole in the ozone layer over Antarctica.*

PREPOSITIONS

a layer of sth *Cover the seeds with a thin layer of soil.*

in layers *The peppers, garlic, and tomatoes are arranged in layers.*

between the layers *There is a padded material between the two layers of fabric.*

PHRASES

layer upon layer (=many layers) *He used layer upon layer of paint.*

leadⁿ

the first position in a race or competition that has not finished

PHRASES

be in the lead (=be winning) *His horse was in the lead as they approached the last fence.*

VERBS

have the lead (=be winning) *She still had the lead as the runners began the last lap of the race.*

have a 3-point/5-second etc lead *The young golfer has a one-shot lead in her first tournament.*

take the lead (also **go into the lead**) (=start winning) *The British driver has just taken the lead in the Monaco Grand Prix.*

put sb in the lead (also **give sb the lead**) (=make someone start winning) *His goal put Portugal in the lead.*

extend/increase your lead (=get further ahead) *The Australian swimmer has now extended his lead to around ten metres.*

lose the lead *Chelsea lost their two-goal lead shortly after half-time.*

throw away the lead informal (=stop being ahead because you make a mistake) *They somehow managed to throw away a 22-point lead.*

share the lead (=two or more players or teams are winning) *At the end of the first round, the two American golfers share the lead.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + lead

a clear/comfortable lead *The Boston team had a comfortable lead at half-time.*

a big/huge lead (also **a commanding lead** formal): *The Brazilian driver raced into a commanding lead.*

an early lead (=at an early stage of a game, race etc) *Liverpool took an early lead with a goal from their captain.*

a tiny/slender/slim lead (=small) *They managed to defend their slender lead until the end of the season.*

a one-shot/two-goal/30-point etc lead *The Labour Party had a ten-point lead in the opinion polls.*

PREPOSITIONS

lead over sb *Can they keep their lead over their closest rivals?*

leaderⁿ

the person who directs or controls a group, organization, country etc

ADJECTIVES

a good/effective leader *What characteristics make a good leader?*

a strong leader *Margaret Thatcher had a reputation as a strong leader.*

a weak leader *The country had a series of weak leaders.*

a natural/born leader (=someone who naturally has all the qualities needed to be a leader) *He has the confidence of a born leader.*

a charismatic leader (=who people like and admire, and want to follow) *Martin Luther King was one of the most charismatic leaders of the civil rights movement.*

a political leader *He became the country's most influential political leader.*

a military leader *Montgomery was one of the great military leaders of the Second World War.*

a religious/spiritual leader *The Pope is the spiritual leader for Roman Catholics throughout the world.*

NOUNS + leader

a world leader (=someone who is in charge of a country) *The president and other world leaders are meeting to discuss the environment.*



a government leader *He was the first EU government leader to visit the new US president.*

a party leader *The highlight of any political conference is the speech by the party leader.*

a team/group/project etc leader *Members of the sales team each report to their team leader.*

a union/business leader *Business leaders welcomed a cut in the interest rate.*

VERBS

choose a leader (also **choose sb as leader**) *The party is meeting to choose a new leader.*

elect a leader (also **elect sb as leader**) *He was elected leader of his country by a huge majority.*

appoint a leader (=officially announce that someone is leader) *His son was appointed leader after him.*

PREPOSITIONS

the leader of sth *She became the first female leader of her party.*

leadership *n*

the way someone leads a country or organization, or the people who are in the position of leader

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + leadership

strong/firm leadership *Good schools need strong leadership.*

weak/poor/indecisive leadership *Because of poor leadership, the country now faces an economic crisis.*

clear leadership *He blames the company's problems on a lack of clear leadership.*

effective leadership *Good communication skills are essential for effective leadership.*

military/political leadership *The country's military leadership are against any kind of democratic reform.*

the party leadership (=the leaders of a political party) *The party leadership are divided on this issue.*

VERBS

take over the leadership (also **assume the leadership** *formal*) (=become the new leader) *A younger person should take over the leadership of the party.*

challenge sb's leadership *Three other candidates will challenge her leadership.*

show/demonstrate leadership *She showed great leadership in getting everyone into the lifeboats.*

provide leadership *We need someone who can provide strong leadership at this difficult time.*

resign your leadership *He was forced to resign his leadership as a result of the scandal.*

leadership + NOUNS

a leadership election *The leadership election is in November.*

a leadership contest/battle *Most people think he will win the leadership battle.*

leadership skills/qualities *The tasks were designed to test their leadership skills.*

sb's leadership style/style of leadership *The manager's leadership style is very informal. | The two managers have very different styles of leadership.*

a leadership position/role *Is Tom suitable for a leadership position?*

PREPOSITIONS

leadership of sth *Some people have criticized his leadership of the country.*

under sb's leadership (=when someone is leader) *Under her leadership, the school has improved considerably.*

PHRASES

a change of leadership *It is time for a change of leadership.*

leading *adj* **THESAURUS** **important (2)**

lead to sth *v* **THESAURUS** **cause²**

leaf *n*

one of the flat green parts of a plant that are joined to its stem or branches

VERBS

leaves turn red/brown etc (=become red, brown etc) *In late September, the leaves start to turn red.*

leaves fall *All the leaves had fallen off the tree.*

a tree loses/sheds its leaves (=the leaves come off the tree) *Most trees shed their leaves in the autumn.*

sweep (up) leaves (=tidy away fallen leaves using a brush) *She was sweeping leaves in the back garden.*

ADJECTIVES

a green/brown/yellow etc leaf *She loved the deep green leaves of the coconut trees.*

a dead leaf *The ground beneath the tree was covered in dead leaves.*

fallen leaves (=that have fallen off the trees) *The children were jumping in piles of fallen leaves.*

NOUNS + leaf

an oak/vine/spinach etc leaf (=from a particular plant or tree) *Vine leaves stuffed with rice is a typical Greek dish.*

autumn leaves (also **fall leaves** *AmE*): *Her photographs feature the rich colours of autumn leaves.*

PHRASES

be in leaf *literary* (=have leaves) *By this time, most of the trees were in leaf.*

come into leaf *literary* (=start having leaves) *The apple tree had finally come into leaf.*

leak *n*

a small hole that lets liquid or gas out, or the liquid or gas that is coming out

VERBS

spring a leak (=start to have a leak) *The boat had sprung a leak.*

stop a leak *Tightening the nut will sometimes stop the leak.*

check sth for leaks *Check the sides of the container for leaks.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + leak

a gas/oil/fuel etc leak *The fire was caused by a gas leak.*

a radioactive/radiation leak *A radioactive leak was discovered at the nuclear reactor.*

PREPOSITIONS

a leak in sth *There is a leak in the mains pipe.*

lean² *adj* **THESAURUS** **thin (1)**

leap *n*

1 a big jump

ADJECTIVES

a huge/enormous leap *With a huge leap, he managed to catch the ball.*

a flying leap *He threw a stick in the river, and the dog went after it in a flying leap.*

VERBS

make/take a leap *Her horse took a leap over the fence.*

2 a large increase, improvement, or change

ADJECTIVES

a big/great/huge/enormous/giant leap *When Neil Armstrong landed on the moon, he famously said "That's one small step for man, one giant leap for mankind".*

a dramatic leap *Following her move to Los Angeles, her career in show business took a dramatic leap.*

a quantum leap (=a very great improvement in something) *There has been a quantum leap in our understanding of the disease.*

a sudden leap *A sudden leap in fuel prices has led to an increase in airfares.*

a technological/technical leap *Every ten years, there is a major technological leap in computer science.*

a mental/conceptual/imaginative leap (=used when something takes a lot of mental effort to understand) *The world was so different in those days that you have to make a big mental leap to imagine what it was like.*

VERBS

make/take a leap *The company was hoping it could make a technical leap that would give it a clear advantage over its competitors.*

require a leap *Reading his books does require an imaginative leap.*

PREPOSITIONS

a leap in sth *We weren't expecting such a big leap in costs.*

PHRASES

a leap forward *AIDS treatment has made a great leap forward in recent years.*

in leaps and bounds (=making a lot of progress very quickly) *Her English has improved in leaps and bounds.*

learn *v*

to gain knowledge of a subject or skill, by experience, by studying it, or by being taught

PHRASES

learn sth quickly/slowly *She moved to France and learned the language very quickly.*

soon learn sth (=learn it quickly, as a result of an experience) *You soon learn not to make the same mistake again.*

learn sth by heart (=learn something so you know it exactly without reading it) *Actors have to learn their lines by heart.*

learn sth from/through experience *Students will learn from experience the importance of planning.*

learn sth by/through trial and error (=by trying things and making mistakes) *When you start doing pottery, you learn mostly through trial and error.*

have a lot to learn *She still has a lot to learn about boys.*

be eager to learn *Young children are very eager to learn.*

PREPOSITIONS

learn about sth *He said he was too old to learn about computers.*

learn from sb *I learned a lot from my father.*

learn by doing sth *Babies learn by copying the people around them.*

learner *n*

someone who is learning to do something

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + learner

a quick/fast learner *She was a quick learner, and her English got better day by day.*

a slow learner *The programme allows slow learners to get extra practice.*

an adult learner *Many adult learners also work full-time.*

a young learner *The activities are good for young learners.*

an intermediate/advanced learner *These exercises are designed for intermediate learners.*

a foreign learner *Many foreign learners find English pronunciation difficult.*

a language learner *She writes textbooks for language learners.*

learner + NOUNS

a learner driver *Learner drivers often grip the steering wheel too tightly.*

PHRASES

the needs of the learner *The coursebooks are designed to meet the needs of the learner.*

leave¹ *v*

1 to go away from a place or a person

NOUNS

leave the house/room/office/building *She said goodbye, and watched him leave the room.*

leave home/work *I usually leave home at 8.30.*

leave the country/city/area *The men have probably already left the country.*

leave town *His friends thought he had left town.*

leave hospital *BrE, leave the hospital* *AmE:* *Her mother will soon be well enough to leave hospital.*

leave your wife/boyfriend/family etc *She left her husband after she found out that he was having an affair.*

ADVERBS

leave suddenly *He left suddenly and without saying where he was going.*

VERBS

have to leave/be forced to leave *Thousands of people had to leave their homes because of the fire.*

refuse to leave *She refused to leave her injured friend.*

threaten to leave *The players are threatening to leave the team.*

PREPOSITIONS

leave at 10 o'clock/5.30 etc *The next plane leaves at 12.30.*

leave for somewhere *Edward left for America on business.*

PHRASES

leave on time *The train left on time.*

leave in a hurry *She left in a hurry, saying she had a plane to catch.*

be ready to leave *An hour later they were ready to leave.*

be about to leave (=be going to leave very soon) *I was about to leave when the phone rang.*

leave sb in peace (=go away and stop disturbing someone) *I wish you would all leave me in peace!*

leave sb to it *informal* (=leave someone and let them continue what they are doing) *You seem to have a lot of work, so I'll leave you to it.*

ANTONYMS **leave** → **arrive**

2 to officially arrange for someone to have something that you own after your death

THESAURUS: leave

donate, distribute, contribute, award, leave, lavish, confer, bestow, hand, pass, present → **give** (1)

leave² *n*

time that you are allowed to spend away from your work

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + leave

annual leave (=total time allowed away from work each year) *Annual leave is 22 days plus public holidays.*

sick leave (also **medical leave** *AmE*) (=time allowed away from work because you are ill) *The form must be filled in as soon as you return from sick leave.*

maternity leave (=time that a mother is allowed away from work to have and take care of a baby) *Two teachers were off on maternity leave.*

compassionate leave (=time allowed away from work because someone in your family is very ill or has died) *She was given compassionate leave to go to the funeral.*

paid/unpaid leave *He took three months' unpaid leave in order to look after his mother.*

VERBS

get 10 days'/3 months' etc leave *We get 25 days' leave a year.*

take leave (=use the time you are allowed) *Staff will not be allowed to take any leave in January because the company is too busy.*

be entitled to leave (=be allowed to have leave) *All employees are entitled to 21 days' leave.*

go on leave (=start your time away from work) *She needs to finish the report before she goes on leave.*

give/grant sb leave *He was given compassionate leave.*

cancel sb's leave (=stop people taking leave) *The Police Department cancelled all leave because of the emergency.*

PREPOSITIONS

on leave *Who is doing her job while she is on leave?*

lecture *n*

a long talk given to a group of people

VERBS

give a lecture *She gives lectures on modern French literature.*

deliver a lecture *formal* (=give a lecture, especially in a particular place or about a particular subject) *He delivered the lecture at the London School of Economics.*

go to a lecture (also **attend a lecture** *formal*): *Have you been to any of Professor MacPherson's lectures?*

listen to a lecture *Students spend about a quarter of their time listening to lectures.*

have a lecture *I have lectures all morning.*

miss/skip a lecture (=not go to it) *It is important that students do not skip lectures.*

lecture + NOUNS

a lecture hall/room (also **a lecture theatre** BrE): The lecture hall was packed.

lecture notes Can I borrow your lecture notes?

a lecture tour He's on a lecture tour of the US.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + lecture

a history/politics/biology etc lecture I'm late for my economics lecture.

an interesting/fascinating/boring lecture Her lectures are always very interesting.

a public lecture (=for anyone to go to) He's going to deliver a public lecture on politics in the Arab World.

an illustrated lecture (=with pictures) Mrs Robinson gave a fascinating illustrated lecture on Spanish history.

PREPOSITIONS

a lecture on/about sth I went to a very interesting lecture on Russian cinema.

PHRASES

a series of lectures (also **a course of lectures** BrE): She's giving a series of lectures on the history of art.

leg ⁿ

one of the long parts of your body that your feet are joined to

ADJECTIVES

your left/right leg My right leg hurts.

back/hind legs (=of a four-legged animal) The dog stood on its back legs.

front legs (=of a four-legged animal) The elephant had injured one of its front legs.

long/short legs Most models are very slim with long legs.

good/nice legs (=attractively shaped) If you have good legs, why not wear a skirt?

a bad leg informal (=an injured leg) He can't play football because of his bad leg.

a broken leg She can't walk because she has a broken leg.

bare legs (=not covered by any clothing) Her bare legs were a beautiful brown colour.

leg + NOUNS

a leg injury/wound A leg injury means he cannot play in tomorrow's match.

leg muscles Walking and cycling are good for strengthening the leg muscles.

leg room (=space for your legs) There was not much leg room on the plane.

VERBS

cross your legs (=sit in a position with one leg over the other) She sat down and crossed her legs.

break your leg He broke his leg skiing.

raise/lift your legs Lie on your back and raise your legs a few centimetres.

bend your legs Keep your back straight and bend your legs.

straighten your legs There wasn't enough room in the back of the car to straighten your legs.

stretch out your legs Curl up and then stretch out your legs.

rest your legs (=have a rest) They sat down to rest their legs.

your legs ache The children had walked a long way and their legs were aching.

PHRASES

stand on one leg She can balance standing on one leg.

legal ^{Ac} ^{adj}

1 relating to the law

NOUNS

the legal system/framework Under the English legal system, the accused person has the right to remain silent.

a legal right Women should have the same legal rights as men.

legal action/charges/proceedings (=action in a court of law) The paper cannot comment because of the threat of legal action.

legal advice/services You should get legal advice before signing any agreement.

a legal battle/dispute/debate The couple were involved in a bitter legal battle.

legal aid (=money to pay your legal fees) She applied for legal aid in order to pursue her case against the hospital.

legal fees/costs The company paid legal fees of \$15.8 million.

a legal document/contract An insurance agreement is a legal document.

a legal expert Many legal experts believe that the law needs to be changed.

a legal adviser She worked as a legal adviser at the U.S. State Department.

the legal profession (=lawyers, judges etc, considered as a group) The first Congress of the United States was dominated by the legal profession.

legal language/words The document was written in complicated legal language.

legal status The organization has no formal legal status.

PHRASES

take legal action (against sb/sth) (=bring a case in a court of law) She is taking legal action against a British newspaper which secretly recorded her private phone conversations.

2 used when saying that something is allowed by law, or you must do something because of the law

NOUNS

a legal duty/obligation/responsibility It is your legal duty to report a crime to the police.

the legal limit/minimum/maximum *He had twice the legal limit of alcohol in his blood.*

a legal requirement (=something that you must do because of the law) *Prices at gas stations have to be displayed as a legal requirement.*

legal tender (=forms of money that are legally accepted) *The coins are no longer considered legal tender.*

VERBS

make sth legal *They are campaigning to make the drug legal.*

become legal *Divorce finally became legal in 1992 in that country.*

ADVERBS

perfectly legal (=completely legal) *What the company has done is perfectly legal.*

THESAURUS: legal

lawful

business | manner | methods | use | means | excuse | purpose | owner

allowed by law or based on the law. **Lawful** is more formal than **legal**. It is used especially when comparing actions or methods with others that are not allowed by law:

The demonstrators were preventing other people from going about their lawful business. | The information was obtained in a lawful manner. | US citizens are permitted to keep firearms for lawful use. | The defendants argued that they had a lawful excuse for what they did. | The property was returned to its lawful owner.

legitimate

claim | right | reason | excuse | activities | business | president | leader | government | authority

based on or allowed by the normal laws or rules – often used when there is a disagreement about this:

The local people argue that they have a legitimate claim to the land. | I had a perfectly legitimate reason for being there (=a completely legitimate reason). | The organization says all its money comes from legitimate activities. | His supporters regard him as the legitimate president of the country.

statutory

rights | duty | requirement | power | authority | payment

used about something such as a right, duty, or power, which the law says you must have: *The law gives you certain statutory rights when you buy goods. | There is a statutory duty to investigate how the death occurred. | The officers who searched the house were using their statutory powers.*

constitutional

right | reform | change | amendment | power | authority

relating to a country's constitution (=the set of rules and principles by which a country is governed):

Freedom of speech is one of our constitutional rights. | Constitutional amendments require the approval of two thirds of the House and the Senate. | Congress has the constitutional power to prevent the president from travelling abroad.

You can say that your actions are **above board** (=there is nothing illegal about them): *The firm says they have nothing to hide and everything they do is above board.* You can also say that someone **acts or stays/keeps/remains within the law** (=they do not do anything illegal): *The protesters were careful to remain within the law and not cause any damage to property.*

ANTONYMS **legal** → **illegal**

legend

an old well-known story, often about brave people, adventures, or magical events

ADJECTIVES

an old/ancient legend *The story is based on an ancient legend.*

local legend *According to local legend, the cave was the home of a witch.*

a popular legend (=one that many people believe) *Many popular legends grew up about him.*

Greek/Roman etc legend *In ancient Greek legend, the Chimera was part lion, part dragon, and part goat.*

VERBS

become legend/pass into legend (=become a story that is told many times by many people) *The incident has since become legend.*

a legend grows (up) (=develops over time) *The legend of his bravery grew after the battle.*

(the) legend says *Legend says King Arthur's sword was thrown into one of these lakes.*

the legend tells how *The legend tells how the King of Troy offended Poseidon, the sea god.*

the legend goes (=says) *Spartacus refused to flee, or so the legend goes.*

a legend is attached to sth (=connected with it) *The forest has an unusual legend attached to it.*

PREPOSITIONS

the legend of sth *In class, we were told the legend of St George and the dragon.*

legends about sb/sth *Legends about her date from the dawn of Christianity.*

according to legend *According to legend, he escaped by leaping from the cliffs into the sea.*

PHRASES

legend has it that (=says that) *Legend has it that Rhodes was home to the sun god Helios.*

be the subject of legend (*also be the stuff of legend*) (=have stories told about it) *The island has long been the subject of legend.*

myths and legends *I read all the Greek myths and legends.*

legendary *adj* **THESAURUS** famous

legitimate *adj* **THESAURUS** legal (2)

leisure *n*

time when you are not working or studying and can relax and do things you enjoy

leisure + NOUNS

leisure time *My parents spend most of their leisure time gardening.*

a leisure activity/interest *Watching TV is now the nation's most popular leisure activity.*

leisure pursuits *formal* (=leisure activities) *Golfing and fishing were among his many leisure pursuits.*

a leisure centre/complex *BrE: The local leisure centre has a swimming pool and a sauna.*

leisure facilities *The leisure facilities in the town are very good.*

leisurely *adj* **THESAURUS** slow

length *n*

1 how long something is from one end to the other

ADJECTIVES

the total/overall length *The total length of the railway line is 650 kilometres.*

the average length *The worms grow to an average length of 10 cm.*

the whole/full/entire length *The camera looks down the full length of the street.*

a maximum/minimum length *The maximum length of a filename is 10 characters.*

medium length *She has medium length hair.*

VERBS

measure the length of sth *We measured the length of the room.*

adjust/alter the length of sth *You can adjust the length of the strap.*

grow to/reach a length of 2 metres/8 feet etc *A blue whale can reach a length of 30 metres.*

have a length of 1 metre/8 feet etc *These leaves have a length of about 7 cm.*

PREPOSITIONS

the length of sth *The average length of the snake is about 30 centimetres.*

When talking about the length of something, you can say that it is **4 inches/10 centimetres etc long**.

PHRASES

be 100 metres/3 miles etc in length *The hotel pool is 15 metres in length.*

of different lengths *You'll need several pieces of string of different lengths.*

of equal/the same length *She drew two lines of equal length.*

cut sth to length (=so that it is the right length) *Use a saw to cut the wood to length.*

increase in length *The icicles increase in length as more water freezes.*

three/four/ten etc times the length of sth *Their garden is three times the length of this room.*

along the length of sth (=from one end of it to the other) *There are houses all along the length of the road.*

2 how much time something lasts from beginning to end

ADJECTIVES

the average length *What is the average length of a stay in hospital?*

the usual/normal length *The usual length of a movie is about two hours.*

the minimum/maximum length *Your presentation should have a maximum length of 20 minutes.*

VERBS

reduce/cut/shorten the length of sth *He decided to reduce the length of his speech.*

increase the length of sth *People try many things to increase the length of their lives.*

PHRASES

be 20 minutes/an hour etc in length *The test will be 30 minutes in length.*

a length of time *Next time, I'll stay for a shorter length of time.*

lengthy *adj* **THESAURUS** long (2)

lesson *n*

a period of time in which someone is taught a particular skill or subject

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + lesson

a history/physics/maths etc lesson *I have a history lesson this afternoon.*

a piano/guitar etc lesson *You'll be late for your guitar lesson.*

a swimming/dancing/driving etc lesson *My sister is taking driving lessons.*

a private lesson (=when you pay someone to teach you alone or in a small group) *He gave private lessons in mathematics at the weekends.*

a good/interesting lesson *I'm always looking for ways to make lessons more interesting.*

extra lessons *Her father decided she needed extra maths lessons.*

VERBS

have a lesson *I have swimming lessons on Fridays.*

take lessons (=have them regularly - not used for saying where or when someone has

lessons) *He started taking piano lessons at age four.*

go to a lesson (also **attend a lesson** formal): *I have to go to my French lesson now.*

miss/skip a lesson (=not go to it) *Her parents found out she had been skipping lessons.*

give lessons (=teach them) *She made extra money giving English lessons.*

teach a lesson (also **take a lesson**) *Which teacher taught the lesson?*

plan/prepare a lesson *Teachers spend a long time preparing their lessons.*

observe a lesson (=watch someone teach it) *The principal has come to observe the lesson.*

lesson + NOUNS

a lesson plan (=that a teacher uses to teach a lesson) *It is important to have a clear lesson plan.*

PREPOSITIONS

a lesson about/on sth *I enjoyed the lessons on art history.*

in/during a lesson *She was always talking during lessons. | The teacher spoke to every child in the lesson.*

lethargic *adj* THESAURUS *slow*

letter *n*

1 a message that you write to someone on paper

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + letter

a long/short letter *She wrote me a long letter, telling me all her news.*

a business letter *In business letters, you often use phrases such as "I would be grateful if..."*

an official letter *I received an official letter thanking me for my enquiry.*

a formal/informal letter *The letter sounded very formal.*

a personal letter *I don't want him reading my personal letters.*

a love letter *A boy in my class wrote me a love letter.*

a thank-you letter *Mum made me write thank-you letters for all my birthday presents.*

a covering letter BrE, **a cover letter** AmE (=that you send with a job application) *Always enclose a cover letter with your resume.*

a strongly-worded letter (=expressing your disapproval in a very direct way) *I sent a strongly-worded letter to the manager, complaining about the service in his shop.*

VERBS

write a letter *He wrote a letter inviting her to visit.*

read a letter *May I read her letter?*

sign a letter *I forgot to sign the letter!*

send a letter *The school sent a letter to all the children's parents.*

post a letter BrE, **mail a letter** AmE: *Could you post this letter for me?*

get/receive a letter *I got a letter from my mother.*

open a letter *Bill opened the letter and read it.*

reply to/answer a letter *I never answered his letter.*

a letter is addressed to sb (=has their name and address on the envelope) *The letter was addressed to Mr John Appleby.*

a letter is dated sth (=has a particular date on it) *Thank you for your letter dated March 4th.*

a letter comes/arrives *The letter arrived the following day.*

PREPOSITIONS

a letter from sb *I've had a letter from Sam.*

a letter to sb *Someone had been reading her letters to her boyfriend.*

a letter about/concerning sth *I get a lot of letters about this subject.*

in a letter *He said in his letter that he was moving house.*

by letter *We only communicate by letter.*

a letter of complaint *I wasn't satisfied with the service I had received and I wrote the company a letter of complaint.*

⚠ Don't say a 'complaint letter'.

2 a sign used in writing to represent speech sounds

ADJECTIVES

capital letters (also **upper case letters** formal) (=A, B, C etc) *Fill out the form in capital letters.*

small letters (also **lower case letters** formal) (=a, b, c etc) *In McCartney, the first 'c' is written in small letters.*

double letters (=two of the same letter written together) *Words with double letters are often spelt wrong.*

a silent letter (=one which is written but not pronounced) *There is a silent letter in the word 'know'.*

the first letter *What's the first letter of his name?*

PHRASES

the letters of the alphabet *Songs can help children learn the letters of the alphabet.*

in capital/small/big etc letters *The title was printed in capital letters.*

level *n*

1 the amount or degree of something

ADJECTIVES

a high/low level *The monkeys showed a high level of intelligence.*

a record level (=more than ever before) *Sales have reached record levels.*

the usual/normal level *The temperature has now returned to its usual level for this time of year.*

the minimum/maximum level Companies try to pay the minimum level of tax.

an average level She has an average level of fitness for her age.

the general/overall level This will have no effect on the overall level of unemployment.

the current/present level The government's current level of borrowing is too high.

the right level Her report had just the right level of detail.

an excessive level (=too much) There was an excessive level of alcohol in his blood.

the recommended/permitted level His weight is above the recommended level.

an acceptable level Noise must be kept to an acceptable level.

the desired level (=the level you want) Change the volume on your phone to the desired level.

VERBS + level

measure the level of sth A special machine measures the level of radiation.

monitor the level of sth (=check the level and how it changes) The level of humidity in the room is constantly monitored.

control/regulate the level of sth (=make it not fall or rise too much) Your kidneys regulate the level of calcium in your blood.

increase/raise/improve the level of sth Healthy eating can increase your energy levels.

reduce/lower the level of sth You need to reduce your stress levels.

achieve/reach a level China's imports of wheat reached record levels.

exceed a level (=be more than it) Companies can be fined for exceeding permitted pollution levels.

stay/remain at a level The fees are likely to remain at current levels.

maintain a level (=keep it the same) It's difficult to maintain the same level of physical fitness.

level + VERBS

a level rises/goes up/increases The level of unemployment has increased.

a level goes down/decreases/drops/falls Pollution levels have fallen slightly.

a level plummets (=it goes down very quickly) His blood sugar level plummeted to 30.

a level soars (=it increases to a very high level) The level of unemployment soared to 25%.

a level varies/fluctuates (=it changes) Unemployment levels vary according to the time of year.

NOUNS + level

noise levels Noise levels at the factory are too high.

price/income/wage levels Wage levels had failed to keep up with inflation.

pollution levels We hope to reduce pollution levels.

PREPOSITIONS

the level of sth The level of pollution is much too high.

at a level Inflation is at a fairly low level.

above/below a level Prices dropped below the level of the previous year.

PHRASES

be on a level with sth (=be the same as something) Sales were roughly on a level with last month.

THESAURUS: level

quantity, volume, level, proportion, quota, yield
→ **amount**

2 the height of something

NOUNS + level

water level The water level is almost up to the deck.

sea level (=the height on the Earth reached by the sea) The highest point of the island is only 16 feet above sea level.

ground level Cut the plants to about an inch above ground level.

street level The front window was at street level.

knee/waist/ankle level Soon the snow was up to knee level.

eye level Hold the page at eye level.

ADJECTIVES

a high/low level The oil in the tank was at a low level.

VERBS

change/adjust the level of sth You can adjust the level of the shelves.

lower/raise the level of sth How do you lower the level of the chair?

fall/rise to a level The ski lift rises to a level of 3,250 metres.

PREPOSITIONS

above a level Hold your hands out above shoulder level.

below a level Part of the house is below ground level.

PHRASES

be on a level with sth (=be at the same level) Her eyes were on a level with his nose.

3 a particular standard of skill or ability, for example in education or sport

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + level

a high/low level He plays football at a very high level.

a basic level *She has a basic level of skill.*

elementary/intermediate/advanced level *The students have all reached an advanced level in English.*

degree level *She studied French to degree level.*

graduate/postgraduate level (=after completing a first degree) *Some students continue studying economics at postgraduate level.*

VERBS

achieve/reach/attain a level *Students can expect to achieve a high level of skill.*

PREPOSITIONS

level of sth *Her level of English is extremely high.*

at a level *Her reading skills are still at a low level.*

above/below a level *If you are above intermediate level, you might find some of these exercises too easy. | Is the course below degree level?*

PHRASES

at the highest/top level (=against the best teams or people) *You need a lot of determination to compete at the top level.*

at national/international level *She has played the sport at international level.*

4 a particular position in an organization, industry, or society

ADJECTIVES

a high/low level *He reached a high level in the company.*

the upper level *People at the upper levels of society do not always appreciate these problems.*

senior level (=a high level in an organization) *There are very few women managers at the most senior level.*

VERBS

reach a level *How long does it take to reach the level of senior nurse?*

rise to a level *He rose to the level of vice-president.*

PHRASES

at board level *BrE* (=by the directors and owners of a company) *The most important decisions are made at board level.*

at ministerial level (=by government ministers) *The project was approved at ministerial level.*

at an international/global level (=with people or organizations from other countries) *The company operates at an international level.*

at a local/regional level (=with people or organizations in the local area) *Committees were set up at a local level.*

at a grass-roots level (=the ordinary people, not the leaders) *We are hoping for full participation at the grass-roots level.*

level² *adj* **THESAURUS** flat¹

liar

n someone who deliberately says things that are not true

ADJECTIVES

a good/accomplished liar *He's a good liar and we didn't suspect a thing.*

a terrible/poor/rotten liar *I'm such a rotten liar, nobody believed me for a minute.*

a habitual/chronic liar *formal* (=who lies a lot) *Drug users are often habitual liars trying to cover up their addiction.*

a compulsive/congenital/pathological liar *formal* (=who lies a lot because it is part of their personality) *She seems to be a congenital liar who will say anything to stay out of trouble.*

you little/big liar *informal: I never said that, you little liar!*

VERBS

call sb a liar (=say that someone is lying) *Are you calling me a liar?*

accuse sb of being a liar *I'm not accusing you of being a liar, just of being mistaken.*

liberty

n the freedom to do what you want and not be controlled by others

ADJECTIVES

complete/perfect liberty *You have complete liberty to write whatever you like.*

basic/fundamental liberties (=freedoms that everyone has a right to) *Freedom of speech and freedom of religion are basic liberties.*

individual/personal liberty (=of ordinary people) *The new law is a threat to individual liberty.*

civil liberties (=the rights of all people to do what they want while respecting other people's rights) *He argues that secret cameras in public places threaten our civil liberties.*

religious/political liberty *The American Constitution protects religious liberty.*

VERBS

have the liberty to do sth *You have the liberty to leave whenever you like.*

give/allow sb the liberty to do sth *Should people be allowed the liberty to take their own lives?*

protect/defend/safeguard sb's liberty *The constitution exists to protect the liberty of the citizens.*

threaten/endanger sb's liberty *The government should not be so powerful that it threatens individual liberty.*

fight for liberty *They fought for liberty during the revolution.*

guarantee sb's liberty *The new government promised to guarantee civil liberty.*

take away sb's liberty/deprive sb of their liberty *He had been wrongly deprived of his liberty.*

lose your liberty *He would rather lose his liberty than pay the fine.*

infringe on/restrict sb's liberty (=limit it) *Will the new security measures infringe on our liberty?*

PHRASES

be at liberty to do sth (=be able to do something) *I am not at liberty to discuss the case.*

loss of liberty *He claimed that preventing people using their cars represented a loss of liberty.*

an attack on/a threat to sb's liberty *These new laws are an attack on our liberty.*

an infringement of sb's liberty (=something that takes away someone's liberty) *It is a serious infringement of their liberty.*

the right to liberty *Everyone has the right to liberty.*

library ⁿ

a room or building containing books that can be looked at or borrowed

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + library

the school/university/college library *She was studying in the college library.*

a public library *Our public libraries need more support.*

your local library *This information is available at your local library.*

a reference library (=one that does not lend books, so you read them there) *The reference library contains a collection of documents relating to slavery.*

a lending library (=one that lends books) *Lending libraries became increasingly popular in Victorian times.*

a private library *He has his own private library at home.*

a well-stocked library (=with a lot of books) *The journals are available from any well-stocked library.*

VERBS

go to/visit the library *I need to go to the library to return some books.*

use the library *You can use the library before or after school.*

borrow sth from the library *Books, CDs, DVDs, and magazines can be borrowed from the library.*

take sth out of the library (also **check sth out of the library** AmE): *Someone took it out of the library on March 4th.*

take sth back/return sth to the library *Have you taken those books back to the library?*

library + NOUNS

a library book *She's gone into town to change her library books.*

a library card (=a card that proves you are a member of a library) *You need your library card in order to take out books.*

the library catalogue BrE, **the library catalog** AmE (=the list of books in a library) *Students need to be taught how to use the computerised library catalogue.*

PREPOSITIONS

at a library *I'll meet you at the library.*

in a library *There's a copy of that book in the school library.*

licence BrE, license AmE ⁿ

an official document giving you permission to own or do something for a period of time

VERBS + licence

have a licence (also **hold a licence** formal): *He doesn't have a licence to fish in the lake.*

apply for a licence *The company applied for an export licence for its products.*

get/obtain a licence *Pilots must fly for at least fifty hours before getting their licence.*

give sb a licence (also **grant sb a licence** formal): *He was granted his flying instructor's licence.*

issue (sb with) a licence *They do thorough checks before issuing a gun licence.*

deny/refuse sb a licence *Why was she refused the licence?*

lose your licence *The police caught him driving while drunk and he will now lose his licence.*

take away sb's licence (also **revoke sb's licence** formal): *The doctor had his licence taken away after he was found to be abusing drugs.*

renew a licence (=arrange for it to continue for longer) *My licence expired and I forgot to renew it.*

licence + VERBS

a licence runs out (also **a licence expires** formal) (=it officially ends and you can no longer use it) *Her driver's license had expired.*

a licence allows/permits sth *A marriage licence allows you to get married.*

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + licence

a special licence *You need a special licence to keep dangerous dogs.*

a valid licence *He was charged with driving without a valid licence.*

a full licence (=not temporary and with no restrictions) *Make sure your adviser has a full operating licence.*

a temporary licence *The factory has operated under a temporary licence for 5 years.*

a driving licence BrE, **a driver's license** AmE: *Eighty per cent of 18 year olds have a driver's license.*

a pilot's licence *She became the youngest woman to hold a pilot's licence.*

a gun licence (also **a firearms licence** formal): *You don't need to be trained in shooting to get a gun licence.*

a fishing/hunting licence *He renewed his hunting licence.*

an import/export licence *An export licence was issued in August last year.*

licence + NOUNS

the licence holder BrE (=the person who has a licence) *The licence holder can drive any vehicle.*

a licence fee *In the UK, all TV owners have to pay a licence fee.*

a licence agreement *People often don't bother to read software licence agreements.*

PREPOSITIONS

a licence for sth *He didn't have a licence for the gun.*

with/without a licence *He was arrested for driving without a license.*

under licence (=if you have a licence) *Certain types of goods can only be sold under licence.*

lid

n a cover for a container such as a pan or box

VERBS

put/place the lid on sth *Put the lid on the pan.*

close/shut the lid *I put the apple core in the bin and closed the lid.*

screw the lid on (sth) *Screw the lid on tightly.*

cover sth with a lid *Cover the rice with a lid and cook for 10 minutes.*

open the lid *She unlocked the old trunk and opened the lid.*

unscrew the lid *I can't unscrew the lid of this jam jar.*

take the lid off sth/remove the lid *He took off the saucepan lid and sniffed the contents.*

lift the lid *I lifted the lid of the box and looked inside.*

replace the lid (=put it back on) *Always remember to replace the lid.*

lie¹

v **1** to deliberately tell someone something that is not true

Grammar

In this meaning, the past tense and past participle are **lied**.

PREPOSITIONS

lie to sb *You lied to me!*

lie about sth *The man had lied about his qualifications on his application.*

PHRASES

be lying through your teeth (=be saying something completely untrue) *"How fast were you going?" "30 miles an hour," said Slater, lying through his teeth.*

2 to be in a position in which your body is flat on the floor, on a bed etc

Grammar

In this meaning, the past tense is **lay** and the past participle is **lain**.

ADVERBS

lie awake *That night, Alice lay awake for a long time.*

lie asleep *He went into the room where his children lay asleep.*

lie quietly/peacefully *The baby lay quietly in her room.*

lie unconscious *The two officers discovered a man lying unconscious on the living room floor.*

lie dead *She found her husband lying dead in the hallway.*

lie still (=not moving) *You won't get to sleep unless you lie still.*

lie motionless (=not moving - used when someone is dead or very badly hurt) *The body lay motionless on the ground.*

PREPOSITIONS

lie in bed *You're not going to lie in bed all day, are you?*

lie on the floor/ground/bed *She saw a man lying on the ground.*

lie on your back/side/stomach *She was lying on her back with her eyes closed.*

Lie in or lie on?

If you **lie in bed**, you have the sheets and blankets on top of you. If you **lie on the bed**, you lie on top of the sheets and blankets.

PHRASES

lie face down *He was lying face down on the grass.*

lie sleeping/dying/watching sth etc (=doing something while lying down) *I held his hand as he lay sleeping.*

lie²

n something you say that you know is untrue

ADJECTIVES

a complete/total/outright lie (=something that is completely untrue) *She didn't want to tell her mother an outright lie.*

a white lie (=a small lie that you tell someone for good reasons, for example to avoid hurting their feelings) *We all have to tell white lies sometimes.*

a downright lie (=used when something is clearly a lie, especially when you feel annoyed) *That's a downright lie. I never said any such thing!*

a vicious lie (=very unkind and very untrue) *He told the court that it was a vicious lie from beginning to end.*

a blatant lie (=obvious) *He felt sure Adams was not convinced by such blatant lies.*

a barefaced lie BrE, **a bald-faced lie** AmE (=an obvious lie that is told with no sense of shame) *How can you stand there and tell me such a barefaced lie?*

an elaborate lie *Her parents didn't realize that it was all an elaborate lie.*

a big lie *The lawyer said it was a "big lie" that Jones had not received the message.*

VERBS

sth is a lie *That's a lie - I didn't do it.*

tell (sb) a lie *He got into trouble for telling a lie.*

believe a lie *How could you believe his lies?*

spread lies (=tell them to a lot of people) *How dare you spread such vicious lies?*

live a lie (=pretend all the time that you feel or believe something when you do not) *I knew that I could not continue to live a lie.*

PREPOSITIONS

a lie about sth *She had told many lies about her past.*

⚠ Don't say 'say a lie'. Say **tell a lie**.

PHRASES

a pack of lies informal (also **a tissue of lies** BrE formal) (=a lot of lies) *Everything he had told me was a pack of lies.*

life

1 the state of being alive

VERBS

save sb's life *The money you give will save the life of a child.*

risk your life *Two firefighters risked their lives to save the children.*

lose your life (=die) *Hundreds of people lost their lives on the first day of the fighting.*

take a life/take sb's life (=kill someone) *All cultures consider it wrong to take a life for no reason.*

take your own life (=kill yourself) *He was depressed and decided to take his own life.*

cost lives/cost sb their life (=result in someone's death) *That decision may have cost him his life.*

give your life/lay down your life (=die in order to save other people, or because of a

strong belief) *These men gave their lives during the war to keep us free.*

endanger sb's life (=make someone likely to die because of your actions) *By driving too fast you are endangering the lives of yourself and other road users.*

spare sb's life (=not kill someone, when you could kill them) *She begged him to spare the life of her son.*

owe your life to sb (=be still alive because of someone's actions) *The victim said he owed his life to the stranger who helped him.*

PHRASES

show no signs of life (=seem to be dead) *She was taken to the hospital showing no signs of life.*

be fighting for your life (=be so ill or injured that you might die) *One badly burned man was fighting for his life in hospital.*

be in fear for/of your life (=be afraid that you might die) *He is in fear of his life after threats by former drug associates.*

loss of life *There was only minor damage to property and no loss of life.*

the right to life *The right to life is the most basic of human rights.*

life after death *Do you believe in life after death?*

2 the time someone is alive

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + life

sb's whole/entire life *This is the best day of my whole life.*

sb's adult life *He spent his entire adult life in France.*

sb's early life *We don't know much about the poet's early life.*

a long life *We wish you a long and happy life.*

a short life *He spent all of his short life in hospital.*

a past/previous life *She believes she must have done something wrong in a previous life.*

VERBS

spend your life *I've spent my whole life in this town.*

end your life (=die or kill yourself) *What makes someone want to end their life?*

prolong (sb's) life (=make someone live longer) *Drugs against HIV can prolong life in a person with AIDS.*

shorten (sb's) life *Every cigarette you smoke can shorten your life by five minutes.*

life + NOUNS

a life member *He's a life member of the club.*

a life sentence/life imprisonment (=a punishment of life in prison) *He received a life sentence for the murder.*

life expectancy (=how long someone is likely to live) *In some areas, life expectancy is 49 years.*

sb's life story *She insisted on telling me her whole life story.*

PREPOSITIONS

in sb's life *For the first time in my life I was happy.*

throughout sb's life *Throughout her life she had always felt different from other people.*

for life (=for the whole of someone's life) *He was sent to prison for life.*

PHRASES

all your life *I've known John all my life.*

for the rest of your life *She knew she'd feel guilty for the rest of her life.*

late in life (=when someone is fairly old) *She married late in life.*

in later life (=when you are older) *Poor diet can lead to a whole range of diseases in later life.*

go through life doing sth *You can't go through life worrying what people think of you.*

dedicate/devote your life to sth (=spend your life doing a particular activity) *He dedicated his life to music.*

3 the way someone lives

ADJECTIVES

a normal life *After the operation, you should be able to lead a normal life.*

a happy/lonely/busy etc life *On the whole, Dad has an easy life.*

a hard life (=full of problems) *As a single mother of eight children, she had a hard life.*

a quiet life *He wants a quiet life, while she wants to go out partying.*

a full life (=with many different activities) *Before her illness, Rose enjoyed a full life.*

a sheltered life (=protected from unpleasant things) *She had lived a sheltered life, and was shocked by the things she saw.*

a double life (=having two homes, families, or sets of activities, one of which is kept secret) *Mary had no idea that her husband was leading a double life with another woman.*

VERBS

have/lead/live a ... life *She just wants to have a normal life.*

affect sb's life *These are decisions that affect people's lives.*

change sb's life *Having a baby changes your life completely.*

enrich sb's life (=make it better) *Education can greatly enrich your life.*

rule sb's life (=control and affect everything you do) *You shouldn't let your boyfriend rule your life.*

ruin sb's life *I'm not going to let this illness ruin my life.*

rebuild your life (=live normally again after something bad has happened) *She is beginning to rebuild her life without her husband.*

start a new life *They moved to Australia to start a new life.*

sb's life revolves around sth (=it is the most important thing in someone's life) *Ken's whole life revolved around surfing.*

PREPOSITIONS

a life of crime/poverty/misery etc *He had been drawn into a life of crime.*

PHRASES

a way of life *The tribe's traditional way of life is under threat.*

4 the activities that are typical of a situation or job

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + life

daily/everyday life *Communication using the internet is now part of everyday life.*

married life *Are you enjoying married life?*

family life *She left work and she now has a happy family life.*

college/student life *Parties are an important part of student life.*

country/city/village etc life *I like the slow pace of island life.*

political life *Why do so few women enter political life?*

public life (=work, especially for the government, that makes you well known) *Her drink problem forced her to retire from public life.*

sb's social life (=the activities someone does to enjoy themselves) *He has a great social life and is always going to parties.*

sb's working life *I have been with the same company all my working life.*

sb's personal/private life (=involving close family and friends) *There's a lot going on in his personal life at the moment.*

sb's home life *She tried to find a balance between her home life and her career.*

PHRASES

from all walks of life/from every walk of life (=from many different jobs or positions in society) *Our volunteers come from all walks of life.*

lifeless *adj* **THESAURUS** **dead¹**

lifestyle *n*
the way a person or group of people live

ADJECTIVES

a healthy/unhealthy lifestyle *A healthy lifestyle includes taking exercise and not smoking.*

an active lifestyle (=with a lot of activities and exercise) *There are many health benefits to an active lifestyle.*

a sedentary lifestyle (=with a lot of sitting down and not much exercise) *As a writer, he has a sedentary lifestyle.*

a busy lifestyle *Many people these days have a busy lifestyle.*

a hectic lifestyle (=very busy and full of activity) *She has a hectic lifestyle, juggling a career with family life.*

a stressful lifestyle *A stressful lifestyle may lead to illness.*

a comfortable lifestyle (=with enough money) *He enjoyed a comfortable lifestyle after he retired from work.*

an extravagant/lavish lifestyle (=in which you spend a lot of money) *How can he afford such an extravagant lifestyle?*

a simple lifestyle (=with few possessions or modern machines) *He admired the simple lifestyle of the people who lived on the island.*

an alternative lifestyle (=different from most people's) *We should respect people who choose alternative lifestyles.*

VERBS

have a ... lifestyle *We had very different lifestyles.*

live/lead a ... lifestyle (=live in a particular way) *I had enough money to live a comfortable lifestyle.*

change/improve your lifestyle *You can help prevent heart disease by changing your lifestyle.*

maintain a lifestyle (=keep it the same) *You cannot maintain this lifestyle on your income.*

fit/suit sb's lifestyle *Choose a hobby that suits your lifestyle.*

PHRASES

a change of/in lifestyle *Her new job meant a complete change in lifestyle.*

lifetimeⁿ

the period of time during which someone is alive or something exists

ADJECTIVES

a whole/entire lifetime *He has lived here throughout his entire lifetime.*

a short/long lifetime *She had learned a lot in her short lifetime.*

VERBS

spend a lifetime *I've spent a lifetime looking after other people.*

take a lifetime *It can take a lifetime to develop this skill.*

last a lifetime *Well-made golf clubs ought to last a lifetime.*

seem (like) a lifetime *It seemed a lifetime since she'd gone to bed the night before.*

You often use **a lifetime** when you mean "a very long time": *There was enough food in the house to last a lifetime.*

PREPOSITIONS

during/in sb's lifetime *Only about 100 of his poems were published in his lifetime.*

a lifetime of sth *They face a lifetime of misery.*

PHRASES

the chance/experience/holiday etc of a lifetime (=the best one you will ever have or do) *I'm offering you the chance of a lifetime.*

the habit of a lifetime (=a habit that someone has had all their life) *It isn't easy to break the habits of a lifetime.*

a lifetime's work *Almost a lifetime's work has been destroyed.*

a lifetime's experience *She had a lifetime's experience of cooking for people.*

once in a lifetime *It was the kind of discovery that a scientist makes only once in a lifetime.*

The phrase **once in a lifetime** is often used before nouns: *This is a once-in-a-lifetime opportunity.*

lift¹_v

1 to move something or someone upwards or to another place

NOUNS

lift the lid/top/cover *She lifted the lid of the pan to see if the soup was ready.*

lift a suitcase/case/bag *My case was so heavy I could hardly lift it.*

lift a box/container/coffin *The last two boxes were lifted onto the ship.*

lift your head/hand/arm/leg/finger *Katie lifted her hand to shade her eyes.*

lift your glass/cup *His hand was shaking as he lifted the glass to his lips.*

ADVERBS

lift sb/sth carefully *Lift the jug carefully, so that you don't spill any of the liquid.*

lift sb/sth gently *David gently lifted the child onto his shoulders.*

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

lift sb/sth up *They lifted up the stone, to see what was underneath.*

lift sb/sth down *Can you lift my bag down for me?*

lift sb/sth onto sth *The nurses lifted Andrew onto the bed.*

THESAURUS: lift

raise

head | hand | fist | finger | glass | cup | hat | gun | lid | bridge

to lift something to a higher position, usually for a short time before lowering it again.

Raise is more formal than **lift**:

She raised her head and looked at him. | The man raised his fists as if he intended to hit me. | "Cheers, everyone!" said Larry, raising his glass. | Mr Rutherford always raised his hat when he saw me. | The bridge can be raised to allow ships to pass under it.

Raise or lift?

Raise is more formal than **lift**. You often use **raise** in certain fixed expressions. If you **raise your glasses**, you lift them up and then drink some alcohol, in order to celebrate something or wish someone good luck. If you **raise your eyebrows**, you move them up because you are surprised. If you **raise your hand**, you put it in the air, especially because you want to speak in class or vote.

You usually use **raise** when you lift something for a short time, for example your hat, your hand, a bridge etc.

However, you can also use **raise** when talking about lifting up a ship that has sunk: *They are planning to **raise** the ship from the bottom of the ocean.*

When talking about lifting things so that you can carry them, you usually use **lift**. You say **lift a suitcase/bag** (not 'raise' it).

put your hand up/put up your hand

to lift your arm into the air, for example because you want to speak in class or when voting:

Put your hand up if you know the right answer.

hoist

to lift up something which is heavy and difficult to carry, or to lift someone up:

*Joe picked up the sack and **hoisted** it **onto** the truck. | The crowd **hoisted** him **onto** their shoulders and carried him down the main street.*

You also use **hoist** about pulling up a flag, sail etc using a rope: *They **hoisted** the **flag** up the pole.*

2 to end an official order that stops someone from doing something

THESAURUS: lift

call off, postpone, shelve, lift, repeal, annul → **cancel**

lift² BrE n

a machine that takes people and goods from one level to another in a building

VERBS

the lift goes up/down *The doors closed and the lift went down.*

take the lift *Take the lift to the fourth floor.*

use the lift *He decided to walk up the stairs instead of using the lift.*

get into/out of the lift *As I was getting into the lift, a voice shouted, "Wait for me!"*

Lift is used in British English. In American English, people say **elevator**.

light¹ n

1 brightness from the sun, a flame, a lamp etc

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + light

bright/strong light *The light was so bright he had to shut his eyes.*

blinding/dazzling light (=extremely bright, so that you cannot see properly) *The white buildings reflected a blinding light.*

dim light (=not bright) *Gradually her eyes became accustomed to the dim light.*

poor/bad light (=not bright enough) *The light was too poor for me to read.*

good light (=bright enough) *Stand over here where the light is good.*

soft/warm light (=light that seems slightly yellow or orange) *Her face was beautiful in the soft light of the candles.*

cold/harsh light (=light that seems slightly blue) *Under the cold light of the moon, he built a fire.*

the morning light *The flowers glowed brightly in the morning light.*

natural light (=from the sun, not electric lights) *The only natural light came from two high windows.*

artificial light (=produced by electric lights) *The office was windowless, lit only by artificial light.*

Sunlight, moonlight, firelight, and candlelight are written as one word.

light + VERBS

light shines *Light from the sun shines on the earth.*

light comes from somewhere *The only light came from the fire.*

light streams/floods in (=a large amount of light comes in) *Light streamed in through the window.*

light falls on/across sth *The light of the moon fell on her face.*

the light is fading (=it is getting darker as the sun is going down) *The light was fading and we decided to go indoors.*

VERBS + light

produce light (also **emit light** formal): *The bulbs don't produce much light.*

reflect light *Snow reflects a lot of light.*

block (out) the light (=stop light reaching a place) *Move away from the window - you're blocking out the light.*

sth is bathed in light literary (=something has a lot of light shining on it) *The fields and woods were bathed in golden light.*

PREPOSITIONS

light from sth *The light from a torch was all they had to guide them.*
by the light of sth (=using a particular light to do something) *I read by the light of the fire.*

PHRASES

a beam/ray/shaft of light (=a thin line of light) *There was a shaft of light from the doorway.*
a flash of light (=a bright light that appears suddenly for a very short time) *A flash of light was followed by a deafening sound as the bomb exploded.*
a pool/circle of light (=an area of light) *They stood in the pool of light cast by the streetlamp.*
a source of light (also **a light source**) (=something that produces light) *The only source of light was a candle.*

2 something that produces light, especially electric light

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + light

a light is on *All the lights in the house were on.*
a light is off/out *Most people sleep with the light off.*
the bedroom/kitchen/bathroom etc light *She could see that his bedroom light was on.*
an electric light *He fitted an electric light inside the cupboard.*
a bedside light *She switched off the bedside light and went to sleep.*
a warning light *A warning light comes on if the engine gets too hot.*

Streetlight, headlight, and spotlight are written as one word.

VERBS + light

turn on/switch on a light *Switch the light on, please.*
turn off/switch off the light *To save energy, turn the light off when you leave a room.*
leave the light on *You've left the bathroom light on.*
shine a light somewhere *The policeman shone a light down the hallway.*

light + VERBS

a light goes out/goes off *Suddenly all the lights in the house went out.*
a light comes on/goes on (=starts working) *The light comes on automatically when you open the fridge door.*
a light glows/shines *There were a few houses, their lights shining on the hillside.*
a light flashes *A police car arrived with its blue lights flashing.*
a light flickers (=goes on and off repeatedly) *The light flickered, and then came on.*

light² adj

1 not heavy

ADVERBS

very light *These scissors are very light and easy to use.*
quite/fairly light *When I swung the golf club, it felt quite light.*
relatively light *When you start training, use relatively light weights.*
surprisingly light *This guitar is compact and surprisingly light.*

VERBS

feel light *The box felt lighter than I expected.*

PHRASES

as light as a feather (=extremely light) *I'll carry you – you're as light as a feather.*
light in weight *This type of plastic is immensely strong but light in weight.*

THESAURUS: light

lightweight
material | fabric | nylon | plastic | aluminium | suit | jacket
lightweight materials, clothing, or equipment weigh less than average:
They wear special boots made of lightweight materials. | This bag is made from a strong lightweight nylon. | A lightweight linen suit is appropriate for a summer wedding.

ANTONYMS light → heavy (1)

2 not dark

VERBS

it is light *Let's go now, while it's still light.*
it gets light *It gets light very early at this time of year.*
the sky turns light (also **the sky grows light** especially literary): *It was 5 a.m. and the sky was just turning light.*
it stays light (also **remain light** formal): *In midsummer it stays light until nearly midnight.*

THESAURUS: light

strong, brilliant, dazzling, blinding, harsh, light, well-lit → bright (1)

ANTONYMS light → dark (1)

3 not severe, or not great in amount or degree

NOUNS

a light punishment/penalty *A small fine seems an extremely light punishment.*
a light sentence (=a light punishment given by a judge, usually a period of time in prison) *Burglars and muggers usually only get a light sentence.*



light rain/snow *There will be some light rain followed by sunny periods.*

light traffic *The traffic was surprisingly light in the rush hour.*

light casualties (=a small number of people injured or killed) *The US forces suffered only light casualties.*

light use *The equipment is only built for light use.*

ANTONYMS **light** → **heavy** (2)

light-hearted *adj* **THESAURUS** → **funny** (1)

lightning *n*
a flash of light in the sky caused by electricity and usually followed by thunder

PHRASES

a flash of lightning *Suddenly there was a flash of lightning in the sky.*

a bolt of lightning (=a flash of lightning, especially one that hits something) *The house was struck by a bolt of lightning.*

thunder and lightning *The thunder and lightning began to move further away.*

VERBS

be hit/struck by lightning *The house had been hit by lightning.*

lightning flashes *Lightning flashed in the sky.*

ADJECTIVES

forked lightning (=with smaller lines coming off the main line) *There was a sudden flash of forked lightning.*

sheet lightning (=a sudden flash of brightness covering a large area of sky) *Sheet lightning lit up the sky.*

lightning + NOUNS

a lightning conductor *BrE* **a lightning rod** *AmE*
(=a metal bar that protects a building from lightning) *The church has a lightning conductor on the roof.*

lightweight *adj* **THESAURUS** → **light**² (1)

like *v*
to think someone or something is good

ADVERBS

like sb/sth very much/a lot *John's nice – I like him very much.*

like sb/sth best/better *He's been all over the world, but he likes Africa best.*

like sb/sth enormously *I knew Mary very well and liked her enormously.*

really like sb/sth *We really liked the film.*

quite like sb/sth *I quite like their new album.*

particularly like sth *It's a good magazine – I particularly like the arts section.*

always like sb/sth *She had always liked bright colours.*

be universally liked (=be liked by everyone) *He is well respected and almost universally liked.*

PHRASES

get to like sb/sth (=start to like someone or something) *We soon got to like each other.*

like sth more than anything (else) in the world *Some people like money more than anything else in the world.*

I don't like it when... *I don't like it when you get angry.*

ANTONYMS **like** → **dislike**¹

likely *adj*
something that is likely will probably happen or is probably true

ADVERBS

very/extremely likely *It is very likely that he is still alive.*

highly likely (=very likely) *Snow showers are highly likely tomorrow.*

quite likely *BrE* (=very likely) *If the service is good, customers are quite likely to come back.*

fairly/reasonably likely *It seems fairly likely that he'll resign.*

more/most likely *Young drivers are far more likely to have accidents than older ones.*

less/least likely *The smallest puppies are the least likely to survive.*

hardly likely (=not very likely) *It seems hardly likely that she would tell her husband about it.*

increasingly likely *Rain looks increasingly likely.*

VERBS

seem likely (also **appear likely** *formal*): *Which candidate seems likely to win?*

look likely (=seem likely) *It looks likely that she'll leave.*

make sth likely *The attack made war even more likely.*

NOUNS

a likely explanation *What is the most likely explanation for her behaviour?*

a likely effect/impact *They discussed the likely impact of a new factory.*

a likely outcome/consequences (=what will happen as a result of something) *The most likely outcome of the contest is a draw.*

a likely cause/reason *The likely cause of the fire was a dropped cigarette.*

a likely possibility *The most likely possibility is that he will lose all his money.*

a likely scenario (=situation) *One likely scenario is that no one will get the job.*

PHRASES

more than likely (=very likely) *It is more than likely the votes will have to be counted again.*

sth is all too likely (=very likely – used especially about something bad) *His plan was all too likely to fail.*

sth is not at all likely/not remotely likely (=very unlikely) *He could win, but it's not at all likely. | That is not remotely likely to happen.*

limit¹ *v*

to stop an amount or number from being greater

ADVERBS

severely/greatly limit sth *The bad weather severely limited the amount of work that could be done.*

be strictly limited *Parking is strictly limited.*

PREPOSITIONS

limit sth to sth *Limit the amount of coffee you drink to two cups per day.*

limit² *n*

the greatest or least amount that is allowed, or that you have available

ADJECTIVES

a strict limit *There are strict limits on how much luggage you can take on the plane.*

the legal limit *The alcohol in his blood was four times over the legal limit.*

an upper/lower limit (=the highest/lowest amount allowed) *There is no upper limit on the amount you can borrow.*

NOUNS + limit

the speed limit *Too many people go over the speed limit in residential areas.*

a time limit *Is there a time limit for making an insurance claim?*

an age limit *The lower age limit for entering the army is 17.*

a weight/height limit *The weight limit per bag is 20 kilos.*

spending limits *The council has to save money to meet government spending limits.*

an overdraft limit (=the maximum amount you can owe a bank when you have spent more than you have in your account) *You will be charged if you go over your overdraft limit.*

VERBS

set a limit (also **impose a limit** formal): *Set a time limit for the completion of the task.*

put a limit on sth *They put a limit on the cost of tickets.*

go over/exceed a limit (=go faster, buy more etc than a limit allows) *Drivers often exceed the speed limit.*

PREPOSITIONS

a limit on/to sth *Is there a limit on how many books you can borrow?*

over/above the limit *Their luggage was over the limit when they tried to get on the plane.*

under/below/within a limit *He always drives below the speed limit.*

at/on a limit *She was at the limit of her patience.*

up to a limit *I had spent up to the limit on my credit card.*

You say a driver is **over the limit** if they have more alcohol in their blood than is legally allowed: *He told the policeman that he did not realize he was over the limit.*

limited *adj* not very great**NOUNS**

limited amount/number/range *There are a limited number of tickets still available.*

limited space *What should I plant in a small garden where space is limited?*

limited time *They have limited time to train new staff.*

limited resources *We must not waste our limited resources.*

limited success *They have had only limited success in reducing pollution.*

limited value *The information they provided was of limited value.*

ADVERBS

very/extremely limited *His knowledge was extremely limited.*

severely limited *Evidence from this period is severely limited.*

rather/quite/relatively limited *Most puppies have a rather limited attention span.*

PHRASES

of limited use (=not very useful) *This anti-missile system is of limited use against modern missiles.*

to a limited extent (=a little, but not very much) *The method has been used to a limited extent in some other schools.*

in a limited way *I contributed in a limited way to the success of the project.*

line *n*

1 a long thin mark on a piece of paper, the ground, or another surface

ADJECTIVES

a straight line *Draw a straight line across the top of the page.*

a horizontal/vertical/diagonal line *The bricks need to be in a vertical line.*

parallel lines (=equally distant from each other) *There were two parallel lines of stitches.*

a thick/thin line *A thin line of blood ran down his cheek.*

the dotted line (=one that consists of a series of dots) *Sign your name on the dotted line.*

the starting/finishing line (=at the start or end of a race) *The athletes were getting ready at the starting line.*

VERBS

draw a line *Draw a straight line between the two points on the graph.*

put a line through sth (=draw a line through something, especially because it is a mistake)

The teacher put a red line through the first sentence.

cross/go over a line He crossed the finishing line in 3rd place.

be covered in lines The old man's face was covered in lines.

a line shows/indicates sth The line shows the average rise in temperature.

a line separates/divides sth The red line separates the two countries on the map.

2 a row of people or things

PHRASES

stand in line The passengers stood in line, waiting to board the plane.

get in line The teacher told us to get in line outside the classroom.

form a line The dancers formed a line on the stage.

ADJECTIVES

a long/short line There was a long line of traffic.

a continuous line The houses formed a continuous line up the hill.

link¹ [Ac] n

a way in which two things or people are connected

ADJECTIVES

a direct link There is a direct link between smoking and some forms of cancer.

a close link The university has close links with several universities in China.

a strong link There is a strong link between sport and health.

a clear link Official figures show a clear link between poverty and crime.

a vital/important link The team of doctors and nurses provides a vital link between the hospital and the local community.

economic/trade links Economic links between the two countries strengthened.

international links The organization has greatly benefited from its international links.

a tenuous link (=one that is not strong) He had only a tenuous link with the famous singer.

VERBS

have links Several members of the government have links with big companies.

create a link The program creates a link between teaching in schools and learning at home.

establish/form/forged a link He established links with writers and artists.

develop/build links Academics need to develop links with business.

maintain a link These immigrants maintain very close links with family back home.

strengthen a link The country was trying to strengthen its links with its neighbours.

break a link (also **sever a link** formal): She was reluctant to sever this last link with her former life.

make a link (=realize or show that two things are connected with each other) The Swedish scientist was the first person to make the link between climate change and greenhouse gases.

find a link The researchers found strong links between diet and health.

show/establish a link Other research has shown a link between crime and employment opportunities.

PREPOSITIONS

a link between things There is a link between stress and headaches.

a link with sth/sb They are hoping to establish links with local business.

link² [Ac] v

1 if two things are linked, they are related or connected in some way

Grammar

This meaning of **link** is usually passive.

ADVERBS

be closely linked The medical department is closely linked with the local hospital.

be directly linked They believe his death was directly linked to the scandal.

be strongly linked Educational achievement is strongly linked to social class.

be clearly linked Urban growth is clearly linked with population increase.

be inextricably linked (=very closely, so you cannot separate them) Physical and emotional well-being are inextricably linked.

PREPOSITIONS

be linked to sth Their wages are linked to the number of years they have been with the company.

be linked with sth Obesity is linked with many health problems.

2 to join two or more things, people, or places

PREPOSITIONS/ADVERBS

link sth with/and sth The new railway line will link London and Birmingham.

link sth together The scientists developed a network to link their computers together.

liquid n

a substance that is not a solid or a gas, for example water or milk

ADJECTIVES

a hot/cold liquid Be careful when dealing with hot liquids.

a clear liquid We were offered a clear liquid that looked like water.

a colourless liquid BrE, **a colorless liquid** AmE: The liquid was colourless and had no smell.

a thick liquid *She stirred the thick liquid in the saucepan.*

VERBS + liquid

pour a liquid *The chef poured the liquid into a bowl.*

drink/swallow a liquid *He put the glass to his lips and drank the liquid.*

sth absorbs a liquid *Cook the sauce until all of the liquid has been absorbed.*

liquid + VERBS

a liquid flows *The liquid flowed down the pipe.*

a liquid oozes (=flows slowly because it is thick) *A red liquid oozed over the floor.*

Fluid is used as a more formal word for **liquid**, especially in medical and technical contexts: *Drink plenty of clear fluids.* | *The car was leaking brake fluid.*

list

a set of names, numbers etc written one below the other

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + list

a long/short list *The teacher read out a long list of names.*

a complete/full/comprehensive list *The full list of winners is on page seven.*

a shopping list/grocery list (=a list of things or food you want to buy) *I didn't get everything on my shopping list.*

a price list *We'll send you a catalogue and price list.*

a wine list (=a list of wines available in a restaurant) *The restaurant has a good wine list.*

a guest list *The guest list for the wedding did not include me.*

a waiting list (=a list of people who are waiting for something) *If you don't get the class you want, you can put your name on a waiting list.*

a mailing list (=a list of people that a company sends information to) *If you do not want to be on our mailing list, please tick the box below.*

a to-do list (=a list of things you must do) *Painting the bedroom is at the top of my to-do list.*

Checklist (=a list of things to do) and **shortlist** (= a list of the most suitable people for a job or prize) are usually written as one word.

VERBS

make/write a list *Make a list of all the things you have to do.*

draw up/compile a list (=make a list – more formal) *They've compiled a list of children's clubs and organizations.*

put sb/sth on a list *I was put on a waiting list to see a specialist at the hospital.*

add sb/sth to a list *I'll add those books to my list.*

join a list *Belgium has now joined the list of member countries.*

the list goes on (=used when saying there are many more people or things on a list) *You have to pay for flowers, the wedding dress, the church... the list goes on.*

PREPOSITIONS

a list of sth *There's a list of local restaurants in the back of the book.*

on a list *There are ten names on my list.*

PHRASES

at the top/bottom of a list *Her name was at the top of the list of students.*

first/last on a list *Why am I always last on the list?*

listen

to pay attention to what someone is saying or to a sound that you can hear

ADVERBS

listen carefully/closely *If you listen carefully, you can hear the birds singing.*

listen hard (also **listen intently/attentively** formal) (=listen very carefully) *The students listened intently to her every word.*

listen politely/respectfully/patiently *He expects you to listen politely and agree with everything he says.*

listen sympathetically *Her boss listened sympathetically and told her not to worry.*

PREPOSITIONS

listen to sb/sth *I like listening to music when I'm driving.*

⚠ You always say **listen to** something. Don't say 'I like listening music'.

PHRASES

listen in silence *I told him my story and he listened in silence.*

listen with interest *The audience listened with interest to what she was saying.*

sb never listens to sb/sth (=they always ignore someone or something) *My son never listens to what I say.*

listen at the door/window (=stand next to it and secretly listen to someone or something) *One of the servants was listening at the door, and she heard everything that was said.*

literature

books, plays, poems etc, especially ones that people think are important and good

ADJECTIVES

English/American/French etc literature *She took a degree in French literature.*



18th-/19th-/20th-century literature *This type of plot is common in 19th-century literature.*

modern literature *I haven't read much modern literature – I prefer the classics like Dickens and Thomas Hardy.*

contemporary literature (=modern literature, or literature of the time you are talking about) *The role of the individual was a common theme in contemporary literature.*

great literature *Teenagers should be introduced to the great literature of the past.*

popular literature *He made good money as a writer of popular literature.*

classical literature (=the literature of ancient Greece and Rome) *There are many references in classical literature to the Trojan War.*

medieval literature (=written between about the 11th and 15th centuries) *His principal area of research is medieval literature.*

VERBS

study literature *She studied medieval literature at the university.*

read literature *He reads German literature for pleasure.*

teach literature *He now teaches English literature at Cambridge University.*

PHRASES

a work/piece of literature *I admit the book is not a great work of literature.*

litter ⁿ

waste paper, cans etc that people have thrown onto the ground

VERBS

drop/throw litter *People who drop litter in the street should be fined.*

leave litter *Please do not leave litter. Use the bins provided.*

pick up/clear up/clean up/collect litter *Teams of volunteers regularly pick up litter that has been left on the beach.*

be strewn with litter (=covered with it) *The pavement was strewn with litter.*

litter + NOUNS

a litter bin/basket *Keep the park tidy and use the litter bins.*

PHRASES

a pile of litter *They left a pile of litter behind for us to clean up.*

a piece of litter *Over 373,000 pieces of litter were found on beaches in the UK last year.*

take your litter home with you *If there is no litter bin in the area, please take your litter home with you.*

little ^{adj} **THESAURUS** small (1)

little-known ^{adj} **THESAURUS** famous

live ^{adj} **THESAURUS** alive (1)

live ^v

1 if you live in a place, you have your home there

ADVERBS

live together *They fell in love and started to live together.*

live alone *I'm quite happy living alone.*

live apart *Their busy schedules forced the couple to live apart.*

live nearby/close by *She was visiting her daughter who lives nearby.*

PREPOSITIONS

live in a house/town/country *Living in London is very expensive.*

live on a street *He lives on Queens Street.*

live at an address *They live at 1201 Columbia Drive, Los Angeles.*

PHRASES

live at home (=in your parents' home) *Most seventeen-year-olds still live at home.*

live next door *A rather odd family came to live next door to us.*

live just across the street/down the road from sb *He lives just across the street from me.*

live on the streets *There has been an increase in the number of mentally ill people living on the streets.*

a place to live/somewhere to live *They've finally found a place to live.*

2 to have a particular kind of life

ADVERBS

live well/comfortably/happily *They have enough money to live comfortably.*

live dangerously (=take a risk or do something new) *She decided to live dangerously and have her hair cut short.*

PHRASES

live in luxury *The president was living in luxury in a palace while his people starved.*

live frugally (=with only the things you need and no luxuries) *They lived frugally, eating only rice and beans.*

live below the poverty line (=with very little money, so you are officially considered to be very poor) *There are hundreds of families living below the poverty line.*

live in peace *It is time for the war to end and everyone to live in peace.*

3 to be alive

ADVERBS

live longer *People are living longer than ever before.*

live forever *No-one lives forever.*

PREPOSITIONS

live until you are 82, 96 etc *Her mother lived until she was 99.*

live for 60/70 etc years Goldfish can live for 10 to 20 years in a garden pond.

live through sth During his life, he had lived through some very hard times.

livid *adj* **THESAURUS** → angry

living¹ *adj* **THESAURUS** → alive (1)

living² *n*
the way that you earn money or the money that you earn

VERBS

earn/make a living It's hard to make a living as a musician.

do sth for a living (=work at something as your job) What do you do for a living?

eke out/scratch/scrape a living (=only just earn enough money to live) They eke out a living selling whatever they can.

provide a living The industry provides a living for thousands of people.

ADJECTIVES

a good/decent/comfortable living (=enough money) Her husband makes a good living.

an honest living I'm just trying to earn an honest living.

load¹ *n*

1 the quantity of something that a vehicle or person carries, especially a large quantity

ADJECTIVES

a heavy load The road has been damaged by lorries carrying heavy loads.

a light load This van is ideal for transporting light loads.

a full load The plane was carrying a full load of fuel.

the maximum load The elevator carries a maximum load of 800 kg.

VERBS

carry a load The horse was carrying a heavy load.

pull a load The train can pull loads of hundreds of tons.

shed a load (=used when a load falls off a lorry or truck) Drivers suffered delays on the motorway after a lorry shed its load.

A truckload/lorryload/carload/busload

You use this about the amount of things or people that will fit into a truck, car etc: They used two **truckloads** of soil. | **Busloads** of tourists began arriving in the city square.

Loads of

This phrase is used in informal English to mean "a lot of" things or people: There were **loads of** mistakes. | She has **loads of** friends.

2 the amount of work or responsibilities that someone has

VERBS

reduce/lighten the load Companies can lighten the load on permanent staff by hiring extra workers during busy periods of the year.

increase the load Now that his colleagues have gone, this will increase the load on him.

share the load They shared the load by taking it in turns to drive the car.

Workload is usually written as one word.

load² *v* **THESAURUS** → fill

loan *n*

an amount of money that you borrow

VERBS

get a loan She got a loan from the bank.

take out a loan (=borrow money) I had to take out a loan to buy my car.

repay/pay off/pay back a loan (=give back the money you borrowed, usually over a period of time) It'll be years before we've paid off the loan.

give/make sb a loan We're hoping my dad will give us a loan.

ask sb for a loan He asked his father for a loan.

apply for a loan (=officially ask for a loan) To apply for a loan, fill out this online form.

arrange a loan Do you need help arranging a loan?

refuse sb a loan Did the bank say why they refused her the loan?

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + loan

a £20,000/\$5,000 etc loan The company asked for a £100,000 loan.

a bank loan If my parents won't lend me the money, I'll have to get a bank loan.

a home/car loan They took out a 30-year home loan.

a business loan The bank offers a range of business loans to meet the needs of small businesses.

a student loan Many college graduates are paying off huge student loans.

local *adv* **THESAURUS** → near

location *Ac n*

the place where someone or something is

ADJECTIVES

a good/great location The apartment is in a good location.

an ideal/perfect location I've found the perfect location for our new store.

a suitable location They are still searching for a suitable location for the museum.

a convenient location *The house is in a convenient location close to local shops.*

a prime location (=an extremely good location) *The hotel is in a prime location right by the sea.*

a central location (=near the centre of a town or area) *The park's central location makes it a popular meeting place.*

a remote location (=far from where most people live) *One proposal is to bury the waste deep underground in a remote location.*

a secret/unknown/undisclosed location *The talks were held at a secret location.*

exact/precise location *The exact location of his grave is not known.*

geographical location *The schools are grouped according to their geographical location.*

present location *The college moved to its present location in 1931.*

a new/different location *The store is moving to a new location.*

an exotic location *They like to have their holidays in exotic locations.*

VERBS

find the location of sth *I managed to find the location of the hotel on the map.*

PREPOSITIONS

in/at a location *The cottage is in a beautiful location.*

the location of sth *He wasn't sure about the precise location of the building.*

lock v **THESAURUS** close¹ (1)

logic n

a way of thinking about something that seems correct and reasonable, or a set of sensible reasons for doing something

VERBS + logic

understand/follow/see sb's logic *It's easy to understand his logic.*

explain the logic of sth *Can anyone explain the logic of this statement to me?*

use/apply logic *Why do we not apply the same logic in the way we treat animals as we do with humans?*

be based on logic *This view is not based on logic.*

accept the logic of sth (=agree that it is correct) *If we accept this logic, no one should pay tax.*

question/challenge the logic of sth (=say you do not agree with it) *People are questioning the logic of building more homes in an area that is already overcrowded.*

sth defies logic (=used when something does not seem reasonable) *It defies logic to import food that we can grow more easily and cheaply here.*

logic + VERBS

logic suggests sth (=means it is likely to be true) *Logic suggests that if an expert can't fix it, neither can you.*

logic dictates sth (=means it is definitely true) *Logic dictates that poorer people will be more affected by the rise in inflation.*

the same logic applies (=the same thing is also true about someone or something else) *The same logic applies to other prisoners.*

ADJECTIVES

the same logic *By the same logic, other harmful substances such as alcohol or tobacco should also be prohibited.*

a simple logic *The argument does have a simple logic.*

impeccable logic (=very good and difficult to criticize) *They argued, with impeccable logic, that if you were old enough to die for your country, you should have the right to vote.*

compelling logic (=seeming to be definitely right) *Few will argue with the compelling logic of his theory.*

twisted/warped logic (=wrong in a cruel or shocking way) *According to the terrorists' warped logic, we all deserve to be killed.*

flawed/faulty logic (=wrong) *Their arguments are full of flawed logic.*

the underlying logic (=which something is based on) *These word lists show students the underlying logic of English spelling.*

internal logic (=the logic that exists between the various parts of a system) *Every religion has its own internal logic.*

a certain logic (=used when something may seem wrong or strange, but there are understandable reasons for it) *With a certain logic, the child said that 'ten and one' would be the next number after ten.*

PREPOSITIONS

the logic of sth *I don't see the logic of your argument.*

the logic behind sth *The logic behind this statement is wrong.*

PHRASES

there is no logic in (doing) sth *There is no logic in telling a child not to swear if you do it yourself.*

a lack of logic *There seems to be a lack of logic in his remarks.*

logical [Ac] adj

seeming reasonable and sensible, or based on ideas that are connected in the right way

NOUNS

a logical reason/explanation *The only logical explanation is that he didn't receive the letter.*

a logical conclusion *If you take this argument to its logical conclusion, nobody would ever have children at all.*

a logical answer/solution *I can't think of any logical solution to the problem.*

the logical thing to do *The logical thing to do is to repeat the process and see if you get the same result.*

a logical choice *Because of his greater experience, he seemed a logical choice.*

a logical step *The next logical step would be to test the system.*

a logical result/consequence/outcome *The logical consequence of this view is to raise taxes.*

a logical order *Present the information in a logical order.*

a logical argument *I've tried to convince him with logical arguments.*

ADVERBS

perfectly/quite/entirely logical *This is a perfectly logical explanation from the child's point of view.*

highly logical *Like many ancient languages, it has a highly logical structure.*

only logical (=used to emphasize that something is logical) *It is only logical that the problem will become more serious as more people use the internet.*

VERBS

seem/sound logical *It seemed logical to suppose that the men were guilty.*

PREPOSITIONS

logical to sb *It may be logical to you, but it certainly doesn't sound very logical to me.*

lonely *adj*

unhappy because you are alone or do not have anyone to talk to

VERBS

be/feel lonely *She had been lonely all her life.*

get lonely (=become lonely) *Do you get lonely living here by yourself?*

NOUNS

a lonely man/woman/boy/girl *In her eyes, he was a sad lonely man who needed looking after.*

lonely people *These lonely unhappy people needed to know there was somebody who loved them.*

a lonely figure *At the end of his life, Wilson became a tragic lonely figure.*

a lonely place *The north coast is a wild and lonely place.*

lonely days/nights *There would be no more lonely nights in hotels.*

a lonely life/existence *Being a fisherman can be a hard lonely life.*

PHRASES

the lonely hearts column (=the part of a newspaper or magazine where people advertise for romantic relationships) *She answered an advert in a lonely hearts column.*

long *adj*

1 measuring many kilometres, metres, centimetres etc

NOUNS

a long distance/way *We were a long way from home.*

long hair/face/neck/body *The girl had long brown hair.*

long legs/arms/fingers/tail *Your arms are longer than mine – can you get it for me?*

a long road/river/bridge *Which is the longest river in the world?*

a long tunnel/corridor *The porter led us down a long corridor to our room.*

a long line/queue *A long line of people waited outside the museum.*

a long piece of sth *He tied the letters together with a long piece of string.*

long trousers/socks/boots/dress/coat etc *The older boys were allowed to wear long trousers.*

long sleeves *She always wore long sleeves which covered up her arms.*

If something is very long, you can say that it **stretches for miles/hundreds of metres** etc: *The beach stretches for over four miles.*

ANTONYMS **long** → **short (2)**

2 continuing for many years, months, minutes etc

NOUNS

a long time/period *It's been a long time since we last met.*

a long delay/pause *There are long delays on the road due to an accident.*

a long story/film/play *It's a very long story – you wouldn't want to hear it all now.*

a long day/night/evening etc (=one that seems long because it is very tiring or busy) *I have a long day ahead of me tomorrow.*

a long life *We hope that you have a very long and happy life together.*

a long history *The university has a long and distinguished history.*

a long journey/trip/voyage *It is a long journey from New York to Mexico City.*

a long walk/ride/drive/flight *They went for a long walk along the river.*

a long meeting/discussion/conversation *Karen spent most of the day in a long meeting.*

a long speech/talk/lecture *The president gave a long speech about the need for reform.*

a long silence *There was a long silence before he spoke again.*

VERBS

get longer *Summer is coming and the days are getting longer.*

PHRASES

in the long term (=in the future a long time

from now) No one knows what will happen in the long term.

THESAURUS: long

long-running

show | programme | series | dispute | battle | argument | debate | campaign | saga

a long-running show, dispute, campaign etc continues for a long time:

She was the star of a long-running TV show. | He has been involved in a long-running dispute with his neighbour. | There has been a long-running campaign to save the forest.

long-term

effect | consequences | benefit | problem | relationship | solution | strategy | goal | investment | unemployment | growth | decline

used about something that is expected to continue for a long time into the future:

No one knows what the long-term effects of climate change will be. | Her job involves caring for people with long-term problems. | This is his first long-term relationship since he separated from his wife. | Can wind farms provide a long-term solution to our energy problems?

lasting

impression | effect | impact | influence | peace | damage | benefit | value | friendship | solution | achievement | memorial | reminder

strong enough or great enough to continue for a long time:

The book left a lasting impression on me. | The negotiations were aimed at achieving a lasting peace. | This affair has done lasting damage to his reputation. | The stone is a lasting memorial to those who died.

Lasting is always used before a noun.

lengthy

period | process | delay | discussion | negotiation | conversation | description | sentence

continuing for a long time, especially longer than you want or expect:

There was a lengthy period of economic decline. | Getting a visa can be a lengthy and time-consuming process. | He faces a lengthy prison sentence (=period in prison).

protracted

negotiations | debate | discussion | talks | dispute | struggle | battle | fight | stay | delay

continuing for a long time, especially an unusually long time. Protracted is more formal than lengthy:

Despite protracted negotiations, they were unable to reach an agreement. | The firm is anxious to avoid a protracted legal battle. | There were protracted delays during the trial.

prolonged

period | use | exposure | absence | recession | drought | illness

continuing for a long time - used especially about a bad situation or something that has a bad effect:

The country entered a prolonged period of economic and political crisis. | Prolonged use of the drug can cause harmful side effects. | His absences from work became more and more prolonged.

enduring

appeal | fascination | influence | memory | love | legacy

enduring feelings and memories continue for a long time without disappearing or being forgotten:

It is easy to understand the enduring appeal of the James Bond movies (=people continue to like something for a long time). | His poems show his enduring love for Ireland.

Enduring is always used before a noun.

extended

period | visit | stay | holiday | break | tour

used when someone stays somewhere or does something for longer than usual, or longer than was planned:

You shouldn't leave children on their own for extended periods. | She had to have an extended stay in hospital after the baby was born.

marathon

session | contest | journey | battle | effort

continuing for a very long time and needing a lot of effort or determination:

The doctors treated over a hundred patients in one marathon session. | He arrived after a marathon journey across Europe.

Marathon is always used before a noun.

interminable

argument | debate | meeting | delay | wait | journey

very long and boring - used especially when something makes you feel impatient because it continues for far too long:

There were interminable arguments about money. | The journey home was interminable.

ANTONYMS long → short (1)

3 consisting of many words, pages, or letters

NOUNS

a long book/article/report Because his report was so long, few people bothered to read it.

a long list There is a long list of rules and regulations.

a long word/name/title Some people like to use long words because it makes them sound more intelligent.

THESAURUS: long

long-winded

answer | **question** | **story** | **discussion** | **speech** | **explanation** | **apology**
using too many words and continuing for too long:

It was a very long-winded answer to a simple question. | He gave a long-winded speech about his vision for the company's future.

ANTONYMS **long** → **short** (3)

long-term *adj* **THESAURUS** → **long** (2)

look¹ *v*

to turn your eyes towards someone or something, so that you can see them

ADVERBS

look carefully/closely *If you look carefully, you can see small cracks in the ceiling.*

look suspiciously *He looked suspiciously at the strange pink food.*

look longingly/enviously (=in a way that shows you would like something) *A bird was looking enviously at her sandwich.*

PREPOSITIONS

look at sb/sth *"It's time we left," Ian said, looking at his watch.*

look towards sb/sth *Sue kept looking towards the door.*

look out of the window *"We can't go out in this weather," said Bob, looking out of the window.*

PHRASES

turn to look at sb/sth *The men all turned to look at her as she entered the room.*

look² *n*

1 an act of looking at something

Grammar

Usually singular in this meaning.

ADJECTIVES

a quick/brief look *After a quick look at the map, we set off.*

a long/lingering look *Sam took a long look at her face.*

a good/careful/close/proper look *I didn't get a good look at the man's face.*

VERBS

have/take a look *Let me have a look at that coat – I think it's mine.*

get a look *They moved to the front of the crowd to get a better look.*

sneak a look (=without wanting anyone to notice) *When the doctor wasn't looking, I sneaked a look at his notes.*

2 the expression on someone's face, which shows their feelings

ADJECTIVES

a frightened/worried/nervous look *His mother watched him with a worried look on her face.*

a funny/odd/strange/curious look *She gets some strange looks when she takes her cat for a walk.*

an angry look/a black look *"Where have you been?" he asked, with an angry look.*

a doubtful/puzzled/quizzical look *The wrong use of a word can cause puzzled looks.*

a dirty look (=disapproving) *She gave me dirty looks the whole time I was talking to her boyfriend.*

a frosty look (=unfriendly) *"You're late," said Simon, with a frosty look.*

a blank look (=showing no emotion, understanding, or interest) *Maria could see from his blank look that he didn't understand.*

VERBS

have a look (on your face) *He had a nervous look on his face.*

give sb a look *People keep giving her strange looks.*

exchange looks *The old woman and the young child exchanged looks.*

PREPOSITIONS

a look of surprise/despair/horror/satisfaction etc *She suddenly stopped, a look of surprise on her face.*

PHRASES

the look in sb's eyes *He could tell by the look in her eyes that she was upset.*

the look on sb's face *I can't wait to see the look on his face when he opens his present.*

loophole *n*

a small mistake in a law that makes it possible to avoid doing something that the law should make you do

VERBS

close/plug a loophole (=get rid of it) *The president wants to close tax loopholes for foreign companies.*

tighten (up) a loophole (=get rid of it or make it smaller) *The changes will tighten up loopholes in the law.*

find/discover a loophole *Some lawyers spend their time finding loopholes in contracts.*

leave a loophole *A Bill must be exact and not leave any loopholes.*

create a loophole *The company created a loophole in their terms in order to avoid giving refunds.*

use/take advantage of/exploit a loophole (=use it to get what you want) *Some people will take advantage of any loophole they can find.*

a loophole allows sb to do sth (also **a loophole enables sb to do sth** formal): Security loopholes allowed thieves to copy the data.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + loophole

a serious/major loophole This is a major loophole in the system.

a gaping/glaring loophole (=very large) There is a gaping loophole in the ban on sales of these weapons.

a possible/potential loophole Beware of potential loopholes that an insurer could use to refuse to pay.

a legal loophole The new law closed a number of legal loopholes.

a tax loophole Because of a tax loophole, many high earners are not paying tax.

PREPOSITIONS

a loophole in sth A loophole in the law means this is not illegal.

loose

adj

not firmly fastened in place, or no longer fastened in place

VERBS

come loose Some ropes had come loose and were swinging in the wind.

work (itself) loose One of the bolts had worked loose.

break loose On our way home, the canoe broke loose and came off the trailer.

shake (sth) loose A bookcase shook loose from my wall during the earthquake.

tear (sth) loose The wind tore a shutter loose from the front of the house.

pry sth loose (also **prise sth loose** BrE) (=make it come loose by putting a tool under it) He prised a brick loose.

hang loose He undid his tie so that it hung loose around his neck.

leave sth loose The gust blew around some papers that had been left loose on the desk.

wear your hair loose (=hanging down, and not tied with anything) Why don't you ever wear your hair loose?

ANTONYMS loose → **tight**¹ (1)

loot

v

THESAURUS

steal

lorry

n BrE

a large vehicle for carrying heavy goods

VERBS

a lorry carries sth The lorry was carrying a large quantity of parcels.

drive a lorry Her husband drives a lorry.

load a lorry (with sth) (also **load sth onto a lorry**) They began loading the lorry with timber.

unload a lorry I waited while the lorry was unloaded.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + lorry

a heavy lorry They are disturbed by heavy lorries going past their homes.

a container lorry (=carrying goods in a very large metal box) Huge container lorries transport the fish to the markets in the cities.

an articulated lorry (=a long lorry formed of two parts connected together) We got stuck behind an articulated lorry.

an army lorry The rebels blew up an army lorry.

PREPOSITIONS

by lorry Food and water supplies have been brought in by lorry.

in/on a lorry They took everything away in a lorry.

NOUNS

a lorry driver He now works as a lorry driver.

a lorry load of sth (also **a lorryload of sth**) I have to deliver a lorry load of stationery to York.

PHRASES

a lorry loaded/laden with sth A lorry loaded with bricks overturned.

a convoy of lorries (=a group of lorries travelling together) A convoy of UN lorries were held up at a checkpoint.

Lorry is used in British English. In American English, people say **truck**.

loss

n

1 a situation in which you do not have something any more, or you have less of something

ADJECTIVES

a great/severe loss He suffered a severe loss of confidence after the accident.

a significant/considerable loss This could lead to a significant loss of income.

a major loss They have studied how people adjust to major losses in their lives.

a total loss There has been a total loss of trust.

a temporary/permanent loss He's suffering from a temporary loss of memory.

a rapid/gradual loss Rapid weight loss can cause health problems.

financial loss Several clients had suffered financial losses as a result of taking his investment advice.

NOUNS + loss

weight loss Weight loss should be gradual.

hearing loss Listening to loud music can result in permanent hearing loss.

hair loss Some men are embarrassed about their hair loss.

heat loss Insulation will reduce heat loss.

job losses Further job losses are expected.

VERBS

suffer a loss of sth *They have suffered a loss of their traditional authority.*

result in/lead to/cause a loss of sth *The decision will result in the loss of 80 jobs.*

prevent/reduce the loss of sth *If you keep saving your files, this will prevent the loss of your work if there is a power failure.*

PHRASES

loss of memory (also **memory loss**) *Have you ever had a loss of memory as a result of a blow to the head?*

loss of blood (also **blood loss**) *She was weak from loss of blood.*

loss of appetite *Depression is a very common cause of loss of appetite.*

loss of confidence *She was bullied at school and she still suffers from a loss of confidence.*

loss of control *Drinking often results in loss of control over one's life.*

loss of earnings/income *The insurance policy compensates you for loss of earnings.*

2 if a business makes a loss, it spends more than it earns

ADJECTIVES

a big/huge/massive loss *Many football clubs have made big losses.*

a substantial loss *If we sell the property now, we will make a substantial loss.*

a small loss *Their small loss had turned into a very big one.*

a net loss (=after tax and costs are paid) *The company reported a net loss of \$28 million.*

VERBS

make a loss (also **incur a loss** formal): *The restaurant made a loss last year.*

run/operate at a loss (=make a loss while operating as a business) *The business is currently running at a loss.*

report a loss *Last year the company reported a loss of £4.2 million.*

recoup your losses (=get money back) *The company will try to recoup its losses by charging customers more.*

PREPOSITIONS

a loss of £50,000/\$10 million etc *The company is expected to make a loss of about £2 million.*

loud

adj
a loud sound or voice makes a lot of noise

NOUNS

a loud voice/shout/cry/cheer *"Go away!" he said in a loud voice.*

a loud noise/sound *I heard a loud noise outside my window.*

loud music *Neighbours complained that the loud music was keeping them awake.*

a loud explosion/bang/crash *The book fell to the floor with a loud bang.*

loud applause/laughter *She received loud applause at the end of her speech.*

ADVERBS

extremely/incredibly loud *The roar of the engines was incredibly loud.*

deafeningly loud (=extremely loud, in a way that could cause damage to your hearing) *The music they play is deafeningly loud.*

PHRASES

loud and clear (=loud enough for other people to hear) *We can hear you loud and clear.*

turn sth up loud (=make something play loudly) *I turned the music up loud.*

THESAURUS: loud

noisy

neighbour | crowd | children | protest | demonstration | meeting | bar | restaurant | factory | office | road | traffic | engine

used about people, places, and machines that are too loud:

Their lives were being ruined by noisy neighbours. | I find it difficult to work in a noisy office. | Steam engines are incredibly noisy.

Noisy or loud?

You use **loud** when talking about sounds. You say **loud music** (not 'noisy' music) and **loud thunder** (not 'noisy' thunder).

You use **noisy** about a person who is making a lot of noise: *I was surrounded by a group of noisy children.* You use **loud** to describe a person who always speaks in a loud confident way, which you find rather annoying: *He is very loud and he always thinks he knows everything.*

rowdy

fans | crowd | teenagers | protesters | behaviour | party | pub | bar

a rowdy group of people behave in a noisy and uncontrolled way. A rowdy party or place is full of noisy people, often behaving badly: *The streets were full of rowdy soccer fans. | The police were called to the pub after customers complained about rowdy behaviour.*

raucous formal

laughter | celebration | demonstration | crowd | behaviour | shouting | song

very loud because people are excited:

The audience suddenly burst into raucous laughter. | The city is well known for its raucous New Year celebrations. | The teams played in front of a raucous crowd of 14,000 fans.

resounding

crack | thud | cheer

used to describe a loud noise when

something hits another thing, or a loud cheer that continues for some time:

The door shut with a resounding crack. | His remarks were met with a resounding cheer.

Resounding is only used before a noun.

very loud

deafening

roar | noise | sound | music | explosion | cheer | applause

so loud that you cannot hear anything else:

I shouted to make myself heard above the deafening roar of the wind. | The noise from the ship's engines was deafening.

You say there was a **deafening silence** when you are shocked because someone refuses to give an answer: *Demands for reform were met with a deafening silence from the military government.*

thunderous

applause | roar | cheer | noise | explosion | ovation

extremely loud – used about long deep sounds:

His remarks received thunderous applause from the audience (=people clapped very loudly). | The thunderous roar from the waterfalls can be heard from far away.

Thunderous is only used before a noun.

Thunderous or deafening?

Thunderous is the usual word to use with **applause**. It is used about long deep sounds: *the thunderous roar of the engines*. You use **deafening** when something is so loud that you cannot hear anything else, especially when you wish it would stop: *The music was deafening.*

ear-splitting

sound | noise | racket

so loud that your ears feel uncomfortable:

The ear-splitting sound of techno music was coming from the next room. | The scooter engines made an ear-splitting racket (=a very loud annoying noise – an informal use).

piercing

scream | cry | shriek | whistle | sound

extremely loud, high, and unpleasant to hear:

She let out a piercing scream and pushed the man away. | The bird has a high piercing cry. | The piercing sound of the alarm bell rang out.

If music or a radio, TV etc is very loud, you say that it is **at full volume**: *She has her television on at full volume.*

ANTONYMS **loud** → **quiet (1)**

lousy *adj* **THESAURUS** **terrible**

love¹ *v*

to like someone or something very much

ADVERBS

love sb very much *He loves his wife very much.*

love sb deeply/dearly/passionately *They both loved each other deeply.*

truly/really love sb *He suddenly realized that he truly loved Pat and wanted her back in his life.*

You can also say that someone is **in love with** another person: *Tracy was in love with a man who was much older than her. | The couple are very much in love. | She fell in love with a beautiful young prince (=started to have feelings of love for him).*

ANTONYMS **love** → **hate¹**

love² *n*

1 a strong feeling of liking someone very much

ADJECTIVES

true love (=real love) *He felt that he had finally found true love.*

real love *You could see real love in their eyes.*

romantic love *Romantic love was not always the reason for marriage.*

passionate love *He wrote about his passionate love for her.*

young love (=between young people) *It's a story of young love in the 1950s.*

unrequited love *formal* (=love for someone who does not love you) *Shakespeare's play is a tale of unrequited love.*

undying love (=love that does not stop) *She wrote of her undying love for her children.*

unconditional love (=that continues whatever bad things someone does) *Their mother gave them unconditional love.*

brotherly love (=between brothers or like that of brothers) *They was no sign of any brotherly love between them.*

VERBS + love

show/express your love *He shows his love for her by buying her presents.*

declare your love (=say that you love someone) *At the age of 5, he declared his undying love for his teacher.*

find love (=meet someone to love) *I never thought I would find love.*

return sb's love (=love someone who loves you) *Estella does not return his love.*

love + VERBS

love grows/blossoms (=it becomes greater) *Their love blossomed when they went on holiday together.*

love dies (=it ends) *Our love will never die.*

love + NOUNS

a love song/story *The book is basically a love story.*

a love letter *She kept all their old love letters.*

a love affair (=a romantic relationship between people who are not married to each other) *He had a love affair with his wife's best friend.*

sb's love life (=someone's romantic relationships) *She's always asking about my love life.*

PREPOSITIONS

love for sb *Their love for each other grew deeper every day.*

love between sb *It was clear that there was no longer any love between them.*

out of/for love (=because you love someone) *She gave up her career for love.*

PHRASES

be in love (with sb) (=have feelings of love for someone) *You can see that she is very much in love with him.*

fall in love (with sb) (=start to love someone) *They fell in love and decided to get married.*

love at first sight (=when you love someone as soon as you meet them) *When I first met my wife, it was love at first sight.*

madly/deeply in love (=you love someone very much) *I married Dan because I was madly in love.*

head over heels in love *informal* (=you love someone very much) *The two of them fell head over heels in love.*

love is blind (=used to say that people do not notice the faults of the person they love) *I don't know what she sees in him, but I guess love is blind.*

the love of your life (= the person you have loved the most in your life) *She said that he was the love of her life.*

2 a strong feeling of enjoyment and interest in something

VERBS

have a love of sth *If you have a love of music, you will enjoy this course.*

develop a love of sth *This is where he first developed a love of the sea.*

share a love of sth *They both share a love of Shakespeare.*

fall in love with sth (=start liking it very much) *I fell in love with Amsterdam the first time I visited the city.*

ADJECTIVES

a lifelong love of sth *Her lifelong love of Brazil began during a visit to Rio de Janeiro.*

a secret love of sth *She confessed to a secret love of the Harry Potter books.*

PREPOSITIONS

a love of sth *He had a great love of music.*

a love for sth *He's a teacher with a love for sport.*

lovely *adj* **THESAURUS** → beautiful

low *adj*

1 not high, or in a position that is not high

NOUNS

a low table/chair *There was a low table coffee table in front of the sofa.*

a low wall/fence *The yard was surrounded by a low fence.*

a low hill/mountain *The house stood on top of a low hill.*

a low house/building *The village consisted of a row of low wooden houses.*

a low branch *He picked an apple from one of the lower branches of the tree.*

a low roof *The houses in the mountains had low roofs.*

low ground *There is a risk of flooding on low ground.*

a low bridge *The bridge was too low for the ship to go under.*

a low door *There is a low door in the kitchen which leads to the cellar.*

THESAURUS: low**low-lying**

area | region | place | part | land

a low-lying area is in a low position compared to the level of the sea or rivers:

People living in low-lying areas were forced to move to higher ground. | The river flooded vast areas of low-lying land.

low-rise

building | housing

low-rise buildings are only one or two floors high:

The complex consists of a group of low-rise office buildings. | People want low-rise housing made using traditional materials.

ANTONYMS low → high (1)

2 small, or smaller than usual, in amount, level, or value

NOUNS

a low price/cost *They sell good carpets at low prices.*

a low rent/tax *Rents are low in this part of the city.*

low salary/wage/pay/income *The workers are paid very low wages.*

a low level/rate/degree *The city has a relatively low level of pollution.*

a low amount/proportion/percentage *The amount of traffic is low.*

a low number/grade/score *A lower number of men are choosing teaching as a career.*

a low standard *His work has been of a low standard.*

a low speed *Both vehicles were travelling at low speed.*

a low temperature *The medicine needs to be stored at a low temperature.*

a low demand *Continuing low demand for new cars has led the company to cut production.*

a low profit/return *Restaurants complain about low profits and high food costs.*

low unemployment *Traditionally this part of the country has been an area of low unemployment.*

low inflation *The country has achieved low inflation and steady growth.*

a low risk/chance *There is only a very low risk of catching the disease.*

THESAURUS: low

falling/declining

value | price | number | rate | demand | sales | profits

becoming low. **Declining** is more formal than **falling**:

The falling value of the dollar will push up the price of imports. | A declining number of students are choosing to study history. | In Japan, people are worried about the declining birth rate.

3 near the bottom of the range of sounds

NOUNS

a low note *I can't sing the low notes.*

a low voice/sound *Boys' voices usually become much lower as they get older.*

a low whisper *They spoke in a low whisper, to avoid being heard.*

a low pitch *His voice dropped to a low pitch.*

THESAURUS: low

deep

voice | sound

a deep voice or sound is low, strong, and pleasant:

He has a lovely deep voice. | The engine has a wonderful deep sound.

husky

voice | whisper | laugh

a husky voice is deep, quiet, and rough-sounding, especially in a way that is attractive:

Jazz singers often have husky voices. | His voice dropped to a husky whisper.

gravelly

voice | tone

a gravelly voice is very low and rough-sounding:

John Wayne was famous for his gravelly voice. | His gravelly tones gave the report an air of seriousness.

THESAURUS: low

low, soft, silent, hushed, faint, muffled, dull, inaudible → **quiet (1)**

ANTONYMS **low** → **high (3)**

4 not expensive

THESAURUS: low

inexpensive, low, reasonable, economical, affordable, competitive, budget → **cheap**

lower v **THESAURUS** → **reduce**

loyal adj

always supporting a person, organization etc

VERBS

remain/stay loyal *The army has remained loyal to the government.*

ADVERBS

fiercely/intensely loyal (=extremely loyal) *The football club has a fiercely loyal group of fans.*

NOUNS

a loyal customer *The hotel has many loyal customers who come to stay there every year.*

a loyal friend/ally *She has been a good and loyal friend to me.*

a loyal member *She is a very loyal member of the church.*

a loyal supporter/fan/follower *He has been a loyal supporter of the party for many years.*

loyal support *The head teacher thanked parents for their loyal support.*

a loyal following (=group of people who support or admire someone or something) *The band has built up a small but loyal following.*

a loyal servant *He was the king's most loyal servant.*

a loyal subject *formal* (=someone who is loyal to their country which is ruled by a king or queen) *They were loyal subjects of the Queen.*

loyal service *She has given many years of loyal service to the company.*

PREPOSITIONS

loyal to sb/sth *She was very loyal to her father, and never criticized him.*

loyalty n

the quality of being loyal to someone or something

ADJECTIVES

great/deep/strong loyalty *Why do you feel such deep loyalty to him?*

absolute/total/complete loyalty *She has always shown complete loyalty to the company.*

fierce/intense loyalty (=very great) *She was moved by her friend's fierce loyalty.*

unswerving/unwavering loyalty (=never changing) *He was rewarded for his unswerving loyalty.*

undying loyalty (=never ending) *I pledge my undying loyalty to you.*

blind/unthinking/unquestioning loyalty (=without thinking whether someone deserves it) *Sarah was criticized for her blind loyalty to her husband.*

divided/conflicting loyalties (=to more than one person or group, especially when this causes problems) *The war created divided loyalties in many families.*

NOUNS + loyalty

family/company/party loyalty (=to your family, company, or party) *Family loyalty prevented her from telling what she knew.*

customer loyalty (=to a company, so that you always buy its products) *The company relies on customer loyalty instead of using big advertising campaigns.*

VERBS

feel loyalty *Marco felt an intense loyalty to the country where he was born.*

show/demonstrate loyalty *He showed great loyalty to his wife during her long illness.*

prove your loyalty *He has proved his loyalty many times.*

swear/pledge loyalty (=promise to be loyal) *The president's assistants swore their loyalty to him.*

win sb's loyalty (=get it) *Steve had won her loyalty and trust.*

inspire/command loyalty (=make people feel loyal to you) *She inspires extraordinary loyalty among her staff.*

reward sb's loyalty *He rewarded his friends' loyalty by helping them in times of need.*

doubt/question sb's loyalty *Are you doubting my loyalty?*

test sb's loyalty *Perhaps she is trying to test your loyalty.*

shift/switch your loyalties (=start being loyal to a different person) *He would never shift his loyalties to another football team.*

PREPOSITIONS

loyalty to/towards sb/sth *Eva understood her husband's loyalty to his sister.*

out of loyalty (=because of loyalty) *She remained silent out of loyalty to her friend.*

PHRASES

a sense of loyalty *She had a strong sense of loyalty to her family.*

an oath of loyalty (=a promise to be loyal) *They swore an oath of loyalty to their king.*

a show of loyalty (=an action that shows someone is loyal) *He was hoping for a show of loyalty from his boss.*

where your loyalties lie (=who or what you are loyal to) *Decide where your loyalties lie - with your friends or your family.*

luck ⁿ

good or bad things that happen to you by chance

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + luck

good luck *These birds are said to bring good luck.*

bad luck *His bad luck continued and he lost the next three games.*

sheer/pure luck (also **dumb luck** AmE) (=chance, and not skill or effort) *She managed to catch hold of the rope by sheer luck.*

beginner's luck (=good luck that happens when you first try something) *His first shot hit the centre of the target. "Beginner's luck, I guess," he said.*

bad/hard luck! (=used to show sympathy for someone who has not succeeded) *"I didn't get the job." "Oh, bad luck!"*

tough luck (=used when saying that you do not feel sorry for someone) *If they can't get to the airport in time for the plane, that's tough luck.*

VERBS + luck

have good/bad luck *He's had some bad luck lately.*

have no luck (also **not have much/any luck**) (=not be lucky or successful) *I'd been looking for a job for weeks, but had had no luck.*

have the (good/bad) luck to do sth *He had the good luck to meet a man who could help him.*

wish sb luck *I'm taking my driving test tomorrow - wish me luck.*

bring sb/give sb luck *He always carried the stone in his pocket; he thought it brought him luck.*

try your luck (=try something that involves a risk) *He decided to try his luck in management.*

push your luck (=do something that involves a risk, especially something you have successfully done before) *You're pushing your luck if you ask him for more money.*

luck + VERBS

sb's luck holds (=they continue having good luck) *Our luck held, and the weather remained fine.*

sb's luck runs out (=they stop having good luck) *Finally, my luck ran out and they caught me.*

PREPOSITIONS

by luck (=because of luck) *It was only by luck that I realized what had happened.*

for luck (=in order to have good luck) *She crossed her fingers for luck.*

with luck (=if someone is lucky) *With luck, we'll be home before dinner.*

PHRASES

a piece/stroke of luck (=something good that happens by chance) *What a piece of luck that he arrived when he did!*

be in luck (=be able to do or get something, especially when you did not expect to) *You're in luck – someone found your keys this morning.*

have a run of good/bad luck (=a series of good or bad things) *The team have had a run of bad luck lately, losing their last five games.*

can't believe your luck *I couldn't believe my luck when I heard I had got the job!*

sth is a matter of luck (=something that depends on chance) *Winning is a matter of luck.*

there is an element of luck (=an amount of luck is involved in something) *There is always an element of luck when hiring someone for a job.*

lucky *adj*

1 if you are lucky, something good happens to you by chance

VERBS

be/feel lucky *I feel very lucky to be here.*

get lucky *informal* (=be lucky) *They're not a great team – they just got lucky.*

strike lucky/strike it lucky *informal* (=be lucky) *I applied for twenty jobs before I struck lucky.*

count/think/consider yourself lucky (=think that you are lucky, considering the situation) *You should count yourself lucky you weren't seriously hurt.*

NOUNS

a lucky man/woman/boy/girl *Your son's a lucky man, having a father like you.*

a lucky winner *The lucky winner of the competition will be announced next week.*

a lucky escape *We had a lucky escape when our car crashed into a tree.*

a lucky chance/accident *It was discovered by a lucky chance.*

a lucky coincidence (=a situation when two things happen together unexpectedly) *By a lucky coincidence, Paul was in New York, too.*

a lucky break (=an opportunity that allows you to be successful) *Our band just needs a lucky break.*

a lucky guess *Did she really work out the answer, or was it just a lucky guess?*

a lucky win *England got a lucky win over France.*

PREPOSITIONS

lucky with sth *We've been lucky with the weather.*

lucky for sb *It's lucky for them that no one saw them.*

PHRASES

the lucky ones (=people who are lucky compared to others) *They considered themselves the lucky ones because they escaped with only minor injuries.*

a lucky few *It is a special quality that only a lucky few possess.*

be lucky enough to do sth (=have the good luck to do something) *I was lucky enough to be chosen for the school team.*

be born lucky (=always be lucky) *Some people seem to be born lucky.*

not be so lucky *One twin survived, but the other was not so lucky.*

you lucky thing! (=said when you are telling someone you think they are lucky) *You're going to the concert? You lucky thing!*

third time lucky (=when you succeed on the third time of trying) *Everyone is praying that this time it will be third time lucky.*

it is sb's lucky day *I found £10 – it must be my lucky day.*

Lucky or fortunate?

Fortunate is more formal than **lucky** and is the usual word to use in more formal contexts: *The university has been fortunate to attract a wide range of excellent speakers.*

The difference is mainly about collocation. You say a **lucky winner/guess/break** (not a 'fortunate' one).

You can say a **lucky coincidence/accident** or a **fortunate coincidence/accident**.

ANTONYMS **lucky** → **unlucky (1)**

2 something that is lucky is believed to bring good luck

NOUNS

a lucky number *In many cultures, 7 is a lucky number.*

a lucky charm (=a small object, often worn on a chain or bracelet, thought to bring good luck) *She was wearing a bracelet with lucky charms on it.*

ANTONYMS **lucky** → **unlucky (2)**

luggage *n*

the cases, bags etc that you carry when you are travelling

PHRASES

a piece of luggage (also **an item of luggage** *formal*): *Security officers checked every piece of luggage.*

⚠ Don't say 'luggages'. Say **pieces/items of luggage**. **Luggage** is an uncountable noun and is not used in the plural.

VERBS

carry luggage *Don't carry more luggage than you need.*

check in your luggage BrE, **check your luggage** AmE: Some airlines charge you to check in your luggage.

lose sb's luggage The airline lost all my luggage.

search sb's luggage They searched his luggage for weapons.

ADJECTIVES

heavy luggage Take a taxi, especially if you have heavy luggage.

hand luggage/carry-on luggage (=luggage that you take onto a plane with you) You're not allowed to carry knives in your hand luggage.

lost luggage (=luggage that an airline or a bus, train etc company has lost) The insurance company will pay for any lost luggage.

left luggage (=a place at a station etc where you can pay to leave luggage and collect it later) Left luggage is situated next to the information desk.

luggage + NOUNS

a luggage rack (=a shelf for putting luggage on) He got on the train and put his case on the luggage rack.

a luggage compartment (=a place in a vehicle for storing luggage) The luggage compartment of the bus was full.

PREPOSITIONS

in your luggage The drugs had been hidden in his luggage.

lump ⁿ **THESAURUS** piece

lunch ⁿ

a meal eaten in the middle of the day

VERBS

have/eat lunch We'll have lunch around midday.

have sth for lunch I usually have sandwiches for lunch.

take sb (out) to lunch (=pay for someone's lunch when you go to a restaurant) He took her out for lunch at a local pub.

go out for/to lunch (=have lunch at a restaurant) I don't often go out to lunch, as it's expensive.

come for/to lunch (=come to someone's house for lunch) Can you come to lunch tomorrow?

make lunch You clear the table while I make lunch.

break for lunch (=stop doing something in order to eat lunch) Why don't we break for lunch at about 1 o'clock?

meet for lunch (also **do lunch** informal): We must meet for lunch sometime.

serve lunch Lunch is served in the main dining room.

ADJECTIVES/NOUNS + lunch

a three-course/two-course etc lunch (=with three, two etc parts) It costs 30 euros for a four-course lunch.

a light lunch (=a small lunch) After a light lunch, he would take a nap each afternoon.

a hot/cold lunch (=consisting of hot or cold food) At 1 o'clock, a cold lunch will be served.

an early/late lunch (=eaten earlier/later than the usual time) I'm not hungry - I had a late lunch.

a school lunch (=provided by a school) Free school lunches are provided for the poorest children.

a business/working lunch (=a lunch during which you also do business) She was having a business lunch with a customer.

a packed lunch BrE, **a bag/sack lunch** AmE (=food such as sandwiches that you take to school etc) Most of the children had brought packed lunches.

Sunday lunch BrE (=a hot lunch eaten on Sunday) Mum always makes a big Sunday lunch.

lunch + NOUNS

the lunch hour I try to go out for a walk during my lunch hour.

a lunch break We took a half hour lunch break.

Lunchtime and **lunchbox** are usually written as one word.

PREPOSITIONS

for lunch It's salad for lunch.

at lunch I'm afraid he's at lunch until two.

over lunch (=while having lunch) Shall we discuss this over lunch?

luxury ⁿ

1 very great comfort and pleasure, for example from expensive food, beautiful houses, and comfortable cars

ADJECTIVES

great luxury She was used to a life of great luxury.

absolute/pure/sheer luxury (=used to emphasize that something is a great luxury) The dress was made of Chinese silk, and felt like pure luxury.

luxury + NOUNS

a luxury hotel/home/apartment We stayed in a five-star luxury hotel.

a luxury car The company makes luxury cars.

luxury goods People are getting wealthier and spending more on luxury goods.

a luxury item (=something that only rich people can afford) In those days, a television was considered a luxury item.

a luxury brand It was no ordinary box of chocolates, but a luxury brand made by hand.

PHRASES

sth is the height of luxury (=it is one of the most comfortable and pleasant things) For many people, a Rolls-Royce is the height of luxury.

the lap of luxury (=a situation that feels very

comfortable and full of luxury) Millionaires live in the lap of luxury, while poor people starve on the city streets.

feel/seem like luxury The bed felt like luxury after a week spent sleeping in a tent.

live in luxury (also **live/lead a life of luxury**) Mick was leading a life of luxury in Florida.

keep sb in luxury He has to work hard to keep his wife in luxury.

add a touch of luxury (=make something feel like luxury) Leather chairs added a touch of luxury to the room.

2 something that gives you pleasure and enjoyment but which is not necessary

ADJECTIVES

an expensive luxury In those days, washing machines were an expensive luxury.

an affordable luxury (=cheap enough for you to buy) Chocolate is an affordable luxury.

an unnecessary luxury We stopped spending money on unnecessary luxuries.

little luxuries She loves life's little luxuries.

a rare luxury Clean water is still a rare luxury in some parts of the world.

the ultimate luxury (=the greatest luxury) A hot tub in your own back yard is the ultimate luxury.

VERBS + luxury

afford luxuries We can't afford luxuries like piano lessons any more.

buy luxuries She started saving her money rather than buying luxuries.

spend sth on luxuries How much money do you spend each month on luxuries?